



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>



3 3433 07023908 6













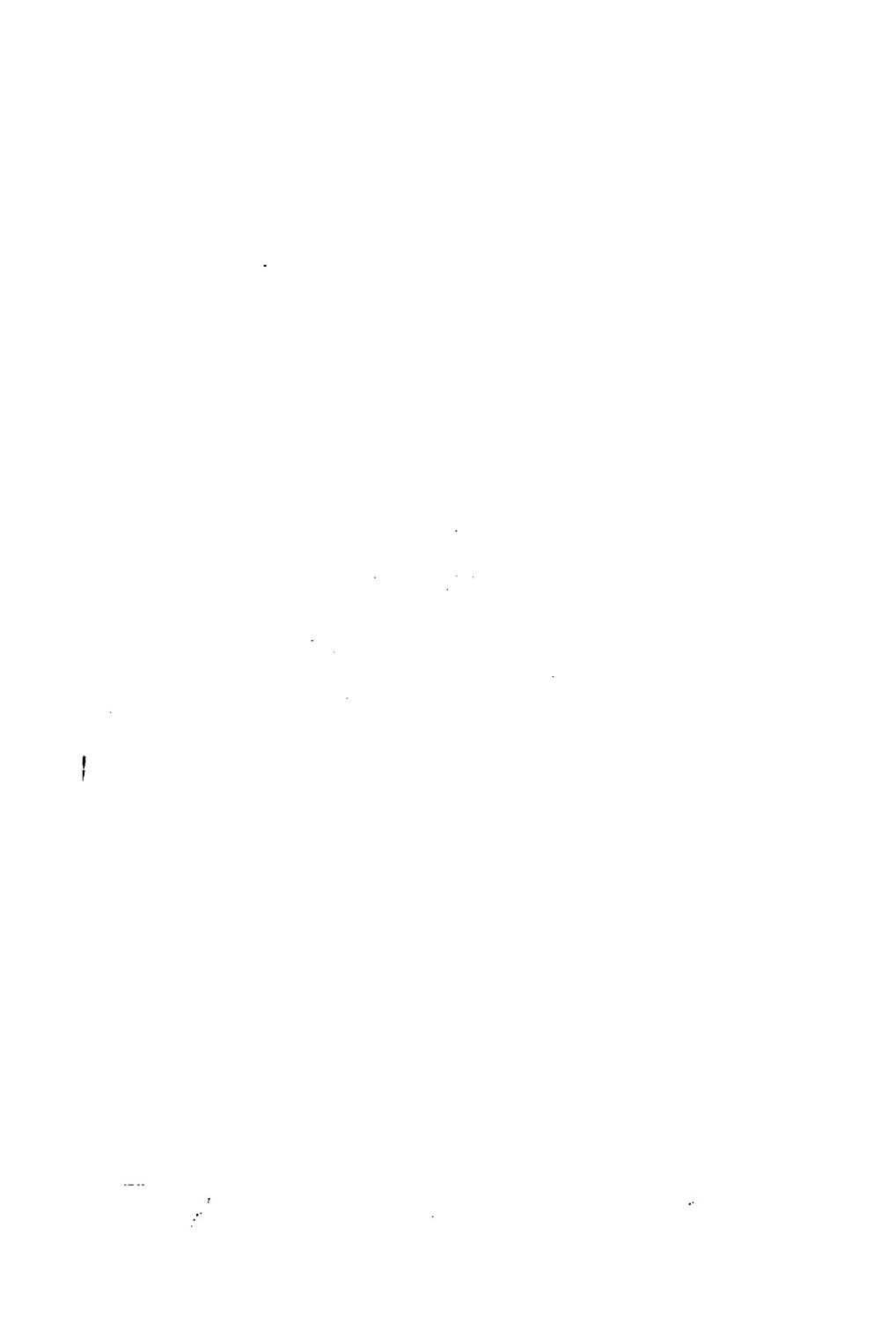
# TWENTIETH CENTURY TEXT-BOOKS

---

## CLASSICAL SECTION

EDITED BY

JOHN HENRY WRIGHT, HARVARD UNIVERSITY  
BERNADOTTE PERRIN, YALE UNIVERSITY  
ANDREW FLEMING WEST, PRINCETON UNIVERSITY



1



The Parthenon as it appears to-day.

3/12/21  
RN

TWENTIETH CENTURY TEXT-BOOKS

# GREEK LESSONS

## FOR BEGINNERS

1.

BY

FREDERICK STILLMAN MORRISON

TEACHER OF GREEK IN THE HARTFORD PUBLIC HIGH SCHOOL

AND

THOMAS DWIGHT GOODELL

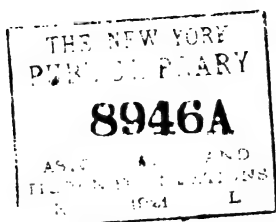
PROFESSOR OF GREEK IN YALE UNIVERSITY



NEW YORK  
D. APPLETON AND COMPANY

1903





COPYRIGHT, 1908

By D. APPLETON AND COMPANY

NEW YORK  
PUBLIC  
LIBRARY

## PREFACE

---

No apology is needed for the appearance of a new *Greek Lessons*. The demand for a book that requires the use of a grammar from the beginning has in recent years been steadily growing. At present many go to college with very little acquaintance with any Greek grammar. The usual lesson books cover the whole ground lightly, and most students rely upon what they get from these, adding to that knowledge from what they acquire by continued repetition of forms and constructions during the succeeding years. The fruits of this experience are of course valuable, but there is no system or orderly framework on which to build. By properly using a grammar, however, from the beginning, the pupil can without any added difficulty, but with even greater ease, construct a framework that will readily receive all the valuable additions of the later years in their proper places. It is believed that by this method one will gain an adequate amount of grammatical knowledge with a minimum of effort, as nothing of the first year's work will have to be undone or done over.

This book has been prepared for use with Goodell's *School Grammar of Attic Greek* and is an attempt to guide beginners to a knowledge of Greek through the Grammar, with as few difficulties as other books present without it, and with as much rapidity as is consistent with accuracy and thoroughness. The introductory matter is more extensive than is usually given. It is strongly recommended that this be not neglected. Let the progress in the early stages be slow and sure, and many of the difficulties of beginners will not appear. The divisions marked by Roman numerals are not intended to indicate daily lessons; these must be adapted to the class with a view to the time allowed. But time will

be saved and success more readily attained by avoiding hurry in the first few weeks.

The principles of accentuation are so introduced that they are viewed one at a time; thus the usual sources of confusion are removed, as each point can be mastered before the next is taken up. In section 90 the principles are collected for a final review.

Attention is invited to the sections on transliteration 7-10; the early introduction of interrogative and  $\delta\tau\iota$  clauses; the coupling of the infinitive with the indicative; the introduction of the thematic with the sigmatic aorist; the gradual but early development of the principal parts of verbs; the use of the perfect middle before the other middle forms, in order to show the middle endings in their simplest form; the gradual development of tense synopses by means of partial synopses; the reserving of mute-perfects till near the end; and the manner in which the inflection of  $\mu$ -verbs is based on principles already learnt. It is hoped that the notes on the opening chapters of the *Anabasis* will be found well adapted to the needs of beginners, and that the usual gap between the selections and a continuous text has been safely bridged over. Xenophon's deviations from normal Attic usage have been carefully noted.

The following sections present some special features: 61-65; 95, 96; 100, 101; 103; 129, 130; 179; 193, 195; 219; 226-228; 237; 248, 249; 255; 275; 285; 293-296. Tables for reference: 185, 203, 204, 262, 308.

The Greek exercises are longer than those usually given in beginners' books. It is by no means necessary that all classes should work out all the sentences. But the vocabularies do not contain a large number of words, and they are so arranged that what has been already used will help in the mastery of what is in hand. These words should be thoroughly learnt; and the pupil will be continually meeting them in subsequent exercises, even if he omits some of the sentences in which they first appear.

There are several reasons for giving so many sentences. In large classes frequently one wishes to send each pupil to the board with a separate sentence, without repeating. Again, it is hoped that as often as possible the advance lesson will end with a vocabulary. It is a good plan in assigning the next lesson to go over with the class all the sentences that are to be taken for the lesson, letting the class do at sight what they can, showing them how to attack a sentence and the best form for translation. The sentences must then be studied in preparation for the recitation, and can be studied intelligently. Again and again pupils spend most of their study time in trying to puzzle out the meaning of the sentences, form bad habits of attack which they never get rid of, meet discouraging difficulties, and neglect the learning of forms and words. The study of words and forms should occupy a large part of the study period. It is firmly believed that for many weeks the pupil should not be asked to approach any of the sentences for the first time out of class. The proper point for beginning that will vary with each class. When in recitation the class has finished the sentences assigned for the day, the others can be taken at sight; or if there is too little time for that, the instructor can read aloud, having the class repeat, and then translate and comment on the sentence. The old and new words will be found to be constantly recurring in varying relations; and the few minutes devoted to this exercise will do more to fix the meaning of words than much conning of dry word-lists. Pupils are always alert in such an exercise, knowing how much depends upon close attention and consequent clear understanding. It is advised too that much of the translation of review and advance be done from hearing. When the sentence has been previously run over, this is a very helpful exercise; when the pupil has by himself puzzled out the sentence, and wrongly too, it is uselessly discouraging. Again, some may prefer to omit sentences, so as to have fresh material for the term review. But for many classes the

amount of translation will not be too much to take entire, spending as much time as may be necessary to accomplish this. If this book is made to cover the first year's work, the later progress will be rapid enough to more than make up for the time spent. At any rate go slow.

It will be noticed that relatives and indefinite relatives are introduced early and that several sets of correlatives are given with translations, §§ 103, 219, 220 and *a*, 285. Most pupils regard the correlatives with a kind of awe, as something beyond their comprehension, and reach the end of their preparatory course with no clear conception of these common connectives, in use so closely allied to their everyday speech. It is hoped that constant repetition of these here will accomplish the result desired, without giving the false idea that there is anything strange in their use. With these connectives early fixed in mind, the development of clauses by the introductory word is found a simple matter; for example see § 112.

The English exercises are brief. In the earlier stages most of the work in writing Greek should be done at first by copying on the board the Greek sentences, with some retroversion, and later by as much retroversion as the time allows. More rapid progress can be made in this way than by requiring a class to invent new Greek without an adequate basis of experience. The few sentences that are given are closely allied with the Greek text and should be carefully written by each member of the class.

In making the exercises the question arose whether early to introduce dialogues, anecdotes, and extracts from various sources to arouse and hold interest or to go straight for the object in view, the ability rapidly and accurately to read the Greek of Xenophon. An experience of more than twenty years with beginners, sometimes with divisions aggregating more than fifty, leads to the belief that there need be no lack of interest without these diversions. Those who begin the study of Greek do so with a set purpose, and any attempt

to make it unduly easy or to put off the day of close application by whatever means simply deceives. The use of much outside matter before the *Anabasis* distracts the attention from what is positively essential, is misleading, and is really of the nature of an anticlimax.

Therefore this book leads direct to the *Anabasis* and this purpose has been constantly in mind in choosing the vocabulary. With the exception of a very few words, common in other prose authors, the words used are of frequent occurrence in the *Anabasis*; but care has been taken to introduce but few that are not frequently met in other literature. In pages 1–206 besides the numerals and correlatives and besides proper names there are: nouns 183, adjectives 87, simple verbs 128, compound verbs 27, adverbs 87, pronouns 19, prepositions 18, conjunctions and particles 25; in all 574. Besides these there are 10 verbals and 140 compound verbs of simples already studied, making 724 words. These compounds have been carefully developed and greatly enrich the vocabulary, while requiring but little added effort. When one has learnt the simple meaning of the prepositions, words like ἀπ-ἡλθον, εἰς-ἡλθον, ἐξ-ἡλθον, παρ-ἡλθον, συν-ἡλθον, συν-εἰς-ἡλθον, συν-ἐξ-ἡλθον, and the like present no difficulty.

When the pupil who has used this book begins the *Anabasis*, page 207, he will find an average of only ten new words per Teubner page in the first four chapters. In the three chapters here given there are 136 new words, making the total in both parts, with the exceptions above noted, 860; but of these at least 180 are compounds, leaving but 680 for the stock vocabulary. In this estimate such words as λοχᾶγός and στρατηγός are treated as simples. The care with which the vocabulary has been worked over may be indicated by the long selection, pages 197–201, in which appear but two new words.

In the general vocabulary some additional words are given to aid in studying word formation. The use of the list of

derivatives, *Appendix II*, should be begun soon after beginning the *Anabasis* selections. Attention is called to this matter of derivation as treated in this vocabulary by means of references to the Grammar. Pupils should be encouraged to make use of the assistance thus supplied; and the work can readily be systematized by using the lists in *Appendix II*.

The case constructions are introduced through the notes on the exercises by means of references to the Grammar. Classifying clauses by the introductory word naturally and easily brings in the subjunctive early. Then it will be noticed that subjunctive, infinitive, and participle uses are reviewed, tabulated, and further reviewed in nine lessons before the optative is introduced. The treatment of the optative then becomes in many details merely a review and extension of uses already familiar.

Any experienced teacher that has year after year watched pupils stumbling over proper names will appreciate the reasons for placing the proper names in a list by themselves. One can, if he wishes, here give as much drill on their transliteration and pronunciation as his stock of patience will allow.

Despite the large type and open printing, with the numerous paradigms, lists, summations, reference tables, and the copious exercises, the part introductory to the *Anabasis* has been kept within the compass of 206 pages.

As editor of the series Professor Wright has read nearly all the proofs and has offered helpful suggestions. Mr. Alvord of the Hartford Public High School has kindly read the proof of pages 1-239.

As the material in just this form has not had the advantage of being used with a class, though most of it has been thus used in one way or another, doubtless some slips will be found. Any criticism or suggestions will be gratefully received.

F. S. M.  
T. D. G.

July, 1903.

# CONTENTS

---

	PAGE
INTRODUCTION . . . . .	1
Syllables . . . . .	1
Accent . . . . .	2
Pronunciation . . . . .	2
Transliteration . . . . .	6
EXERCISE ON ENCLITICS, PROCLITICS, AND PUNCTUATION . . .	8
READING EXERCISE . . . . .	10
I THE O-DECLENSION. Nouns and Adjectives. Form and Accent . . . . .	11
II THE O-DECLENSION. Ω-VERBS. The Present Indicative and Infinitive Active. Nouns and Adjectives . . .	14
III THE O-DECLENSION. Ω-VERBS. The Future Indicative and Infinitive Active. Nouns and Adjectives . . .	17
IV Ω-VERBS. The Imperfect Indicative Active . . .	21
V Ω-VERBS. The Sigmatic Aorist and the Thematic Aorist, Indicative and Infinitive Active . . . . .	24
Time of the Infinitive . . . . .	26
VI THE A-DECLENSION. Nouns in -ᾱ and -α and Adjectives of the Vowel Declension . . . . .	30
VII THE A-DECLENSION. Nouns and Adjectives in -η. The Relative Pronouns "Ος, Ολος, "Ορος, "Οστις . . .	33
VIII THE A-DECLENSION. Masculine Nouns in -ας and -ης. The Possessive Pronouns . . . . .	35
Comparison of Interrogative and Relative Words . . .	36
IX REVIEW . . . . .	38
The Attributive and the Predicate Position . . .	40
X Αὐτός AND THE DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS . . . . .	40
Review of Some Pronouns and Adverbs . . . . .	43
XI Ω-VERBS. The Present, Sigmatic Aorist, and Thematic Aorist Subjunctive Active. Subjunctive Uses . . .	46



	PAGE
XII $\Omega$ -VERBS. The Perfect and Pluperfect Indicative, Subjunctive, Infinitive, and Participle Active . . .	49
Review of Some Prepositions . . . . .	52
XIII $\Omega$ -VERBS. The Perfect and Pluperfect Indicative, Subjunctive, Infinitive, and Participle Middle and Passive. Subjunctive Uses . . . . .	53
'Eos Clauses . . . . .	55
XIV $\Omega$ -VERBS. The $\Theta\eta$ -, the $\text{H}$ -, and the Future Passive . .	57
Principal Parts of Verbs . . . . .	58
XV $\Omega$ -VERBS. Principal Parts of $-\acute{\alpha}\omega$ , $-\epsilon\omega$ , and $-\omicron\omega$ Verbs and of Mute Verbs . . . . .	60
XVI $\Omega$ -VERBS. The Middle Forms of the Present, Future, and Sigmatic and Thematic Aorist Systems, Indicative, Subjunctive, Infinitive, and Participle . . .	65
XVII $\Omega$ -VERBS. The Liquid Future and Aorist, and the Root-Aorist, Indicative, Subjunctive, and Infinitive . . .	69
XVIII COMPOUND VERBS. Review of Prepositions and Verbs .	72
Meaning of Prepositions in Composition . . . . .	73
List of Compound Verbs in I-XVIII . . . . .	73
XIX $\Omega$ -VERBS. Deponents. Review . . . . .	77
List of Passive Deponents . . . . .	78
Exercise: $\text{HOPEIA ANPAKTOZ}$ . . . . .	80
XX $\Omega$ -VERBS. $\Omega$ -forms and $\text{M}$ -.forms. Review of Subjunctive and Infinitive Forms and Constructions . .	81
Table of Subjunctive Constructions . . . . .	86
Table of Infinitive Constructions . . . . .	87
XXI THE CONSONANT DECLENSION. Guttural Stems in $-\kappa$ and $-\gamma$ . The Dental Stem $\text{vukt-}$ . . . . .	88
XXII THE CONSONANT DECLENSION. Guttural Stems in $-\kappa$ , $-\gamma$ , $-\chi$ . Personal and Reflexive Pronouns. Adverbs in $-\omega\varsigma$ , $-\theta\epsilon\upsilon$ , $-\tau\epsilon$ , and $-\omicron\iota$ . . . . .	91
Exercise on Correlative Adverbs . . . . .	94
XXIII THE CONSONANT DECLENSION. Labial Stems in $-\pi$ , $-\beta$ . Dental Stems in $-\tau$ , $-\delta$ , $-\theta$ . Possessive Forms . . .	95
Examples of Possessives . . . . .	97
XXIV THE CONSONANT DECLENSION. Adjective Stems in $-\omicron\upsilon\tau$ . $\text{H}\acute{\alpha}\varsigma$ , $\text{A}\pi\acute{\alpha}\varsigma$ , $\text{S}\acute{\upsilon}\mu\pi\acute{\alpha}\varsigma$ , $\text{O}\acute{\iota}\delta\alpha$ . . . . .	98
XXV $\Omega$ -VERBS. Participles, Formation and Uses . . . . .	102
Comparison of Participle Idioms . . . . .	107

	PAGE
XXVI PARTICIPLES. The Genitive Absolute. 'Ωs with the Participle. Numerals . . . . .	108
Examples of the Genitive Absolute . . . . .	111
XXVII THE CONSONANT DECLENSION. Liquid Stems. Numerals	112
Exercise: A LITTLE DIVERSION . . . . .	113
Table of Participle Constructions . . . . .	115
XXVIII THE CONSONANT DECLENSION. Stems in -φ. Reflexive and other Pronouns. Correlative Adverbs . . . . .	116
Reflexive Pronouns . . . . .	118
XXIX Ω-VERBS. The Optative Mode, Formation, and some Uses . . . . .	119
XXX THE OPTATIVE MODE. Review of Correlative Pro- nouns and Adverbs. Forms of Εἴμυ and Οἷσα . . . . .	125
Exercise on Correlatives . . . . .	126
XXXI THE OPTATIVE MODE. Quoted Clauses with "Οτι. Quoted Questions. "Ινα Clauses with the Optative	130
The Subjunctive with εἰ in Quotations . . . . .	131
The Optative with εἰ in Quotations . . . . .	131
The Position of εἰ with the Optative . . . . .	132
XXXII Εἰ CLAUSES. Review of Φημι and Εἴμυ . . . . .	135
Table of Optative Constructions. . . . .	137
XXXIII Ω-VERBS. Contract Presents in -ω. Review of Liquid Futures . . . . .	139
XXXIV Ω-VERBS. Contract Presents in -άω and -όω . . . . .	142
XXXV THE CONSONANT DECLENSION. Stems in -ι and -ευ. Ordinals . . . . .	146
Exercise: THE SATRAP'S PLOT . . . . .	147
XXXVI THE CONSONANT DECLENSION. Noun and Adjective Stems in -εις. Adverbs. Numerals . . . . .	149
XXXVII Ω-VERBS. Review . . . . .	151
Exercise: ΑΞΙΑΛΕΥΣ ΑΡΙΣΤΟΣ ΑΧΑΙΩΝ . . . . .	153
XXXVIII THE CONSONANT DECLENSION. Μέγας, Πολύς, Τάχης, Βέλτερον, Μόλις . . . . .	155
XXXIX COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES. Several Forms and Idioms	157
XL ADVERBS AND COMPARISON OF ADVERBS . . . . .	160
XLI Ω-VERBS. The Imperative Mode. Imperative Sen- tences . . . . .	163
Complete Synopsis of παύω . . . . .	164
Miscellaneous Synopses by Tense-Systems. . . . .	166

	PAGE
XLII Ω-VERBS. Verbs assuming σ. Liquid and Mute Perfects . . . . .	170
XLIII VERBAL ADJECTIVES . . . . .	174
XLIV ΜΙ-VERBS. Δέκνυμι and the Root-Aorist of Δέω . . . . .	176
XLV ΜΙ-VERBS. Ἴστημι and its Compounds. The Root-Aorist of Διδράσκω . . . . .	179
XLVI ΜΙ-VERBS. Διδωμι . . . . .	183
Exercise: ΠΡΟΔΟΤΗΣ . . . . .	185
XLVII ΜΙ-VERBS. Τίθημι and Κάμμι . . . . .	187
XLVIII ΜΙ-VERBS. ἵημι . . . . .	190
Exercise: ΜΕΜΝΗΣΟ ΤΩΝ ΑΘΗΝΑΙΩΝ . . . . .	192
SELECTIONS :	
A Slave from the Makrōnes . . . . .	194
The Ruins of Calah and Nineveh . . . . .	195
When Greek meets Greek . . . . .	197
Mention of the Anabasis and the Ten Thousand in the Hellenika . . . . .	201
Xenophon, the Author of the Anabasis . . . . .	204
THE ANABASIS I. I-III . . . . .	207
APPENDIX I: EXERCISE ON CONSONANTS . . . . .	241
APPENDIX II: DERIVATIVES . . . . .	243
APPENDIX III: INDEX OF PROPER NAMES . . . . .	246
GREEK-ENGLISH VOCABULARY . . . . .	255
ENGLISH-GREEK VOCABULARY . . . . .	294
ENGLISH INDEX . . . . .	301
GREEK INDEX . . . . .	303

## ABBREVIATIONS

Most of the abbreviations will be self-explanatory. Compare *Grammar* page 298 end. A = used with the accusative. D = used with the dative. G = used with the genitive. V = for the principal parts consult the Verb-list in the *Grammar* page 299.

Black-face numerals, 428 a, refer to sections of the *Grammar*. Gothic numerals, 428 e, refer to sections of the *Lessons*.

# GREEK LESSONS

---

## INTRODUCTION

### SOUNDS AND WRITING

**/ Alphabet.** 1-7. Study first the small letters. Observe in pronouncing the name of the letter that *the initial sound of the name is the sound represented by the letter.*<sup>1</sup> Compare carefully the forms of  $\eta$  and  $\mu$ , of  $\nu$  and  $\upsilon$ , and of  $\zeta$  and  $\xi$ . Compare also  $\xi$  and  $\chi$  in sound and form with their English equivalents  $\text{x}$  and  $\text{ch}$ . Remember that  $\eta$  and  $\epsilon$  correspond to the Latin  $\bar{\text{e}}$  and  $\text{e}$ , and that  $\omega$  and  $\text{o}$  correspond to the Latin  $\bar{\text{o}}$  and  $\text{o}$ . Avoid confusing  $\eta$  with the English  $\text{n}$ .

The first two columns in 7 will be of use in studying the letters. Observe those that are as high as capitals and those that come below the line. The capitals will be learnt gradually as words containing them occur. Note those that are like the English. The Latin alphabet was borrowed from an early form of the Greek. Additional practice on the consonants, for those that need it, can be had in the table *Appendix I*.

**2 Syllables.** 8. The consonants that may begin a Greek word are best learnt by observation. The instructor and lexicon will help.

---

<sup>1</sup> The sound of  $\beta$  is not  $\beta\eta$  or  $\text{b}\bar{\text{e}}$  but  $\beta$  or  $\text{b}$ , without the vowel. So with the other consonants.

- 3 **Accent.** 9-11 and a. That is we find Greek words accented with the acute, some on the antepenult, some on the penult, some on the ultima; with the circumflex, some on the penult, some on the ultima.

In the classic period the accented syllable was left unmarked, as now in English; about 200 B. C. accent marks were invented at Alexandria to guide foreigners to a correct accentuation of Greek words. In English the accent must be learnt by experience and from the dictionary. In Greek the accent is always printed with the word. Pronounce aloud each new Greek word while learning it, putting a slight stress on the accented syllable.

- 4 **Pronunciation.** Use the words in 7 for practice on the letters, in syllabication, and in pronunciation. Copy the Greek words and pronounce the syllables as you write. Then read the words aloud.

Take more time for pronouncing the long vowels and the diphthongs than for the short vowels. Compare *o*ñ-sti-tit - ˘ ˘, Αἰ-ο-λος - ˘ ˘, Βα-βυ-λών ˘ ˘ ˘, ἐ-νί-κη-σα ˘ - - ˘. Try to keep distinct final *ā* and *a*, and *ης* and *es*. Pronounce both consonants in combinations like ἄλ-λος, ἵπ-πος, μνή-μη.

a For the difference between two consonants and single consonants compare *soul-less* and *holy*; also such words as *hop-pole* (ππ), *sack-cloth* (κκ), *cat-tail* (ττ), *mis-step* (σσ), *ear-ring* (ρρ), *un-nerve* (νν), *room-mate* (μμ). Pronounce μᾶλ-λον, ἵπ-πεύς, ἐκ-κλη-σί-ᾱ, τάτ-τω, ἄλ-λάσ-σω, ἔρ-ρι-πτον, ἐν-νο-έω, γάμ-μα, κο-λά-ζω.

- 5 Cover the first column in 7 and write the words in the second column with Greek letters and the proper breathings and separate the syllables. Compare your work with the first column, correct any errors and copy in the accents.

The quantities are marked in the English to help in writing the Greek.

- 6 The following table 7 is to be used in learning the letters ; for practice in pronunciation and in placing the stress on the accented syllable ; for dividing words into syllables ; for showing the form and relative position of the accents and breathings ; and for learning how to write Greek proper names in English. Before pronouncing the English equivalents read the first paragraph in 10, and accent in accordance with that.

7	GREEK	ENGLISH	LATIN AND ENGLISH
	Ἀ-θη-νᾶ	Athēnā	<i>Athēna</i>
	Ἀ-γα-μέ-μνων	Agamemnōn	<i>Agamemnon</i>
	Ἀ-ρι-στο-φά-νης	Aristophanēs	<i>Aristophanes</i>
	Ἀ-ρι-στον		
	Ἄ-γῆς	Āgis	<i>Agis</i>
	Βο-ρέ-ās	Boreās	<i>Boreas</i>
	Γορ-γί-ās	Gorgiās	<i>Gorgias</i>
	Δη-μο-σθέ-νης	Dēmosthenēs	<i>Demosthenes</i>
	Ἐ-ρα-το-σθέ-νης	Eratosthenēs	<i>Eratosthenes</i>
	Ζέ-φυ-ρος	Zephyros	<i>Zephyrus, Zephyr</i>
	Ἡ-ρα-κλῆς	Hēraklēs	<i>Heracles, Hercules</i>
	Θη-ρα-μέ-νης	Thēramenēs	<i>Theramenes</i>
	Ἴ-ω-νί-ᾶ	Iōniā	<i>Ionia</i>
	Ἰ-η-μι		
	Ἰ-ρις	Īris	<i>Iris</i>
	Κλε-ᾶ-νωρ	Kleānōr	<i>Cleānor</i>
	Κύδ-νος	Kydnos	<i>Cydnus</i>
	Λύ-δί-ᾶ	Lȳdiā	<i>Lydia</i>
	Μα-ρα-θών	Marathōn	<i>Marathon</i>
	Μη-δί-ᾶ	Mēdiā	<i>Media</i>

GREEK	ENGLISH	LATIN AND ENGLISH
Νά-ξος	Naxos	<i>Naxos</i>
Ξέρ-ξης	Xerxēs	<i>Xerxes</i>
Ὀ-ρόν-τας	Orontās	<i>Orontas</i>
Πε-ρι-κλῆς	Periklēs	<i>Pericles</i>
Ῥα-δά-μαν-θvs	Rhadamanthys	<i>Rhadamanthys</i>
Σω-κρά-της	Sōkratēs	<i>Socrates</i>
Σο-φο-κλῆς	Sophoklēs	<i>Sophocles</i>
Τολ-μίδης	Tolmidēs	<i>Tolmides</i>
Ῥ-ά-κιν-θος	Hyakinthos	<i>Hyacinthus,</i> <i>Hyacinth</i>
Φι-λο-κτῆ-της	Philoktētēs	<i>Philoctetes</i>
Χαλ-κίς	Chalkis	<i>Chalcis</i>
Ψῦ-χή	Psychē	<i>Psyche</i>
Ὠ-πις	Opis	<i>Opis</i>
Αἴ-ās <sup>1</sup>	Aiās	<i>Aias, Ajax</i>
Μαί-αν-δρος	Maiandros	<i>Meander</i>
Ἀ-τρει-δαι	Atreidai	<i>Atridae</i>
Ἀ-ρι-αῖ-ος	Ariaios	<i>Ariaeus</i>
Χει-ρί-σο-φος	Cheirisophos	<i>Chirisophus</i>
Δᾱ-ρεῖ-ος	Dāreios	<i>Darius</i>
Ζέ-λει-α	Zeleia	<i>Zelea</i>
Μή-δει-α	Mēdeia	<i>Medea</i>
Οἰ-δί-πους	Oidipous	<i>Oedipus</i>

<sup>1</sup> It may help some to use the following for an approximate pronunciation of the diphthongs in Greek words :

αι	<i>aisle</i>	ευ	<i>euphony, or feud</i>	υι	<i>we</i>
αι	<i>eight</i>	ηυ	<i>ā + ō</i>	φι	<i>as ā</i>
οι	<i>oil</i>	ου	<i>group</i>	ηι	<i>as η</i>
αυ	<i>out</i>	ου	<i>ō + ō</i>	φι	<i>as ω</i>

GREEK	ENGLISH	LATIN AND ENGLISH
Οἰ-ταῖ-οι	Oitaioi	<i>Oetaei, Oetaeans</i>
Βοι-ω-τί-ᾱ	Boiōtiā	<i>Boeotia</i>
Δελ-φοί	Delphoi	<i>Delphi</i>
υῖ-ός		
Αῦ-λῖς	Aulis	<i>Aulis</i>
Εὐ-φρά-της	Euphrātēs	<i>Euphrātes</i>
Εὐ-ρος	Euros	<i>Eurus</i>
Εὐ-η-νός	Euēnos	<i>Euēnus, Evēnus</i>
Εὐ-αν-δρος	Euandros	<i>Evandrus, Evander</i>
Ὀ-τρεὺς	Otreus	<i>Otreus</i>
ἡῦ-ρη-κα	. . . . .	<i>Eurēka</i>
Θου-κυ-δί-δης	Thoukydidēs	<i>Thucydides</i>
Γλοῦς	Glous	<i>Glus</i>
Ἄλ-κί-νο-ος	Alkinoōs	<i>Alcinoūs</i>
Πάν-θο-ος	Panthoōs	<i>Panthus</i>
Ἅ-ιδης, ᾗ-δης	Hādēs	<i>Hades</i>
τῆ		
ὧ-δή	. . . . .	<i>ode</i>
ἄ-γ-γε-λος	. . . . .	<i>angelus</i>
ᾠ-κου-στι-κός	. . . . .	<i>acoustic</i>
ἐγ-κέ-φα-λον	. . . . .	<i>encephalon</i>
εὐ-αγ-γε-λι-κός	. . . . .	<i>evangelical</i>
κω-μω-δί-ᾱ	. . . . .	<i>comedy</i>
οἰ-κο-νο-μί-ᾱ	. . . . .	<i>economy</i>
σύγ-χρο-νος	. . . . .	<i>synchronous</i>

- 8 Words that have become English words may better be retained as such. Opinions will differ as to what words have become anglicized. κ will probably show the most variation. We give a few.



9	GREEK	ENGLISH	ENGLISH
	Ἀ-θῆ-ναι	. . . . .	<i>Athens</i>
	Αἰ-νεί-ας	Aineiās	but <i>Aenēas</i> , of the <i>Aeneid</i>
	Αἴ-σω-πος	Aisōpos	but <i>Aesop</i> , the fabulist
	Ἀ-ρι-στο-τέ-λης.	. . . . .	<i>Aristotle</i>
	Ἀ-χιλ-λεύς	. . . . .	<i>Achilles</i>
	Ἑ-λέ-νη	. . . . .	<i>Helen, Helena</i>
	Ἑλ-λη-νες	Hellēnes, a tribe	<i>Greeks</i> , the race
	Εὐ-κλεί-δης	Eukleidēs	but <i>Euclid</i> , the mathe- matician
	Ἑ-σί-ο-δος	. . . . .	<i>Hesiod</i>
	Θῆ-βαι	. . . . .	<i>Thebes</i>
	Θετ-τα-λί-α	. . . . .	<i>Thessaly</i>
	Ἴ-θά-κη	. . . . .	<i>Ithaca</i>
	Κῦ-ρος	. . . . .	<i>Cyrus</i>
	Μῆ-δοι	. . . . .	<i>Medes</i>
	Μοῦ-σα	. . . . .	<i>Muse</i>
	Ὅ-μη-ρος	. . . . .	<i>Homer</i>
	Πει-ραι-εύς	. . . . .	<i>Piræus</i>
	Πέρ-σαι	. . . . .	<i>Persians</i>
	Πλά-των	. . . . .	<i>Plato</i>
	Τροί-α	. . . . .	<i>Troy</i>

- 10 **Transliteration.** Respelling the Greek words with our own letters is called transliterating them. For a long time Greek was studied through Latin, and Greek words have commonly appeared in English in their Latin form, as shown in the last column in 7. In the second column is given a simpler method of transliteration frequently used. In pronouncing by either method give the English sound to the letters

and the Latin accent to the word. That is *accent the penult in words of two syllables*; in words of more than two syllables *accent the penult if it is a long syllable, otherwise the antepenult*. The marks over the vowels in the second column indicate the quantity of the corresponding Greek letters, not the quality of the English sound. Compare 5 *end*. The macron ( - ) over the vowel of the penult in words in either column is a guide to the accent.

In the method shown in the second column notice that *ι* subscript disappears and that *ου* becomes *u* in words taken through the Latin, *ou* in words taken directly from the Greek.

In the words in the third column it may be well to notice that

**a** Iota-subscript disappears.

**b** Gamma *nasal* appears as *n*. Consult 3.

**c** Ζ, *dz*, is represented by *z*.

**d** Κ in Latin and in English derivatives is usually represented by *c*, sometimes by *k* in words more recently transferred.

**e** The vowel *υ*, not in a diphthong, is represented by *y*. The Romans, not having a letter to represent the sound of Greek *υ*, borrowed the Greek letter in its form Υ; this has become our *Y*, *y*.

**f** Final *η* of the *α*-declension appears in Latin as *a*, sometimes as *ē*.

**g** In Latin and in English derivatives the diphthong *αι* appears as *ai* or *ae*; final *αι* in declension becomes *ae* of the Latin *α*-declension, which had practically the same sound.

**h** The diphthong *ει* becomes *ī*, sometimes *ē*.

**i** The diphthong *οι* becomes *oe*, which in Latin had about the same sound. This is sometimes changed in Eng-

lish derivatives to *e*. Final *oi* in declension becomes *i* of the Latin *o*-declension.

j The diphthong *ou* becomes *ū* in Latin words, *u* in English words that have come through the Latin, and *ou* in English words taken directly from the Greek.

k Final *eus* appears as *eus*, sometimes as *e-us*.

l Final *os* of the *o*-declension is retained as *os* in some Latin words and their English equivalents, but usually appears as *us* of the Latin *o*-declension. Final *oos* sometimes becomes *ūs*. Final *δρος* becomes *der*.

Both methods show inconsistencies that have grown from varying usage. The pronunciation of the Latin forms by the English method requires careful study. It is explained in the Appendix to Webster's Dictionary. The pronunciation in the second column is indicated sufficiently by the table.

- // The following exercise /2 further illustrates 15-22, 32, 33 a, b, 34, 41, 42. It should be examined in class and explained. The various changes in accent, form, and punctuation should be noted and the meaning of the words and the translation should be studied. The mastery of the various principles will come gradually as they are needed. The paragraphs indicated above should not all be assigned to be learnt at one time, but after explanation should be taken up as they are needed. Reference to this exercise should be frequently made as occasion may require.

## /2 ENCLITICS, PROCLITICS, AND PUNCTUATION

I Οἱ πιστοὶ λοχᾶγοὶ ἔχουσι πολλοὺς φίλους.

*The trusty captains have many friends.*

2 τίς ἔχει τὰ ὅπλα; τί λέγει ὁ ἐμὸς φίλος;

*Who has the arms? What says my friend?*

3 λοχαγός ἐστι(ν). ῥᾶδιόν ἐστι(ν) αὐτῷ.

*He is a captain ; it is easy for him.*

4 ὁ οἶκός ἐστι(ν) μόνος καὶ ἔρημος.

*The house is lonely and deserted.*

5 ἄλλοι εἰσὶ(ν). εἰ δέ τις φησι(ν). εἶχε(ν).

*There are others. But if anyone speaks. He had.*

6 οὐ δῆλόν ἐστι(ν). οὐκ ἔστι(ν). οὐχ ὑπὸ αὐτοῦ.

*It is not evident. It is not. Not by him.*

7 ἀλλ' ἀπελθόντων· κακοὶ γάρ εἰσι(ν).

*But let them go, for they are cowards.*

8 ἦλθον, εἶδον, ἐνίκησα. ἐν χρόνῳ.

*Venī, vīdī, vicī. In time.*

9 ἐφ' ἵππου for ἐπὶ ἵππου. ὑφ' ἡμῶν. ταῦτ' ἔχει.

*On horseback. By us. He has these.* \*

'3 **Nouns and Adjectives.** Read 57–60, 542, 543. In 61 and a learn the singular and plural,<sup>1</sup> masculine and neuter. Notice that ὁ and οἱ have no accent 16, 17 a, and that the genitive and dative forms have the circumflex. The ι in the dative singular is subscript.

'4 **Syntax.** Read 450–453, 454 a, b, 455 a, 459. Treat the cases as in Latin until new uses appear. Compare /2.

'5 **Punctuation.** Learn 22 and compare /2.

'6 In the following exercise /7 study the words and note the changes in form for case and number. The article will indicate both. Where there is no article, comparison of the form with the forms of the article in 61 will help locate it. Read the exercise aloud several times. Notice the grave accents. See 15.

---

<sup>1</sup> In general the dual may well be omitted, at least until final review.

## READING EXERCISE

- 17 I Ὁ μικρὸς ἵππος. οἱ μικροὶ ἵπποι.  
*The small horse. The small horses.*
- 2 ἔχω, ἔχει, ἔχουσι, ἔχομεν.  
*I-have, he-has, they-have, we-have.*
- 3 ἔχει ἵππον. ἔχουσι ἵππους.  
*He-has a horse. They-have horses.*
- 4 πεδίον, ἐκ τοῦ πεδίου, ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ.  
*A plain, from the plain, in the plain.*
- 5 ὁ οἶκος, ἔξω τοῦ οἴκου, παρὰ τῷ οἴκῳ,  
*The house, outside of-the house, beside the house,*  
 εἰς τὸν οἶκον, εἰς τοὺς οἴκους.  
*into the house, into the houses.*
- 6 οἱ λόχοι ἦσαν πιστοὶ τοῖς λοχαγοῖς.  
*The companies were faithful to-the captains.*
- 7 πιστεύω αὐτοῖς. πιστεύουσι αὐτῷ.  
*I-trust them. They-trust him.*
- 8 ἔχομεν τοὺς ἵππους τοῦ στρατηγοῦ.  
*We-have the horses of-the general.*
- 9 πιστεύομεν τῷ ἀγαθῷ στρατηγῷ.  
*We-trust the brave general.*
- 10 τὸ πλοῖον. εἶδομεν πολλὰ πλοῖα ἐν τῷ  
*The boat. We-saw many boats in the*  
 ποταμῷ. οἱ μακροὶ ποταμοί.  
*river. The long rivers.*
- 11 ἦν αἷτιος. ὁ ἄνθρωπος λέγει ὅτι  
*He-was responsible. The man says that*  
 οἱ ἄλλοι ἦσαν αἷτιοι.  
*the others were responsible.*

- 12 πείθoμεν τὸν ἄνθρωπον πέμπειν πολλοὺς  
*We-persuade the man to-send many*  
 λόχους τοῖς στρατηγοῖς τοῦ ἱππικοῦ.  
*companies to-the generals of-the cavalry.*
- 13 κελεύω αὐτὸν ἀθροίζειν τοὺς ἄλλους.  
*I-direct him to-collect the others.*
- 14 πιστεύουσι τοῖς θεοῖς, οὐκ ἀνθρώποις.  
*They-trust the gods, not men.*
- 15 κελεύουσι αὐτοὺς ἄγειν τοὺς ἵππους ἐπὶ  
*They-direct them to-bring the horses on*  
 τῶν πλοίων κατὰ τὸν ποταμόν.  
*the boats down the river.*

## I THE O-DECLENSION

## FORM AND ACCENT

## 8 Nouns and Adjectives

STEM . . MEANING	(ὁ) πιστο- φίλο- the trusty friend	(τὸ) πεδιο- the plain
S N	ὁ πιστὸς φίλος	τὸ πεδίον
G	τοῦ πιστοῦ φίλου	τοῦ πεδίου
D	τῷ πιστῷ φίλῳ	τῷ πεδίῳ
A	τὸν πιστὸν φίλον	τὸ πεδίον
V	ὦ πιστὲ φίλε	ὦ πεδίον
P N V	οἱ πιστοὶ φίλοι	τὰ πεδία
G	τῶν πιστῶν φίλων	τῶν πεδίων
D	τοῖς πιστοῖς φίλοις	τοῖς πεδίοις
A	τοὺς πιστοὺς φίλους	τὰ πεδία

**19 Form.** The case ending appears in the singular nominative and accusative, and neuter vocative. The ι of the dative singular is subscript. The neuter plural nominative, accusative, and vocative has α as in Latin. The neuter of an adjective is declined like a neuter noun.

Examine and learn βίος and ὁδός in 62. Omit the dual, simply reading the forms. In the singular of nouns always write the vocative; in the plural include it with the nominative, as it is always the same as that.

**20 Accent.** In nouns and adjectives the accent remains on the same syllable as in the nominative singular if possible, 63 a.

The forms in which this is impossible will appear later 35, 71. Learn 15 and α, and compare 12. Remember that in nouns and adjectives, when an accent is used on a long ultima in the genitive and dative, it is circumflex, 63 c.

#### VOCABULARY<sup>1</sup> AND EXERCISES

2/ θεός <i>god.</i> <i>theo-logy</i>	φίλος <i>friendly, dear; friend.</i> <i>philo-</i>
ἵππος <i>horse.</i> <i>hippo-drome</i>	sopher, Phil-ip    ἵπ-πος
λοχ-ἡγός <i>company leader, captain</i>	πιστός <i>trustworthy, faithful</i>
λόχος <i>company</i>	πολλοί <i>many; οἱ πολλοί the many,</i>
ὅπλον <i>tool; pl. arms, armor; ἐν</i>	<i>most men</i>
τοῖς ὅπλοις <i>under arms.</i> <i>pan-oply</i>	ἔστι(ν), εἰσι(ν) <i>he is, they are</i>
πεδῖον <i>plain</i>	ἦν, ἦσαν <i>he was, they were</i>
στρατ-ηγός <i>army leader, general.</i>	ἔχει, ἔχουσι(ν) <i>he has, they have</i>
strategy	λέγει, λέγουσι(ν) <i>he says, they say</i>

<sup>1</sup> Most of the words in this vocabulary have been given and translated in 17. The genitive will be indicated in vocabularies when necessary. The gender, when doubt may arise, will be marked by the proper form of the article. All proper names are to be found in the *List of Proper Names*, Appendix III.

ποῦ interrog. adv. *where* ?

τί interrog. adv. *why* ?

ἄλλος, neut. ἄλλο, *other, another* ;

οἱ ἄλλοι *the rest*. Latin *alius*

τίς τί interrog. pron. *who* ? *what* ?

ἐν prep. D *in* ; equivalent to Latin

*in* with ablative

καί conj. *and*

ὅτι conj. *that*

12 Ποῦ ἦν ὁ στρατηγός ; ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ ἦν ὁ στρατηγός.  
 2 τίς ἔχει τὰ ὄπλα τοῦ στρατηγοῦ ; Σιλᾶνός ἔχει τὰ  
 ὄπλα.<sup>1</sup> 3 ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ εἰσὶν ἵπποι πολλοί.<sup>1</sup> 4 πολ-  
 λούς καὶ πιστοὺς φίλους ἔχει ὁ λοχᾶγός. 5 ὁ στρα-  
 τηγὸς λέγει ὅτι οἱ λόχοι πιστοὶ εἰσι τῷ λοχᾶγῳ.<sup>1</sup>  
 6 τί ἔχουσιν οἱ φίλοι Σιλᾶνοῦ ; πολλὰ ὄπλα ἔχουσιν.  
 7 οἱ ἄλλοι ἦσαν Κλονίος καὶ Χρομῖος. 8 ἐν Δελ-  
 φοῖς ὁ θεὸς λέγει<sup>2</sup> πολλὰ τοῖς πιστοῖς. 9 λέγουσιν  
 ὅτι ὁ λοχᾶγὸς τῶν λόχων ἦν Κλονίος. 10 ὁ λοχᾶγὸς  
 ἔχει φίλον πιστόν. 11 τῷ λοχᾶγῳ<sup>3</sup> ἦν πιστὸς λόχος.  
 12 ὁ τοῦ λοχᾶγοῦ<sup>4</sup> ἵππος ἦν ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ. 13 οἱ τῶν  
 στρατηγῶν<sup>4</sup> φίλοι πολλοὶ ἦσαν. 14 λέγει ὁ στρα-  
 τηγὸς ποῦ ἐστὶν ὁ ἵππος.<sup>1</sup> 15 καὶ Σιλᾶνός ἔχει  
 φίλους ἄλλους. 16 ποῦ ἦσαν οἱ ἄλλοι φίλοι οἱ τῶν  
 στρατηγῶν ;

13 The captain says that there were many horses in the plain.  
 2 What is the general saying to the companies ? 3 Where  
 was the captain's<sup>4</sup> faithful friend ? 4 The companies

14 <sup>1</sup> For the accent of τίς and the changes in accent resulting from ἐστὶ and εἰσι refer to 12 and see 15 a, 19 d, 20 d, 21 a. The constructions are all familiar.

<sup>2</sup> λέγει *tells*.

<sup>3</sup> λοχᾶγῳ : the dative denotes the possessor, *the captain had* 524 a.

<sup>4</sup> λοχᾶγοῦ, στρατηγῶν : we may

write the Greek for *the captain's horse* ὁ τοῦ λοχᾶγοῦ ἵππος, ὁ ἵππος ὁ τοῦ λοχᾶγοῦ, and sometimes ὁ ἵππος τοῦ λοχᾶγοῦ. In English the article seems to do duty twice, with *captain's* and with *horse*, that is *the horse of the captain*. In Greek both ὁ and τοῦ must be expressed. Consult 552 a, b.



were faithful to their<sup>5</sup> captains. 5 The other company has arms and horses.

<sup>5</sup> Use the article for the possessive.

## II THE O-DECLENSION. Ω-VERBS

### THE PRESENT INDICATIVE AND INFINITIVE ACTIVE

#### 25 Nouns and Adjectives

(τὸ) <sup>1</sup> <i>the</i>	μακρο- <i>long</i>	πλοιο- <i>boat</i>	(ὁ) <i>the</i>	μικρο- <i>small</i>	οικο- <i>house</i>
τὸ	μακρὸν	πλοῖον	ὁ	μικρὸς	οἶκος
τοῦ	μακροῦ	πλοίου	τοῦ	μικροῦ	οἴκου
τῷ	μακρῷ	πλοίῳ	τῷ	μικρῷ	οἴκῳ
τὸ	μακρὸν	πλοῖον	τὸν	μικρὸν	οἶκον
ῶ	μακρὸν	πλοῖον	ῶ	μικρὲ	οἴκε
τὰ	μακρά	πλοῖα	οἱ	μικροὶ	οἴκοι
τῶν	μακρῶν	πλοίων	τῶν	μικρῶν	οἴκων
τοῖς	μακροῖς	πλοίοις	τοῖς	μικροῖς	οἴκοις
τὰ	μακρά	πλοῖα	τοὺς	μικροὺς	οἴκους

26 Examine and learn δῶρον in 62. Review and learn 63 a, b, c. There is nothing new but the accent. Learn 13 and 14 and observe and fix firmly in mind that in words like δῶρον and οἶκος, 12 requires a change in the form of the accent in the cases that have a long ultima.

27 Verbs. Read 242, 243, 246, 248 and a, 251, 255, 256, 257. Notice carefully the terms *verb-stem* and *tense-stem*. Learn

<sup>1</sup> As the order of declension will always be the same, the signs for the stem, case, and number from now on will be omitted. So also with verbs, number and person, after this lesson.

the present indicative and infinitive active of **παύω** in 252. Omit the dual in all words, simply reading the forms. In writing out the inflections for practice always write the *tense-stem* at the top of your work.

8

TENSE-STEM MEANING . .		ἐχ ο : ε - <i>have</i>	κελευ ο : ε - <i>urge</i>	ἀγο : ε - <i>drive</i>	λεγ ο : ε - <i>say</i>
INDICATIVE	S.	1 ἔχω	κελεύω	ἄγω	λέγω
		2 ἔχεις	κελεύεις	ἄγεις	λέγεις
		3 ἔχει	κελεύει	ἄγει	λέγει
	P.	1 ἔχο-μεν	κελεύο-μεν	ἄγο-μεν	λέγο-μεν
		2 ἔχε-τε	κελεύε-τε	ἄγε-τε	λέγε-τε
		3 ἔχουσι	κελεύουσι	ἄγουσι	λέγουσι
INFINITIVE		ἔχειν	κελεύειν	ἄγειν	λέγειν

- 9 **Endings.** Examine the active primary personal endings in 263 and observe in 263 a how the formative vowel ο:ε combines with them in inflection. The infinitive has -ειν for -ε-εν by 274.

## VOCABULARY AND EXERCISES

Ο βίος *life. bio-graphy*

δῶρον *gift. Theo-dore θεός 2/*

οἶκος *house, home, dwelling. Latin vicus; ooo-nomy*

πλοῖον *boat, transport*

φόβος *fear, fright. hydro-phobia*

χωρίον *spot, place; stronghold; χώρα 72*

δῆλος *clear, evident*

ἵππ-ικός *belonging to a horse; τὸ ἵππικόν the cavalry*

μακρός *long. macron*

ἄγω *drive, lead, bring, carry;*

λοχᾶγός 2/. Latin *ago; pedagogue 232*

βουλεύω *plan*

ἔχω *have, hold, keep, get*

κελεύω, A and inf. clause, *urge, direct, bid, command, order*

λέγω, 3τι clause, *say, tell, relate*

παύω *bring to an end, stop. pause*

μή adv. *negative willed or imagined, not<sup>1</sup>*

οὐ adv. *negative of fact, not*

<b>ποῖος</b> interrog. pron. of <i>what sort</i> ?	<b>ἐξ</b> before vowels, <b>ἐκ</b> before consonants, prep. G <i>out of</i> . Latin <i>ex</i>
<i>what kind of</i> ?	
<b>εἰς</b> prep. A <i>into</i> ; equivalent to Latin <i>in</i> with accusative	with ablative; <b>ex-odus</b> ὁδός <b>ἐξ</b>

3/ Οἱ λοχαγοὶ ἄγουσι τοὺς λόχους ἐκ<sup>1</sup> τοῦ χωρίου. 2 τί οὐχ οἱ στρατηγοὶ ἄγουσι τὸ ἱππικόν;<sup>2</sup> 3 τίς ἄγει τοὺς ἵππους εἰς τὸ χωρίον; 4 Ἀριαῖος κελεύει τὸν πιστὸν λοχαγὸν μὴ λέγειν<sup>3</sup> τοῖς λόχοις ὅτι τὰ ὄπλα ἐστὶν<sup>4</sup> ἐν τῷ οἴκῳ. 5 ἔχουσι δῶρα πολλὰ ἄγειν εἰς τοὺς οἴκους. 6 οὐ βουλεύομεν ἄγειν τοὺς ἵππους ἐκ τοῦ χωρίου. 7 τί ἄγετε λόχους πολλοὺς ἐκ τῶν χωρίων; 8 οἱ λοχαγοὶ λέγουσι ὅτι ἄλλοι εἰσὶν ἐν τοῖς οἴκοις. 9 ποῦ κελεύεις Σιλᾶνὸν ἔχειν τὰ ὄπλα; ἐν τῷ οἴκῳ τῷ Ἀριαίου τὰ ὄπλα ἔχειν Σιλᾶνὸν κελεύω. 10 οἱ στρατηγοὶ βουλεύουσι μὴ ἔχειν τοὺς τῶν λοχαγῶν φίλους ἐν τῷ οἴκῳ. 11 πολλοὶ ἦσαν ἵπποι ἐν τῷ χωρίῳ; οὐ πολλοὶ ἦσαν. 12 ὁ τοῦ ἵππου βίος οὐκ ἔστι μακρός. 13 ὁ τῶν ἵππων φόβος δῆλός ἐστιν. 14 ἐν ποίοις πλοίοις βουλεύουσιν οἱ στρατηγοὶ ἄγειν τὸ ἱππικόν; ἐν μακροῖς πλοίοις. 15 ποῖον δῶρον βουλεύετε ἄγειν τοῖς<sup>5</sup> φίλοις; ἱππικὰ ὄπλα ἄγειν βουλεύομεν τοῖς<sup>5</sup> φίλοις. 16 δῆλόν ἐστιν ὅτι οἱ ἵπποι οὐκ ἔχουσι φόβον τῶν πλοίων. 17 οἱ στρατηγοὶ κελεύουσι τοὺς λοχαγούς παύειν τὸν τῶν ἵππων φόβον.

32 We are telling<sup>6</sup> the general not<sup>7</sup> to bring the cavalry into the fort. 2 We are not afraid<sup>8</sup> of the horses. 3 What sort of boats are you planning to bring? 4 We have many implements in the house. 5 The companies were in the fort in the plain.

13 <sup>1</sup> For accents of the enclitics and the use of the proclitics in this exercise constantly compare with 12 and see 17 a, b, c, 19 d, 20 d, c, 21 b.

<sup>2</sup> ἵππικόν: adjective without noun, cavalry force 543.

<sup>3</sup> λέγειν to tell. Attack the constructions fearlessly. They are all familiar.

<sup>4</sup> ἔστιν 495, 496.

<sup>5</sup> The first τοῖς is for your, the second for our 551 d.

<sup>6</sup> Use the proper form of κελεύω.

<sup>7</sup> Notice that the negative with the infinitives in 3/ is μή. Use it so until you have some reason given for using οὐ. Read 496, 504.

<sup>8</sup> Compare 3/, 16.

### III THE O-DECLENSION. Ω-VERBS

#### THE FUTURE INDICATIVE AND INFINITIVE ACTIVE

14 Nouns and Adjectives. Study and review 62 a, b, c, 63 a, b, c, and 11-14.

There is nothing new except the vocative of θεός and the moving of the accent from antepenult to penult and back. The rule that the accent of nouns and adjectives remains on the same syllable as in the nominative singular if possible, holds. But by 12 the long ultima draws the accent forward to the penult. When the ultima again becomes short the accent goes back to its original syllable. This tendency of the accent to go back gives it the name *recessive accent*.

a Note that in Greek the quantity of the *ultima* may affect the position and the form of the accent, though it does not *determine* its position in the first form of the noun, the nominative; while in Latin the *penult* *determines* the position of the accent. *Sérmō* becomes *sermōnis* as the penult is long, but *sermōnibus* as the penult is short. *ἄνθρωπος* becomes *ἀνθρώπου* as the ultima is long, but *ἄνθρωπον* when the ultima becomes short again. *δάρον* becomes *δώρον* as the

ultima is long, but δῶρα when the ultima becomes short again. In φίλος, φίλον the quantity of the ultima affects neither the position nor the form of the accent.

35

(δ) <i>the</i>	φιλο- <i>friendly</i>	βαρβαρο- <i>foreigner</i>	(τδ) <i>the</i>	ἄλλο- <i>other</i>	δωρο- <i>gift</i>
ὁ	φίλιος	βάρβαρος	τὸ	ἄλλο	δῶρον
τοῦ	φιλίου	βαρβάρου	τοῦ	ἄλλου	δώρου
τῷ	φιλίῳ	βαρβάρῳ	τῷ	ἄλλῳ	δώρῳ
τὸν	φίλιον	βάρβαρον	τὸ	ἄλλο	δῶρον
ῶ	φίλιε	βάρβαρε	ῶ	ἄλλο	δῶρον
οἱ	φίλιοι	βάρβαροι	τὰ	ἄλλα	δῶρα
τῶν	φιλίων	βαρβάρων	τῶν	ἄλλων	δώρων
τοῖς	φιλίοις	βαρβάροις	τοῖς	ἄλλοις	δώροις
τούς	φιλίους	βαρβάρους	τὰ	ἄλλα	δῶρα

36 Verbs. Learn the future indicative and infinitive active of παύω in 252. For the inflection and *tense-stem* παυσο:ε see 277, 278.

37 A  $\pi$ -mute  $\left. \begin{matrix} \pi \\ \beta \\ \phi \end{matrix} \right\} + \sigma = \psi$ , a  $\kappa$ -mute  $\left. \begin{matrix} \kappa \\ \gamma \\ \chi \end{matrix} \right\} + \sigma = \xi$ ,

a  $\tau$ -mute  $\left. \begin{matrix} \tau \\ \delta \\ \theta \end{matrix} \right\} + \sigma = \sigma$ . Consult 38 b, 45 a, b.

Compare in Latin the perfects *scripsī* for *scrib-sī* write, *dixī* for *dic-sī* say, *risī* for *rid-sī* laugh, *sēnsī* for *sent-sī* feel.

So in adding the *tense-suffix* -σο:ε to the verb-stems we get the *tense-stems* πεμψο:ε = πεμψο:ε, ἀγσο:ε = ἄξο:ε, πειθο:ε = πεισο:ε.

8

	ἀκουοο:ε- <i>hear</i>	πέμψο:ε- <i>send</i>	ἄξο:ε- <i>drive</i>	πείσο:ε- <i>persuade</i>
INDICATIVE	ἀκούσω ἀκούσεις ἀκούσει	πέμψω πέμψεις πέμψει	ἄξω ἄξεις ἄξει	πείσω πείσεις πείσει
	ἀκούσο-μεν ἀκούσε-τε ἀκούσουσι	πέμψο-μεν πέμψε-τε πέμψουσι	ἄξο-μεν ἄξε-τε ἄξουσι	πείσο-μεν πείσε-τε πείσουσι
	INF. ἀκούειν	πέμψειν	ἄξειν	πείσειν

## VOCABULARY AND EXERCISES

- 9 **ἄνθρωπος** *man*; equivalent to Latin *homo*. **phil-anthropy** φίλος 2/  
**βάρβαρος** *not Greek, foreign, barbarian*  
**πολέμιος** *hostile, the enemy's*; equivalent to Latin *hostilis*; οἱ **πολέμοι** *the enemy*; equivalent to Latin *hostēs*; πόλεμος 50  
**φίλος** *friendly*; φίλος 2/  
**ἀθροῖω** *collect*  
**ἀκούω, ὅτι** clause or inf. clause, *hear*. **ακουστίο**  
**εἰμ**, inf. εἶναι, *am, be*  
**πείθω**, A or A and inf. clause, *win over, persuade*
- πέμπω**, A and A with prep. or A with D of person, *send*. **πομπή**  
**πιστεύω** D *trust*; πιστός 2/  
**ἀπό** prep. G *off, away from, from*; Latin *ab* with ablative. **apo-stle**  
**πρός** prep. *face to face, confronting, opposite*  
 G *from, by, in the sight of, before*; πρὸς θεῶν *before the gods*  
 D *facing, near, beside, besides*; πρὸς τοῦτοις *besides these*  
 A *before, against, to, regarding*; πρὸς ταῦτα *in reference to this*

- 0 Ἀκούσομεν ὅτι πολλοὶ βάρβαροί εἰσιν ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ.  
 2 ὁ στρατηγὸς πέμψει τοὺς ἀνθρώπους ἀπὸ τοῦ οἴκου.<sup>1</sup>  
 3 πείσουσι<sup>2</sup> πολλοὺς εἶναι φίλους τοῖς βαρβάροις.  
 4 πείσω<sup>2</sup> τὸν λοχαγὸν μὴ πέμπειν δῶρα τοῖς βαρβά-

ροισ.<sup>3</sup> 5 πείσομεν τὸν στρατηγὸν ἄγειν τὸν πιστὸν ἄνθρωπον πρὸς Κλέαρχον. 6 τί οὐ πιστεύσει ὁ Κλέαρχος τοῖς φίλοις βαρβάροις; 7 ἀθροίσομεν πιστοὺς ἀνθρώπους πολλοὺς ἐκ τῶν οἰκῶν. 8 τί ἄλλο χωρίον βουλευέτε ἔχειν; 9 ἀκούω ὅτι ὁ στρατηγὸς πέμψει ἀνθρώπους πρὸς τοὺς πολεμίους. 10 ἀκούω τὸν στρατηγὸν πέμψειν ἀνθρώπους πρὸς τοὺς πολεμίους. 11 οὐκ ἄξουσι<sup>4</sup> τὰ ὄπλα ἐκ τοῦ χωρίου. 12 τί κελεύεις<sup>2</sup> Κλέαρχον μὴ ἀθροίζειν τοὺς ἵππους; 13 ποῖον δῶρον ἔχετε πέμπειν εἰς Δελφοὺς τῷ θεῷ,<sup>5</sup> 14 βουλευόμεν πολλὰ τοῖς φίλοις.<sup>6</sup> 15 οὐ πιστεύσεις τῷ λοχαγῷ ἀθροίζειν τὸ ἵππικόν;

- 4/ We shall persuade the captain<sup>7</sup> to trust the faithful man.<sup>8</sup>  
 2 We hear that<sup>9</sup> they are bringing the cavalry. 3 The oracle<sup>10</sup> of Phoibos<sup>11</sup> was at<sup>12</sup> Delphoi. 4 They will tell the men not to send horses. 5 We shall send the companies away from the house.

42 <sup>1</sup> οἶκον: examples in 17 and 3/ show that the genitive in addition to its use like the Latin genitive has also ablative uses, as a *from* case 505.

<sup>2</sup> πείσονται: notice that *πείθω* like *κελεύω* takes the accusative not the dative.

<sup>3</sup> βαρβάροις: with most verbs of motion the accusative and a preposition is the regular construction, but *πέμπω* frequently has the dative.

<sup>4</sup> ἄξουσι: what shows that *ἄξουσι* is future?

<sup>5</sup> τῷ θεῷ *for the god*. The cele-

brated oracle of Apollo was at Delphoi, in Phokis. The temple precinct was situated on a rocky shelf on the slope of Mt. Parnassos.

<sup>6</sup> φίλοις *many things for our friends*: a *for* dative as *θεῷ* above. Consult 523.

<sup>7</sup> Use the accusative.

<sup>8</sup> Use the dative.

<sup>9</sup> Write this clause in two ways; compare numbers 9 and 10.

<sup>10</sup> τὸ μαντεῖον *the oracle*.

<sup>11</sup> Φοῖβος *gleaming* was a common designation of Apollo.

<sup>12</sup> ἐν with the dative.

## IV Ω-VERBS

## THE IMPERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE

3 **Endings.** Learn the imperfect indicative active of **παύω** in 252 and the active *secondary* endings in 263.

4 **Augment.** Learn 264, 265 a, b, 268 and a. Study the examples. Though beginning with a vowel **ἔχω** takes the *syllabic* augment : **ἔ-εχον** = **εἶχον** 267.

5 **Meaning.** Learn 459. The present stem denotes *action going on* at any time. The imperfect belongs to the present system and uses the *tense-stem* of that system. The *time* of the imperfect is generally past.

6	ἀγο:ε- drive	ἀγο:ε- lead	πέμπο:ε- send	ἔχο:ε- have
	ῆγο-ν ῆγε-ς ῆγε	ἀπ-ῆγο-ν ἀπ-ῆγε-ς ἀπ-ῆγε	ἀπ-έ-πέμπο-ν ἀπ-έ-πέμπε-ς ἀπ-έ-πέμπε	εἶχο-ν εἶχε-ς εἶχε
	ῆγο-μεν ῆγε-τε ῆγο-ν	ἀπ-ῆγο-μεν ἀπ-ῆγε-τε ἀπ-ῆγο-ν	ἀπ-ε-πέμπο-μεν ἀπ-ε-πέμπε-τε ἀπ-έ-πέμπο-ν	εἶχο-μεν εἶχε-τε εἶχο-ν

7 **Accent.** The accent of verbs is recessive 249, 34; it goes back to the antepenult, if there is one, unless that is forbidden by 12.

Observe that when the accent was on the antepenult an additional syllable at the end draws the accent forward one syllable; so also the lengthening of a short ultima, as in nouns. This drawing of the accent from the antepenult to the new antepenult is justified by 11. The circumflex in



εἶχον and ἀπ-ῆγον is justified by 13; the acute in ἤγομεν by 11; the place of the accent in ἀπ-ῆγον by 268 a.

48 A *v* movable is allowed in ἔπαυε(ν), ἦγε(ν), and like forms, as also in ἐστί(ν), by 41. For ἀπ-ῆγον, ἀπ-έπεμπον see *Elision* 32, 33.

49 Words that cannot begin a clause are called *postpositive*. In this book postpositive words are marked with an asterisk as \* γάρ. See 672 c.

#### VOCABULARY AND EXERCISES

- 50 πόλεμος war; πολέμιος 39. polemic ποταμός river. hippo-potamus ἵππος  
2/  
αἴτιος G causing, to blame for, responsible  
ῥᾶδιος easy  
ἀπ-άγω lead off or back, carry away  
συν-άγω bring together, collect  
ἐπι-βουλεύω D plan against, plot against  
ἀπο-πέμπω send off or back, remit  
ἔξω adv. outside; G outside of, without. exōtis  
ποτ interrog. adv. *whither?* *where* (to)? *where?*  
αὐτόν αὐτό pron. *him, it*; pl. *them*  
ἐπί prep. on. epi-thet, epi-gram, epi-stle  
G on; ἐπὶ τοῦ θρόνου on the throne  
D on, at, near; ἐπὶ τῷ ποταμῷ at the river  
A to, on, against; ἐπὶ τὰς Ἀθήνας to-or against Athens  
\* γάρ conj. for, because  
καὶ . . . καὶ conj. both . . . and

5/ Οἱ Ἀριαῖον φίλοι τὸν πόλεμον ἔπαυον. 2 ἐν τῷ οἴκῳ τῷ τοῦ στρατηγοῦ ἦν<sup>1</sup> ὅπλα πολλὰ αὐτοῦ. 3 οἱ θεοὶ πέμπουσι τοῖς<sup>2</sup> ἀνθρώποις πολλὰ δῶρα. 4 συν-ῆγον τοὺς πιστοὺς φίλους εἰς τὸν οἶκον. 5 τῶν φιλιῶν ἀνθρώπων<sup>3</sup> ἠκούομεν πολλὰ.<sup>4</sup> 6 ποῦ ἤκουες τὰ πλοῖα εἶναι;<sup>5</sup> ἐπὶ τῷ ποταμῷ ἐστιν. 7 δῆλον ἦν ὅτι τὸ μακρὸν πλοῖον ἦν αἴτιον φόβου τοῖς ἵπποις. 8 οἱ στρατηγοὶ ἐκέλευον αὐτὸν ἄγειν πιστοὺς ἀνθρώπους· οἱ γὰρ πολέμοι ἦσαν πολλοί. 9 συν-άγουσι τοὺς

φίλους εἰς τὸ χωρίον· ἀκούουσι γὰρ ὅτι οἱ βάρβαροι πολέμιοι εἰσιν. ἀκούουσι γὰρ τοὺς βαρβάρους πολεμίους εἶναι. 10 τί ἔπεμπες αὐτὸν πρὸς τὸν λοχᾶγόν; ἐπ-εβούλευε<sup>6</sup> γὰρ τοῖς ἄλλοις. 11 ποῖ ἐπέμπετε τοὺς ἵππους; τῷ στρατηγῷ εἰς τὸ χωρίον ἐπέμπομεν αὐτούς. 12 ἔπεμπον τὸν ἄνθρωπον πρὸς Κλέαρχον εἶναι φίλον πιστὸν αὐτῷ. 13 Κλέαρχος ἔχει πολλοὺς ἄλλους φίλους πιστοὺς αὐτῷ. 14 ἠκούομεν ὅτι οἱ πολέμιοι συν-άγουσι<sup>7</sup> πολλοὺς καὶ ἀνθρώπους καὶ ἵππους. 15 ποῦ ἐπ-εβούλευον οἱ λοχᾶγοὶ τοῖς στρατηγοῖς; ἐν τῷ οἴκῳ τῷ Ἀριαίου τοῦ βαρβάρου πολλοὶ λοχᾶγοὶ ἐπ-εβούλευον τοῖς στρατηγοῖς. 16 οὐ ρᾶδιδόν ἐστι συν-άγειν τοὺς ἀνθρώπους ἔξω τοῦ οἴκου. 17 οὐκ ἐβουλεύομεν ἀπο-πέμπειν τοὺς βαρβάρους· καὶ γὰρ<sup>8</sup> οὐκ αἵτιοι ἦσαν τοῦ πολέμου. 18 οἱ ἄλλοι, καὶ Κλέαρχος καὶ Χειρίσοφος, φίλοι τοῖς στρατηγοῖς ἦσαν καὶ ἦγον τοὺς λόχους πρὸς τοὺς πολεμίους. 19 ἐφ' ἵππου<sup>9</sup> Κλέαρχος ἀπ-ῆγε τὸ ἵππικὸν ἐπὶ τὸν ποταμόν. 20 ἦγον τοὺς ἵππους ἀπὸ τοῦ οἴκου εἰς τὸ πεδῖον.

52 They were bringing into the fort the cavalry that-was-outside.<sup>10</sup> 2 The captains of the barbarians were mounted.<sup>11</sup>

53 <sup>1</sup> ἦν were. Learn 496.

<sup>2</sup> τοῖς ἀνθρώποις to men, to mankind. English omits the article.

<sup>3</sup> ἀνθρώπων: a from genitive.

<sup>4</sup> πολλά many things, a common rendering of the neuter plural.

<sup>5</sup> εἶναι were. Do not say to be.

<sup>6</sup> ἐπ-: for ἐπὶ by elision.

<sup>7</sup> συν-άγουσι were collecting or are collecting, according to the

point of view. The time is present to ἠκούομεν.

<sup>8</sup> καὶ γάρ for in fact or simply for.

<sup>9</sup> ἐφ' ἵππου: elision gives ἐπ' ἵππου, then π becomes φ, 42 and α. Pronounce ep-híp.

<sup>10</sup> Use the article with ἔξω.

<sup>11</sup> For more than one use the plural ἐφ' ἵππων.

- 3 It was not easy to hear what the general was saying.  
 4 They were not to blame for the panic.<sup>12</sup> 5 Why were you sending him to the captain ?

<sup>12</sup> φόβος in the genitive.

## V Ω-VERBS

### THE SIGMATIC AORIST AND THE THEMATIC AORIST, INDICATIVE AND INFINITIVE ACTIVE

- 54 Learn the aorist indicative and infinitive active in 252 and 348. Review augment 44.

a For the tense-stems and inflection see for παύσα- 279, 280, 281, 285 ; for λιπο:- 347, 349.

- 55 Review 37 and apply it to the tense-suffix -σα.

56

PRESENT	FUTURE	AORIST	MEANING
ἀκούω	ἀκούσω	ἤκουσα	hear
ἐπι-βουλεύω	ἐπι-βουλεύσω	ἐπ-εβούλευσα	plot against
πέμπω	πέμψω	ἔπεμψα	send
ἀπο-πέμπω	ἀπο-πέμψω	ἀπ-έπεμψα	send off
λείπω	λείψω	ἔλιπο-ν	leave
ἄρχω	ἄρξω	ἤρξα	begin
ἔχω	ἔξω	ἔσχο-ν	have, get
πείθω	πείσω	ἔπεισα	persuade
ἀθροίζω	ἀθροίσω	ἠθροισα	collect

a Pronounce these words aloud again and again, reading across the page. ἔξω and ἔσχο-ν are peculiar but the inflection is regular. The aorist infinitive is σχεῖν.

57

	σα-ΑORIST		ο:ε-ΑORIST	IMPERFECT
	ἀρξα- <i>begin</i>	πέμψα- <i>send (away)</i>	λιπο:ε- <i>leave</i>	λείπο:ε- <i>leave</i>
INDICATIVE	ἤρξα	ἀπ-έ-πεμψα	ἔ-λιπο-ν	ἔ-λείπο-ν
	ἤρξα-ς	ἀπ-έ-πεμψα-ς	ἔ-λιπε-ς	ἔ-λείπε-ς
	ἤρξε	ἀπ-έ-πεμψε	ἔ-λιπε	ἔ-λείπε
	ἤρξα-μεν	ἀπ-ε-πέμψα-μεν	ἔ-λιπο-μεν	ἔ-λείπο-μεν
	ἤρξα-τε	ἀπ-ε-πέμψα-τε	ἔ-λιπε-τε	ἔ-λείπε-τε
	ἤρξα-ν	ἀπ-έ-πεμψα-ν	ἔ-λιπο-ν	ἔ-λείπο-ν
INF.	ἄρξαι	ἀπο-πέμψαι	λιπεῖν	λείπειν

58 **Accent.** a Observe that the accent is recessive and that by 11 ἤρξα with the addition of -μεν to the *tense-stem* becomes ἤρξαμεν, and ἔπεμψα and ἔλιπον with the same addition to the *tense-stem* become ἐπέμψαμεν and ἐλίπομεν. Compare 47.

b The σα-aorist infinitive always accents the penult: πέμψαι, ἀκοῦσαι, ἀθροῖσαι.

c The ο:ε-aorist infinitive always accents the ultima with the circumflex: λιπεῖν, λαβεῖν, ἐλθεῖν.

59 **Inflection.** a The σα-aorist is similar to the imperfect, but omits the personal ending -ν in the first singular and changes the α of -σα to ε in the third singular.

b The thematic aorist is like the imperfect.

30 **Meaning.** The aorist stems denote the mere act at any time. The time of the aorist indicative, the

only aorist form that takes the augment,<sup>1</sup> is past. See 462, 463.

## TIME OF THE INFINITIVE

6/ As in Latin, after verbs of *saying* and *thinking*, 577 a, b, each tense of the infinitive represents the *same* tense of a finite mode. The negative οὐ is usually unchanged :

Κλέαρχος	οὐ	πέμπει	}	τὰ πλοῖα
		ἔπεμπε		
οὐκ		πέμψει	}	
		ἔπεμψε		
Klearchos		is not sending	}	the boats.
		was not sending		
		will not send		
		did not send		
ἀκούομεν ἠκούσαμεν οὐκ ἔφασαν	Κλέαρχον οὐ	πέμπειν	}	τὰ πλοῖα
		πέμψειν		
		πέμψαι		
We hear	that Klearchos	is not sending	}	the boats.
		was not sending		
		will not send		
		did not send		
We heard They said	that Klearchos	was not sending	}	the boats.
		would not send		
		did not send		

a Notice that the present infinitive πέμπειν represents both present and imperfect indicative.

<sup>1</sup> Be ever on guard against using the augment in any except indicative forms. **Augment** is the sign of past time and is used in the **indicative only**, imperfect, aorist, and pluperfect.

- 2 When the **subject** of the infinitive is the same as that of the leading verb, it is regularly omitted and a modifier of the subject agrees with the subject of the leading verb 571 :

ἄξω τοὺς ἵππους αἰτιὸς εἰμι τούτου ἤκουσα ὅτι Ἄγης ἄξει	{	Κλέαρχος ἔφη	{	ἄξειν τοὺς ἵππους αἰτιὸς εἶναι τούτου ἀκούσαι ὅτι Ἄγης ἄξει
--	---	-----------------	---	--

<i>I will bring the horses.</i>	{		{	<i>he would bring the horses.</i>
<i>I am to blame for this.</i>	{	<i>Klearchos</i>	{	<i>he was to blame for that.</i>
<i>I heard that Agis would lead.</i>	{	<i>said that</i>	{	<i>he (had) heard that Agis would lead.</i>

a But in Latin we must say *Negāvit se itūrum esse* *he said that he would not go.*

- 3 Other common uses of the infinitive are similar to our English use, though we frequently indicate no difference in tense. The negative is μή 563, 564.

The present infinitive denotes continuance or repetition at *any* time.

The aorist infinitive denotes occurrence or attainment at *any* time.

{ κελεύουσι κελεύσουσι ἐκέλευσαν }	{	Κλέαρχον μὴ	{	πέμπειν πέμψαι }	{ τὰ πλοῖα }
{ <i>They urge</i> <i>They will urge</i> <i>They urged</i> }	{	<i>Klearchos</i> <i>not</i>	{	{ <i>to send</i> <i>to keep sending</i> <i>to send</i> }	{ <i>the</i> <i>boats.</i> }

βουλεύω ἐβούλευον βουλεύσω ἐβούλευσα	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \\ \\ \\ \end{array} \right\}$	ἐλθεῖν	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} I \text{ am planning} \\ I \text{ was planning} \\ I \text{ shall plan} \\ I \text{ planned} \end{array} \right\}$	<i>to go.</i>
---	---	--------	--	---------------

α Ἐβούλετο φίλος εἶναι *he was planning to be friendly*  
 543 a (1). Compare 62.

64 Notice too in ἀξεί 62 that in a ὅτι clause the tense of the verb is the same as in the original thought, as also in the following:

ἔλεξαν ὅτι Κλέαρχος αἰτιός ἐστιν *they said that Klearchos was to blame.*

ἤκουσαν Κλεάρχου ὅτι ἄξει τοὺς ἵππους *they heard from Klearchos that he would bring the horses.*

65 So also in question-clauses:

τί ἔχεις; ποῦ ἄξεις;	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \\ \end{array} \right\}$	ἠρώτησαν Κλέαρχον	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} τί ἔχει \\ ποῦ ἄξει \end{array} \right\}$
What have you? Where shall you lead?	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \\ \\ \end{array} \right\}$	They asked Klearchos	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{what he had.} \\ \text{where he should lead.} \end{array} \right\}$

#### VOCABULARY AND EXERCISES

- 66 ἀνδράποδον *enslaved captive, slave* ἔφη ἔφασαν, inf. clause, *he said, they said*  
 πρόβατον, in plural, *sheep*  
 στρατό-πεδον *camp*; στρατ-ηγός 2/ *ἐφυγον φυγεῖν*, aorist of φεύγω, *flee, run away*. Latin *fugitō*  
 ἀγαθός *good, brave*. Agatha  
 δύο *two* ἦλθον ἔλθειν, aorist, *come, go*  
 ἀρχω, inf. clause or G, *am first, begin; rule, lead, command*. *arōhon, 30*  
*arōhalo. arōh-angel* *λείπω leave*. eo-lipse *ἐκ-λείπω, 30*  
 ἄρχον λαβεῖν, aorist of λαμβάνω. *διά prep. through. dia-meter μέ-τρον measure*  
*take, get*

G <i>through, during</i> ; equivalent to Latin <i>per</i> ; διὰ βίον <i>through life</i>	παρά prep. <i>beside. par-allel, para-graph, para-digm</i>
A <i>through, on account of</i> ; equivalent to Latin <i>propter</i> ; διὰ πολλά <i>for many reasons</i>	G <i>from beside, from</i> ; τὰ παρὰ Φοίβου ἀγαθὰ <i>blessings from Phoëbos</i>
μετά prep. <i>among. meth-od μεθ' 32, 42, ὁδὸς way</i>	D <i>beside, with</i> ; παρὰ τῷ φίλῳ <i>at my friend's house</i>
G <i>with, in company with</i> ; μετ' αὐτοῦ <i>with him</i>	A <i>to the side of, to, along by</i> ; παρὰ τοὺς φίλους <i>to (join) our friends</i>
A <i>after, next to, place or time</i> ; μετὰ δεῖπνον <i>after dinner</i>	ἀλλὰ conj. <i>but, yet; well</i> ; ἀλλὰ γὰρ <i>but really, but then</i>

7. Τί ἐλάβετε τὰ ἀνδράποδα ἐκ τοῦ στρατοπέδου; 2 οἱ πολέμοι ἔφυγον διὰ τοῦ πεδίου παρὰ<sup>1</sup> τὸν ποταμόν. 3 ἤθροισαν τοὺς ἵππους καὶ τὰ ἀνδράποδα εἰς τὸ στρατόπεδον. 4 ἐπέισαμεν αὐτὸν μὴ πιστεῦσαι τῷ ἀνδραπόδῳ. 5 ἄξουσιν τοὺς ἵππους παρὰ τὸν ποταμόν καὶ ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ ἔξουσιν αὐτούς. 6 ἔπεμψε δύο λόχους λαβεῖν τὸ στρατόπεδον τῶν πολεμίων. 7 ἦλθομεν ἐκ τοῦ στρατοπέδου εἰς τὸ χωρίον καὶ ὁ Κλέαρχος ἦγεν. 8 μετὰ τὸν πόλεμον οἱ πολέμοι ἐβούλευσαν ἄλλα.<sup>2</sup> 9 ἠκούσαμεν πρόβατα εἶναι<sup>3</sup> πολλὰ ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ. 10 κελεύσομεν τοὺς ἀγαθοὺς καὶ πιστοὺς λοχαγούς ἐλθεῖν εἰς τὸ στρατόπεδον· πιστεύομεν γὰρ αὐτοῖς. 11 ποῖ ἐπέμψατε τοὺς ἵππους τοὺς Κλεάρχου; οὐκ ἐπέμψαμεν αὐτούς· ἀλλὰ ἔφυγον ἐκ τοῦ στρατοπέδου καὶ εἰς τὸ πεδῖον ἦλθον. 12 πότε ἔσχε<sup>4</sup> τὰ δῶρα; ἐν τῷ πολέμῳ πιστὸς ἦν φίλος Προξένῳ καὶ Πρόξενος ἔπεμψεν αὐτά. 13 δύο λόχοι βαρβάρων ἦλθον παρὰ τὸν ποταμόν καὶ ἔλαβον τὸ χωρίον παρὰ τοῦ λοχαγοῦ. 14 οἱ λοχαγοὶ οὐκ ἔφασαν<sup>5</sup> τοὺς ἄλλους ἐπιβουλεύσαι τοῖς στρατη-



γούς. 15 οἱ βάρβαροι ἤρξαν λιπεῖν τὸ στρατόπεδον καὶ φυγεῖν διὰ τοῦ πεδίου ἐπὶ τὸν ποταμόν.

- 68 When did the cavalry begin to go out of the camp ?  
 2 They went through the camp and fled along the river.  
 3 They directed the men to get two companies of-cavalry.  
 4 He said<sup>6</sup> that the man would<sup>7</sup> not send<sup>7</sup> the arms.  
 5 They said that the barbarians had-plotted<sup>8</sup> against the friendly generals.

- 69 <sup>1</sup> *παρά* along by.

<sup>2</sup> *ἄλλα* other things, made other plans.

<sup>3</sup> *εἶναι* that there were.

<sup>4</sup> *πότε ἔσχε* when did he get ?

<sup>5</sup> *οὐκ ἔφασαν . . . ἐπι-βουλεύσαι* said that the others did not plot against. For the meaning of *οὐκ ἔφασαν* compare Latin *negāvērunt* and see 62 a. When *ἔφη* and *ἔφασαν* introduce a negative clause,

the negative precedes the verb of saying. Here the original thought was *οὐκ ἐπ-εβούλευσαν* they did not plot. Compare *οὐκ ἔφασαν* and the infinitives in 61. In what tense is *ἐπι-βουλεύσαι* ?

<sup>6</sup> Use the proper form of *λέγω* with *ὅτι*.

<sup>7</sup> Use the future of *πέμπω*.

<sup>8</sup> Use the aorist of *ἐπι-βουλεύω*, and *ἔφασαν* for *they said*.

## VI THE A-DECLENSION

NOUNS IN -*ā* AND -*a* AND ADJECTIVES OF THE VOWEL DECLENSION

- 70 Complete 61 by learning the feminine. Take *δόδος* in 62. Learn 65, 66, 67 a, b, c, 68 a, 73 ; *ἄπορος* like *ἥσυχος* in 74, 75 ; *δίκαιος* in 76, 77 a, b.

Use the same rules for accent as before in 20 and 34, but remember that the genitive plural of nouns of the a-declension always has -*ων*, while that of feminine *adjectives* of the vowel declension is like the masculine.

7/

(ή) ἄπορος- γέφυρᾱ- the impassable bridge	
<p>ἡ ἄπορος γέφυρα τῆς ἀπόρου γεφύρας τῇ ἀπόρῳ γεφύρῃ τὴν ἄπορον γέφυραν</p>	<p>αἱ ἄποροι γέφυραι τῶν ἀπόρων γεφύρων ταῖς ἀπόροις γεφύραις τὰς ἀπόρους γεφύρας</p>

## VOCABULARY AND EXERCISES

- 2 ἀκρᾱ *summit, height. acro side* ἀ-πορος *without resources; im-*  
*passable; α- negative and πόρος*  
*a way. See 75, 12*  
 γέφυρα *bridge*  
 ἡμέρᾱ *day. oph-emeral ἐπί, ἐφ' 50*  
 ὁδός -οῦ<sup>1</sup> ἡ *way, road. ex-odus ἐξ* δίκαιος *right, proper; δίκη justice*  
*30, meth-od μετά 66* ἱκανός *enough, in plenty*  
 οἰκίᾱ *house, building; οἶκος 30* ὑστεραίος *later, following; next*  
 στρατιᾱ *army; στρατ-ηγός 21* πόσος *interrog. pron. how large?*  
 χώρα *place; land, country; χωρίον how much? plural how many?*  
*30*

- 3 Τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ ἡμέρᾳ<sup>1</sup> οἱ στρατηγοὶ ἦρξαν συν-άγειν  
 τὴν στρατιάν. 2 λέγουσιν ὅτι οὐχ ἱκανὰ πλοῖα ἔσχον.<sup>2</sup>  
 3 Κλονίος ἔφη ἀκοῦσαι<sup>3</sup> Κλεάρχου<sup>4</sup> ὅτι Πρόξενος  
 ἄρξει<sup>5</sup> τοῦ λόχου.<sup>6</sup> 4 ποῦ ἦν ἡ τοῦ στρατηγοῦ οἰκίᾱ;  
 παρὰ τῇ ὁδῷ τῇ εἰς τὸ πεδίον<sup>7</sup> ἦν ἡ τοῦ στρατηγοῦ  
 οἰκίᾱ. 5 ἠκούσαμεν γέφυραν μακρὰν εἶναι<sup>8</sup> ἐπὶ τοῦ  
 ποταμοῦ. 6 οἱ στρατηγοὶ ἦγον τὴν στρατιάν πολλὰς  
 ἡμέρας.<sup>9</sup> 7 ἀκούομεν ὅτι οὐκ ἔστιν πλοῖα ἐν τῷ  
 ποταμῷ ἱκανὰ ἄγειν τὴν στρατιάν. 8 ἦλθον παρὰ  
 Κλεάρχον καὶ πολλὰς ἡμέρας ἦσαν ἐν τῇ στρατιᾷ  
 αὐτοῦ. 9 πόσους καὶ ποίους ἀνθρώπους ἠκούσατε  
 τοὺς ἐν τῇ τῶν βαρβάρων χώρᾳ<sup>7</sup> εἶναι;<sup>10</sup> 10 οἱ βά-

<sup>1</sup> The genitive is denoted by -οῦ, the gender by ἡ.

βαροι ἄποροι ἦσαν ἀθροῖσαι στρατιὰν καὶ πέμψαι αὐτήν εἰς τὴν τῶν πολεμίων χώραν. 11 ἡ ὁδὸς ἣ ἐπὶ τὸν ποταμὸν<sup>7</sup> οὐκ ἄπορός ἐστιν. 12 οὐ ῥᾷδιόν ἐστι λαβεῖν τὴν ἄκρᾱν· πολλοὶ γὰρ ἐπ' αὐτῇ εἰσι βάρβαροι. 13 οὐ δίκαιόν ἐστι ἐπι-βουλευσαι τοῖς φίλοις Κλεάρχου. 14 πόσα ἀνδράποδα ἔπεμψε τὰ ὄπλα λαβεῖν ἐκ τῆς οἰκίας; 15 οὐκ αἷτιος ἦν ὁ Κλονίος τοῦ τοὺς ἵππους φυγεῖν.<sup>11</sup>

- 74 In war the captains lead their companies against the enemy.  
2 The road into the camp is impassable.<sup>12</sup> 3 It is not right to send men against the friendly foreigners. 4 It is evident that the general will not send back the slaves.

75 <sup>1</sup> ἡμέρᾳ 527 ο: dative time when.

<sup>2</sup> ἱκανά . . . ἴσχον did not get enough; the imperfect would mean did not have enough.

<sup>3</sup> ἀκοῦσαι that he had heard. The subject is the same as that of ἴφη; see 571. He said ἤκουσα I heard; consult 62.

<sup>4</sup> Κλεάρχου: a from genitive.

<sup>5</sup> ὅτι Πρόξενος ἄρξα that Proxenos would lead. The ὅτι clause retains the verb in the original tense, just as in the infinitive clause ἀκοῦσαι. Consult 64.

<sup>6</sup> τοῦ λόχου: ἄρχω takes its object in the genitive.

<sup>7</sup> τῇ εἰς τὸ πεδιον: any adverbial expression after the article belongs to the noun to which the article belongs and becomes adjectival. So here the road into the plain; and below those who are in the country of the barbarians; and the road to the river.

<sup>8</sup> εἶναι that there was.

<sup>9</sup> ἡμέρας: accusative time how long.

<sup>10</sup> εἶναι were.

<sup>11</sup> τοῦ τοὺς ἵππους φυγεῖν of the horses' running away. φυγεῖν is an infinitive with ἵππους for its subject accusative. This infinitive is like the English infinitive in -ing, a verbal noun. The article τοῦ belongs to this noun φυγεῖν and shows that it is genitive. The genitive depends on αἷτιος. The English uses a possessive instead of a subject accusative, the cause of their running away instead of them running away.

<sup>12</sup> ἀ-πορος: ἀ- or ἀν-, an inseparable called a- negative, is prefix to many forms giving a negative force as in in Latin and un in English: in-ers, in-active, im-possible, un-likely.

5 We shall tell the men not to take the horses from the camp.

## VII THE A-DECLENSION

NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES IN -η. THE RELATIVE  
PRONOUNS Ὅς, Ὅς, Ὅσος, Ὅστις

6 Review 65-68, 77 a, b. Learn 70, σοφός in 76; 213, 214, 215; 612, 613 a two lines, 614 one line.

7	(ἡ) μικρᾶ - σκηνᾶ - the small tent					
	ἡ	μικρᾶ	σκηνή	αἱ	μικραὶ	σκηναί
	τῆς	μικρᾶς	σκηνῆς	τῶν	μικρῶν	σκηνῶν
	τῇ	μικρῇ	σκηνῇ	ταῖς	μικραῖς	σκηναῖς
	τῇν	μικρᾶν	σκηνήν	τάς	μικράς	σκηνάς

'8 The conjunctive<sup>1</sup> pronoun ὅστις, neuter ὅ τι or ὅ, τι, a general relative, means *any one who, anything which, whoever, whatever*. The masculine and neuter singular forms are

N.	ὅστις	ὅ τι	D.	ὅτῳ	ὅτῳ
G.	οἷου	οἷου	A.	ὅντινα	ὅ τι

### VOCABULARY<sup>2</sup> AND EXERCISES

- '9 ἀγορᾶ -ās assembly; market place, θύρᾶ -ās door, commonly plural.  
market DOOR  
ἄμ-αξα -ης wagon: ἄμα /73, ἀγ- in κώμη -ης village  
ἄγω 30. AXLE πέλτη -ης shield, crescent-formed

<sup>1</sup> The term conjunctive includes the term relative.

<sup>2</sup> From now on the genitive of substantives and the full forms of adjectives will be indicated. Any one in doubt regarding these particulars in words already given should consult the general vocabulary.

πηγή -ης *spring, source*, commonly  
plural

σκηνή -ης *tent*; pl. *quarters*. *soona*

τρά-πεζα -ης *table with four legs*.  
*trapezium*

φυλακή -ης *guard, garrison*

μικρός -ᾶ -όν *small*. *micro-soops*

σοφός -ή -όν *skilled, wise, clever*.

*sopho-more, philo-sopher φίλος 2/*

οἷος -ᾶ -ον conj. pron. *such as*,  
*who*

ὅς ἢ ὃν conj. pron. *who, which*,  
*that*

ὅσος -η -ον conj. pron. *as much*  
*as*, pl. *as many as, who*

ὅστις ἤτις ὃ τι conj. pron. *who-*  
*ever, whatever*

\* δέ conj. *but, and, yet*

80 Ποῖα ὄπλα εἶχον ἐν τῇ οἰκίᾳ; πέλτας καὶ ἄλλα ὄπλα ἐπὶ τῶν τραπεζῶν εἶχον οἷα<sup>1</sup> λοχᾶγοὶ ἔχουσιν. 2 πόσαι σκηναὶ εἰσιν ἐν τῇ κώμῃ; πολλαὶ εἰσι σκηναί. 3 ἐν ποίᾳ χώρᾳ ἐστὶν ἡ ἀγορά; μικρὰ ἀλλ'<sup>2</sup> ἀγαθὴ ἐστὶν ἡ χώρᾳ. 4 ἔπεμψαν τὰς ἀμάξας εἰς τὴν ἀγοράν. 5 αἱ θύραι αἱ τῶν οἰκιῶν μικραὶ εἰσιν. 6 ὁ ἀνθρωπος ὃς εἶχε τοὺς ἵππους οὐκ αἵτιος ἦν· ὅστις δ'<sup>3</sup> ἔπεμψεν αὐτοὺς αἵτιός ἐστιν. 7 ἡ ὁδὸς ἧ<sup>4</sup> ἐβούλεον ἐλθεῖν ἄπορος ἦν. 8 οἱ βάρβαροι ὅσοι<sup>5</sup> ἦσαν ἐπὶ τῶν ἀκρῶν ἔφυγον εἰς τὴν κώμην ἐν ᾗ ἦν ἡ στρατιά. 9 ὅσοι<sup>5</sup> ἦσαν βάρβαροι ἐν τῇ ἀγορᾷ ἔφυγον. 10 τῇ δὲ ὑστεραίᾳ<sup>6</sup> ἦλθον πρὸς τὰς πηγὰς ποταμοῦ ἐφ' αἷς<sup>7</sup> ἦν κώμη μικρά. 11 τὰς φυλακὰς οἷας<sup>8</sup> ἔχομεν ἐν ταῖς κώμαις βουλευόμεν πέμψαι παρὰ τοὺς<sup>9</sup> φίλους. 12 ἡ κώμη εἰς ἣν ἦλθον μικρὰ ἦν. εἰς ἣν ἦλθον κώμην<sup>10</sup> μικρὰ ἦν. 13 βουλευόμεν ἐλθεῖν μετὰ τῶν ἀνθρώπων ὧν<sup>11</sup> Κλέαρχος πέμψει. 14 ὅστις βουλεύει ἐλθεῖν ἐκ τοῦ χωρίου οὐ σοφός ἐστιν. 15 ὃ τι ἤκουον ἐν τῇ τοῦ στρατηγοῦ σκηνῇ οὐκ ἔλεγον αὐτοῖς. 16 πολλοὶ ἦλθον πρὸς τὸν στρατηγὸν εἰς τὴν σκηνὴν καὶ ἔλεγον<sup>12</sup> αὐτῷ ὅσα ἤκουσαν.

- 1/ He led the army along by the river and took the enemy's<sup>13</sup> camp, from which<sup>14</sup> the barbarians had fled. 2 They said that they did not take the arms that were in the tents. 3 He told them not to leave the horses, for the road was long.<sup>15</sup> 4 On the next day they sent back the slaves into camp. 5 What else<sup>16</sup> shall I plan to send him?

2 <sup>1</sup> οἷα *such as*.

<sup>2</sup> ἀλλ': by elision for ἀλλὰ.

<sup>3</sup> δ': by elision for δέ.

<sup>4</sup> ἣ *by which*: a *by* dative.

<sup>5</sup> ὅσοι *as many as, all the barbarians that*. The Greek indicates quality (*οἷος*) and quantity or number (*ὅσος*) by relatives far more frequently than we do. Our sense for proper English must determine whether to say *such as, as much as, as many as, or simply who, that, which, or what*. ὅσοι with its antecedent is frequently translated *all the . . . that*. In number 9 the antecedent is in the relative clause; the translation is the same as in number 8. Consult 613 d.

<sup>6</sup> τῇ ἑσπερίᾳ *on the next day: dative time when*. In such expressions ἡμέρᾳ is frequently omitted. Compare 73, 1, and consult 555 b.

<sup>7</sup> ἐφ' αἷς *at which*: by elision for ἐπὶ αἷς. Compare 53, 6.

<sup>8</sup> οἷας *such garrisons as, the garrisons which*. See note 5.

<sup>9</sup> τοῖς *our*.

<sup>10</sup> κέμην: antecedent in the relative clause.

<sup>11</sup> ὧν: for οἷς: relative attracted to the case of its antecedent 613 b.

<sup>12</sup> ὄλεγον *told*. The imperfect marks the scene in the tent more vividly than would the aorist, which could properly have been used. The English does not make this distinction of vividness, which is common in lively Greek narrative. Read 466.

<sup>13</sup> τῶν πολέμων. The plural is regular, whereas English uses the singular; so also the Latin *hostēs*.

<sup>14</sup> ἐξ οὗ.

<sup>15</sup> μακρὸν γὰρ εἶναι τὴν ὁδόν. The infinitive shows that the clause is part of what he said. ἔφη could be used after γάρ.

<sup>16</sup> τί ἄλλο.

## VIII THE A-DECLENSION

MASCULINE NOUNS IN -ās AND -ης. THE POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS

- 3 Learn 71, 72 a-d. Observe that all a-declension nouns are alike in the plural.

a Learn 204 ἐμός, σός, ἡμέτερος, ὑμέτερος.

- 84 Review and carefully compare the following words. Learn the new forms. Notice their use in the exercises.

Interrogative :

τίς ; πόσος ; ποῖος ; πόθεν ; ποῦ ; ποῖ ;  
*who ? how much ? what kind of ? where (from) ? where (at) ? where (to) ?*

Relative :

ὅς ὅσος οἷος ὅθεν οὗ οἷ  
*who as much as such as (from) where (at) where (to) where*

- 85 a The ending -θεν means *from*. It occurs frequently.

b The nominative ending in -της is explained in 430 and b.

#### VOCABULARY<sup>1</sup> AND EXERCISES

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 86 νεανίας -ου ὁ <i>young man</i>        | καλός -ή -όν <i>beautiful, fair, noble.</i> |
| ὀπλίτης -ου ὁ <i>hoplite, a heavy-</i>   | <i>cali-sthenics</i>                        |
| <i>armed soldier; ὅπλον 2/</i>           | ἐ-δο-σαν <i>they gave. Latin dō,</i>        |
| πολίτης -ου ὁ <i>citizen; πόλις city</i> | <i>dare; an-to-dote</i>                     |
| 326. <i>politics</i>                     | ἔπαθεν παθεῖν, aorist of πάσχω, <i>ex-</i>  |
| στρατιώτης -ου ὁ <i>soldier; στρατιά</i> | <i>perience, undergo, suffer. am</i>        |
| 72                                       | <i>treated. pathos, sym-pathy</i>           |
|  | ὥς conj. adv. <i>as; with inf. so as to</i> |

- 87 Ποῖ ἄγει ἡ ὁδὸς ἡ διὰ τῆς κώμης ; ἄγει ἡ ὁδὸς ἐπὶ Λυδῖαν καὶ Ἰωνίαν ὅθεν ἤλθομεν. 2 ὁ νεανίας οὐ λέξει πόθεν ἔσχεν<sup>1</sup> τὸν ἵππον. 3 οἱ ὀπλίται ἔλαβον τὰ ὅπλα ἐκ τῶν οἰκιῶν οὗ<sup>2</sup> ἐλίπομεν αὐτά. 4 πόσους στρατιωτὰς πέμψετε τῷ ἐμῷ στρατηγῷ;<sup>3</sup> 5 οὐκ ἔλεξαν τοῖς λοχαγοῖς ποῖός ἐστι<sup>4</sup> στρατιώτης ὁ ὀπλίτης. 6 οἱ ὑμέτεροι στρατιῶται ἐκ τῆς κώμης ἔφυγον

<sup>1</sup> From now on the gender of the substantives will be indicated by the proper form of the article.

διὰ τοῦ πεδίου εἰς τὸ στρατόπεδον ὅθεν ἦλθον. 7 πόσους ὀπλίτας ἄξετε τῷ στρατηγῷ<sup>3</sup> εἰς τὴν κώμην; ὅσους ἔχομεν ἐν τῷ στρατοπέδῳ ἄχομεν. 8 πόση ἐστὶν ἡ σὴ χώρα καὶ πόσοι πολῖται ἐν αὐτῇ;<sup>5</sup> οὐ μικρά ἐστὶν ἡ ἐμὴ χώρα καὶ πολλοὺς ἔχομεν πολίτας. 9 Ξενίᾱς ἔλεγεν ὅτι οἱ ἡμέτεροι στρατιῶται οὐ πιστοὶ εἰσιν.<sup>6</sup> 10 ἤκουσαν πολλοὺς ἀγαθοὺς ὀπλίτας εἶναι<sup>7</sup> ἐπὶ τῆς γεφύρας ἀλλὰ τὴν ἐν τῷ χωρίῳ φυλακὴν οὐχ ἱκανὴν εἶναι. 11 ποῖα ἔπαθεν<sup>8</sup> ὁ νεανίας ἐν τῇ τῶν βαρβάρων κώμῃ; εἶχον αὐτὸν οἱ ἐν τῇ κώμῃ ἡμέρας πολλὰς καὶ ἔδοσαν αὐτῷ δῶρα καλά. 12 πότε στρατιῶτᾱς ἐλθεῖν ἠκούσατε εἰς Ἰωνίαν; οὐκ ἠκούσαμεν· οἱ γὰρ νεανῖαι ἐλέξαν ὅτι οὐκ εἰσι στρατιῶται ἐν τῇ Ἰωνίᾳ. 13 αἱ μικραὶ ἄμαξαι οἰαὶ εἰσιν ἐν τῇ ἀγορᾷ οὐχ ἱκαναὶ<sup>5</sup> ἔχειν τὰς σκηνὰς ὅσαι ἔξω τῆς κώμης εἰσίν. 14 πόθεν ἔφη Κλέαρχος τοὺς στρατιῶτᾱς σχεῖν τοὺς καλοὺς ἵππους; τοὺς πολίτας ἔφη πέμψαι αὐτοὺς ὡς δῶρα. 15 οἱ πολῖται ἔλαβον τὰ ἀνδράποδα ἐκ τῆς ἀγορᾶς οἱ ἐπέμψαμεν αὐτούς.<sup>9</sup>

- 8 We went into the village from which<sup>10</sup> the soldiers had fled. 2 How many hoplites shall you lead from the camp? 3 We have not wagons enough to carry the arms for the soldiers. 4 They did not tell the captain where<sup>11</sup> they left the horses. 5 All the soldiers<sup>12</sup> in the camp had tents enough.

9 <sup>1</sup> πόθεν ἔσχεν *where he got*. After verbs of *saying* and *thinking* question clauses retain the verb in the *tense* of the original thought, as in *ὅτι* clauses and infinitive clauses. See 65.

<sup>2</sup> οὐ *where*.

<sup>3</sup> στρατηγῷ 521 end. Frequently the idea *for* is implied, as in these cases.

<sup>4</sup> ἐστὶν *was* or *is*. Consult note 1.



<sup>5</sup> For the omission of the verb see 493 b.

<sup>6</sup> εἰσιν were or are. Compare note 1 and see 64.

<sup>7</sup> εἶναι were.

<sup>8</sup> ποῖα ἔπαθεν how was he treated? ποῖα is neuter plural, cognate accusative with ἔπαθεν.

<sup>9</sup> αὐτοῖς: instead of αὐτά. Either may be used.

<sup>10</sup> Translate in two ways.

<sup>11</sup> ποῦ. Why this and not some other word meaning where?

<sup>12</sup> Put the antecedent in the relative clause. Compare 80, 9 and 82, 5.

## IX REVIEW. THE ATTRIBUTIVE AND THE PREDICATE POSITION

NOUNS, ADJECTIVES. VERBS: PRESENT AND IMPERFECT, FUTURE, AORISTS, INDICATIVE AND INFINITIVE ACTIVE

90 a Review accent 11-14; nouns and adjectives 57-68, 70-78; αὐτός 198, ἄλλος 201; possessives 204; relatives 213-215; verb forms 252.

b Review 37, 44, 47, 61-65, 84.

c Study adjectives 542, 543 and a (1); the article 551 a-g.

d Suffix -ικο 425.

### VOCABULARY AND EXERCISES

9/ παράδεισος -ου ὁ park, preserve. paradise

παρασάγγης -ου ὁ league, parasang, a Persian measure somewhat more than three miles

πελταστής -ου ὁ peltast, targeteer, a light-armed soldier carrying the πέλτη, from πελάζω serve as a peltast

Πέρσης -ου ὁ a Persian

Ἑλληνικός -ή -όν Greek; Ἕλληνας a Greek. Hellenic

Περσικός -ή -όν Persian; τὸ Περσικόν -ον the Persian force

κακός -ή -όν bad; cowardly. cacography

πέντε five. penta-gon

ἕξ six. Latin sex. hexa-gon

ἑπτὰ seven. Latin septem. hepta-gon

ὀκτώ eight. Latin octō. octa-gon

χίλιοι -αι -α a thousand

δισχίλιοι -αι -α two thousand

εἶδον ἰδεῖν, aorist, see. Latin videre; WISE, idea, idol. history

**ἤγαγον** ἀγαγεῖν, aorist of ἄγω,  
drive, lead

**ἐπεὶ** conj. adv. *when, after; since*

**ὅτε** conj. adv. *when, while*

**πάλιν** adv. *back, again*. **palin-drome**,  
**palin-pest**

**κατά** prep. *down*. **cata** root

**G** *down, down from; κατά τῆς*  
**πέτρας** *down the cliff*

**A** *down, along, according to,*  
*against; κατά τὴν ὁδὸν* *along*  
*the road; κατά τὸν νόμον* *ac-*  
*cording to custom; κατ' αὐτοὺς*  
*opposite to or against them*

2 Ἐπεὶ εἶδεν αὐτοὺς ἐν τῷ Περσικῷ στρατοπέδῳ ἔφυγεν.  
2 πολλοὶ στρατιῶται ἦλθον εἰς τὸν ἡμέτερον παρά-  
δεισον καὶ ὀπλῖται καὶ πελτασταί. 3 οἱ ἐν τῇ κώμῃ  
Πέρσαι πάλιν ἐπ-εβούλευον τοῖς Ἑλληνικοῖς ὀπλίταις.  
4 ποῖος πολίτης ἐστὶν ὁ νεανίας; λέγουσιν ὅτι ἀγαθός  
ἐστίν. 5 πότε ἤγαγον τοὺς ὑμετέρους στρατιώτᾱς εἰς  
τὴν τοῦ πολίτου οἰκίαν; 6 πέμψομεν τὸν στρατιώτην  
εἰς τὸ στρατόπεδον αὐτῶν. 7 ἐπεὶ συν-ἤγαγε τοὺς  
πολίτᾱς ἔλεξεν αὐτοῖς ὅτι οἱ ἐμοὶ στρατιῶται αὐτοῖς  
ἐπι-βουλεύουσιν. 8 ποῖον δῶρον τῷ νεανίᾳ ἐπέμψατε;  
9 τί ἔλαβες ἐκ τοῦ Ἑλληνικοῦ στρατοπέδου; 10  
ὀπλῖται ἕξ ἦλθον κατὰ<sup>1</sup> τὸν ποταμὸν καὶ ἤγαγον πλοῖα.  
11 ὅτε δὲ ὁ σὸς στρατηγὸς συν-ῆγε τοὺς πελταστὰς  
ἔφυγον οἱ πολέμιοι. 12 διὰ τοῦ πεδίου ἦλθον οἱ ἡμέ-  
τεροι στρατιῶται κατὰ<sup>1</sup> τὴν ὁδὸν παρασάγγας πέντε.  
13 ἐν τῷ παραδείσῳ εἶδομεν ἀγαθοὺς στρατιώτᾱς  
χιλίους ἀλλὰ οἱ ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ<sup>2</sup> κακοὶ ἦσαν. 14 ἐπεὶ  
ἤγαγε τοὺς ὀπλίτᾱς εἰς τὴν κώμην πάλιν ἔφυγον·  
κακοὶ γὰρ ἦσαν καὶ οὐκ ἤκουον<sup>3</sup> τῶν στρατηγῶν. 15  
ὅτε ἤγομεν τὸ Ἑλληνικὸν πάλιν εἰς τὴν Ἰωνίαν οὐκ  
εἵχομεν<sup>4</sup> ἱκανὰ λαβεῖν ἐκ τῆς τῶν Περσῶν χώρᾱς.  
16 Ξενίας ἔφη ἰδεῖν Πέρσῃν ἐν τῷ Ἑλληνικῷ στρατο-  
πέδῳ.

- 93 The generals will bring the citizens together in<sup>5</sup> the soldiers' camp. 2 We shall direct the hoplite to tell them where the army is. 3 We brought many gifts for the young man. 4 The bridge upon the river was small. 5 Do you not hear what the young man is saying?

- 94 <sup>1</sup> κατὰ τὸν ποταμόν down the river; κατὰ τὴν ὁδόν along the road. παρὰ would mean along by, beside. <sup>2</sup> οἱ ἐν τῇ πεδίῳ those in the plain. Consult 555 b. <sup>3</sup> ἤκουον did not listen to, in the sense of obey 511 a. <sup>4</sup> εἴχομεν 565 b end. <sup>5</sup> εἰς with accusative.

- 95 The Attributive Position 552 a, b, 555 a, b.

ὁ πιστὸς στρατιώτης the *trusty soldier*  
οἱ στρατιῶται οἱ πιστοὶ the *trusty soldiers*  
στρατιῶται οἱ πιστοὶ soldiers that may be trusted  
οἱ Κλεάρχου στρατιῶται the soldiers of *Klearchos*  
οἱ ἔξω στρατιῶται the soldiers outside  
οἱ ἐν τῇ κώμῃ στρατιῶται the soldiers in the village  
ἵππος ὁ τοῦ Κλεάρχου a horse that belonged to *Klearchos*  
οἱ ἔξω the men outside  
οἱ ἐν τῷ στρατοπέδῳ the men in the camp

- 96 The Predicate Position 552 c.

οἱ στρατιῶται πιστοὶ the soldiers are *trusty*  
πιστοὶ οἱ στρατιῶται the soldiers are *TRUSTY*

## X PRONOUNS

### Αὐτός AND THE DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS

- 97 Learn the declension and meanings of αὐτός 198, 199 a, b, c, 558; and of ὅδε, οὗτος, and ἐκεῖνος 205-209.

Notice that οὗτος has the rough breathing and τ in the same cases as the article ; also that with an *o*-sound in the ultima the penult has ου, with an *a*-sound or an *e*-sound in the ultima the penult has αυ. Do not confuse οὗτος with αὐτός, which has a smooth breathing and accented ultima, while οὗτος has neither.

8	<i>This same citizen</i>	<i>These same roads</i>
	οὗτος ὁ αὐτὸς πολίτης	αὗται αἱ αὐταὶ ὁδοί
	τούτου τοῦ αὐτοῦ πολίτου	τούτων τῶν αὐτῶν ὁδῶν
	τούτῳ τῷ αὐτῷ πολίτῃ	ταύταις ταῖς αὐταῖς ὁδοῖς
	τούτον τὸν αὐτὸν πολίτην	ταύτας τὰς αὐτάς ὁδούς

- 9 The position of ὅδε, οὗτος, and ἐκείνος 553. This statement applies only to demonstratives agreeing with a noun :

οὔτοι οἱ φίλοι *these friends*. οἱ τούτων φίλοι *the friends of these men ; their friends*. ἐκείνοι οἱ πολῖται *those citizens*. ὁ ἐκείνων βίος *the life of those men ; their life*.

a The demonstrative use of ὁ μὲν . . . ὁ δέ and ὁ δέ 549 a, b.

- 0 The demonstratives ὅδε *hic*, οὗτος *is*, ἐκείνος, *ille* have two uses.

a As adjectives in the *predicate* position but without the predicate meaning :

ὅδε ὁ νεανίας *this young man* (here before us)

οὗτος ὁ πολίτης *this citizen* (whom we have just mentioned)

ἐκεῖνη ἡ ὁδός *that road* (over there)

**b** As demonstrative pronouns and in this use as a substitute for emphatic personal pronouns :

ταῦτα ἔλεξεν *he made these remarks* (as just quoted)

ἔλεξε τάδε οὗτος *this man spoke as follows*

τούτους ἐλάβομεν *these men we captured*

ἐκεῖνοι δ' ἔφυγον *but they fled* (those others)

τὸ ἐκείνων πλοῖον *their boat*

101 For the three uses of αὐτός compare 199.

**a** In the attributive position it means *same, idem* :

τῇ αὐτῇ ἡμέρᾳ *on the same day*

**b** Not in the attributive position and agreeing with some word in the sentence or understood, it means *self* or *very, ipse* :

αὐτὸς ὁ πολίτης *the citizen himself* or *the very citizen*

αὐτοὶ ἄρξομεν *we ourselves will take the lead*

**c** Used alone in the oblique cases it is an unemphatic personal pronoun and means *him, her, it, them*. In this use the possessive genitive of the pronoun does not take the attributive position :

ἡ σοφία αὐτοῦ *his wisdom*

οἱ φίλοι αὐτῶν *their friends*

εἶδομεν αὐτούς *we saw them*

οἱ μετ' αὐτοῦ *the men with him*

ἡ κώμη καὶ αἱ ἐν αὐτῇ οἰκίαι *the village and the houses in it*

12 For \* μὲν . . . \* δέ see 669 a.

τότε μὲν ἦσαν τύραννοι, νῦν δὲ αὐτοὶ οἱ πολῖται ἄρχουσιν *then there were rulers, but now the citizens themselves govern.*

ὁ μὲν βίος βραχύς, ἡ δὲ τέχνη μακρά *life is short, but art is long.*

While always marking a contrast, μὲν . . . δέ also serve together as a connective and must never be used unless *and* or *but* can be put between the contrasted expressions without changing the meaning. δέ alone means *and*, *yet*, or *but*.

### 3 REVIEW OF SOME PRONOUNS AND ADVERBS

τίς ἐστιν  $\left\{ \begin{array}{ll} \text{ὁδε} & \text{hic} \\ \text{οὗτος} & \text{is} \\ \text{ἐκεῖνος} & \text{ille} \end{array} \right\}$ ; αὐτὸς ὁ ἄγγελος ὃν ἐπεμψας

*Who is this, that man? The very messenger whom you sent.*

τί ἤγαγες παρὰ Φοῖβον; ὃ ἢ ὃ τι εἶχομεν *What did you bring to Phoibos? What or whatever we had.*

πόσους ἔλαβες; πάντας ὅσοι παρῆσαν *How many did you take? All who were present.*

ποίους ἔλαβες; Ἕλληνας οἵοι ἀγαθοὶ εἰσιν *What kind of men did you take? Greeks, who are brave men.*

ποῦ ἦν ὁ νεανίας; ἐν τῇ οἰκίᾳ οὗ οἱ φίλοι ἦσαν *Where was the young man? In the house, where his friends were.*

πόθεν ἔλαβες τούτους τοὺς ἵππους; ἐκ τῆς αὐτῆς  
κώμης ὅθεν τάδε τὰ ὅπλα ἐλάβομεν *Where did  
you get these horses? In the same village where  
we got these arms here.*

ποῖ ἴασιν οἱ ὀπλῖται ἐκεῖνοι; εἰς κώμην οἱ ὁ Κλέαρ-  
χος ἔπεμψεν αὐτούς *Where are those hoplites go-  
ing? To a village where Klearchos sent them.*

πότε εἶπες ταῦτα; ὅτε Κλέαρχος ἔτι παρῆν· ἐπεὶ  
δὲ ἀπῆλθεν οὗτος οἱ ἄλλοι τάδε εἶπον *When did  
you say that? While Klearchos was still pres-  
ent; but after he had gone, the others said this.*

## VOCABULARY AND EXERCISES

104 μάχη -ης ἡ *fight, battle*

ὁ αὐτός *the same*

εἶπον εἶπέν, <sup>1</sup> aorist, ὅτι clause, *say*

αὐτοῦ adv. *right here, there*

ὑπό prep. *under. hypo-ante, hypo-thesis*

G *from under, at the hands of;*

*by, the regular form for agent;*

αἰρεθεὶς ὑπὸ τῶν πολιτῶν *chosen*

*by the citizens*

D *under, at the foot of; ὑπὸ τῇ  
ἀκροπόλει at the foot of the  
acropolis*

A *to a position under or at the  
foot of, under; ὑπῆλθον ὑπὸ  
τὰ δένδρα they came up under  
the trees; implying previous  
motion, ὑπὸ τὸν λόφον they  
halted at the foot of the hill*

105 Οὗτος ὁ αὐτὸς πολίτης ἦν ἡμέτερος<sup>2</sup> φίλος. 2 οὗτος  
μὲν ὁ ὀπλίτης ἀγαθὸς ἦν, κακὸς δὲ ἐκεῖνος ὁ πελτα-  
στής. 3 οὗτοι εἶδον αὐτοὺς ἐν τῷ ἐμῷ παραδείσῳ.  
4 οἱ ἄλλοι εἶπον τὰ αὐτὰ πρὸς τοὺς ἡμετέρους φίλους.  
5 Ἡγήσανδρος ἐκέλευσεν αὐτὸν ἐλθεῖν· ὁ δὲ<sup>3</sup> ἄλλους  
ἔπεμψεν. 6 οὗτος ὁ νεανίας αὐτὸς αὐτοῖς ἱκανὸς ἐστίν.  
7 τούτους τοὺς ἀγαθοὺς ὀπλίτας οὐ πέμψω; 8 τοῖσδε  
τοῖς στρατιώταις ἐλεξαν τάδε. ταῦτα ἐλεξαν. 9  
ποῖος<sup>4</sup> ἦν ἐκεῖνος ὁ λοχᾶγός; 10 ὁ στρατηγὸς Ξε-

νιᾶν ἐκέλευσεν ἐλθεῖν· ὁ δ' οὐκ ἦλθεν. **11** ἐν μάχῃ μὲν<sup>5</sup> ἀγαθοὶ ἦσαν οὗτοι οἱ στρατιῶται, τὰ δὲ ἄλλα<sup>6</sup> κακοί. **12** τοὺς μὲν ὀπλίτας ἔλιπον αὐτοῦ, πελταστὰς δὲ δισχιλίους ἔλαβον καὶ ἦλθον πρὸς τοὺς Πέρσας. **13** εἶπεν ὅτι ἡ αὐτὴ ἀγορὰ ἱκανή ἐστι καὶ τοῖς ἀνθρώποις καὶ τοῖς ἵπποις. **14** ἐπεὶ δὲ οὗτοι οἱ ἀγαθοὶ ἦλθον λόχοι, ἔφυγον οἱ ἐκ τῆς κώμης<sup>7</sup> πολέμοι, οἱ μὲν εἰς τὸ χωρίον, οἱ δὲ διὰ τοῦ πεδίου. **15** πολλὰ<sup>8</sup> κακὰ ἐπάθομεν ὑπὸ<sup>9</sup> τῶν Περσῶν ὅτε ἤγομεν τὴν στρατιὰν διὰ τῆς τούτων<sup>10</sup> χώρας. **16** οἱ πολλοὶ ἔφασαν δίκαιον εἶναι τοῦτον ἀποπέμψαι.

- 6 These same men themselves were friends of ours. 2 Those soldiers did not see your general in the camp. 3 Some were in the village, others on the plain. 4 On the next day my friend came and said that he had men enough to take the stronghold. 5 And we went to the bridge, for we heard that the enemy were there.

- 7 <sup>1</sup> εἰπεῖν: εἶπον is for ε-εἶπον. When the augment ε is dropt, we still have εἶπον; hence the infinitive εἰπεῖν.

<sup>2</sup> ἡμέτερος of ours 551 c.

<sup>3</sup> ὁ δέ or ὁ δὲ but he.

<sup>4</sup> ποῖος what sort of man?

<sup>5</sup> ἐν μάχῃ μὲν: notice that μὲν does not come immediately after the preposition here. With the article the order would be ἐν μὲν τῇ μάχῃ.

<sup>6</sup> τὰ δὲ ἄλλα but in other respects 540.

<sup>7</sup> οἱ ἐκ τῆς κώμης: the Greek regards the point of departure as prominent, from. We should say

the enemy in the village. Do not say the enemy fled from the village. That would be ἔφυγον ἐκ τῆς κώμης οἱ πολέμοι.

<sup>8</sup> πολλὰ κακὰ ἐπάθομεν we received much bad treatment; many injuries: κακὰ is cognate accusative. The Greek uses the plural. "Suffered many bad things" is not the English idiom. See 536 b.

<sup>9</sup> ὑπὸ at the hands of, by: the regular expression for the agent. Cp. Latin ablative with ab.

<sup>10</sup> τούτων: the position is not contrary to 553. That applies to a demonstrative agreeing with the noun.



## XI Ω-VERBS

THE PRESENT, SIGMATIC AORIST AND THEMATIC AORIST  
SUBJUNCTIVE ACTIVE. SUBJUNCTIVE USES

108 Learn 269, 282 and the present and the aorist subjunctive active in 252, 348.

a The subjunctive mode-suffix ωη unites with the *primary* personal endings giving **combined endings** which are used in all subjunctives that have active endings.

109

COMBINED ENDINGS	PRESENT	σα-AORIST	σα-AORIST	ο:ε-AOR.	ο:ε-AORIST
	ἀγο:ε- drive	πασα- persuade	ἀρξα- begin	ἴδο:ε- see	εἰπο:ε- say
-ω	ἄγ-ω	πείσ-ω	ἄρξ-ω	ἴδ-ω	εἴπ-ω
-ης	ἄγ-ης	πείσ-ης	ἄρξ-ης	ἴδ-ης	εἴπ-ης
-η	ἄγ-η	πείσ-η	ἄρξ-η	ἴδ-η	εἴπ-η
-ωμεν	ἄγ-ωμεν	πείσ-ωμεν	ἄρξ-ωμεν	ἴδ-ωμεν	εἴπ-ωμεν
-ητε	ἄγ-ητε	πείσ-ητε	ἄρξ-ητε	ἴδ-ητε	εἴπ-ητε
-ωσι	ἄγ-ωσι	πείσ-ωσι	ἄρξ-ωσι	ἴδ-ωσι	εἴπ-ωσι

Notice that the combined endings are *substituted* for the final vowel of the *tense-stem*.

110 Remember that the augment is used only in the indicative and that the *tenses* of the subjunctive do not denote *time* 475 and a. Compare 63.

111 Study the following **Uses of the Subjunctive** :

a Subjunctive Sentences 471 a, b, 472, 473 a, b, c. In

these uses the subjunctive is *independent*. Compare West, *Latin Grammar* 491 I., 492, 493.

**b Complex Sentences** 606 a, b, 607, 608, 609.

1 **Μή** clauses 610, 611 a, b. Compare West, 516, 5.

2 **Ὅς** and **ὅστις** clauses 612, 615, 616 a, 617, 618 a.

3 Other relative clauses 620, 627, 629.

**c \*~Αν** 666 (2).

2 In condensed statement we may say that any of the relative words used thus far may take **ἄν** and introduce the subjunctive. The time, whether future or universal, is always clearly defined by the context. In reading the references and studying the examples note carefully the translation. Decide by the general sense whether good English requires *whò* and *when* or *whoever* and *whenever*; so also whether to use *shall* or *should* and *is* or *was*:

λέξω ὃ τι ἂν συμβουλεύσῃς *I shall tell whatever advice you give.*

ἔφη λέξειν ὃ τι ἂν συμβουλεύσω *he said that he should tell whatever advice I gave.*

3 For the negative **μή** consult 486. Observe that the negative of **μή** clauses is **οὐ**, of relative clauses that take the subjunctive **μή**.

#### VOCABULARY AND EXERCISES

4 ἐπιστολή -ης ἡ letter. epistle	δέδουκα, aor. εἶδεια, fear, am
σωτηρία -ας ἡ safety	afraid
μόνος -η -ον alone, only. mon-ach	παιδεύω instruct, train up; παῖς
ἔρχω 66, mono-lith λίθος 173	boy 232
γράφω write. graphio, graphite, mono-	συμβουλεύω <sup>1</sup> D advise
gram	ἐπειδὴ conj. adv. with subjv.

<i>whenever, after, as soon as;</i>	<i>πῶς</i> interrog. adv. <i>in what way?</i>
<i>ἐπειδή + ἄν</i>	<i>how?</i>
<i>νῦν</i> adv. <i>now</i>	<i>ἀνά</i> prep. <i>A up, up along, along,</i>
<i>ὅταν</i> conj. adv. with subjv. <i>when-</i>	<i>indefinite; ἀνὰ χρόνον in course</i>
<i>ever, when; ὅτε + ἄν</i>	<i>of time</i>

115 Γράφωμεν ἐπιστολὴν τοῖς φίλοις. 2 τί εἵπωμεν πρὸς ταῦτα; πῶς παιδεύωμεν τὸν νεανίαν; 3 μὴ ἄρξης λέγειν. μὴ ἄρξωμεν λέγειν. 4 ποῖ φύγωμεν καὶ πῶς τοὺς φίλους λίπωμεν; 5 πόθεν τὴν σωτηρίαν<sup>2</sup> σχώμεν; 6 μὴ ταῦτα<sup>3</sup> εἴπητε πρὸς τοὺς πολίτας. 7 ἄγωμεν τοὺς στρατιώτᾱς τοὺς μὲν εἰς τὴν κώμην, τοὺς δὲ εἰς τὸ στρατόπεδον· νῦν γὰρ οὐ δεδοίκα-μεν<sup>4</sup> μόνοι<sup>5</sup> ἔλθειν ἐπὶ τοὺς Πέρσας. 8 δέδοικα μὴ οὐ ῥᾶδιον ᾗν λαβεῖν τοὺς ἵππους τούτους. 9 ἐδείσαμεν μὴ οἱ ἐν τῇ ἀγορᾷ νεανῖαι ἐπι-βουλεύωσι τοῖς πολίταις. 10 δέδοικα μὴ οὐ λάβωσι πλοῖα ἱκανὰ οἱ στρατιῶται. 11 ἀνὰ<sup>6</sup> τὴν τῶν Περσῶν χώρᾱν οἱ λοχαγοὶ ἄξουσιν τοὺς στρατιώτᾱς οὓς ἂν πέμψωμεν. 12 ὅστις ἂν τοῖς στρατηγοῖς ἐπι-βουλεύῃ, οὗτος οὐ φίλος<sup>7</sup> ἐστὶν ἡμῖν.<sup>8</sup> 13 ἄξομεν εἰς τὴν πολεμίαν<sup>9</sup> χώρᾱν ὅσους ἂν πέμψῃτε ὀπλίτᾱς. 14 οἱ<sup>10</sup> ἂν ἐλθεῖν αὐτοὺς κελεύσωμεν, οὐ λείψουσιν τοὺς φίλους μόνους. 15 πέμπειν δῶρα βουλεύωμεν ὅταν μὴ ἱκανὰ ἔχωσιν. 16 ὃ τι ἔχει ἐν τῇ οἰκίᾳ ἄξει τοῖς φίλοις. 17 λέξουσιν τοῖς νεανίαις ὃ τι ἂν συμ-βουλεύσῃς.<sup>11</sup>

116 Do not send these men into the village. 2 Let us not leave our friends alone<sup>5</sup> here. 3 Whatever he says,<sup>11</sup> I shall not tell them. 4 Let us send all<sup>12</sup> the young men we have. 5 Whenever<sup>13</sup> you speak to the citizens, they heed what you say.

17 <sup>1</sup> *συμ-βουλεύω*: *συν* before π, β, φ becomes *συμ* 50 a. For the aorist *συν-εβούλευσα* consult 268.

<sup>2</sup> *τὴν σωτηρίαν* safety 551 b.

<sup>3</sup> *ταῦτα* *this*. Greek uses the plural frequently where we use the singular. Cp. 107, 7.

<sup>4</sup> *δεδοίκα-μεν* *we fear*. The *-μεν* indicates first plural.

<sup>5</sup> *μόνοι* *alone*: predicate adjective as in English. Read 545, 546, and the foot-note.

<sup>6</sup> *ἀνά* *up through*.

<sup>7</sup> *φίλος*: the absence of the article here indicates a predicate.

<sup>8</sup> *ἡμῖν* *to us, nobis*: dative plural.

<sup>9</sup> *πολεμίαν* *the enemy's, hostilem*: equivalent to *τῶν πολεμίων*.

<sup>10</sup> *οἱ ἄν* *wherever*. Distinguish *οἱ* from *οἱ, οἱ, φ*.

<sup>11</sup> *συμ-βουλεύσῃς*: see 112, examples. What indicates that this refers to the future, while *ἐπι-βουλεύῃ* in number 12 refers to any time?

<sup>12</sup> *δσους ἔχομεν*. The English may omit the relative in "all *that* we have." The Greek must express the relative. Why must we use *δσους* and not *οἱς*?

<sup>13</sup> *ἔταν* with the subjunctive.

## XII Ω-VERBS

### THE PERFECT AND PLUPERFECT INDICATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE, INFINITIVE, AND PARTICIPLE ACTIVE

8 Learn the perfect and pluperfect indicative, subjunctive, infinitive, and participle active in 252.

a Reduplication 289 a, b, c, 290 and a.

b For the *κα*-perfect study 287, 288; 292, 293; 294; 296 and a; 297; *γυμνάζω, πείθω* 341, 342 a.

c For the *α*-perfect study 332 *five lines*, 333, 336; *γράφω, πέμπω, ἄρχω* 341, 342 b.

d The declension of the perfect active participle in *-κώς* and *-ώς*, will be given later.

9 The perfect stems denote a completed act in any time.

a The augment is used only in the indicative, for the pluperfect, and is not a part of the *tense-stem*.

**b** The reduplication is used in every part of the perfect systems and is a part of the *tense-stem*.

/20 Pronounce aloud again and again, reading down the columns, the forms in 341. So also the following :

VERB-STEM MEANING	βουλευ- <i>plot against</i>	φευγ-, φυγ- <i>run away</i>	λειπ-, λιπ- <i>abandon</i>
PRESENT	ἐπι-βουλεύ-ω	ἀπο-φεύγ-ω	κατα-λείπ-ω
FUTURE	ἐπι-βουλεύ-σω		κατα-λείψω
AORIST	ἐπ-ε-βούλευ-σα	ἀπ-έ-φυγ-ο-ν	κατ-έ-λιπ-ο-ν
PERFECT	ἐπι-βε-βούλευ-κα	ἀπο-πέ-φευγ-α	κατα-λέ-λοιπ-α

The pluperfect forms of the above verbs are

ἐπ-ε-βε-βουλεύκ-η | ἀπ-ε-πε-φεύγ-η | κατ-ε-λε-λοίπ-η

/2/ Write a **partial synopsis** of this *tense-system* as follows :

TENSE-STEM MEANING . .	πεπαυκα- <i>stop</i>	πεπεικα- <i>persuade</i>	λελοιπα- <i>leave</i>
INDICATIVE	πέπαυκα ἐ-πεπαύκη	πέπεικα ἐ-πεπείκη	λέλοιπα ἐ-λελοίπη
SUBJV.	πεπαύκ-ω	πεπείκ-ω	λελοίπ-ω
INFINITIVE	πεπαυκέ-ναι	πεπεικέ-ναι	λελοιπέ-ναι
PARTICIPLE	πεπαυκώς	πεπεικώς	λελοιπώς

/22 **Accent.** The accent in compounds does not go back of the augment or reduplication.

The perfect active infinitive accents the penult ; the perfect active participle accents the ultima with the acute.

/23 **Meaning** of the perfect forms 453, 456 and d, 457, 458.

4 a Ἔως clauses 631, the indicative.

b Ὅστε clauses 566 b, the infinitive. The negative is usually μή.

# VOCABULARY AND EXERCISES

5 ἄγω ἄξω ἡγαγον ἡχα drive. ΔΧΛΕ  
30, 79

ἀπο-λάττω leave

κατα-λάττω desert

\* φᾶσι(ν), inf. clause, they say

φεύγω, aor. ἔφυγον, flee. Latin  
fugiō

ἀπο-φεύγω run away, escape

κατα-φεύγω flee for refuge to, take  
refuge in, at eis

ἕως conj. adv. as long as, while;  
until

πεζῇ adv. on foot; τρά-πεζα 79

ὅστε conj. adv. and so, so that;  
with inf. so as to, so that; ὥς +

\* τε and

περί prep. on all sides, around

G about, concerning, for; equivalent to Latin *dē*; περί αὐτοῦ ask about him

D round, about, not common

A about, all round, attending; equivalent to Latin *circa*; περί αὐτόν stand about him

πρό prep. G before, in front of, in defence of, for; πρό τῆς οἰκίας in front of the house; πρό ἁρίστου before breakfast

σύν prep. D with, in company with, together with; in writing use instead of σύν with the dative μετά and the genitive for the above meanings, but σύν τοῖς θεοῖς with the aid of the gods

Ἔως Οἱ πολῖται ἔφασαν τοὺς λοχᾶγούς ἐπι-βεβουλευκῆναι τοῖς στρατηγοῖς. 2 πολλοὶ τῶν περὶ τὰς σκηναὺς ἐπε-φεύγεσαν εἰς τὴν κώμην. 3 γεγράφαμεν ἐπιστολὴν τῷ στρατηγῷ περὶ τῶν ἐν τῇ στρατιᾷ στρατιωτῶν. 4 οἱ περὶ<sup>1</sup> Κλεάρχον λελοίπασιν αὐτόν, ἀλλὰ πεπόμφασι<sup>1</sup> ἄλλους. 5 οἱ μετὰ<sup>1</sup> Προξένου ἡχᾶσι τοὺς ἵππους ὅσοι μὴ<sup>2</sup> ἀπ-επεφεύγεσαν. 6 ἐβεβουλευκίμεν λέξαι τοῖς πολῖταις πρὸ τοῦ στρατοπεδου. 7 εἶπεν ὅτι ὁ στρατηγὸς συν-ῆχε τοὺς στρατιώτᾱς πρὸ Κλεάρχου. 8 ὅστις μὴ ἐν μάχῃ πέφευγε, τοῦτόν φᾶσιν καλὸν καὶ ἀγαθὸν εἶναι. 9 ἡκούσαμεν τούτους ἀπο-λελοιπέναι

τοὺς φίλους ἐν τῇ μάχῃ καὶ κατα-πεφευγέναι εἰς τὸ χωρίον. 10 ὅσους εἶχον ὀπλίτας ἐν τῷ στρατοπέδῳ, τούτους πέπομφα παρὰ τὸν Ξενίαν. 11 κατα-πεφευγὼς ἦν παρὰ τοὺς φίλους.

- 127 Where have you told <sup>3</sup> them to go? 2 The horses were outside, but we had left our arms in the fort. 3 When have you planned to take the village? 4 They said that the peltasts had left the army. 5 They have brought together all <sup>4</sup> the companies they have.<sup>4</sup>

128 <sup>1</sup> οἱ περὶ, οἱ μετὰ the attendants  
of, companions of.

<sup>3</sup> Use the proper form of *κελεύω*.

<sup>4</sup> Use the relative, object of *have*.

<sup>2</sup> μὴ gives an indefinite meaning  
that *οὐ* would not.

Compare 117, 12.

#### REVIEW OF SOME PREPOSITIONS

- 129 We have had *ἀνά* up, frequently indefinite, *ἀπό* away from, *ἐξ* out from, *κατά* down. In composition prepositions have their regular meaning but sometimes an added meaning gained by usage. In composition *ἀπό* sometimes means back, in return; both *ἐξ* and *κατά* sometimes give the idea of completion; *κατά* sometimes a definite point or object in view; *σύν* with or together. Study the following sentences. Do not look up the compounds in the vocabulary. Work out the meaning.

- 130 Ἀπο-λελοίπασιν τὴν στρατιὰν Ξενίᾳς καὶ Ἀγίᾳς, ἀλλ' οὐκ ἀπο-πεφεύγασιν ἵππους γὰρ ἔχω ὥστε κατα-λαβεῖν αὐτούς. 2 τὴν κώμην ἐκ-λελοίπασιν οἱ Πέρσαι καὶ κατα-πεφεύγασιν εἰς τὴν τῶν βαρβάρων στρατιάν. 3 ἕως μὲν ἡ ὁδὸς ῥᾶδίᾳ ἦν ἵππῳ, ἐπὶ τοῦ ἵππου ἦγον, ἐπεὶ δὲ ἄπορος ἦν κατ-έλιπον τὸν ἵππον καὶ πεζῇ προ-ἦλθον. 4 ἔλαβον κώμην καὶ οἱ μὲν πολλοὶ<sup>1</sup> ἐξ-έφυγον,

ὅσους δ' ἐλάβομεν κατ-εἶχομεν ἀπο-φεύγειν.<sup>2</sup> 5 οἱ ἵπποι ἀπ-έφευγον ἀνὰ τὸ πεδῖον, ἀλλ' ἐπεὶ κατ-ελάβομεν αὐτοὺς ἀπ-επέμψαμεν πάλιν καὶ Κλονίος ἀπ-ήγαγεν αὐτοὺς εἰς τὸ στρατόπεδον. 6 ἀπ-ῆλθον, δι-ῆλθον, εἰσ-ῆγον, εἰσ-ῆλθον, ἐξ-ήγαγον, ἐξ-ῆλθον, κατ-έπεμψα, παρ-εἶχον, παρ-ῆλθον, προσ-ῆγον, προσ-ῆλθον, προσ-ῆλθον, συν-ῆλθον, συν-εἰσ-ῆλθον, συν-εξ-ῆλθον.

} / <sup>1</sup> οἱ πολλοί *the many, the greater part* 555 b. <sup>2</sup> ἀπο-φεύγειν: translate as a *from* genitive.

### XIII Ω - VERBS

THE PERFECT AND PLUPERFECT INDICATIVE, SUBJUNCTIVE, INFINITIVE AND PARTICIPLE MIDDLE AND PASSIVE. SUBJUNCTIVE USES

2 Learn the perfect and pluperfect indicative, subjunctive, infinitive, and participle middle and passive in 253, 254, and the middle and passive endings in 263. Observe that the subjunctive of εἶμι has a circumflex accent throughout.

3 Review //8 a. Study 298, 299, 300 a, b, d, 301; 341, 344 a.

$$\begin{array}{l} \left. \begin{array}{l} \pi \\ \beta \\ \phi \end{array} \right\} + \mu\alpha\iota = -\mu\mu\alpha\iota, \text{ a } \left. \begin{array}{l} \kappa \\ \gamma \\ \chi \end{array} \right\} \\ \left. \begin{array}{l} \tau \\ \delta \\ \theta \end{array} \right\} + \mu\alpha\iota = -\sigma\mu\alpha\iota. \end{array}$$

+  $\mu\alpha\iota$  =  $\gamma\mu\alpha\iota$ , a  $\tau$ -mute

Consult 44 a, b, c.

b The participle ending in -μένος shows the same consonant changes.



c Do not investigate the inflection of the indicative of these mute perfects nor of liquid perfects. The declension of the participle is regular, **-μένος -η -ον**. Review /19.

/134 Pronounce aloud, again and again, reading down the columns, the forms in 341. So also the following :

VERB- STEM } MEANING	βουλευ- <i>advise</i>	στρατευ- <i>march with</i>	ἀγ- <i>lead away</i>
PRESENT	συμ-βουλεύ-ω	συ-στρατεύ-ω <sup>1</sup>	ἀπ-άγω
FUTURE	συμ-βουλεύ-σω	συ-στρατεύ-σω	ἀπ-άξω
AORIST	συν-ε-βούλευ-σα	συν-ε-στράτευ-σα	ἀπ-ήγ-αγον
PF. ACT.	συμ-βε-βούλευ-κα	συν-ε-στράτευ-κα <sup>2</sup>	ἀπ-ήχα
PF. MID.	συμ-βε-βούλευ-μαι	συν-ε-στράτευ-μαι	ἀπ-ήγμαι

The pluperfect forms of the above verbs are

συν-ε-βε-βουλεύ-μην | συν-ε <sup>3</sup>-στρατεύ-μην | ἀπ-ήγ-μην

/135 Write a partial synopsis of the perfect *tense-systems* as follows :

TENSE- STEM } MEANING	πεπαυ- <i>stop, cease</i>	ἐστρατευ- <i>campaign</i>	ἤχα- <i>drive</i>
IND.	πέπαυ-μαι ἐπέπαύ-μην	ἐστράτευ-μαι ἐστρατεύ-μην	ἀπ-ήχα ἀπ-ήχη
SUBJY.	πεπαυ-μένος ὦ	ἐστρατευ-μένος ὦ	ἀπ-ήχ-ω
INF.	πεπαυ-σθαί	ἐστρατεύ-σθαι	ἀπ-ηχέ-ναι
PTC.	πεπαυ-μένος	ἐστρατευ-μένος	ἀπ-ηχώς

/136 Accent. Review /22. The perfect middle infinitive and participle accent the penult.

<sup>1</sup> For **συ** from **συν** see 52 b.    <sup>2</sup> For **ε** as reduplication see 289 c.

<sup>3</sup> For **ε** as reduplication and augment see 293.

- 7 **Meaning** of the middle and passive 499; 500 a παύω, πείθω, φαίνω; 500 b ἄρχω, βουλεύω, συμ-βουλεύω. Dependent verbs 501 are middle or passive in form but active in meaning.

- 8 a Ἔως clauses 631, the indicative and subjunctive.

In ἔως clauses that take the subjunctive the context must determine the force of the ἔως clause, whether it refers to future time or is universal in time, and whether ἔως means *while* or *until*. In ἔως ἂν πιστοὶ ᾤσι δούλοι πιστεύομεν αὐτοῖς *as long as slaves are faithful, we trust them*, both the leading clause and the ἔως clause are universal; but the subjunctive in the ἔως clause may imply a thought like *up to a time when they may cease to be faithful*; this is not felt in ἔως μένομεν αὐτοῦ χρη ἀγαθοὺς εἶναι *while we are waiting here, we must be brave men* and ἴωμεν ἔως ἔτι οἰόμεθα ἂν αὐτῶν κρατῆσαι *let us go while we still feel that we may overcome them*, where the indicatives, μένομεν and οἰόμεθα, state a present fact. In πιστεύομεν τοῖς δούλοις ἔως ἂν ἄπιστοι φανῶσιν *we trust our slaves until they show themselves untrustworthy*, while the time of the leading clause is universal, and both clauses are general, the time of the ἔως clause is future to πιστεύομεν.

In ἔως ἂν πιστοὶ ᾤσιν οἱ δούλοι πιστεύσομεν αὐτοῖς *as long as our slaves are faithful, we shall trust them* and πιστεύσομεν τοῖς δούλοις ἔως ἂν ἄπιστοι φανῶσιν *we shall trust our slaves until they show themselves untrustworthy*, both leading clauses and ἔως clauses are future, and the ἔως clause in each case is indefinite; but in ἔως ἂν ᾤσιν the time is coincident with πιστεύομεν in the same way as with πιστεύομεν above.

We may then say: In ἔως clauses the subjunctive marks the action as belonging to, or as likely to continue to, some indefinite time, future to that of the leading verb—that is, as a supposed occurrence more or less uncertain in regard to realization.

- b Ἦνα clauses 640 (2), 642 a, the subjunctive. Negative μή.

c Ὡστε clauses 639 a, the indicative. Compare the infinitive 566 b.

d Εἰ clauses 645, 646, 647, the indicative. Negative μή.

#### VOCABULARY AND EXERCISES

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 139 ἀρχή -ης ἡ <i>beginning; command; government, province; ἄρχω</i> 66.<br>mon-archy <i>μόνος</i> 114 | εὖ adv. <i>well; adverb of αγαθός</i> 66.<br>eu-phemism, eu-phony                                |
| σατράπης -ου ὁ <i>satrap, a Persian governor of a province</i>   | ἵνα conj. adv. <i>where; that, in order that</i>   |
| μένω <i>wait, stay; await. Lat. maneo</i>  | καλῶς adv. <i>beautifully, well, nobly; καλῶς ἔχειν be well, be all right; καλός</i> 86          |
| στρατεύω <i>make an expedition; mid. dep. take the field, serve, march; στρατός army</i>               | οὕτως adv., <i>before a consonant οὕτω, so, thus, in that case; οὕτως ἔχειν be so; οὗτος</i> 100 |
| συμβουλεύω D <i>advise; mid. consult, ask advice of</i>  | εἰ conj. <i>if</i>   |

- 140 Ἐφη τὸν τῆς χώρᾱς σατράπην πεπαῦσθαι<sup>1</sup> τῆς ἀρχῆς ὑπὸ τῶν Περσῶν. 2 σὺν τοῖς θεοῖς πεπαυκάσιν τοῦτον τὸν κακὸν πόλεμον. 3 πέπαινται<sup>2</sup> τούτου τοῦ κακοῦ πολέμου. 4 συμ-βεβούλευκα αὐτῷ μὴ ἐλθεῖν εἰς τὴν ἀγοράν. 5 τί οὐ συμ-βεβούλονται<sup>3</sup> τοῖς φίλοις; <sup>4</sup> 6 τοὺς αὐτοὺς ἵππους τούτους ἐπεπόμεφesan τῷ σατράπῃ εἰς τὴν κώμην. 7 δεδοίκαμεν μὴ οὗτοι οἱ νεᾶνιαι οὐ καλῶς πεπαιδεύονται. 8 ἐδεῖσαμεν μὴ ὁ σατράπης ἢ πεπαυμένος τῆς ἀρχῆς<sup>1</sup> ὑπὸ τῶν πολιτῶν. 9 ἕως μὲν ἐν τῇ κώμῃ οἱ στρατιῶται ἔμενον πιστοὶ ἡμῖν ἦσαν, ἐπεὶ δὲ εἰς τὸ πεδίον ἦλθον οὐ ῥᾶδιον ἦν συν-αγαγεῖν αὐτοὺς πάλιν. 10 μένωμεν, ὧ στρατιῶται, ἕως ἂν<sup>5</sup> ἀκούσωμεν ὃ τι ἂν ὁ στρατηγὸς εἴπῃ. 11 ἦχα πολλοὺς πολίτας ἐκ τῆς ἀγορᾱς, ἵνα<sup>6</sup> τοὺς ὀπλίτας ἴδωσιν. 12 πεπαιδευ-

μεθα ἵνα τοῖς πολίταις συμ-βουλεύωμεν.<sup>7</sup> 13 γράψω ἐπιστολὴν παρὰ Κλέαρχον<sup>8</sup> ἵνα πείσω<sup>9</sup> αὐτὸν μὴ στρατεύειν ἐπὶ τοὺς Πέρσας. 14 γεγράφαμεν πολλὰς ἐπιστολὰς μακρὰς ἵνα πείσωμεν τοὺς νεανίᾱς ἐλθεῖν μεθ' ὑμῶν.<sup>10</sup> 15 οὕτω πεπαίδενται οὗτος ὥστε εὖ συμ-βουλεύει τοῖς φίλοις. 16 εἰ οἱ ἡμέτεροι νεανίαι εὖ πεπαίδενται, τὴν σωτηρίαν ἔξομεν.<sup>11</sup>

1/ Where<sup>12</sup> have you sent the hoplites? 2 The soldiers have been trained by good captains. 3 They had fled along this river to<sup>13</sup> a village. 4 I have advised them<sup>4</sup> not to send gifts. 5 Let us go now that<sup>6</sup> we may see<sup>14</sup> the satrap.

2 <sup>1</sup> πεπαυθῆναι τῆς ἀρχῆς *had been deposed from the government.* ἀρχῆς: a *from* genitive 509 a.

<sup>2</sup> πέπαινανται *have ceased from:* middle.

<sup>3</sup> συμ-βουλεύονται *has asked advice of:* middle.

<sup>4</sup> φίλοις: the dative is used with σὺν in the verb 598 a.

<sup>5</sup> ἕως ἄν *until* 631, 138 a.

<sup>6</sup> ἵνα *in order that* 640 (2), 643 a.

<sup>7</sup> συμ-βουλεύωμεν *advise.* Cp. numbers 4 and 5.

<sup>8</sup> παρὰ Κλέαρχον: compare the dative in 126, 3. The uses are equivalent. πρὸς could be used in place of παρὰ.

<sup>9</sup> πείσω: aor. subjv. act. of πείθω *persuade.* It takes the accusative, not the dative.

<sup>10</sup> μεθ' ὑμῶν *with you:* by elision for μετὰ ὑμῶν 32, 42.

<sup>11</sup> ἔξομεν *we shall have:* ἔχω.

<sup>12</sup> Use τοῦ. See 103.

<sup>13</sup> εἰς with the accusative.

<sup>14</sup> ὄψωμεν: aor. subjv. of εἶδον 91, 109. Cp. number 11.

## XIV Ω-VERBS

### THE Θη-, THE Η-, AND THE FUTURE PASSIVE. PRINCIPAL PARTS

13 Learn the aorist and the future passive, indicative, subjunctive, and infinitive in 254, 336 and a.

a For the Θη:- passive study 302-305, 308; 310.

b For the η:- passive study 334-337.

144 Observe that the subjunctive is like the subjunctive of εἰμι 384 a. The combined endings, 108, 109, are added to and contracted with the final vowel of the *tense-stem*, thus giving a circumflex on ωη.

a In the future indicative second singular notice the dropping of σ in σαι 263 b.

#### 145 PRINCIPAL PARTS OF VERBS

Learn 311. Review 268 and a, 290 and a; 118 a, 133 a. Complete 341 by adding the passive aorists.

$$\begin{array}{l}
 \text{a A } \pi\text{-mute } \left. \begin{array}{c} \pi \\ \beta \\ \phi \end{array} \right\} + \theta = \phi\theta, \text{ a } \kappa\text{-mute } \left. \begin{array}{c} \kappa \\ \gamma \\ \chi \end{array} \right\} \\
 + \theta = \chi\theta, \text{ a } \tau\text{-mute } \left. \begin{array}{c} \tau \\ \delta \\ \theta \end{array} \right\} + \theta = \sigma\theta. \text{ See 43 a, b.}
 \end{array}$$

b Write the principal parts of παύω, βουλεύω, ἐπι-βουλεύω, συμ-βουλεύω, παιδεύω, στρατεύω, συ-στρατεύω, πιστεύω, κωλύω, λείπω, ἄγω. Use the form in 134 and 341 instead of that in 311, keeping the letters of the *verb-stem* in column.

#### 146 The Passive Systems, Indicative, Subjunctive, and Infinitive:

AORIST	FUTURE	AORIST	FUTURE
φανθῆ:ε- show	φανθήσο:ε- show	φανῆ:ε- appear	φανήσο:ε- appear
ἐφάνθη-ν φανθῶ φανθή-ναι	φανθήσο-μαι φανθήσε-σθαι	ἐφάνη-ν φανῶ φανῆ-ναι	φανήσο-μαι φανήσε-σθαι

147 Ei clauses, εἰ + ἄν = ἔάν, and the subjunctive 650.

## VOCABULARY AND EXERCISES

8 δοῦλος -ου ὁ <i>slave</i> ; compare ἀνδρά- ποδον 66	εἰφάνην, aor. ἡ- passive of φαίνω, ap- peared, was seen. phantasm
ᾠρᾶ -ᾠς ἡ <i>fixed time, season</i> . Latin <i>hōra</i> ; <i>horo-scope</i>	εἰφάνθη, aor. θη- passive of φαίνω, was shown
ἐλεύθερος -ᾶ -ον <i>free, independent</i> . Latin <i>liber</i>	κωλύω, A and inf. clause, <i>hinder</i> , <i>oppose, prevent</i>
δώσω <i>shall give</i>	αὐτίκα adv. <i>immediately</i>
ἑστάλην, aor. ἡ- passive of στέλλω, <i>was sent</i>	*δῆ adv. 671 c, <i>indeed, now, of</i> <i>course</i>
ἦκω <i>have come, come; return</i>	ἰάν conj. with subjv. <i>if; ei + ἄν</i>

- 9 Οὗτος ὁ πόλεμος ἐπαύθη, παυθήσεται, πέπαιται. ἔφη τοῦτον τὸν πόλεμον παυθῆναι, παυθήσεσθαι, πεπαῦσθαι. 2 ὁ ἐμὸς φίλος ἐπιστεύθη ὑπὸ πολλῶν· πιστὸς γὰρ ἦν αὐτοῖς. 3 ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ ἐφάνησαν κῶμαι πολ-  
λαί. 4 καλῶς ἐπαιδεύθησαν οὗτοι οἱ νεᾶνιαι, οὐχ ὡς δοῦλοι ἀλλ' ὡς ἐλεύθεροι καὶ πολῖται. 5 τί ἐκωλύθη-  
μεν κελεύειν<sup>1</sup> αὐτὸν μὴ ἐλθεῖν; 6 ἡμῖν<sup>2</sup> μὲν ἐφάνησαν πιστοὶ εἶναι οἱ δοῦλοι ἀλλὰ οὐκ ἐπιστεύθησαν ὑπὸ τῶν ἄλλων. 7 πιστοὶ ὦμεν στρατιῶται ἵνα πιστευθῶμεν ὑπὸ τῶν λοχαγῶν. 8 οὐχ ᾠρᾶ ἐστὶν ἡμῖν ἀπ-ελθεῖν, ἕως ἂν οἱ στρατηγοὶ κελεύσωσιν. 9 ὑπὸ τῶν<sup>3</sup> φίλων τοῦτο ἡμῖν ἐφάνθη δίκαιον εἶναι. 10 Χειρίσοφος μὲν δὴ ἐπὶ<sup>4</sup> πλοῖα ἐστάλη οἱ δὲ ἄλλοι στρατιῶται ἔμενον ἡμέρας<sup>5</sup> πολλὰς ἐν ταῖς κώμαις, ἕως ἂν ἦκη.<sup>6</sup> 11 Περσικοὶ στρατιῶται ἐφάνησαν ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ ἀλλ' οὐκ ἦλθον ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον ἕως οἱ οπλῖται ἀπ-ῆλθον. 12 αὐτίκα ἔλθωμεν πρὸς τοὺς πολεμίους ἵνα ἐλεύθεροι ὦμεν. 13 εἰ Κλέαρχος εἶπεν ὅτι ἀγαθοὶ ἦσαν, οὕτως ἔχει. 14 ἐὰν δοῦλοι εὖ παιδευθῶσι, τούτοις πιστεύομεν.

15 ἔὰν ἀγαθοὶ ὦμεν, οἱ πολῖται πολλὰ δῶρα δώσουσιν ἡμῖν. 16 ἔὰν μὴ ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ ὦσιν οἱ πολέμιοι, εἰς τὴν κώμην ἔλθωμεν, ἵνα καταλάβωμεν αὐτούς. 17 ἔὰν κλεύσῃς τούτους τοὺς δούλους μὴ λέγειν, οὐ λέγουσιν. οὐ λέξουσιν.

- 150 Let us not remain here, but let us go immediately. 2 Whom of our soldiers shall<sup>7</sup> we now trust? 3 He was so noble that he had<sup>8</sup> many friends. 4 He appeared to be faithful, but was not. 5 This wicked satrap will be deposed from the government. 6 If he has asked-advice-of his friends,<sup>9</sup> it will be well.

- 151 <sup>1</sup> κλεῖν from telling: like a from genitive. We could also write τοῦ κλεῖν 572 a.

<sup>2</sup> ἡμῖν μὲν to us indeed 1/7, 8. Here the second contrasted member is marked by ἀλλὰ 669 a.

<sup>3</sup> οὐ our.

<sup>4</sup> ἐπὶ for, after.

<sup>5</sup> ἀκούσας: accusative time how long.

<sup>6</sup> ὥς ἂν ἦκη until he should return, for him to return. 138 a.

<sup>7</sup> Implying that none can be trusted; express by the subjunctive 471 a.

<sup>8</sup> Use the dative of possessor 524 a.

<sup>9</sup> What case is required? See 142, 4.

## XV Ω-VERBS

### PRINCIPAL PARTS OF -ειν -ει, AND -ειν VERBS AND MUTE VERBS

- 111 ~~Learn~~ 311. Learn all the verbs in 311 and all the mute verbs. Read aloud many times. Write -

- 112 ~~Learn~~ 322. Learn

## Q - VERBS

5.

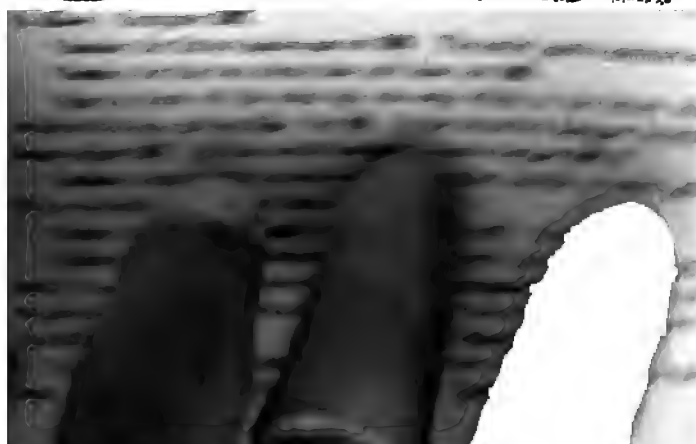
[illegible]

1. The first step in the process of the investigation is the identification of the problem. This is done by the investigator who is responsible for the investigation. The investigator must identify the problem and the scope of the investigation.

[illegible]

\_\_\_\_\_

*[Illegible handwritten notes]*





**a** Regular forms are used in *ἑρωτάω*, but there are some more common irregular forms to be given later. A few other verbs that have already been used will also be reserved.

**b** *Ἀθροίζω* *collect* is regular, verb-stem *ἀθροιδ-*, like *γυμνάζω* 341.

**c** *Ἦκω* *have come* has only *ἦξω*.

**d** For the perfect *ἀκ-ήκο-α* *have heard* see 291 c.

**e** The futures in *-σμαι* are regular in inflection, *-σμαι, -σει, -σεται* 144 a.

**f** The perfect passive of *κελεύω* assumes *σ, κε-κέλευ-σ-μαι*, and is inflected according to 322 b.

155 Remember that the inflections of all these verbs, and of others to come, are like the tense-systems already given, perfectly regular. Remember also that, no matter how simple or how complicated the present, the other tenses are not made from the present but from the *verb-stem*, and some verbs have more than one stem.

The **classes** to which the present stems belong will be taken up gradually. Always notice the *verb-stem* and use it in making the principal parts.

Review 256, 257 (1). Learn 259 (3) c. *σσ* is an older form for *ττ*, *τάσσω* = *τάττω*.

#### VOCABULARY AND EXERCISES

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 156 ἄγγελος -ου ὁ messenger. angel      | οὐκ ἔφη, inf. clause, <i>said that not, denied, refused</i> ; equivalent to |
| νίκη -ης ἡ victory; νικάω 153           | Latin <i>negāvit</i>  |
| σκοπός -οῦ ὁ watcher, scout             | ἐνθά-δε adv. <i>hither, here</i> ; -δε =                                    |
| σπονδή -ης ἡ libation; plural           | <i>-ward, here-ward</i>   |
| σπονδαί -ων truce, treaty. spondee      | ἐπι-μελῶς adv. <i>carefully</i>   |
| ισχυρός -ᾶ -όν strong, mighty, stubborn | οἰκα-δε adv. <i>homeward, home</i> ; οἶκος                                  |

πλησίον adv. 599, G near

τότε adv. then

χθές adv. yesterday

# VERBS

αἰρέω take, capture; mid. choose.  
heresy, di-aerēsis

αἰτέω, A of person and A of thing,  
ask for, demand; inf. clause,  
ask one to, ask that

ἀξιόω, A of person and G of thing,  
deem worthy; inf. clause, claim  
as a right, ask, demand

δηλόω make clear, show; δηλος  
30

δοκέω think; seem, seem best. dog-  
ma, para-dox

ἐρωτάω, A of person and A of  
thing or interrog. clause, ask a  
question, inquire of

νικάω conquer, have conquered, am  
victorious; νίκη

ποιέω make; do. poem ποίημα; poet  
ποιητής

πράττω accomplish, do. practical  
πράκτικός; practice

τάττω arrange, assign. tactics  
τάξις; συμ-τάξ σύν 125

φυλάττω guard, watch; mid. A  
guard against; φυλακή 79

- 17 Οἱ πολῖται ἡρώτησαν<sup>1</sup> τὸν σατράπην τί ἐπαύθη τῆς ἀρχῆς. 2 ὁ στρατηγὸς ἡρωτάτο<sup>1</sup> πόσους στρατιώτᾱς τότε ἤθροισεν. 3 ἠήτησαμεν<sup>2</sup> αὐτὸν τοὺς ὀπλίτᾱς ὅσους εἶχεν ἵνα λάβωμεν τὸ ἰσχυρὸν χωρίον· ὁ δὲ δισχιλίους ἔπεμψεν. 4 ἐπιμελῶς τάξουσι τοὺς στρατιώτᾱς ἵνα φυλάξωσι τὴν κώμην ἡμῖν.<sup>3</sup> 5 ὁ στρατιώται, νενικήκατε πολλὰς νίκᾱς<sup>4</sup> σὺν τοῖς θεοῖς. 6 ὑπὸ τῶν πολιτῶν οὗτος ὁ νεανίας ἡξιώθη δώρων<sup>5</sup> πολλῶν. 7 σκοποὶ πάλιν ἐπέμφθησαν ἵνα ἴδωσιν ὃ τι οἱ Πέρσαι ἐποίησαν.<sup>6</sup> 8 ἤκομεν ἐνθάδε κελεῦσαι τοὺς ἀγγέλους μὴ λέγειν περὶ σπονδῶν. 9 ἔπεισαν αὐτὸν γράψαι ἐπιστολὴν ὅτι ἦξει<sup>7</sup> οἰκαδε καὶ ἄξει ὅσους ἂν ἔχη<sup>8</sup> πελταστᾱς. 10 ὁ Εὐφράτης ποταμὸς μακρὸς ἐστὶ καὶ ἐπ' αὐτῷ εἶδομεν πολλὰς κώμας μικράς. 11 ἐφάνησαν χθὲς οἱ πολέμιοι βουλευεῖν ἄγειν στρατιώτᾱς ἐπὶ τοὺς ἡμετέρους φίλους, ἀλλ' ἔδοξεν<sup>9</sup> αὐτοῖς μὴ ἐλθεῖν. 12 ἄλλοι δὲ βάρβαροι ἐφάνησαν ἐν τῷ πλησίον<sup>10</sup>

παραδείσω πολλοὶ καὶ πολέμιοι. 13 τότε ἐπέισαμεν αὐτοὺς μὴ πάλιν ἀθροῖσαι τοὺς δισχιλίους ὀπλίτας. 14 ἔδοξεν ἡμῖν μὴ ἐλεῖν τὰ πλοῖα ἐκ τοῦ ποταμοῦ· ὥστε<sup>11</sup> τοὺς μὲν ἵππους αἰρήσομεν, λεύβομεν δὲ τὰ πλοῖα. 15 οὗτοι οἱ ἄγγελοι ἦκον καὶ εἶπον ὅτι Κλέαρχος οὐκ ἔφη ἄρξαι τῆς στρατιᾶς. 16 ὁ Πέρσης ἔδεισεν ἐλθεῖν ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον· ἐδήλωσε δὲ τοῦτο οἷς<sup>12</sup> τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ ἔπραττεν.

- 158 If we take the village, we shall guard it well. 2 They asked the messenger how many men were in the fort. 3 We shall send to Klearchos the soldiers that we have. 4 As long as we remained in camp, the satrap was friendly to us. 5 The scouts asked the captain for<sup>13</sup> a thousand hoplites.

159 <sup>1</sup> ἠρώτησαν 535. In 2 ἠρωτᾶτο he was asked (*impf. pass.* to be given later) retains the second object.

<sup>2</sup> ἤτήσαμεν: these three sentences show the difference in meaning between *ῥωτᾶω* and *αἰτέω*.

<sup>3</sup> ἡμῖν for us 523.

<sup>4</sup> νίκας 536 a. We say *win victories*.

<sup>5</sup> δῶρων 516 a end.

<sup>6</sup> ἐποίησαν *had done*. The aorist may be translated by the perfect or pluperfect 463.

<sup>7</sup> εἰτι ἤξει that he would return.

<sup>8</sup> ὅσους ἂν ἔχη as many as he had.

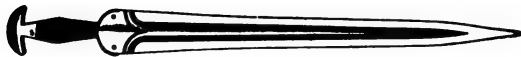
<sup>9</sup> ἔδοξεν αὐτοῖς it seemed best to them; they decided is a very common translation.

<sup>10</sup> πλησίον in the park near by 555 a.

<sup>11</sup> ὥστε and so 639 a.

<sup>12</sup> οἷς by what: a *by* dative 526. Consult 613 b, 614. οἷς is equivalent to *τούτοις & by that which*. The English construction is the same.

<sup>13</sup> αἰτέω ask for.



Greek sword.

## XVI Ω - VERBS

THE MIDDLE FORMS OF THE PRESENT, FUTURE, AND SIGMATIC AND THEMATIC AORIST SYSTEMS, INDICATIVE, SUBJUNCTIVE, INFINITIVE, AND PARTICIPLE

0 Learn the inflections in 253, 254, 348. Review 263 and b and 44.

a Present and future systems 264, 265, 268, 269, 273-278.

b Aorist systems 279-282, 286, 349.

1/ In the subjunctive the mode-suffix  $\omega\eta$  unites with the *primary* personal endings giving combined endings, which are used in all subjunctives that have the middle endings. Observe that in all the above tenses the combined endings are *substituted* for the final vowel of the *tense-stem*. See 108, 109 and compare the forms.

2 In 499, 500 a, b carefully examine the verbs already used. See 137 and read 394, 395 for deponents.

3 Principal parts of some **Passive Deponents** :

βουλ-, βουλη- <i>wish</i>	δυνα-η- <i>can</i>	οι-, οιη- <i>think</i>	πορευ- <i>advance</i>
βούλ-ομαι βουλή-σομαι βε-βούλη-μαι ἐ-βουλή-θην	δύνα-μαι δυνή-σομαι δε-δύνη-μαι ἐ-δυνή-θην	οἶ-ομαι οἰή-σομαι ᾠή-θην	πορεύ-ομαι πορεύ-σομαι πε-πόρευ-μαι ἐ-πορεύ-θην

A list of the verbs that are used as passive deponents in this book is given in 185.

c Ὡστε clauses 639 a, the indicative. Compare the infinitive 566 b.

d Εἰ clauses 645, 646, 647, the indicative. Negative μή.

### VOCABULARY AND EXERCISES

- 139 ἀρχή -ης ἡ *beginning; command; government, province; ἄρχω* 66. mon-archy *μόνος* 114  
 σατράπης -ου ὁ *satrap, a Persian governor of a province*  
 μένω *wait, stay; await.* Lat. *maneo*  
 στρατεύω *make an expedition; mid. dep. take the field, serve, march; στρατός army*  
 συμβουλεύω D *advise; mid. consult, ask advice of*
- εὖ adv. *well; adverb of ἀγαθός* 66. eu-phemism, eu-phony  
 ἵνα conj. adv. *where; that, in order that*  
 καλῶς adv. *beautifully, well, nobly; καλῶς ἔχειν be well, be all right; καλός* 86  
 οὕτως adv., before a consonant *οὕτω, so, thus, in that case; οὕτως ἔχειν be so; οὗτος* 100  
 εἰ conj. *if*

- 140 Ἐφη τὸν τῆς χώρᾱς σατράπην πεπαῦσθαι<sup>1</sup> τῆς ἀρχῆς ὑπὸ τῶν Περσῶν. 2 σὺν τοῖς θεοῖς πεπαυκάσι τοῦτον τὸν κακὸν πόλεμον. 3 πέπauνται<sup>2</sup> τούτου τοῦ κακοῦ πολέμου. 4 συμ-βεβούλευκα αὐτῷ μὴ ἐλθεῖν εἰς τὴν ἀγοράν. 5 τί οὐ συμ-βεβούλονται<sup>3</sup> τοῖς φίλοις; <sup>4</sup> 6 τοὺς αὐτοὺς ἵππους τούτους ἐπεπόμφεσαν τῷ σατράπῃ εἰς τὴν κώμην. 7 δεδοίκαμεν μὴ οὗτοι οἱ νεανῖαι οὐ καλῶς πεπαιδεύονται. 8 ἐδείσαμεν μὴ ὁ σατράπης ἢ πεπαυμένος τῆς ἀρχῆς<sup>1</sup> ὑπὸ τῶν πολιτῶν. 9 ἕως μὲν ἐν τῇ κώμῃ οἱ στρατιῶται ἔμενον πιστοὶ ἡμῖν ἦσαν, ἐπεὶ δὲ εἰς τὸ πεδίον ἦλθον οὐ ῥᾶδιον ἦν συν-αγαγεῖν αὐτοὺς πάλιν. 10 μένωμεν, ὧ στρατιῶται, ἕως ἂν<sup>5</sup> ἀκούσωμεν ὃ τι ἂν ὁ στρατηγὸς εἴπῃ. 11 ἦχα πολλοὺς πολίτας ἐκ τῆς ἀγορᾶς, ἵνα<sup>6</sup> τοὺς ὀπλίτας ἴδωσιν. 12 πεπαιδευ-

μεθα ἵνα τοῖς πολίταις συμ-βουλευώμεν.<sup>7</sup> 13 γράψω ἐπιστολὴν παρὰ Κλέαρχον<sup>8</sup> ἵνα πείσω<sup>9</sup> αὐτὸν μὴ στρατεύειν ἐπὶ τοὺς Πέρσας. 14 γεγράφαμεν πολλὰς ἐπιστολὰς μακρὰς ἵνα πείσωμεν τοὺς νεανίᾳς ἐλθεῖν μεθ' ὑμῶν.<sup>10</sup> 15 οὕτω πεπαίδευται οὗτος ὥστε εὖ συμ-βουλεύει τοῖς φίλοις. 16 εἰ οἱ ἡμέτεροι νεανίαί εὖ πεπαίδευνται, τὴν σωτηρίαν ἔχομεν.<sup>11</sup>

f/ Where<sup>12</sup> have you sent the hoplites? 2 The soldiers have been trained by good captains. 3 They had fled along this river to<sup>13</sup> a village. 4 I have advised them<sup>4</sup> not to send gifts. 5 Let us go now that<sup>6</sup> we may see<sup>14</sup> the satrap.

12 <sup>1</sup> πεπαύσθαι τῆς ἀρχῆς *had been deposed from the government.* ἀρχῆς: a *from* genitive 509 a.

<sup>2</sup> πύπτανται *have ceased from:* middle.

<sup>3</sup> συμ-βουλεύονται *has asked advice of:* middle.

<sup>4</sup> φίλοις: the dative is used with σὺν in the verb 598 a.

<sup>5</sup> ἕως ἄν *until* 631, 138 a.

<sup>6</sup> ἵνα *in order that* 640 (2), 642 a.

<sup>7</sup> συμ-βουλύνωμεν *advise.* Cp. numbers 4 and 5.

<sup>8</sup> παρὰ Κλέαρχον: compare the dative in 126, 8. The uses are equivalent. *πρός* could be used in place of *παρά*.

<sup>9</sup> πείσω: aor. subjv. act. of *πείθω* *persuade.* It takes the accusative, not the dative.

<sup>10</sup> μεθ' ὑμῶν *with you:* by elision for *μετὰ ὑμῶν* 32, 42.

<sup>11</sup> ἔχομεν *we shall have:* ἔχω.

<sup>12</sup> Use *πότ*. See 103.

<sup>13</sup> *eis* with the accusative.

<sup>14</sup> ὄψωμεν: aor. subjv. of *ὀδον* 91, 109. Cp. number 11.

## XIV Ω - VERBS

### THE Θη-, THE Η-, AND THE FUTURE PASSIVE.

#### PRINCIPAL PARTS

3 Learn the aorist and the future passive, indicative, subjunctive, and infinitive in 254, 336 and a.

a For the *θη:-* passive study 302-305, 308; 310.

b For the *η:-* passive study 334-337.

144 Observe that the subjunctive is like the subjunctive of εἶμι 384 a. The combined endings, 108, 109, are added to and contracted with the final vowel of the *tense-stem*, thus giving a circumflex on ωη.

a In the future indicative second singular notice the dropping of σ in σαι 263 b.

#### 145 PRINCIPAL PARTS OF VERBS

Learn 311. Review 268 and a, 290 and a; /18 a, /33 a. Complete 341 by adding the passive aorists.

$$\begin{array}{l} \text{a A } \pi\text{-mute } \left. \begin{array}{c} \pi \\ \beta \\ \phi \end{array} \right\} + \theta = \phi\theta, \text{ a } \kappa\text{-mute } \left. \begin{array}{c} \kappa \\ \gamma \\ \chi \end{array} \right\} \\ + \theta = \chi\theta, \text{ a } \tau\text{-mute } \left. \begin{array}{c} \tau \\ \delta \\ \theta \end{array} \right\} + \theta = \sigma\theta. \text{ See 43 a, b.} \end{array}$$

b Write the principal parts of παύω, βουλεύω, ἐπι-βουλεύω, συμ-βουλεύω, παιδεύω, στρατεύω, συ-στρατεύω, πιστεύω, καλύω, λείπω, ἄγω. Use the form in /34 and 341 instead of that in 311, keeping the letters of the *verb-stem* in column.

#### 146 The Passive Systems, Indicative, Subjunctive, and Infinitive:

AORIST	FUTURE	AORIST	FUTURE
φανθῆ:ε- show	φανθήσο:ε- show	φανῆ:ε- appear	φανήσο:ε- appear
ἐ-φάνθη-ν φανθῶ φανθῆ-ναι	φανθήσο-μαι φανθήσε-σθαι	ἐ-φάνη-ν φανῶ φανῆ-ναι	φανήσο-μαι φανήσε-σθαι

147 Ei clauses, εἰ + ἄν = ἔάν, and the subjunctive 650.

## VOCABULARY AND EXERCISES

- 8 δοῦλος -ου ὁ *slave*; compare ἀνδρά-  
ποdon 66  
ᾠρᾱ -ᾱς ἡ *fixed time, season*.  
Latin *hōra*; *horo-scopo*  
ἐλεύθερος -ᾱ -ον *free, independent*.  
Latin *liber*  
δώσω *shall give*  
ἐστάλην, aor. ἡ- passive of στέλλω,  
*was sent*  
ἦκω *have come, come; return*
- ἐφάνην, aor. ἡ- passive of φαίνω, *ap-  
peared, was seen.* phantasm  
ἐφάνθη, aor. θη- passive of φαίνω,  
*was shown*  
κωλύω, A and inf. clause, *hinder,  
oppose, prevent*  
αὐτίκα adv. *immediately*  
\*ἔἴ adv. 871 c, *indeed, now, of  
course*  
ἔάν conj. with subjv. *if; ei + ἄν*

- 9 Οὗτος ὁ πόλεμος ἐπαύθη, παυθήσεται, πέπαυται. ἔφη  
τοῦτον τὸν πόλεμον παυθῆναι, παυθήσεσθαι, πεπαυ-  
σθαι. 2 ὁ ἐμὸς φίλος ἐπιστεύθη ὑπὸ πολλῶν· πιστὸς  
γὰρ ἦν αὐτοῖς. 3 ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ ἐφάνησαν κῶμαι πολ-  
λαί. 4 καλῶς ἐπαιδεύθησαν οὗτοι οἱ νεᾶνιαι, οὐχ ὡς  
δοῦλοι ἀλλ' ὡς ἐλεύθεροι καὶ πολῖται. 5 τί ἐκωλύθη-  
μεν κελεύειν<sup>1</sup> αὐτὸν μὴ ἐλθεῖν; 6 ἡμῖν<sup>2</sup> μὲν ἐφάνησαν  
πιστοὶ εἶναι οἱ δοῦλοι ἀλλὰ οὐκ ἐπιστεύθησαν ὑπὸ τῶν  
ἄλλων. 7 πιστοὶ ὦμεν στρατιῶται ἵνα πιστευθῶμεν  
ὑπὸ τῶν λοχαγῶν. 8 οὐχ ᾠρᾱ ἐστὶν ἡμῖν ἀπ-ελθεῖν,  
ἕως ἂν οἱ στρατηγοὶ κελεύσωσιν. 9 ὑπὸ τῶν<sup>3</sup> φίλων  
τοῦτο ἡμῖν ἐφάνθη δίκαιον εἶναι. 10 Χειρίσοφος μὲν  
δὴ ἐπὶ<sup>4</sup> πλοῖα ἐστάλη οἱ δὲ ἄλλοι στρατιῶται ἔμενον  
ἡμέρας<sup>5</sup> πολλὰς ἐν ταῖς κώμαις, ἕως ἂν ἦκη.<sup>6</sup> II  
Περσικοὶ στρατιῶται ἐφάνησαν ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ ἀλλ' οὐκ  
ἦλθον ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον ἕως οἱ οπλῖται ἀπ-ἦλθον.  
12 αὐτίκα ἔλθωμεν πρὸς τοὺς πολεμίους ἵνα ἐλεύθεροι  
ᾶμεν. 13 εἰ Κλέαρχος εἶπεν ὅτι ἀγαθοὶ ἦσαν, οὕτως  
ἔχει. 14 ἐὰν δοῦλοι εὖ παιδευθῶσι, τούτοις πιστεύομεν.



15 ἔὰν ἀγαθοὶ ὦμεν, οἱ πολῖται πολλὰ δῶρα δώσουσιν ἡμῖν. 16 ἔὰν μὴ ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ ὦσιν οἱ πολέμιοι, εἰς τὴν κώμην ἔλθωμεν, ἵνα καταλάβωμεν αὐτούς. 17 ἔὰν κελεύσῃς τούτους τοὺς δούλους μὴ λέγειν, οὐ λέγουσιν. οὐ λέξουσιν.

150 Let us not remain here, but let us go immediately. 2 Whom of our soldiers shall<sup>7</sup> we now trust? 3 He was so noble that he-had<sup>8</sup> many friends. 4 He appeared to be faithful, but was not. 5 This wicked satrap will be deposed from the government. 6 If he has asked-advice-of his friends,<sup>9</sup> it will be well.

151 <sup>1</sup> καλεῖν from telling: like a from genitive. We could also write τοῦ κελεῖν 572 c.

<sup>2</sup> ἡμῖν μὲν to us indeed 117, 8. Here the second contrasted member is marked by ἀλλά 669 a.

<sup>3</sup> τῶν our.

<sup>4</sup> ἐπὶ for, after.

<sup>5</sup> ἡμέρας: accusative time how long.

<sup>6</sup> ἔως ἂν ἦκη until he should return, for him to return. 138 a.

<sup>7</sup> Implying that none can be trusted; express by the subjunctive 471 a.

<sup>8</sup> Use the dative of possessor 524 a.

<sup>9</sup> What case is required? See 142, 4.

## XV Ω-VERBS

### PRINCIPAL PARTS OF -άω -έω, AND -όω VERBS AND MUTE VERBS

152 Review 311. Learn all the verbs in 341 and all the cross references. Read aloud many times. Write a partial synopsis of each tense-system except the perfect middle, taking one from each verb.

153 Learn 317. The verb-stems thus end in α:ᾱ, α:η, ε:η, or ο:ω.

νικά:η conquer	αίτε:η ask for	ἀξιο:ω deem worthy	αἶρε:η, ἄλ- take	δοκ-, δοκε- seem
νικά-ω νική-σω ἐνίκη-σα νε-νίκη-κα νε-νίκη-μαι ἐνίκη-θη-ν	αἰτέ-ω αἰτή-σω ἤτη-σα ἤτη-κα ἤτη-μαι ἤτη-θη-ν	ἀξιό-ω ἀξιό-σω ἡξιό-σα ἡξιό-κα ἡξιό-μαι ἡξιό-θη-ν	αἰρέ-ω αἰρή-σω εἶλ-ο-ν ἤρη-κα ἤρη-μαι ἤρέ-θη-ν	δοκέ-ω δόξω ἔ-δοξα  δέ-δογ-μαι ἐ-δόχ-θη-ν

- 4 Hereafter the principal parts of all verbs as they occur in the vocabularies will be required. They are to be found in the VERB-LIST on page 299 of the *Grammar*. All irregular in any particular are given. Each pupil should check each verb in the list as it is studied. This will be necessary to enable him to find what he must have for reviews.

Check and learn for this lesson: ἄγω<sup>1</sup>, αἶρέω<sup>2</sup>, ἀκούω<sup>3</sup>, ἄρχω, γράφω, δοκέω<sup>4</sup>, ἔχω<sup>5</sup>, κελεύω<sup>6</sup>, λέγω<sup>7</sup> *speak*, λείπω<sup>8</sup>, πάσχω<sup>9</sup>, πείθω, πέμπω<sup>10</sup>, πράττω<sup>10</sup>, τάττω, φεύγω<sup>11</sup>, φυλάττω.

<sup>1</sup> ἄγω 350, 10; the aorist stem has reduplication, ἄγ-αγο:ε-, which with augment and personal ending makes ἤγ-αγο-ν.

<sup>2</sup> αἶρέω 350, 9; the aorist takes syllabic augment ἔ-λο-ν contracting to εἶλο-ν. Compare 267.

<sup>3</sup> ἀκούω: for future ἀκούσο-μαι see 392. The aorist passive assumes σ.

<sup>4</sup> δοκέω: for the two stems δοκ- and δοκε- see 262.

<sup>5</sup> ἔχω: a form of the stem ἔχ- was σέχ- which in the future was weakened to ἔχ- giving ἔξω. See 54. In the imperfect ἔ-σεχο-ν became ἔ-σχον, εἶχον 267. In the aorist ἔ-σεχο-ν became ἔ-σχο-ν 350, 6.

<sup>6</sup> κελεύω: some verbs assume σ in the perfect middle or aorist passive, or in both. Compare ἀκούω.

<sup>7</sup> λέγω: the perfect εἶρηκα is from another verb. Read 391.

<sup>8</sup> λείπω: the perfect λέ-λοιπ-α shows a vowel change, ε to ο indicated by εο, that is common. Compare πέ-πομφ-α from πέμπω. So we have λόγος *speech* from λέγω *speak*, τρόπος *turning* from τρέπω *turn*. Read 25.

<sup>9</sup> πάσχω 392; 350, 3.

<sup>10</sup> πράττω: look for πράσσω. So with other verbs in -ττω look for -σσω. The principal parts are regular.

<sup>11</sup> φεύγω 392, 350, 2.

**a** Regular forms are used in *ἐρωτάω*, but there are some more common irregular forms to be given later. A few other verbs that have already been used will also be reserved.

**b** Ἀθροίζω *collect* is regular, verb-stem ἀθροιδ-, like γυμνάζω 341.

**c** Ἦκω *have come* has only ἦξω.

**d** For the perfect ἀκ-ήκο-α *have heard* see 291 c.

**e** The futures in -σομαι are regular in inflection, -σομαι, -σει, -σεται 144 a.

**f** The perfect passive of κελεύω assumes σ, κε-κέλευ-σ-μαι, and is inflected according to 322 b.

155 Remember that the inflections of all these verbs, and of others to come, are like the tense-systems already given, perfectly regular. Remember also that, no matter how simple or how complicated the present, the other tenses are not made from the present but from the *verb-stem*, and some verbs have more than one stem.

The **classes** to which the present stems belong will be taken up gradually. Always notice the *verb-stem* and use it in making the principal parts.

Review 256, 257 (1). Learn 259 (3) c. σσ is an older form for ττ, τάσσω = τάττω.

#### VOCABULARY AND EXERCISES

- |                                    |      |   |
|------------------------------------|------|---|
| 156 ἀγγελος -ου ὁ messenger.       | ang- | οὐκ ἔφη, inf. clause, <i>said that not,</i> |
| lus, angel                         |      | <i>denied, refused; equivalent to</i>       |
| νίκη -ης ἡ victory; νικάω 153      |      | Latin <i>negāvit</i>                        |
| σκοπός -οῦ ὁ watcher, scout        |      | ἐνθά-δε adv. <i>hither, here; -δε =</i>     |
| σπονδή -ης ἡ libation; plural      |      | <i>-ward, here-ward</i>                     |
| σπονδαί -ων truce, treaty. spondee |      | ἐπι-μελῶς adv. <i>carefully</i>             |
| ισχυρός -ᾶ -όν strong, mighty,     |      | οἰκα-δε adv. <i>homeward, home; οἶκος</i>   |
| stubborn                           |      | 30  |

πλησίον adv. 599, G near

τότε adv. then

χθές adv. yesterday

# VERBS

αἰρέω take, capture; mid. choose.  
heresy, di-acresis

αἰτέω, A of person and A of thing,  
ask for, demand; inf. clause,  
ask one to, ask that

ἀξιόω, A of person and G of thing,  
deem worthy; inf. clause, claim  
as a right, ask, demand

δηλόω make clear, show; δηλος  
30

δοκέω think; seem, seem best. dog-  
ma, para-dox

ἐρωτάω, A of person and A of  
thing or interrog. clause, ask a  
question, inquire of

νικάω conquer, have conquered, am  
victorious; νίκη

ποιέω make; do. poem ποίημα; poet  
ποιητής

πράττω accomplish, do. practical  
πρακτικός; practico

τάττω arrange, assign. tactics  
τάξις; syn-tax σύν /25

φυλάττω guard, watch; mid. A  
guard against; φυλακή 79

- 57 Οἱ πολῖται ἡρώτησαν<sup>1</sup> τὸν σατράπην τί ἐπαύθη τῆς ἀρχῆς. 2 ὁ στρατηγὸς ἡρωτάτο<sup>1</sup> πόσους στρατιωτάς τότε ἦθροισεν. 3 ᾗτήσαμεν<sup>2</sup> αὐτὸν τοὺς ὀπλίτας ὅσους εἶχεν ἵνα λάβωμεν τὸ ἰσχυρὸν χωρίον· ὁ δὲ δισχυλίους ἔπεμψεν. 4 ἐπιμελῶς τάξουσι τοὺς στρατιωτάς ἵνα φυλάξωσι τὴν κώμην ἡμῖν.<sup>3</sup> 5 ὃ στρατιώται, νενικήκατε πολλὰς νικάς<sup>4</sup> σὺν τοῖς θεοῖς. 6 ὑπὸ τῶν πολιτῶν οὗτος ὁ νεανίας ἡξιώθη δώρων<sup>5</sup> πολλῶν. 7 σκοποὶ πάλιν ἐπέμφθησαν ἵνα ἴδωσιν ὃ τι οἱ Πέρσαι ἐποίησαν.<sup>6</sup> 8 ἤκομεν ἐνθάδε κελεύσαι τοὺς ἀγγέλους μὴ λέγειν περὶ σπονδῶν. 9 ἔπεισαν αὐτὸν γράψαι ἐπιστολὴν ὅτι ἤξει<sup>7</sup> οἴκαδε καὶ ἄξει ὅσους ἂν ἔχῃ<sup>8</sup> πελταστάς. 10 ὁ Εὐφράτης ποταμὸς μακρὸς ἐστὶ καὶ ἐπ' αὐτῷ εἶδομεν πολλὰς κώμας μικράς. 11 ἐφάνησαν χθὲς οἱ πολέμιοι βουλεύειν ἄγειν στρατιωτάς ἐπὶ τοὺς ἡμετέρους φίλους, ἀλλ' ἔδοξεν<sup>9</sup> αὐτοῖς μὴ ἐλθεῖν. 12 ἄλλοι δὲ βάρβαροι ἐφάνησαν ἐν τῷ πλησίον<sup>10</sup>

παραδείσω πολλοὶ καὶ πολέμιοι. 13 τότε ἐπέισαμεν αὐτοὺς μὴ πάλιν ἀθροΐσαι τοὺς δισχιλίους ὀπλίτας. 14 ἔδοξεν ἡμῖν μὴ ἐλεῖν τὰ πλοῖα ἐκ τοῦ ποταμοῦ· ὥστε<sup>11</sup> τοὺς μὲν ἵππους αἰρήσομεν, λείβομεν δὲ τὰ πλοῖα. 15 οὗτοι οἱ ἄγγελοι ἤκον καὶ εἶπον ὅτι Κλέαρχος οὐκ ἔφη ἄρξεν τῆς στρατιᾶς. 16 ὁ Πέρσης ἔδεισεν ἐλθεῖν ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον· ἐδήλωσε δὲ τοῦτο οἷς<sup>12</sup> τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ ἔπραττεν.

- 158 If we take the village, we shall guard it well. 2 They asked the messenger how many men were in the fort. 3 We shall send to Klearchos the soldiers that we have. 4 As long as we remained in camp, the satrap was friendly to us. 5 The scouts asked the captain for<sup>18</sup> a thousand hoplites.

159 <sup>1</sup> ἠρώτησαν 535. In 2 ἠρωτᾶτο he was asked (*impf. pass.* to be given later) retains the second object.

<sup>2</sup> ἤτήσαμεν: these three sentences show the difference in meaning between *ῥωτάω* and *αἰτέω*.

<sup>3</sup> ἡμῖν for us 523.

<sup>4</sup> νικάς 536 a. We say *win victories*.

<sup>5</sup> δόρων 516 a end.

<sup>6</sup> ἐποίησαν *had done*. The aorist may be translated by the perfect or pluperfect 463.

<sup>7</sup> ὅτι ἔξει that he would return.

<sup>8</sup> ὅσους ἂν ἔχη as many as he had.

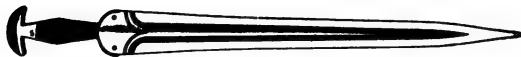
<sup>9</sup> ἔδοξεν αὐτοῖς it seemed best to them; they decided is a very common translation.

<sup>10</sup> πλησίον in the park near by 555 a.

<sup>11</sup> ὥστε and so 639 a.

<sup>12</sup> οἷς by what: a *by* dative 526. Consult 613 b, 614. οἷς is equivalent to τοῦτοις & by that which. The English construction is the same.

<sup>13</sup> αἰτέω ask for.



Greek sword.

## XVI Ω - VERBS

THE MIDDLE FORMS OF THE PRESENT, FUTURE, AND SIGMATIC AND THEMATIC AORIST SYSTEMS, INDICATIVE, SUBJUNCTIVE, INFINITIVE, AND PARTICIPLE

0 Learn the inflections in 253, 254, 348. Review 263 and b and 44.

a Present and future systems 264, 265, 268, 269, 273-278.

b Aorist systems 279-282, 286, 349.

1/ In the **subjunctive** the mode-suffix  $\omega\eta$  unites with  
 -ωμαι the *primary* personal endings giving combined endings, which are used in all subjunctives that have the middle endings.  
 -η  
 -ηται Observe that in all the above tenses the combined endings are *substituted* for the final vowel of the *tense-stem*. See 108, 109  
 -ωμεθα  
 -ησθε  
 -ωνται and compare the forms.

2 In 499, 500 a, b carefully examine the verbs already used. See /37 and read 394, 395 for deponents.

3 Principal parts of some **Passive Deponents** :

βουλ-, βουλη- <i>wish</i>	δυνα-η- <i>can</i>	οι-, οιη- <i>think</i>	πορευ- <i>advance</i>
βούλ-ομαι βουλή-σομαι βε-βούλη-μαι ἐ-βουλή-θην	δύνα-μαι δυνή-σομαι δε-δύνη-μαι ἐ-δυνή-θην	οἶ-ομαι οἰή-σομαι ᾠή-θην	πορεύ-ομαι πορεύ-σομαι πε-πόρευ-μαι ἐ-πορεύ-θην

A list of the verbs that are used as passive deponents in this book is given in /85.

/64 Inflections of some **Middle Forms** :

	PRESENT	PRESENT	σα-AORIST
TENSE-STEM . MEANING . . .	δυνα- <i>can</i>	οιο:ε- <i>think</i>	πεισα- <i>persuade</i>
INDICATIVE	δύνα-μαι δύνα-σαι δύνα-ται δυνά-μεθα δύνα-σθε δύνα-νται	οἶο-μαι οἶε οἶε-ται οἶό-μεθα οἶε-σθε οἶο-νται	ἐπεισά-μην ἐπείσω ἐπείσα-το ἐπεισά-μεθα ἐπείσα-σθε ἐπείσα-ντο
INFINITIVE	δύνα-σθαι	οἶε-σθαι	πείσα-σθαι
PARTICIPLE	δυνά-μενος	οἶό-μενος	πεισά-μενος

IMPERFECT	σα-AORIST	IMPERFECT	ο:ε-AORIST
δυνα- <i>can</i>	άρξα- <i>begin</i>	οιο:ε- <i>think</i>	ἰλο:ε- <i>choose</i>
ἐ-δυνά-μην ἐ-δύνω ἐ-δύνα-το ἐ-δυνά-μεθα ἐ-δύνα-σθε ἐ-δύνα-ντο	ἤρξά-μην ἤρξω ἤρξα-το ἤρξα-μεθα ἤρξα-σθε ἤρξα-ντο	ὥό-μην, ᾧμην ᾧου ᾧε-το ᾧό-μεθα ᾧε-σθε ᾧο-ντο	εἰλό-μην εἴλω εἴλε-το εἰλό-μεθα εἴλε-σθε εἴλο-ντο

**a** The only forms that will give trouble are the second singular indicatives and the thematic aorist infinitive. Observe them carefully : *παύει*, *παύσει*, *ἐπαύου*, *ἐλπίου*, *ἐδύνω*, *ἐπαύσω*, *λιπέσθαι*, *ἐλέσθαι*.

35 Partial **synopses** by tense-systems :

PRESENT DEPONENT	PRESENT MIDDLE	ΣΑ-AORIST MIDDLE	ΟΙΕ-AORIST MIDDLE
δυνα- <i>can</i>	ἀγο:ε- <i>drive</i>	πισα- <i>believe</i>	λο:ε- <i>choose</i>
δύνα-μαι ἐ-δυνά-μην δύν-ωμαι δύνα-σθαι δυνά-μενος	ἄγο-μαι ἡγό-μην ἄγ-ωμαι ἄγε-σθαι ἀγό-μενος	ἐ-πεισά-μην πίσ-ωμαι πίσα-σθαι πεισά-μενος	εἰλό-μην ἔλ-ωμαι ἐλέ-σθαι ἐλό-μενος

Some synopses should be written each day. Always write the *tense-stem*.

- 6 Observe that **δύναμαι**, though without tense-suffix, makes the imperfect second singular like forms with a tense suffix and not as in the present ; also that the subjunctive is made like the forms with a tense-suffix /6/.

a Check in the Verb-list and learn **βούλομαι, δύναμαι, οἶμαι**.

## VOCABULARY AND EXERCISES

- 7 **βούλομαι** pass. dep. /85, *will, wish, desire*. Latin *volō*  
**δύναμαι** pass. dep. /85, *can, am able*; equivalent to Latin *possum*. *dynamite, dynasty* *δυνάστης* *ruler, nobleman*  
*κινδυνεύω* *encounter danger, run a risk*; *κίνδυνος* *danger*  
*μετα-πέμπομαι* dep. *send after, summon*  
*οἶμαι, οἶμαι* pass. dep. /85. inf. *clause, think, believe, suppose*  
**πείθω** A *persuade* 39; *πείθομαι* mid. and pass., pass. dep. /85, D *believe, obey*  
**πορεύομαι** pass. dep. /85, *go, proceed, march, advance*; *πόρος, ἔ-πορος* 72  
*συμ-πορεύομαι* D *travel with, accompany*  
*συ-στρατεύομαι* dep. D *take the field with, join in an expedition*  
*ἄνευ* adv. 599, G *without*



ἔτι adv. yet, still, longer; ἔτι δέ,  
πρὸς δ' ἔτι besides

καί adv. 670 a, also, even, empha-  
sis on what follows

ἀντί prep. G over against; instead

of; πόλεμος ἀντὶ εἰρήνης war in-  
stead of peace; ἀπ' ὧν ἔλαβον in  
return for what I received

\*οὖν conj. 673 a, therefore, then,  
accordingly, at any rate

168 Χθὲς οἱ ἡμέτεροι στρατιῶται συν-εστρατεύσαντο αὐτῷ<sup>1</sup>  
ἐπὶ τοὺς Πέρσας, οὓς ἐφυλάττετο<sup>2</sup> πολλὰς ἡμέρας.  
2 πορευθῶμεν οὖν οἴκαδε μετὰ τῶνδε τῶν φίλων· οὐ  
γὰρ δυνάμεθα αὐτοῦ μένειν ἄνευ τῶν ὀπλιτῶν τούτων.  
3 ἔτι δὲ καὶ λέγονται πολέμοι βάρβαροι ἀθροίζεσθαι  
πολλοὶ ἐπὶ τοῦ πλησίον ποταμοῦ. 4 ὥστε οὐ βούλο-  
μαι κινδυνεύσαι καὶ τῷ ἐνθάδε μένειν.<sup>3</sup> 5 καὶ τότε  
δὲ ἐπαύσαντο τοῦ πολέμου. 6 οἱ τότε πολῖται συν-  
εβουλευόντο τοῖς στρατηγοῖς<sup>1</sup> καὶ ἐπείθοντο τούτοις.<sup>4</sup>  
7 καὶ<sup>5</sup> πρὸς ταῦτα δὲ βουλευσόμεθα. πρὸς ταῦτα  
βουλευσώμεθα. 8 μετὰ ταῦτα ὁ στρατηγὸς μετ-  
επέμψατο τοὺς δύο λοχᾶγούς εἰς τὴν σκηνήν. τοῦτόν  
φᾶσιν ἄρξασθαι<sup>6</sup> λέγειν τάδε. 9 συμ-πορεύονται  
οὖν παρασάγγας πέντε καὶ οἶμαι αὐτοὺς συμ-βουλεύ-  
σεσθαι τῷ τῆς χώρας σατράπῃ. 10 οὐκ οἶόμεθα τοὺς  
πολεμίους δύνασθαι ἐλεῖν καὶ τὸ ἰσχυρὸν χωρίον τοῦτο.  
11 ποῖ ᾤοντο τοὺς δούλους ἐλθεῖν; εἵπομεν αὐτοῖς,  
ἀλλ' οὐκ ἐπείθοντο.<sup>7</sup> 12 αἵρησόμεθα Δημοκράτην  
ἄρχειν<sup>8</sup> τῶν ἡμετέρων κωμῶν. 13 οἱ στρατιῶται  
πάλιν εἶλοντο Δεξιππον ἄρχειν τῆς στρατιᾶς ἀντὶ τοῦ  
Ξενίου· ὁ δὲ ἤρξατο<sup>9</sup> ἀπὸ τῶν θεῶν. 14 ἐὰν δυνά-  
μεθα ἐλεῖν τοὺς δούλους πείσονται<sup>10</sup> ἔτι ἡμῖν. 15 ἐὰν  
οἱ σκοποὶ ἐπιμελῶς πορεύωνται οὐκ οἶμαι κινδυνεύσειν  
αὐτούς. 16 οὐκ ἐδύναντο οἱ ἄγγελοι μένειν· ὁ γὰρ  
σατράπῃς μετ-επέμψατο αὐτοὺς ἵνα συμ-βουλεύσῃται.

- 9 They did not desire to go. 2 They thought that the Persians were at the river. 3 We were not able to see the soldiers. 4 Do not send-after your friends. 5 They chose to remain and obey us.

O <sup>1</sup> αὐτῷ 525: a with dative. See 598 a.

<sup>2</sup> οὓς ἐφυλάττετο against whom he had been guarding. Notice the middle 500 b and the translation of the imperfect.

<sup>3</sup> τῷ ἐνθάδε μέναν by remaining here 526 b. Consult 575.

<sup>4</sup> τοῖσι 520 a: a to dative.

<sup>5</sup> καὶ πρὸς ταῦτα 84 and in reference to this also.

<sup>6</sup> ἄρξασθαι 500 b. Notice the

middle *began to speak*, nearly like ἄρξασθαι τοῦ λόγου *began his speech*; not *was the first to speak*.

<sup>7</sup> οὐκ ἠπίθοντο they did not believe.

<sup>8</sup> ἄρχαν 565 and a, 510 a.

<sup>9</sup> ἤρξατο consulted the gods first. Notice the middle *made his beginning*.

<sup>10</sup> πείσονται: the context will tell whether πείσομαι is from πείθομαι obey or πάσχω experience.

## XVII Ω - VERBS

### THE LIQUID FUTURE AND AORIST, AND THE ROOT-AORIST, INDICATIVE, SUBJUNCTIVE, AND INFINITIVE

- 7/ Learn the liquid future and aorist, indicative, subjunctive, and infinitive, active and middle 331.

a Study 323, 324, 327-329. In the future ε contracts with ο:ε giving the circumflex wherever possible. Examine with cross references φαίνω, κρίνω, κτείνω, μένω in 330. Write the *tense-stems* στελεο:ε-, στελα-; φανεο:ε-, φηνα-; μενεο:ε-, μεινα-; κρινεο:ε-, κρῖνα-; κτενεο:ε-, κτεινα-.

- 72 Learn the root-aorists ἔστην, ἔγνων 366-368 a; ἔβην, ἐπριάμην 369 (a). Write the *tense-stems* στα:η-, βα:η-, γνο:ω-, πρια-.

a In the subjunctive the combined endings are *added* to the *tense-stem*. In the resulting contraction

α and ε of the stem are absorbed<sup>1</sup> and ο makes ω throughout. The accent is always circumflex. But ἐπριάμην is inflected according to /66.

b Check in the Verb-list and learn for this lesson ἀγ-γάλλω,<sup>2</sup> βάλλω,<sup>3</sup> κρίνω, μένω, στέλλω,<sup>4</sup> φαίνω. For ἀπο-κρίνομαι *reply*, a middle deponent, see κρίνω. Reserve the others.

## VOCABULARY AND EXERCISES

- 173 δεῖλη -ης ἡ afternoon, evening γ. . . together with; (σ)ῶμα, εὐ-αξα 79.  
λίθος -ου ὁ stone. litho-graph, mēno- Latin simul; SAME  
lith //4 ἐνταῦθα adv. here, there; then  
σταθμός -ου ὁ standing place, stopping place, station; day's march; στα-, ἔστην 406, 400 b. ἐντεῦθεν adv. from here, from there; thereafter; therefore  
Latin stō, statū; STAND, sy-stem ἤδη adv. already, now, at once  
σόν 178 μῆκε-τι, οὐκ-έτι adv. no more, no longer, differing as the simple μή and οὐ 486; μή and οὐ + ἔτι 167  
χρόνος -ου ὁ time. chrono-logy; οὐ-πω adv. not yet  
chrono meter μέτρον measure ἀμφί prep. on both sides. amphi-  
ἐπιτήδειος -ᾱ -ον suitable, proper, theater; amphi-blous βίος 30  
necessary; τὰ ἐπιτήδεια provi-  
sions. G about, concerning; rare in  
μέσος -η -ον middle; μέσος ὁ the prose  
middle of; μέσον or τὸ μέσον the A round, about; οἱ ἀμφὶ Χειρί-  
center 556. Latin medius; meso- σοφον Cheirisophos and his  
potamia ποταμός 50 men; ἀμφὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια εἶναι be  
μεστός -ῆ -όν G full, filled with, busied about the provisions;  
abounding in ἀμφὶ δορηστών about supper-  
δέκα ten. Latin decem; decade, deca- time  
gon, deca-logos ὑπέρ prep. over. Latin super 54;  
τριᾶ-κοντα thirty. Latin trigintā hyper-borean, hyper-critical, hyper-  
ἅμα adv. D at the same time, to- bole βάλλω

<sup>1</sup> But after ρ cp. 369 (a) ἔδρᾱν, δρᾶς.

<sup>2</sup> ἀγάλλω 259 a.

<sup>3</sup> βάλλω 259 a.; 330 a, 350, 4.

<sup>4</sup> στέλλω 259 a.

ὅ *over, beyond, for the sake of;*  
 ὑπὲρ τῆς κεφαλῆς *above the*  
*head;* ὑπὲρ τῆς Ἑλλάδος *in de-*  
*fence of Greece*  
 Ἀ *over, above, more than;* ὑπὲρ  
 τὴν δύναμιν *beyond his ability*

• VERBS

ἀγγέλλω *bring news, announce;*  
 ἄγγελος /56. *ev-angelist* εὐ /39  
 ἀπ-αγγέλλω, *ἔτι* clause, *bring or*  
*take a message, report*  
 παρ-αγγέλλω, *inf. clause, pass along*  
*an order, command*  
 βαίνω *go, walk. Latin vadum*  
*ford; basis βάσις*  
 δια-βαίνω *A go through, cross; διὰ*  
 /178

βάλλω *throw, throw at, pelt. pro-*  
*blem; sym-bol* σύν /78  
 κρίνω *separate; judge, decide.*  
*Latin crimen decision; crisis,*  
*crisis* κρίτης *judge*  
 ἀπο-κρίνομαι *dep., ἔτι* clause, *give*  
*a decision; answer, reply*  
 στέλλω *equip, send; ἐπι-στολή* /14.  
*epi-stle* ἐπί /78; *apo-stle* ἀπό /78  
 φαίνω *show; mid. appear. phase,*  
*fancy, em-phasis* ἐν /78.  
 ἔβην, *aor. of βαίνω, went*  
 ἔγνων, *aor. of γινώσκω, recognized,*  
*knew*  
 ἔστην, *aorist, stood; σταθμός.*  
 STAND  
 ἐπρίμην *dep., aor. of ὠνόμαζαι,*  
*bought*

14 \* Ἦδη ἦν περὶ μέσον ἡμέρας καὶ ἔβησαν εἰς τὴν κώμην καὶ εἶλον πολλοὺς καὶ δούλους καὶ ἐλευθέρους. 2 ὁ δοῦλος ἔβη εἰς μέσσην<sup>1</sup> τὴν ἀγορὰν εἰς ἣν ἐπέμφθη ὑπὸ τοῦ πολίτου ἵνα τὰ ἐπιτήδεια λάβῃ. 3 ἀμφὶ δείλῃν ἦλθον πάλιν εἰς τὸ πεδῖον καὶ ἔστησαν αὐτοῦ ὅθεν οἱ πολέμιοι ἔφυγον εἰς χωρίον ὑπὲρ τῆς κώμης. 4 ἡ κώμη ἐξ ἧς ἔβημεν ἦν μεστή τῶν ἐπιτηδείων.<sup>2</sup> 5 οὐκ ἐδύναντο μέναι ἐν ταύτῃ τῇ χώρᾳ ἡμέρας πολλάς. 6 ἐντεῦθεν ἅμα τῇ ἡμέρᾳ<sup>3</sup> ἐπορεύθησαν σταθμοὺς<sup>4</sup> δέκα παρασάγγας τριάκοντα εἰς κώμην μικράν· ἐνταῦθα ἔμειναν μακρὸν χρόνον καὶ ἔλαβον τὰ ἐπιτήδεια. 7 οἱ Πέρσαι ἀπεκρίναντο ὅτι οἱ πολέμιοι πορεύονται παρὰ τὸν ποταμόν. 8 ἐν χρόνῳ ἔγνωμεν<sup>5</sup> ποῖοι ὀπλιταὶ εἰσιν οἱ ἐν τῇ τούτων χώρᾳ. 9 ἀπήγγειλαν ὅτι οὐκέτι ἐδύ-

ναντο πρίασθαι τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἱκανά. **10** μείνωμεν αὐτοῦ ὅσοι ἂν μὴ δυνώμεθα πάλιν ἐλθεῖν. μηκέτι μένωμεν αὐτοῦ ὅσοι ἂν δυνώμεθα πάλιν ἐλθεῖν. **11** οἱ θεοὶ ἔφηναν ἡμῖν τὴν εἰς σωτηρίαν ὁδόν. **12** ταύτη μὲν τῇ ἡμέρᾳ<sup>6</sup> οὐ δι-έβησαν τὸν ποταμόν· ὁ γὰρ στρατηγὸς οὐχ ἤκεν. τῇ δὲ ὑστεραίᾳ ἦλθεν οὗτος· καὶ τότε δὴ δι-έβησαν. **13** οἱ λοχᾶγοὶ ἀμφὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἦσαν ἐν τῇ ἀγορᾷ· ἐνταῦθα γὰρ ταῦτα ἱκανὰ ἦν. **14** οἱ πολῖται ἔκριναν τὴν τῶν τριάκοντα ἀρχὴν εἶναι κακὴν. **15** παρήγγειλαν πάλιν αὐτοῖς οἱ στρατηγοὶ μὴ ἐλεῖν τοὺς δούλους. **16** τὰ ἄλλα ἔβαλον εἰς τὸν ποταμόν. λίθοις<sup>7</sup> ἔβαλλον αὐτόν.

- 175** We shall not yet answer these men what we think is just.  
**2** All-who came-to-know<sup>8</sup> him judged him to be noble and good. **3** At daybreak<sup>9</sup> we shall begin to advance against the thirty. **4** I can report<sup>10</sup> that they have not yet advanced to the river. **5** If we go now we shall be able to report<sup>10</sup> about evening.

**176** <sup>1</sup> εἰς μέσσην into the midst of **556**.

<sup>2</sup> ἐπιτηδεῶν **512**.

<sup>3</sup> ἡμέρᾳ: a with dative **525**.

<sup>4</sup> σταθμούς **538** fourth example.

<sup>5</sup> ἔγνωμεν we came to know.

<sup>6</sup> ἡμέρᾳ **527** c.

<sup>7</sup> λίθοις with stones: a with da-

tive **526** a. They pelted him with stones; they threw stones at him.

This is the regular form in Greek.

<sup>8</sup> ὅσοι ἔγνωσαν.

<sup>9</sup> ἅμα τῇ ἡμέρᾳ.

<sup>10</sup> Use the aor. inf. of ἀπ-αγ-γέλλω.

## XVIII COMPOUND VERBS

### REVIEW OF PREPOSITIONS AND VERBS

**177** Review **268** and a, **290** and a. Review /29, /30.

Learn **528**. Read **435-437** a, b, **438** a, **597**. In **598** review the prepositions and read a and b. As we have noticed

already the case often determines the translation of the preposition. Such points will be noticed further as they occur.

The Greek language is rich in prepositional compounds and by their use shades of meaning are indicated with extreme nicety, which will be missed unless we note the prepositions carefully.

- 8 We here give the **prepositions** with their common meanings in composition. This list is to be used for reference.

<i>ἀμφί</i> on both sides, about	<i>completely</i> ; a definite object in view. καθ-
<i>ἀνά</i> up, back, again; sometimes also intensive or indefinite	<i>μετά</i> sharing with, in quest of, among; change of state or position. μεθ-
<i>ἀντί</i> against, in return, instead	<i>παρά</i> beside, along by, beyond; transgression
<i>ἀπό</i> away, off, in return, back; also negative. ἀφ-	<i>περί</i> around, exceedingly, surpassing; intensity
<i>διά</i> through, apart, over, across	<i>πρό</i> before, in defense of, forward, forth, in public
<i>εἰς</i> into, in, to, on	<i>πρός</i> to, against, besides, in addition
<i>ἐν</i> in, on, at, among. ἐγ-, ἐμ-	<i>σύν</i> with, together. συγ-, συμ-, συρ-, συ-
<i>ἐξ</i> ἐκ out from, away, from, out; also completion, thoroughness	<i>ὑπέρ</i> over, beyond, in behalf of
<i>ἐπί</i> upon, against, besides, over, after; intensity. ἐφ-	<i>ὑπό</i> under, covertly, slightly, gradually. ὑφ-
<i>κατά</i> down, against; fully,	

- 9 The following **compound verbs** have been already used or appear in this lesson:

<i>ἀνα-βαίνω</i> , A with <i>ἐπί</i> , go up, ascend, mount. <b>Anabasis</b>	<i>control myself, endure</i>
<i>ἀν-έστην</i> aor. stand up, arise	<b>268 d</b>
<i>ἀν-έχω</i> hold up; rise ( <i>ἀν-ίσχω</i> ) of the sun; mid.	<i>ἀπ-αγγέλλω</i> , ὅτι clause, bring back word, report
	<i>ἀπ-άγω</i> lead off or back

ἀφ-αιρέομαι, two A or A of thing and G of person, *take from, deprive*

ἀπ-αιτέω, two A, *ask from, what is due*

ἀπ-ἦλθον *come or go away, return*

ἀπ-ιέναι *go off, return, retreat*

ἀπο-κρίνομαι, D of person and ὅτι clause, *reply*

ἀπο-λείπω *leave by going away from, leave behind, desert*

ἀπο-πέμπω *send off or back; remit; mid. dismiss*

ἀπο-φεύγω *flee away, or too far to be caught, escape*

δια-βαίνω A *go through, cross*  
εἰς-ἦλθον aor., A with prep., *go into, enter*

ἐξ-άγω *bring out; march out*

ἐξ-αίρω *take out; mid. select*

ἐξ-ελαύνω *drive out, expel; march on, proceed*

ἐξ-ἦλθον aor. *go out, march out*

ἐξ-ιέναι *go out*

ἐκ-λείπω *leave by going out, abandon. ec-lipse*

ἐκ-φεύγω *flee out of, escape*

ἐμ-βάλλω *throw in; empty of rivers; invade of armies, εἰς τὴν χώραν*

ἐπι-βουλεύω D *plot against*

ἐπ-έστην aor. *settle on, stop, halt*

ἐπ-ἦλθον aor. *come to or against; D attack*

ἐπι-θύμειω G *set my heart on, desire 438 a; θῦμός heart, desire*

ἐπι-πείθομαι D *am won over to, accede to*

ἐπι-χειρέω *put my hands to, attempt 438 a; χεῖρ hand*

κατα-βαίνω, G with ἀπό, *go down, dismount*

κατα-βάλλω *throw down, let fall*

κατ-έστην aor., A with εἰς, *settle down, take my place, become established*

κατ-έχω *hold down, occupy; with inf. clause, restrain from*

καθ-ήκω *come down, extend down*

κατα-λαμβάνω *capture; overtake; find. cata-lepsy*

κατα-λείπω *leave by putting down or leave behind to perish; forsake*

κατα-πέμπω *send down*

κατα-φεύγω *flee down; flee for refuge, εἰς καταφυγὴν*

μετα-πέμπομαι *send among after one to come to myself, summon*

παρ-αγγέλλω, D or A, and inf. clause, *send word along, command*

παρ-εἶναι D *be beside one, be present*

παρ-έχω <i>have beside, provide</i>	συμ-βουλεύω D <i>plan with, advise</i> ; mid. <i>consult with, ask advice of</i>
παρ-ἦλθον aor., A <i>go by, pass along</i>	συν-εισῆλθον aor. <i>enter with</i> ; <i>go in together</i>
προ-άγω <i>lead forward</i>	συν-εξῆλθον aor. <i>go out with</i> ; <i>go out together</i>
προ-ἦλθον aor. <i>go before</i> ; <i>go forward</i>	συν-ἦλθον aor. <i>come together, assemble</i>
προ-ιέναι <i>go on before</i> ; <i>advance</i>	συν-πορεύομαι D <i>march with, accompany</i> 185
προ-καταλαμβάνω <i>seize before, preoccupy</i>	συν-πράττω, D of person and A of thing, <i>do with one, help in doing, coöperate with</i>
προσ-άγω <i>lead to, lead against</i> ; <i>advance</i>	συ-στρατεύομαι D <i>serve with, join an expedition</i>
προσ-αίτέω, two A, <i>ask in addition or more</i>	
προσ-ἦλθον aor., D of person, A of place with εἰς, <i>go to</i>	
συν-άγω <i>bring together, collect</i>	

## VOCABULARY AND EXERCISES

ὁ ἥλιος -ον ὁ <i>sun. hello-graph, hallo-trope</i>	ἕτερος -ᾱ -ον <i>the other, one of two, hetero-geneous</i>
λόφος -ον ὁ <i>ridge; hill, hight</i>	πρῶτος -η -ον <i>first</i> ; πρῶτον adv. <i>first. Latin primus and primum; proto-type</i>
μισθός -ου ὁ <i>wages, pay</i>	ἡνίκα conj. adv. <i>at which time, when</i>
ἄκρος -ᾱ -ον <i>pointed; topmost</i> ; τὰ ἄκρα <i>the heights</i> ; ἡ ἄκρᾱ 72. Latin <i>acer sharp; acme</i>	ὥς τάχιστα adv. <i>as soon or rapidly as possible</i> ; cp. ὥς 86
βασιλεὺς -ον <i>belonging to a king, royal</i> ; τὰ βασιλεια <i>palace, castle</i> ; βασιλεὺς <i>king</i>	

- 8/ Κλεαγόρᾱς ἀν-έβη ἐπὶ τὸν ἵππον. 2 οἱ στρατηγοὶ ἀπ-ῆτησαν τὸν σατράπην μισθὸν τὸν δέκα ἡμερῶν.<sup>1</sup>  
 3 ἐβούλουντο ἀφ-ελέσθαι τοὺς Πέρσας τὰς κώμας.<sup>2</sup>  
 4 οὐκ ἐδυνάμεθα δια-βῆναι τὸν ποταμὸν τοῦτον ἄνευ πλοίων. 5 συν-εισ-ἦλθον ἡμῖν<sup>3</sup> εἰς τὰς κώμας καὶ



ἔξ-εἶλον τὰ ἐπιτήδεια. 6 ἐπ-εθύμησαν ἐξ-ιέναι ὥς ἐδύναντο τάχιστα. 7 ἐπ-εχείρησα συμ-πράττειν αὐτῷ<sup>3</sup> ταῦτα. 8 οὗτος ὁ ποταμὸς ἐν-έβαλλεν εἰς τὸν Εὐφράτην. 9 ἅμα ἡλίφ' ἀν-έχοντι<sup>4</sup> οἱ ἄγγελοι ἀπ-άξουσι τὸ ἱππικόν. 10 ἐπεὶ δὲ ἐκ τοῦ πεδίου ἀν-έβησαν<sup>5</sup> ἐπὶ τὸν πρῶτον λόφον καὶ κατ-έβαινον<sup>5</sup> ὥς ἐπὶ τὸν ἕτερον ἀνα-βαίνειν, ἐνταῦθα ἐπ-ῆλθον οἱ βάρβαροι καὶ ἀπὸ τῶν ἄκρων κατ-έβαλλον.<sup>6</sup> 11 ἐπεὶ δὲ κατ-έλαβεν<sup>7</sup> αὐτοὺς Ἀρβάκης μετὰ τῆς στρατιᾶς ἔδοξεν αὐτοῖς ἐπιστῆναι οὐ πρῶτον εἶδον κώμην καὶ μηκέτι προ-ιέναι. 12 ἡνίκα ἦν ἡδη δείλη, ὥρᾳ ἦν ἀπ-ιέναι τοῖς πολεμίοις.<sup>8</sup> 13 ἡνίκα ἐξ-ήλυνον εἶδον βασίλεια<sup>9</sup> καὶ περὶ αὐτὰ κώμας πολλὰς. ἡ δὲ ὁδὸς πρὸς τὸ χωρίον τοῦτο διὰ λόφων ἦν οἱ καθ-ῆκον ἀπὸ τῶν ἄκρων ὑφ' οἷς ἦν ἡ κώμη. 14 ἅμα δὲ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ οἱ σκοποὶ ἀπ-ῆλθον καὶ παρὰ τοῦ σατράπου ἀπ-ήγγειλαν πρὸς τὸν στρατηγὸν ὅτι οἱ πολέμιοι προ-κατ-έλαβον τὰ ἄκρα αὐτοῖς.<sup>10</sup> 15 οὐ δυνάμεθα κατα-λιπεῖν τοὺς φίλους· δεδοίκαμεν γὰρ μὴ οὐ δύνωνται μόνοι πορεύεσθαι. 16 μετὰ τοῦτον ἄλλος ἀν-έστη καὶ εἶπεν· οὗτος μὲν ἐκέλευε μὴ λαβεῖν τὰ δῶρα, οἱ δὲ ἄλλοι οὐκ ἐπ-επείθοντο.<sup>11</sup> 17 οἱ μὲν στρατιῶται προσ-ῆγησαν μισθὸν τὸν σατράπην· ὁ δὲ ἀπ-επέμψατο αὐτούς. 18 ἐπεὶ ὁ σατράπης κατ-έστη<sup>12</sup> εἰς τὴν ἀρχήν, ἐπείθοντο αὐτῷ.

- 182 They left the town and sought refuge in<sup>13</sup> the hills. 2 We could not restrain them from-seizing<sup>14</sup> the heights. 3 We expect<sup>15</sup> to overtake them about evening. 4 If you do ascend the hill you can not see the river. 5 Let us go out as<sup>16</sup> soon as we can. 6 Let us ask the satrap for more<sup>17</sup> pay for the young men.

13 <sup>1</sup> ἡμερῶν *ten days' pay*. The article τόν belongs with μισθόν *pay*, namely *that (τόν) of ten days*. The genitive denotes *measure* 506 a, 4.

<sup>2</sup> κέμας 535.

<sup>3</sup> ἡμῖν 598 a: so also αὐτοῖς in 7.

<sup>4</sup> ἀνέχοντι *rising*: ptc. dat. sing. from ἀνέχω. The whole expression means *at sunrise*.

<sup>5</sup> ἀνέβησαν καὶ κατέβαινον *had ascended and were descending*. Notice the tenses.

<sup>6</sup> κατέβαλλον: some instrument is implied as *stones λίθοις* or *missiles*. Notice the change of tense here also, though English does not here make any distinction. See 486.

<sup>7</sup> κατέλαβεν: the verb is singular though the subject includes more than one. It could be singular too if the subject read Ἀρβάκης καὶ οἱ μετ' αὐτοῦ. Compare 498 b.

<sup>8</sup> τοῖς πολεμίοις *for the enemy*.

<sup>9</sup> βασιλῆα: something belonging to the king as a *castle* or *palace*; neuter accusative plural.

<sup>10</sup> αὐτοῖς: a *for* dative 523. The context shows that *for* is here *before them, against them*.

<sup>11</sup> ἐπείθοντο: ἐπὶ in composition here indicates *won over there-to, to his side*.

<sup>12</sup> κατέστη *became established*. For εἰς we say *in* rather than *into*. The Greek views the act as motion into; we view it as rest in.

<sup>13</sup> εἰς: see above.

<sup>14</sup> καταλαβεῖν or τοῦ καταλαβεῖν. Later we shall use μὴ οὐ καταλαβεῖν and τοῦ μὴ καταλαβεῖν.

<sup>15</sup> Write *we think that we shall*.

<sup>16</sup> ὥς ἂν . . . τάχιστα with the subjunctive.

<sup>17</sup> πρὸς in προσ-αἰτέω.

## XIX Ω - VERBS

### DEPONENTS. REVIEW

14 **Deponents** /37. Many active verbs are deponent in the future. The following not found in 392 are used in this book. Add them to the list in 392 and use the list for reference. Learn the principal parts as the verbs are met in reading.

ἀλέξω (ἀλεξόμενος), ἀλέξομαι  
*ward off*

ἀπο-διδράσκω, -δράσομαι *run away*

δια-βαίνω, -βήσομαι *cross*

δι-αρπάζω, -αρπάσομαι *sack*

ἐρωτάω, ἐρήσομαι *ask*

θαυμάζω, θαυμάσομαι *wonder*

θέω, θεύσομαι *run*

ρέω, ρεύσομαι *flow*

σκοπέω, σκέψομαι *view*

φθάνω, φθήσομαι *anticipate*

185 The **Passive Deponents, 394, 395**, used in this book are here given. Use the list for reference. The other deponents are used in the aorist middle.

βούλομαι <i>wish</i>	βουλήσομαι	βεβούλημαι	ἐβουλήθην
δέομαι <i>request</i>	δεήσομαι	δεδήμαι	ἐδεήθην
δύναμαι <i>can</i>	δυνήσομαι	δεδύνημαι	ἐδυνήθην
δια-λέγομαι <i>talk</i>	διαλέξομαι	δι-είλεγμαi	δι-ελέχθην
with	δια-λεχθήσομαι		
ἐν-αντιόομαι <i>oppose</i>	ἐν-αντιώσομαι	ἦναντίωμαι	ἦναντιώθην
ἐπι-μέλομαι <i>take</i>	ἐπι-μελήσομαι	ἐπι-μεμέλημαι	ἐπ-εμελήθην
care of			
ἐπί-σταμαι <sup>1</sup>	ἐπι-στήσομαι		ἠπιστήθην
understand			
(μέμνημαι) <sup>2</sup> <i>remem-</i>	μεμνήσομαι	μέμνημαι	ἐμνήσθην
<i>ber, mention</i>	μνησθήσομαι		
οἶομαι <i>think</i>	οιήσομαι		ᾤήθην
ὀρμάομαι <i>set out</i>	ὀρμήσομαι	ὠρμημαι	ὠρμησάμην
			ὠρμήθην
πείθομαι <i>obey</i>	πείσομαι	πέπεισμαι	ἐπείσθην
πειράομαι <i>attempt</i>	πειράσομαι	πεπείραμαι	ἐπειράθην
πορεύομαι <i>advance</i>	πορεύσομαι	πεπόρευμαι	ἐπορεύθην
φοβέομαι <i>fear</i>	φοβήσομαι	πεφόβημαι	ἐφοβήθην
προ-θύμέομαι <i>desire</i>	προ-θύμήσομαι		προθυμήθην
	προ-θυμηθήσομαι		

186 a Review 62, 66, 70, 71, 76.

b Review the indicatives and subjunctives in 252, 253, 254, 331, 348, taking κρίνω, αἰρέω, λαμβάνω, βούλομαι, and δύναμαι 164, 166 for your examples. Write each *tense-stem*.

<sup>1</sup> 268 b, if ἐπι- is taken as ἐπί.

<sup>2</sup> The perfect μέμνημαι *remember* serves as a present, with the pluperfect and future perfect form for the imperfect and future meaning. Compare Latin *memini*. The present stem appears in the compounds ἀνα-μνησκω and ὑπο-μνησκω *remind one of something*.

c The verbs to be checked in the Verb-list and learnt are ἀφ-ικνέομαι,<sup>1</sup> βαίνω,<sup>2</sup> γίγνομαι,<sup>3</sup> δέομαι, εἰμι,<sup>4</sup> ἐρωτάω, λαμβάνω,<sup>5</sup> οἶδα,<sup>6</sup> οἶχομαι,<sup>7</sup> ὁράω.<sup>8</sup> In compounds look for the simple form.

## VOCABULARY AND EXERCISES

- 17 μεγάλη fem. *great, large, tall*  
 ἀφ-ικνέομαι A with prep. *arrive, come to, reach*; *ικ-, ἱκανός* 72;  
 οἶκος 30. Latin *vicus* *village*  
 γίγνομαι *become, am, am born*;  
*happen*; γεν-. Latin *gignō* *bear*;  
*gens* *race*; *genesis*  
 δέομαι 185, G, or A of thing and  
 G of person, *want, desire*; with  
 inf. clause and G of person, *re-*  
*quest, beg*  
 ἐν-εἶναι *be in or on*  
 λαμβάνω *take, receive, obtain*  
 οἶδα εἶσομαι, ὅτι clause or ptc.  
 clause, *know, understand*
- οἶχομαι οἰχήσομαι *am gone, have gone*  
 πρόσθεν adv. G *before, in front of*; *formerly*; τὸ πρόσθεν *the van, the time before*; εἰς τὸ πρόσθεν *forward*  
 \* μὲν-τοι adv. *really*; *yet, nevertheless, however*  
 οὐ-δέ conj. adv. *and not, but not, nor*. Compare Latin *neque*  
 \* τε conj. *and*; \* τε . . . καὶ conj.<sup>9</sup>  
*both . . . and, not only . . . but also*. Compare Latin *-que*

- 38 γίγνεται, γενήσονται, ἐγένετο, ἐγένοντο. 2 ἔσομαι, ἔσται,<sup>10</sup> ἔσονται, εἴσομαι, εἴσεται, εἴσονται. 3 οἴχεται, οἴχεται, οἴσεται, οἴεται, ὄετο, ὄοντο, ὄμην, οἶμαι. 4 ἀφ-ικνεῖται,<sup>11</sup> ἀφ-ικνοῦνται, ἀφ-έκετο, ἀφ-έκοντο, ἀπ-

<sup>1</sup> ἀφ-ικνέομαι 261 a.

<sup>2</sup> γίγνομαι 257 a.

<sup>3</sup> λαμβάνω 261 a.

<sup>4</sup> οἶχομαι: οἰχήσομαι only.

<sup>5</sup> In τε . . . καὶ, τε only is postpositive and enclitic, but it comes early in its clause. Notice ἀνθρώποι τε καὶ ἵπποι, ὄρχαν τε καὶ ὄρχεσθαι, τό τε βαρβαρικὸν καὶ τὸ Ἑλληνικόν, λέγει ὅτι φίλος τε τῶν ἄλλων ἦν καὶ συν-ἐπράττειν αὐτοῖς.

<sup>10</sup> The short form ἔσται is used for ἔσεται.

<sup>11</sup> The inflection is like liquid futures 331.

<sup>2</sup> βαίνω 259 b, 56 b; cp. φαίνω.

<sup>4</sup> εἰμι: ἔσομαι only.

<sup>6</sup> οἶδα: εἴσομαι only.

<sup>8</sup> ὁράω 391, 291 a.

εκρίνατο. 5 λήφεται, ὄφονται, αἰρήσεται, εἶλον, εἶλον-το, ἐλεῖν, ἐλέσθαι.

- 189 We shall be, they will become, they became, they were.  
 2 What shall they have? They will know, we shall be, we shall know. 3 They have gone, they thought, they think, they will see. 4 They arrived, we shall take, we shall choose, they chose.

#### ΠΟΡΕΙΑ ΑΠΡΑΚΤΟΣ

- 190 Τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ ἡμέρᾳ ἐπορεύθησαν διὰ πεδίου καλοῦ καὶ περὶ μέσον ἡμέρας<sup>1</sup> ἀφ'έκοντο εἰς τὰς τοῦ σατράπου κώμας τοῦ Ἀρμενιάς. ὁ δὲ οὐ παρ-ἦν.<sup>2</sup> ἐνταῦθα οὖν ἔμειναν ἡμέρας δύο· ἐδέοντο γὰρ τῶν ἐπιτηδείων<sup>3</sup> καὶ ταῦτα πολλὰ ἐν-ἦν. ἐντεῦθεν δ' ἐπορεύθησαν σταθμοὺς πέντε παρασάγγας τριάκοντα ἐπὶ τὸν Τηλεβόαν ποταμόν· οὗτος δ' ἦν καλὸς μέν, μακρὸς δ' οὐ.<sup>4</sup> κῶμαι δὲ πολλαὶ περὶ τὸν ποταμόν ἦσαν. ἡ δὲ κώμη εἰς ἣν ἀφ'έκοντο μεγάλη τε ἦν καὶ βασιλεία εἶχε<sup>5</sup> τῷ σατράπῃ<sup>6</sup> καὶ ἐν-ἦσαν πολλαὶ οἰκίαι καλαὶ ἐν αὐτῇ· καὶ<sup>7</sup> αὕτη δὲ τῶν ἐπιτηδείων μεστὴ ἦν. ἐνταῦθα δ' οὐκ ἔμειναν μακρὸν χρόνον· ἐβούλοντο γὰρ τὸν σατράπην ἰδεῖν καὶ ἀπο-λαβεῖν ἐκείνου<sup>8</sup> τὰ ἀνδράποδα ἃ εἶχεν αὐτῶν.<sup>9</sup> ἀλλὰ καὶ οὗτος ᾗχετο,<sup>10</sup> ὥστε ἐξ-ἦλθον καὶ ἐπορεύθησαν εἰς τὸ πρόσθεν· ᾗοντο γὰρ ἔσσεσθαι αὐτὸν ἐν τῷ πλησίον πεδίῳ. ὁ δὲ σατράπης οὐκ ἐφάνη ἐπὶ τῷ πεδίῳ οὐδὲ<sup>11</sup> κατα-λαβεῖν αὐτὸν ἐδύναντο. εἶπον<sup>12</sup> οὖν πρὸς τοὺς δούλους ὃ τι<sup>13</sup> ἐβούλοντο· οἱ δ' ἀπ-εκρέναντο ὅτι<sup>14</sup> τῇ πρόσθεν ἡμέρᾳ ἀπ-ἦλθεν ἐκεῖνος εἰς τὴν τῶν Περσῶν χώραν καὶ ἐκέλευσαν αὐτοὺς μένειν<sup>15</sup> ἡμέρας δέκα αὐτόν. οἱ δὲ μέντοι ἀπ-ἦλθον οἰκαδε.

1/ <sup>1</sup> μέσον ἡμέρας *midday, noon.*

Note the omission of the article with each. Observe the other time expressions in this exercise, dative time *when*, accusative time *how long*.

<sup>2</sup> παρ-ἦν: imperf. of παρ-εἶναι *be present, adesse*. Notice the accent; it can not go back of the augment. For ἦν see 2/, 384.

<sup>3</sup> τῶν ἐπιτηδεύων 512.

<sup>4</sup> οὐδ': proclitic takes this accent by 18.

<sup>5</sup> εἶχε *contained*: imperf. of ἔχω.

<sup>6</sup> τῷ σατράπῃ *for the satrap*.

<sup>7</sup> καὶ αὕτη δέ *and this also*. καὶ is also, δέ *and*.

<sup>8</sup> ἐκείνου *from him*.

<sup>9</sup> αὐτῶν *of them, belonging to them, or simply their slaves*.

<sup>10</sup> ᾤχετο *had gone*: as a pluperfect.

<sup>11</sup> οὐδέ *and not, nor*, is the common negative after a negative sentence instead of καὶ οὐ.

<sup>12</sup> εἶπον *they told*.

<sup>13</sup> ὅ τι *what*.

<sup>14</sup> ὅτι *that*.

<sup>15</sup> μένειν *wait for*: with an object accusative.

## XX Ω-VERBS

### Ω-FORMS AND ΜΙ-FORMS. REVIEW OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE AND INFINITIVE FORMS AND CONSTRUCTIONS

12 Except some μι-presents all forms made on a tense-stem having a *tense-suffix* are of the ω-form of inflection; all forms made on a tense-stem having no tense-suffix are of the μι-form of inflection.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> These names are as convenient as any. They are thus used because in the indicative the ω-form treats the personal endings more or less as they are treated in the present indicative of verbs in -ω, and the μι-form treats them usually as they are treated in the present indicative of verbs in -μι. The pluperfect active may be regarded as anomalous and not classed. The tense-suffixes end in ο:ε or α (-ο:ε, -σα, -α, -κα, -α). In the passive aorists θη:ε and η:ε are voice suffixes, not tense-suffixes. All complete verbs, whether ω-verbs or μι-verbs, have both ω-tenses and μι-tenses.

The present system of μι-verbs, to be given later, naturally takes the μι-inflection whether it has a tense-suffix -να, -νυ:ῦ, -ννυ:ῦ, or not. But when it assumes a form of ο:ε as in ἔει, ἐτίθει, ἐδίδουν, δακνύοι, τοι it takes the ω-inflection. The application of this will come later. The

193 Review the Subjunctive forms in 252-254, 331, 336, 348, 367. The ω-form substitutes the combined endings 109, 161 for the final vowel of the tense-stem; the μ-form adds the combined endings to the tense-stem and contracts if possible. In this contraction α is absorbed<sup>1</sup> like ε, and ο makes ω throughout. Contract forms take the circumflex if possible. The perfect middle is compound.

a So then in ω-presents, α-aorists, ο:ε-aorists, and active perfects *substitute*, in other tenses *add*, the combined endings.

SUBJUNCTIVES<sup>2</sup>

194

παυ- stop	βαλ-, βλη- throw	κριν-, κρι- judge	γνο:ω- come to know
παύ-ω παύ-ωμαι	βάλλ-ω βάλλ-ωμαι	κρίν-ω κρίν-ωμαι	γιγνώσκ-ω γιγνώσκ-ωμαι
παύσ-ω παύσ-ωμαι	βάλ-ω βάλ-ωμαι	κρίν-ω κρίν-ωμαι	γνώ
πεπαύκ-ω	βεβλήκ-ω	κεκρίκ-ω	ἐγνώκ-ω
πεπαυμένος ᾧ	βεβλημένος ᾧ	κεκριμένος ᾧ	ἐγνωσμένος ᾧ
παυθῶ	βληθῶ	κριθῶ	γνωσθῶ

rules for the subjunctive in 193 and for the optative in 275 cover all cases that the pupil needs. These sections should be learnt word for word.

<sup>1</sup> But see 172 a note.

<sup>2</sup> In such tables as this, when the names of the tenses are omitted, it will be understood that the systems are given in the same order as they appear in the principal parts: verb-stem, present system, future system,

Write the inflection of subjunctives on these *tense-stems* : active *μεινα-*, *ἰδο:-ε-*, *εἰπο:-ε-*, *βα:-η-*, *γνο:-ω-* ; middle *φῆνα-*, *λαβο:-ε-* ; passive, *πρᾶχθη:-ε-*, *φανη:-ε-*. Make tables similar to the above if needed.

## INFINITIVES

15

παυ- <i>stop</i>	βαλ-, βλη- <i>throw</i>	κριν-, κρι- <i>judge</i>	βαν-, βα:-η <i>go</i>
παύειν παύε-σθαι	βάλλειν βάλλε-σθαι	κρίνειν κρίνε-σθαι	βαίνειν
παύσειν παύσε-σθαι	βαλεῖν βαλεῖ-σθαι	κρινεῖν κρινεῖ-σθαι	βήσε-σθαι
παῦσαι παύσα-σθαι	βαλεῖν βαλέ-σθαι	κρίναι κρίνα-σθαι	βῆ-ναι
πεπαυκέ-ναι	βεβληκέ-ναι	κεκρικέ-ναι	βεβηκέ-ναι
πεπαῦ-σθαι πεπαύσε-σθαι	βεβλή-σθαι βεβλήσε-σθαι	κεκρί-σθαι	-βεβά-σθαι
παυθή-ναι παυθήσε-σθαι	βληθή-ναι βληθήσε-σθαι	κριθή-ναι κριθήσε-σθαι	-βαθή-ναι

Make similar tables as needed.

96 Review the Infinitive forms in 252-254, 331, 336, 348, 367.

**a Endings.**<sup>1</sup> The ο:ε-tenses have -ειν, α-aorists -αι, active perfects and μι-forms active, and passive with

aorist system, perfect active system, perfect middle system, passive system. The subjunctive has no forms in the future system. The same order is used with the infinitives in 195.

<sup>1</sup> /96 a and b should be learnt word for word.



active endings, -ναι, other passives and all middles -σθαι.

**b Accent.** All infinitives in -ναι, the α-aorists active, the perfect middle, and the ο:ε-aorist middle accent the penult; the ο:ε-aorist active has -εῖν.

/97 **a** Review and complete the indicative, subjunctive, and infinitive of **φημι 382** and **εἰμι 384**.

**b** Learn the **personal pronouns**, first and second persons, **194, 557**.

**c** The verbs to be checked in the Verb-list and learnt are **γινώσκω**,<sup>1</sup> **διώκω**,<sup>2</sup> **ἐλαύνω**,<sup>3</sup> **ἔρχομαι**,<sup>4</sup> **μάχομαι**,<sup>5</sup> **μέλλω**, **ἰπ-ισχνέομαι**.<sup>6</sup>

/98 **a** **Πρίν** with the infinitive **568**.

**b** The infinitive with special negative **572** and **b, c**.

**c** Review **61, 62, 63**, infinitive as object.

#### VOCABULARY AND EXERCISES

/99 <b>δόξα -ης</b> ἡ <i>opinion</i> ; <b>δοκέω</b> /56. ortho-dox	<b>ἐλαύνω</b> <i>drive; ride, drive; march.</i> elastic
<b>κραυγή -ης</b> ἡ <i>outcry, shout</i>	<b>ἔξι-στι(ν) ἔξ-εῖναι</b> , D or A of person and inf. clause, <i>one may, it is</i> <i>possible or permitted</i>
<b>δαιμός -ῆ</b> -όν <i>frightful; skilful,</i> <i>clever</i> ; <b>ἔ-δει-σα</b> /14	<b>ἔρχομαι</b> <i>come, go, arrive</i> ; of the present stem forms other than the indicative are very rare
<b>ἔτοιμος -η</b> -ον or -ος -ον <i>at hand,</i> <i>ready, prepared</i>	<b>μάχομαι</b> D of person, <i>fight, fight</i> <i>with</i> ; <b>μάχη</b> /104
<b>γινώσκω</b> <i>come to know, perceive,</i> <i>recognize</i> . Latin <i>nōscō</i> ; <b>know,</b> <b>gnome. a-gnostic</b>	<b>μέλλω</b> , inf. clause, <i>am about to,</i> <i>shall, intend; delay</i>
<b>διώκω</b> <i>pursue, chase</i>	

<sup>1</sup> γινώσκω 260 a.

<sup>2</sup> διώκω 392.

<sup>3</sup> ἐλαύνω 261 d, 322 c ἐλῶ, ἐλῆς, ἐλᾶ; 291 c.

<sup>4</sup> ἔρχομαι 291 c, 391.

<sup>5</sup> μάχομαι 322 c.

<sup>6</sup> ἰπ-ισχνέομαι 261 e.

ἐπι-ισχνύομαι, D of person and πρὶν conj. adv., with inf. clause,  
inf. clause, *undertake, promise; before; with finite modes, be-*  
ἔχω 30 *fore, until*

Ο Τούτων τὸν πολίτην εἶλοντο ἄρχειν αὐτῶν. 2 οὐχ ὥρᾱ  
ἐστὶν ἡμῖν λέγειν περὶ τούτων. 3 ἔτοιμός εἰμι ἀκούειν  
ὃ τι βούλει εἰπεῖν. 4 κραυγὴν πολλήν<sup>1</sup> ἐποίησαν  
ὥστε καὶ τοὺς<sup>2</sup> ἐν τῷ παραδείσῳ ἀκούειν. 5 δι-έβησαν  
τὸν ποταμὸν πρὶν ἡμᾶς ἀφ-ικέσθαι. 6 οὐκ ἐδυνήθη-  
σαν ἡμᾶς πείσαι ἐλθεῖν. 7 ἔμελλον συμ-βουλεύσειν<sup>3</sup>  
αὐτοῖς μὴ λέγειν. 8 τοὺς μὲν πελταστὰς ἐκέλευσεν  
αὐτοῦ μένειν ὡς κωλύειν τούτους τοῦ<sup>4</sup> ἀθροίζεσθαι, τοὺς  
δὲ ὀπλίτας ἐπεμψε τὰ ἄκρα κατα-λαβεῖν. 9 ἐβούλετο  
καὶ ὑμᾶς παρ-εῖναι αὐτῷ<sup>5</sup> ὡς κωλύειν Ξενίαν μὴ ἐπι-  
πείθεσθαι τοῖς τριάκοντα τοῖς κακοῖς. 10 ὑπ-έσχετο  
Κλεάρχῳ μὴ κωλύσειν<sup>6</sup> τούτους μὴ οὐ πέμπειν<sup>7</sup> δῶρα  
πρὸς ὑμᾶς. 11 ἡμεῖς βουλόμεθα εἶναι ἀγαθοὶ πολῖται  
καὶ δεινοὶ λέγειν. 12 νῦν ἔξ-εστιν ἡμῖν<sup>8</sup> πορεύεσθαι  
μετ' ἐκείνων. 13 ἤρξαντο<sup>9</sup> τοῦ δια-βαίνειν ἄνευ ἡμῶν.  
14 ᾤετο πολλοὺς ἀκούσειν ἂν ἐν τῇ ἀγορᾷ εἶπη. 15  
ἔφη αὐτὸς<sup>10</sup> εἶναι ὁ δούλος ὃν ἐπεμψαν. 16 ἐλέγετο  
γενέσθαι σοφός, ὅτε ἠρωτᾶτο τὴν δόξαν.<sup>11</sup> 17 οὐκ  
ᾔοντο Ἀγασίαν μαχεῖσθαι τοῖς φίλοις.<sup>12</sup> 18 διώξω-  
μεν αὐτοὺς πρὶν κατα-φυγεῖν. 19 ᾗτήσαμεν ἡμεῖς  
αὐτὸν μὴ ποιῆσαι ταῦτα. 20 παρ-ήγγειλε τοῖς νεᾶ-  
νίαις ἐπι-στῆναι αὐτοῦ· αὐτὸς γὰρ ἔφη μόνος προ-  
ιέναι.<sup>13</sup>

/ It-seems-best<sup>14</sup> to us not to remain here longer. 2 See-  
ing<sup>15</sup> is not believing. 3 He is said to-have-proved-him-  
self<sup>16</sup> clever at speaking.<sup>15</sup> 4 They went before we could  
persuade them to reply. 5 Let us not prevent them from<sup>17</sup>

going<sup>15</sup> if they so desire. 6 You were not to blame for his<sup>18</sup> not remaining.<sup>15</sup>

202 <sup>1</sup> πολλήν *much*; fem. sing. of πολλοί 21.

<sup>2</sup> τοὺς ἐν τῇ παραδείσῳ: subject accusative of ἀκούειν 562 a.

<sup>3</sup> συμβουλεύειν: the future infinitive is common with μέλλω; the present is also used. Avoid the aorist. See 570 b.

<sup>4</sup> τοῦ ἀπορρίσθαι: a *from* genitive. μὴ ἀπορρίσθαι and τοῦ μὴ ἀπορρίσθαι would also be proper. See 572 and c, 575.

<sup>5</sup> παρ-εἶναι αὐτῷ *to be with him* 598 a.

<sup>6</sup> καλύσειν: the future infinitive is the regular form after verbs of *hoping, promising, and swearing*; the other tenses are not so common. The negative is regularly μὴ, though the original thought was οὐ καλύσω *I will not hinder*. See 577 and b; 579 a.

<sup>7</sup> μὴ οὐ πέμπειν *from sending* 572 a.

<sup>8</sup> ἔξ-εστιν ἡμῖν *we may*.

<sup>9</sup> ἤρξαντο: ἄρχω in both meanings, *begin* and *rule*, takes the genitive. See the examples in 510 b, c.

<sup>10</sup> αὐτὸς εἶναι *that he himself was*. αὐτός *ipse*, in the nominative is never the subject.

<sup>11</sup> ἤρωτάτο τὴν δόξαν: compare 159, 1.

<sup>12</sup> φίλοις: a *with* dative 525.

<sup>13</sup> προ-ίεναι *would go forward*. The forms of the present *ίεναι* have frequently a future force, as in the English *I am going*.

<sup>14</sup> δοκεῖ. The inflection is like that of liquid futures, δοκέει = δοκεῖ.

<sup>15</sup> Remember the infinitive in -ing.

<sup>16</sup> γινέσθαι: aor. inf. of γίγνομαι.

<sup>17</sup> Use μὴ οὐ, or τοῦ, or the infinitive alone; do not use τοῦ μὴ οὐ.

<sup>18</sup> τοῦ μὴ μέναι αὐτόν. Study 75, 11.

## THE SUBJUNCTIVE MODE

203 Nearly all these **Uses of the Subjunctive** have occurred in the exercises, some of them frequently. They are here arranged for review and ready reference.<sup>1</sup>

### I In Subjunctive Sentences, *Independent*

Time future. Negative μὴ

<sup>1</sup> Do not take the time to investigate 632 A, 644 b, 636 a, 638 c now. When the necessary words have been learnt the constructions will be found already familiar. Avoid separating any of the uses in 203 II b or in II c. If kept together what is usually treated as a very complicated matter will be very simple and will present no difficulty that has not been already confronted.

**a** Dubitative 471

**b** Hortative 472

**c** Prohibitive 473

## **II** In Subordinate clauses, *Dependent*

**a** *Μή* clauses. Time future. Negative ού. 611 **b**

**b** Relative clauses with ἄν. Time future or universal.  
Negative μή. 616 **a**, 618 **a**, 620, 627, 629, 631,  
632 **A** ; πρίν 644 **b**

**c** *ἵνα* *that* clauses. Purpose to be accomplished.  
Negative μή. 642 **a**. So ὥς *that* 636 **a**, ὅπως *that*  
638 **c**

**d** *Ἐάν* *if* clauses. Time future or universal. Negative μή. 650

## THE INFINITIVE MODE

4 All the following **Uses of the Infinitive** are found in the preceding exercises, some of them very frequently. They are given here for review and reference.<sup>1</sup>

Description 562 and **a**. Tenses 563 and **a**. Negative usually μή 564

**a** As a *To* or *For* Dative

1 Alone 565 and **a**, **b**

2 With ὥς or ὥστε *so as* 566 **b** ; ἐφ' ᾧ *on condition that* 567

**b** With πρίν *before* 568

**c** As Object 570 **a**, **b**, **c**

1 With subject accusative 570 **d**

2 Subject omitted 571

3 Special negative, μή and μή ού, 572 **a**, **b**, **c**

---

<sup>1</sup> Do not investigate the cases in 567, 577 **c**, and 579. They present nothing new, but use forms or expressions that have not yet been treated.

- d** With or without τό as Subject 574 and **a**  
**e** With the article as noun in genitive or dative 575; or  
 accusative 562 **a** *end*  
**f** Infinitive clause representing a sentence with finite  
 verb 577 **a**, **b**, **c**, 578 and **a**, 579 and **a**

## XXI THE CONSONANT DECLENSION

GUTTURAL STEMS IN -κ AND -γ. THE DENTAL STEM  
 ΝΥΚΤ-

205 **a** Learn the case-endings in ἄλ-s 99, 100. Read 98.

**b** Review 38 **b**, 45 **a**, **b**, and 37. Compare αἶγ-s = αἶξ,  
 φύλακ-s = φύλαξ with ἄγω ἄξω, ἤκω ἤξω and the Latin *rēg-s* =  
*rēx*, *duc-s* = *dux*. Learn 101, 109, 110.

**c** Learn κήρυξ 111 **a** and νύξ 111 **c** *end*.

206

(ἡ) νυκτ- this same night				noct- night
αὕτη	ἡ	αὐτή	νύξ	nox
ταύτης	τῆς	αὐτῆς	νυκτ-ός	noct-is
ταύτη	τῇ	αὐτῇ	νυκτ-ί	noct-i
ταύτην	τήν	αὐτήν	νύκτ-α	noct-em
αὐται	αἱ	αὐταὶ	νύκτ-ες	noct-ēs
τούτων	τῶν	αὐτῶν	νυκτ-ῶν	noct-ium
ταύταις	ταῖς	αὐταῖς	νυξί	noct-ibus
ταύτᾱς	τὰς	αὐτάς	νύκτ-ας	noct-īs, -ēs

207 **a** For συλ-λαμβάνω, σύν + λαμβάνω, see 50 **c**.

**b** Check in the Verb-list and learn -θνήσκω, ἔπομαι 267,  
 σημαίνω 259 **b**. Write the principal parts of ἀπο-θνήσκω:  
 ἀποθνήσκω, ἀποθανοῦμαι, ἀπέθανον, τέθνηκα.

## VOCABULARY AND EXERCISES

- 8 Θράξ Θράκος ὁ *Thracian*  
 κήρυξ κήρυκος ὁ *crier, herald*;  
 κραυγή 199  
 νύξ νυκτός ἡ *night*. Latin *nox*  
 σάλπιγξ -γγος ἡ *trumpet*  
 φάλαγξ -γγος ἡ *line of battle*; ἐπὶ  
 φάλαγγος *in line*. *phalanx*  
 φύλαξ -ακος ὁ *guard*; φυλάττω  
 156, φυλακή 79  
 εἴκοσι *twenty*. Latin *viginti*  
 ἀπο-θνήσκω *die off, am killed*; used  
 as passive of ἀπο-κτείνω 362
- ἵπομαι D *follow, accompany*.  
 Latin *sequor*  
 συν-ἵπομαι D *follow along with,*  
*accompany*  
 σημαίνω *make a sign, give the sig-*  
*nal*; D *inform, order, declare*  
 συλ-λαμβάνω *take with or together,*  
*seize, arrest*. *syl-lable*  
 ἐνθα conj. adv. *where; whereupon*  
 μεταξύ adv. *in the midst of; G be-*  
*tween*

- 19 Οὔτοι οἱ Θράκες γενήσονται φύλακες ἀγαθοὶ πρὶν ἡμᾶς  
 προσιέναι. 2 κήρυκες δύο ἀφίκοντο νυκτὸς<sup>1</sup> παρὰ τῶν  
 Περσῶν ἵνα περὶ σπονδῶν συμ-βουλευῶνται τοῖς στρα-  
 τηγοῖς ἡμῶν. 3 ἔὰν ἐπὶ φάλαγγος γένηται ἡ στρατιά,  
 ἡμεῖς νικήσομεν<sup>2</sup> νίκην καλὴν σὺν τοῖς θεοῖς. 4 κή-  
 ρυκας ἔπεμψαν πρὸς τοὺς Θράκας λέγειν περὶ σπονδῶν·  
 πολλοὶ γὰρ ἀπ-έθνησκον. 5 ἔὰν οὔτοι οἱ φύλακες συν-  
 ἔπωνται ἡμῖν νικήσομεν τοὺς Θράκας. 6 ἔὰν οἱ φύ-  
 λακες ἡμῖν ἔπωνται δώσομεν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἱκανὰ αὐτοῖς.  
 7 τὸν κήρυκα ἐρησόμεθα τὴν δόξαν<sup>3</sup> περὶ ᾧ οἱ πολί-  
 ται ἔλεγον. 8 ἐπεὶ ὁ ἄγγελος ἐσήμνη, οἱ λοχαγοὶ  
 ἔπεμψαν τοὺς ὀπλίτας εἰς τὸ διώκειν.<sup>4</sup> 9 ἀκήκοα ὅτι  
 πολλοὶ ἐκ τῆς φυλακῆς ἀπ-έθανον πλησίον<sup>5</sup> τῆς κόμης  
 οὗ ἐγένετο ἡ μάχη. 10 φύλακες εἴκοσιν εἶποντο τοῖς  
 Θράξι ἐκ τῆς κόμης· οὔτοι δὴ συν-ελήφθησαν καὶ ἀπ-  
 έθανον πρὶν τοὺς φίλους δυνηθῆναι ἀφ-ελέσθαι<sup>6</sup> αὐτούς.  
 11 ἐνθα<sup>7</sup> δὲ αὐτοὶ τὴν πρόσθεν νύκτα<sup>1</sup> ᾗσαν ἐπὶ τῶν  
 ἄκρων εἶδον τοὺς Καρδούχους πολλοὺς<sup>8</sup> ἐν τοῖς ὄπλοις.

ταύτην μὲν οὖν<sup>9</sup> τὴν ἡμέραν καὶ νύκτα ἔμειναν μεταξύ<sup>5</sup> τοῦ λόφου καὶ τοῦ ποταμοῦ. τῇ δὲ ὑστεραίᾳ<sup>1</sup> ἦλθον πρὸς τὸν στρατηγὸν νεᾶνῖαι δύο καὶ ἐσήμηναν αὐτοῖς οὗ<sup>10</sup> ἐδύναντο δια-βῆναι τὸν ποταμόν. 12 καὶ ἦν μὲν δείλη, οἱ δ' ἐκέλευον τοὺς σκοποὺς πορεύεσθαι καὶ τὴν μὲν νύκτα, ἔὰν λάβωσι τὸ ἄκρον, τὸ χωρίον φυλάττειν, ἅμα δὲ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ τῇ σάλπιγγι σημαίνειν.

2/0 We told you to advance, when the herald should give the signal on the trumpet. 2 If you do not wish to follow, we shall proceed alone. 3 We were planning to go before the messengers arrived. 4 We shall wait here for<sup>11</sup> them to come. 5 We conquered them in two battles<sup>12</sup> before their captain was killed.

2// <sup>1</sup> νυκτός by night. Notice the time constructions in this lesson: genitive, time *within which* 515; dative, time *when* 527 c; accusative, time *how long* 538.

<sup>2</sup> νικήσομεν shall win: takes a cognate accusative 536 a.

<sup>3</sup> τὴν δόξαν: τί δοκεῖ αὐτῷ. Cp. 202, 11 and 200, 16.

<sup>4</sup> εἰς τὸ διώκειν in pursuit: the infinitive used as a verbal noun in the accusative 562 end. Cp. 574 and add 'or with the article with prepositions.'

<sup>5</sup> πλησίον 518 b. So also μεταξύ in 11.

<sup>6</sup> ἀφ-ελθεῖν rescue: aor. mid. of ἀφ-αιρέω: take away to themselves.

<sup>7</sup> ἔνθα δὲ . . . ἦσαν and where . . . they themselves had been: keep the words in their order in getting the meaning.

<sup>8</sup> πολλοῖς in large numbers.

<sup>9</sup> μὲν οὖν: notice the order each time two or more particles occur together.

<sup>10</sup> οὗ: a place where.

<sup>11</sup> ἕως ἄν with the subjunctive.

<sup>12</sup> Use the dative without a preposition. The Greek probably regards it as instrumental 528.



Dicast's ticket (σύμβολον).

## XXII THE CONSONANT DECLENSION

GUTTURAL STEMS IN -κ, -γ, χ. PERSONAL AND REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS. ADVERBS IN -ως, -θεν, -τε, AND -οι

'2 a Review 109-111 a. Decline διῶρυξ.

b Review the pronouns in 194, 199 a. Learn 195 a, b, c, 197, 200, 203 and a.

'3 Adverbs. Learn 229. In like manner make adverbs from the following adjectives and give their meaning: δεινός, δῆλος, ἐλεύθερος, ἐπιτήδειος, ἔτοιμος, ἱκανός, ἰσχυρός, κακός, καλός, μεγάλη 77 b, ῥάδιος. Notice οὔτω(s) *thus* and ὥς *as*, without accent, from οὗτος *this* and ὅς *who*.

14

	THEMATIC AORIST	ROOT-AORISTS	
VERB	αἰρέω	ἀλίσκομαι	γιγνώσκω
TENSE-STEM	ἄλο:ε	ἄλο:ω-	γνο:ω-
MEANING . .	<i>take choose</i>	<i>am taken</i>	<i>recognize</i>
INDICATIVE	εἶλο-ν εἰλό-μην	ἐ-άλω-ν or ἦλω-ν	ἔ-γνω-ν
SUBJV.	ἔλ-ω ἔλ-ωμαι	ἀλῶ	γνώ
INFINITIVE	εἰλεῖν ἐλέ-σθαι	ἀλῶ-ναι	γνώ-ναι

a Inflect these forms in the indicative and subjunctive.

b Check in the Verb-list and learn ἀλίσκομαι,<sup>1</sup> αἰσθάνομαι,<sup>2</sup> θέω.<sup>3</sup>

## VOCABULARY AND EXERCISES

'5 δι-ῶρυξ -υχος ἡ *ditch, canal*

θόρυβος -ου ὁ *disturbance, confusion, noise of a crowd*

παρ-οδος -ου ἡ *way by, passage*

τάφρος -ον ἡ *ditch, trench*  
φοῖνιξ φοίνικος ὁ *palm-tree*

<sup>1</sup> ἀλίσκομαι 369 c, 367, 262.

<sup>2</sup> αἰσθάνομαι 392, 184, 257 b.

<sup>3</sup> αἰσθάνομαι 261 b.



ὀλίγος -ῆ -ον <i>small, few. olig-archy</i>	θέω <i>run</i>
ἄρχω 66	παρ-ίεναι <i>go or come by, pass along by</i>
στενός -ῆ -όν <i>narrow. steno-graphy</i>	συν-τάττω <i>arrange together; form in line. syn-tax</i>
γράφω 114	εἰσω <i>adv. G inside, within</i>
φανερός -ᾶ -όν <i>visible, evident; φαίνω 173</i>	ἐκεῖ <i>adv. there</i>
χαλεπός -ῆ -όν <i>hard, severe, dangerous</i>	ἔμ-προσ-θεν <i>adv. G before, in front of</i>
αἰσθάνομαι, ptc. or ὅτι clause, <i>perceive, see, become aware of. aesthetio</i>	πότε <i>adv. once on a time, once, ever. Compare πότε when? τότε then, ὅτε when, ὁ-πότε whenever in 219, 236</i>
ἀλίσκομαι <i>am captured, am caught; used as passive of αἰρέω 156</i>	

216 Ἐπεὶ Φίλιππος ἦσθετο ὅτι ὁ ἑαυτοῦ φίλος τέθνηκεν, ἔδοξεν αὐτῷ ἀπ-ιέναι. 2 ἐπεὶ οἱ φύλακες ὑμῶν ἦκουσαν τοῦ θορύβου<sup>1</sup> ἔθεον κατὰ τοῦ λόφου ὡς ἐδύναντο τάχιστα καὶ ὀλίγοι ἐάλωσαν. 3 χαλεπὸν ἔσται ὑμῖν ταύτῃ τῇ ὁδῷ παρ-ιέναι· ἐκεῖ γὰρ οἱ Θρᾷκες μέλλουσι κατα-στήναι.<sup>2</sup> 4 πρῶτον μὲν ἐδείσαμεν προ-ιέναι, μὴ<sup>3</sup> οἱ Θρᾷκες ἔλωσιν ἡμᾶς, ἐπειδὴ δὲ οἱ ὀπλῖται ἀφ-ίκοντο οὐκέτι ἐκινδυνεύομεν ἀλῶναι.<sup>4</sup> 5 οἱ φύλακες ἀλώσονται ἔμπροσθεν τοῦ ἑαυτῶν στρατοπέδου, εἰ μὴ ἀπ-έλθωσι πρὶν τοὺς Πέρσας ἀθροισθῆναι. 6 οἱ ἵπποι ἀπ-ήχθησαν εἰς τὴν κώμην ἐπεὶ ἦσθοντο οἱ πολέμιοι ὅτι ἡμεῖς ἐπόμεθα. 7 ἃ ἐκεῖνος ἐκέλευσε μὴ πράξαι, ταῦτα μὴ πράξωμεν. 8 ποῦ γὰρ ποτε σὺ εἶδες φοίνικα; 9 οἱ δ' ἡμέτεροι αὐτῶν<sup>5</sup> σκοποὶ ἀπ-ήγγελλον ὅτι οὐκ ἐδυνήθησαν ἰδεῖν τοὺς πολεμίους.

10 Ἐντεῦθεν ἐπιμελῶς ἐπορεύθησαν· ὥντο γὰρ ταύτῃ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ μαχεῖσθαι τοὺς Πέρσας· κατὰ<sup>6</sup> γὰρ μέσον τὸν σταθμὸν τοῦτον σκοποὶ ἐφάνησαν ἔμπρο-

σθεν. εἶδον δὲ καὶ δύο διώρυχας ἐκ τοῦ Εὐφράτου ποταμοῦ ἐφ' ὧν οὐ γέφυραι ἦσαν. καὶ ἀφ'έκοντο πρὸς τάφρον μεγάλην ἣν ἐποιήσαντο οἱ πολέμοι ἵνα κωλύσωσιν αὐτοὺς μὴ προ-ιέναι. ἦν δὲ μέντοι παρὰ τὸν Εὐφράτην πάρ-οδος στενὴ μεταξὺ τοῦ ποταμοῦ καὶ τῆς τάφρου. συν-έταξαν οὖν τοὺς φύλακας ἐπὶ φάλαγγος, εἰάν<sup>7</sup> οἱ πολέμοι πλησίον ὦσιν. καὶ ταύτην δὴ τὴν πάρ-οδον ἡ στρατιὰ παρ-ῆλθε καὶ ἐγένετο εἴσω τῆς τάφρου. ταύτη μὲν οὖν τῇ ἡμέρᾳ οὐκ ἐμαχέσαντο οἱ Πέρσαι, ἀλλὰ φανερά ἦσαν<sup>8</sup> καὶ ἵππων καὶ ἀνθρώπων ἵχνη<sup>9</sup> πολλά.

<sup>7</sup> We were not able to perceive what<sup>10</sup> the citizens were planning. **2** Many of their own men were captured in front of the camp. **3** Near the town the Thracians were gathering in large numbers. **4** At first it was difficult to march by night, but now we can fight by night or by day, whenever<sup>11</sup> the general wishes. **5** We heard a noise in our own<sup>5</sup> camp and ran to arms.<sup>12</sup>

<sup>18</sup> <sup>1</sup> θορύβου 511 a.

<sup>2</sup> κατα-στήναι to take up a position there 179. The aorist infinitive with μέλλω is not common. Read 202, 2.

<sup>3</sup> μὴ 611 b.

<sup>4</sup> ἄλωνα of being captured 565 a.

<sup>5</sup> ἡμέτεροι αὐτῶν: the common form for the possessive reflexive in the plural instead of ἡμῶν αὐτῶν, which would be the proper form in an expression like negligent of ourselves. ἡμέτερος is declined and agrees with its noun in gender, number, and case.

<sup>6</sup> κατά down along, that is in the course of.

<sup>7</sup> εἰάν in case that 652.

<sup>8</sup> ἦσαν: plural for the regular singular 496.

<sup>9</sup> ἵχνη tracks: nom. pl. neut. We have not had the word.

<sup>10</sup> τί or ὅ τι.

<sup>11</sup> Use ὅποτε with the indicative or ὅποτεν (ὅποτε + ἔν) with the subjunctive. Read 219 and examine the first three examples.

<sup>12</sup> εἰς or ἐπὶ τὰ ὅπλα. Compare ἐν τοῖς ὅπλοις 209, 11. An accusative with a preposition is used when motion is implied.

## CORRELATIVE ADVERBS

2/9 We have recently had the demonstrative adverb τότε *then*, the interrogative πότε *when* frequently, and in this lesson the indefinite ποτε *sometime, ever*. We have also had οὕτω(s) *thus* and its relative ὡς *as*, and interrogative πῶς *how*. The corresponding indefinite is πως. For ποῖ *whither* the indefinite is ποι. As the relative stem ὁ in ὅς *who* combines with the indefinite τις *someone* giving ὅστις *whoever*, so the same relative stem ὁ combines with indefinite adverbs making *general relatives*. Observe that the indefinites are enclitic.

πότε ἦλθες; ἐγὼ τότε ἦλθον ὅτε ἐκέλευσας  
*When did you go? I went then, when you told me to.*

ἦλθές ποτε σύ; ἐγὼ πολλάκις ἦλθον ὁ-πότε ἐβού-  
 λόμην *Did you ever go? I went often, whenever I wished.*

πότε πέμψεις τοὺς ἵππους; ὁπότε (ὁπότε + ἂν)  
 δύνωμαι *When will you send the horses? Whenever I can.*

πῶς ποιήσεις τὴν ὁδόν; τὴν μὲν ἐτέρᾱν πως ἐποίη-  
 σα. ταύτην δὲ οὕτω ποιήσω ὅπως ἂν σὺ κελεύ-  
 σης. ἀλλὰ δύναμαι ποιῆσαι ὥδέ πως *How shall you make the road? The other I made in some way or other; but this one I shall make in whatever way you may direct. But I can make it in some such way as this.*

20 These general relatives are common in quoted questions 621. We have been using hitherto the direct interrogatives.

1 οὐκ οἶσθα ὃ τι πεποίηκας

*You don't know what you have done.*

2 ἠρόμην αὐτὸν ὅ-πόθεν τὰ ὄπλα ἔλαβεν

*I asked him where he got the arms.*

3 εἶπεν ὅ-πως ἀπ-ῆλθον καὶ ὅ-ποῖ κατ-έφυγον

*He told how they got away and where they took refuge.*

a In the light of the above examples (compare also 84, 85, 103) examine the -θεν, -τε, -ως, and -οι forms in 236. Notice in the general relatives that when the second part has two syllables, the accent is on the first syllable of the second part; when the second part is of one syllable, the accent is on the ὅ.

## XXIII THE CONSONANT DECLENSION

LABIAL STEMS IN -π, -β. DENTAL STEMS IN -τ, -δ, -θ.  
POSSESSIVE FORMS

2/ Review 204 and a, 37, 45 a, b. Learn 112-119, ὕδωρ 120, κέρας 126, φυγὰς 145.

a See 668, 488 a for ἀρα and οὐ and μή in questions.

b The suffix -ματ 407.

### VOCABULARY AND EXERCISES

2 ἄρ-μα -ατος τό chariot

ἀσπίς -ιδος ἡ shield

ἐλπίς -ιδος ἡ hope

κέρας κέρατος and κέρως τό horn;  
wing of an army. rhino-ceros ρινο-

κέρως from ρίς ρινός nose

ὄνομα -ατος τό name; γινώσκω /99. Latin nōmen; syn-onym	χρήματα property, money; χράομαι use
στράτευμα -ατος τό army, force; στρατεύω /39, στρατηγός 2/	ἀριστερός -ᾱ -όν left; ἐν ἀριστερᾷ on the left
τοξέυμα -ατος τό arrow; τοξεύω shoot with a bow, τοξότης archer 367	δεξιός -ᾱ -όν right; τὸ δεξιόν the right wing; ἐν τῇ δεξιᾷ in the right hand; ἐν δεξιᾷ on the right. Latin dexter
ὕδωρ ὕδατος τό water. hydr-anlla, hydrant, hydro-phobia 30	εὐ-άνυμος -ον of good name; left, used for ἀριστερός; τὸ εὐάνυμον the left wing
φυγάς -άδος ὁ exile; φεύγω, ἔφυγον 66	
χρήμα -ατος τό thing of use; τὰ	εἰσ-άγω lead into

223 Ταύτη τῇ αὐτῇ ἡμέρᾳ οἱ σκοποὶ εἰς-ἡγόν πως τὸ στρα-  
τευμα εἰς τὸ ἐαυτῶν στρατόπεδον, ἐπεὶ ἦσθοντο ὅποι<sup>1</sup> οἱ  
Θυρᾶκες ὥχοντο. 2 ἐπὶ τῷ δεξιῷ κέρατι εἶδομεν ἀσπί-  
δας καὶ τοξεύματα πολλά, ὅπου<sup>1</sup> κατ-έλιπον οἱ φυγάδες  
αὐτά. 3 Σῶσις τὸ ὄνομά ἐστι τῷ παιδί. 4 πολλὰς  
καὶ νύκτας καὶ ἡμέρας ἐπορεύοντο ἐπὶ τοὺς φυγάδας  
ὅποι<sup>1</sup> ὁ Κλέαρχος ἦγεν. 5 ἐν ταύτῃ τῇ χώρᾳ ἐφάνη-  
σαν μακραὶ διώρυχες δύο μεσταὶ ὕδατος. 6 ἤρετο  
ὅπου δύναται<sup>2</sup> ἰδεῖν τὰ ἄρματα ἃ οἱ πολέμοιοι κατ-  
έλιπον. 7 μὴ ἡμεῖς, ἔφασαν οἱ κήρυκες, ἔλθωμεν ἐπὶ  
τοὺς ὀπλίτας τούτους· φίλοι γὰρ ἡμῖν εἰσιν. 8 ποίᾳς  
ἀσπίδας ἐπεμψαν πρὸς τοὺς ἐαυτῶν φύλακας; 9 πολ-  
λὰ χρήματα ἐπέμφθη ὑπὸ τῶν πολιτῶν ὥς δῶρον τοῖς  
πιστοῖς φύλαξι τοῖς ἐαυτῶν. 10 ἄρα μὴ ἐδύναντο  
πείθειν τοὺς φύλακας ὑμῶν λείπειν τὰς ἀσπίδας; 11  
ἐὰν μὴ ἐπὶ φάλαγγος συν-αγάγωσι τοὺς ὀπλίτας, οὐ  
δυνησόμεθα νικῆσαι τοὺς πολεμίους. 12 ἄρα οὐκ  
ἀπο-θανοῦνται οἱ ἵπποι ἐὰν μὴ δύνωνται λαβεῖν ὕδωρ  
ἐκ τοῦ ποταμοῦ; 13 ἐπὶ μὲν τῷ εὐωνύμῳ κέρατι τοῦ

στρατεύματος κατέστησαν οἱ Θράκες καὶ τὰ ἄρματα, ἐπὶ δὲ τῷ δεξιῷ οἱ ὀπλῖται. 14 τοῖς μὲν ἄλλοις παρήγγειλε Ἀγίας λαβεῖν τὰ ὄπλα, τοὺς δὲ λοχαγούς ἐκέλευσε προσάγειν τοὺς λόχους τοὺς μὲν ἐν ἀριστερᾷ τοὺς δ' ἐν δεξιᾷ ἑαυτοῦ. 15 ἄρ' οἶει τοὺς Ἀραβας γενήσεσθαι ἀγαθοὺς στρατιώτᾱς; 16 ἔλεγον ὅτι σὺν τοῖς θεοῖς πολλαὶ ἡμῖν<sup>3</sup> καὶ καλαὶ ἐλπίδες εἰσὶ σωτηρίᾱς.

- 24 We will follow you wherever<sup>4</sup> you lead and do whatever you command. 2 Let us ask the exile how we shall arrange the guards. 3 Whenever he comes, we send for our friends. 4 You will not proceed by night, will you? 5 They will send for horses wherever<sup>4</sup> they can get them.

- 15 <sup>1</sup> ἔ-που, ἔ-ποι: compare τοῦ, τοῖ <sup>3</sup> ἡμῖν . . . εἰσι we have.  
84; ἔποι 220, 3 and see 236 <sup>4</sup> The verb determines whether  
<sup>2</sup> δύναται he could. What requires could instead of can? to use ἔποι or ἐπόθεν.

## POSSESSIVES

- 6 ἡ ἐμὴ γνώμη MY opinion, ἡ γνώμη μου my opinion  
ὁ ὑμέτερος φίλος YOUR friend, ὁ φίλος ὑμῶν your friend  
ὁ τούτου ἵππος HIS horse, ὁ ἵππος αὐτοῦ his horse  
τὰ τούτων δῶρα THEIR gifts, τὰ δῶρα αὐτῶν their gifts

In the first set the idea of possession is more strongly emphasized than in the second set.

## REFLEXIVE POSSESSIVES

- |                |                  |           |
|----------------|------------------|-----------|
| 7 ἡ ἐμὴ οἰκίᾱ, | ἡ ἑαυτοῦ οἰκίᾱ   | my (own)  |
| τὸ σὸν ὄνομα,  | τὸ σεαυτοῦ ὄνομα | thy (own) |
|                | ἡ ἑαυτοῦ οἰκίᾱ   | his (own) |

ἡ ἡμετέρᾳ οἰκίᾳ, ἡ ἡμετέρᾳ αὐτῶν οἰκίᾳ *our (own)*  
 τὰ ὑμέτερα δῶρα, τὰ ὑμέτερα αὐτῶν δῶρα *your (own)*  
 ὁ σφέτερος, ὁ σφέτερος αὐτῶν, ὁ ἐαυτῶν *their (own)*

A reflexive generally refers to the subject of its own clause and agrees with its antecedent in *person*. The reflexive *pronoun* agrees also in gender and number with its antecedent.

- 228 The possessive pronouns when definite, and the possessive genitive of the reflexive pronouns, take the *attributive position*; the possessive genitive of the personal pronouns takes the *predicate position*. Review 101 c. Compare 554 and a. ἐμὸς φίλος or φίλος μου means *a friend of mine* 551 c.

## XXIV THE CONSONANT DECLENSION

ADJECTIVE STEMS IN -οντ. Πᾶς, Ἄπᾶς, Σύμπᾶς, Οἶδα

- 229 Study 155. Add to the second sentence *and the genitive plural always has -ῶν*, as in nouns of the *α*-declension.

ἅπαντ-, ἁπάσᾳ- all together				
ἅπᾱς	ἅπᾱσα	ἅπαν	ἅπαντ-ες	ἁπάσαι
ἅπαντ-ος	ἁπάσης	ἅπαντ-ος	ἅπαντ-ων	ἁπᾶσων
ἅπαντ-ι	ἁπάσῃ	ἅπαντ-ι	ἅπᾱσι	ἁπάσαις
ἅπαντ-α	ἁπᾶσαν	ἅπαν	ἅπαντ-ας	ἁπάσᾳς

a Before -s in the nominative singular, -σι in the dative plural, and -σα all through the feminine, -ντ is dropt and

**a** becomes **ā** 53, 28 **b**. Learn 28 **b**, **πᾶς** 160, 161 **a**, **b**, 162 **a**.

10 Learn **ἄκων** 166, 167. Notice that **-οντ-ς** in the feminine and in the dative plural gives **-ους** 28 **b**. Write out the declension of **ὄν** *being*, the participle of **εἶμι** : **ὄν οὖσα ὄν, ὄντος οὖσης ὄντος**. There are no irregularities in the declension of participles. Write the declension of **τοιοῦτος** *such* 212, similar to **οὗτος** 209.

3/ Learn the indicative, subjunctive, infinitive, and participle of **οἶδα** 386 and **b, c, d**. Compare the forms of the aorist **εἶδον** *I saw* with the corresponding forms of **οἶδα** *I know* :

TENSE-STEM . MEANING . . .	ἴδο:- <i>see</i>	εἶδ(ε)- <i>know</i>
INDICATIVE	εἶδο-ν	οἶδα
SUBJUNCTIVE	ἴδ-ω    ἴδ-ωμεν ἴδ-ης   ἴδ-ητε ἴδ-ῃ   ἴδ-ωσι	εἶδῶ    εἶδῶμεν εἶδῇς   εἶδῇτε εἶδῃ    εἶδῶσι
INFINITIVE	ἰδεῖν	εἰδέναί
PARTICIPLE	ἰδών	εἰδώς

**a** Check in the Verb-list **πυνθάνομαι** 261 **c** and see **χρή** 390, *one sentence*.

#### VOCABULARY AND EXERCISES

- 2 **ἀνάγκη -ης ἡ** *force, necessity*; **ἀνάγκη (ἔστί)**, A or D, and inf. clause, *it is necessary that, it must needs be, I must* **δόρυ δόρατος τό** 120, *shaft, spear* **παῖς παιδός ὁ** 118, *boy, son*; **παί-δεύω** 114. *pedagogue* **ἔγω** 30 **πατρίς -ίδος ἡ** *native land*; **πατήρ** 264. *Latin patria* **γόνυ γόνατος τό** 120, *knee*. *Latin genū*



πούς ποδός ὁ 117, *foot*; τὰ πόδια

79. Latin *pēs*; *tri-pod*

πράγμα -ατος τό *thing done, fact, business; trouble*; πράγματα παρέχειν *cause trouble*; πράττω 156.

*pragmatico, practical*

σῶμα -ατος τό *body; life*

ἄκων -ουσα -ον *unwillingly; unwillingly*; α- neg. + ἐκών

ἐκόν -ούσα -όν *willing; voluntarily*

ὅμοιος -ᾱ -ον D *like, similar*; ἁμα 173. *homoeo-pathy*

πᾶς πᾶσα πᾶν *all, every, whole*;

πᾶσα ὁδός *every road*; πᾶσα ἡ ὁδός *all the road, the whole road*; πᾶν

τες οἱ παῖδες *all the boys*; πάντες

παῖδες *all boys*; sometimes ὁ πᾶς *the whole, all*. pan-αοος, pan-αοα

ᾱ-πᾶς ᾱ-πᾶσα ᾱ-παν *all together, whole*

σύν-πᾶς σύν-πᾶσα σύν-παν *all together, entire*

πυνθάνομαι, A or interrog. clause; G of person, and interrog. or ὅτι clause; A, and ptc. or inf. clause, *inquire; learn by inquiry, ascertain*

χρή, A and inf. clause, *it is necessary, I ought*

εὐθύς adv. *immediately, at once*

τοιοῦτος τοιαύτη τοιοῦτο(ν) *such*

- 233 Καὶ τὸ ἡμέτερον ἡμῶν στράτευμα ἔχει πολλὰς ἐλπίδας τοῦ νικῆσαι.<sup>1</sup> 2 οὗτος ὁ παῖς ἐπαιδεύετο μετὰ τῶν ἄλλων παίδων ὅσοι ἦσαν παρ' ἡμῖν. 3 τὰ τῶν βαρβάρων δόρατα ἦν<sup>2</sup> πέντε καὶ δέκα πόδας<sup>3</sup> μακρά. 4 ἐπὶ τῷ δεξιῷ κέρατι τοῦ στρατεύματος ἡμῶν ἐτάχθη τὰ ἄρματα. 5 τὰς μὲν ἀσπίδας εἶχον πρὸς τὰ γόνατα, τὰ δὲ δόρατα ἐν ταῖς χερσίν.<sup>4</sup> 6 τὰ τοξεύματα τὰ τῶν Περσῶν μακρὰ ἦν ὅμοια δόρασιν.<sup>5</sup> 7 ἄκοντες<sup>6</sup> ἤλθομεν εἰς τοῦτο τὸ μεθ' ὑμῶν πρᾶγμα. 8 τοῦ σατράπου ἄκοντος<sup>7</sup> οὐκ ἄρξω τῶν φυγάδων. 9 ὑπὲρ τῆς πατρίδος κινδυνεύσομεν καὶ περὶ τὰ ἡμέτερα σώματα.<sup>8</sup> 10 νυκτός τε καὶ ἡμέρας ἐκόντες συν-ειπόμεθα τῷ στρατεύματι ὑμῶν. 11 πολλὰς ἡμέρας ἔμενον ἐγὼ ἀλλ' οἱ ἡμέτεροι κήρυκες οὐκ ἤλθον. 12 ἐν τούτῳ δὲ προσ-ἤλθεν ὁ σατράπης καὶ ἐπύθετο τὸ πρᾶγμα. εὐθύς δ' ἔλαβε τὰ ὄπλα καὶ ἤλασε εἰς τὸ μέσον καὶ ἔλεξε

τάδε· Κλέαρχε καὶ Πρόξενε καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι, οὐκ ἴστε ὃ τι ποιεῖτε.<sup>9</sup> 13 ἐπεὶ δὲ ὑμεῖς οὐ βούλεσθε συμπορεύεσθαι ἐμοί, ἀνάγκη δὴ<sup>10</sup> μοι μεθ' ὑμῶν μένειν. εἰ μὲν δὴ<sup>11</sup> δίκαια ποιήσω οὐκ οἶδα, αἰρήσομαι δ' οὖν ὑμᾶς καὶ μεθ' ὑμῶν πορεύσομαι. 14 ἐὰν μὴ εἰδῆτε ὃ τι ἀνάγκη ὑμῖν ποιεῖν, τοῦτο δύνασθε πυνθάνεσθαι τοῦ σατράπου.<sup>12</sup> 15 οὐκ ᾔδесαν ὅτι ὑμεῖς δύνασθε νυκτὸς πορευθῆναι. 16 ἐν τοιούτοις δὲ ὄντες πράγμασι<sup>13</sup> συμ-βουλευόμεθά σοι τί χρὴ<sup>14</sup> ποιεῖν περὶ ὧν λέγεις.

34 We willingly advise you whenever we think you wish it.

2 I could not persuade him to tell us what his<sup>15</sup> name was.

3 The shields were carried for the soldiers by slaves. 4

The road to Lydia is many parasangs long. 5 Do you not

know where I can get water for our horses?

5 <sup>1</sup> τοῦ νικῆσαι of victory 575.

<sup>2</sup> ἦν were 496.

<sup>3</sup> πῶδας 538. The English use is the same.

<sup>4</sup> ἐν ταῖς χερσίν in their hands. The word will be given later.

<sup>5</sup> ὁμοία δόρασιν like spears 522. We say like to, similar to; so also in Latin.

<sup>6</sup> ἄκοντες unwillingly: translated as an adverb. See 546.

<sup>7</sup> ἄκοντος 589 a, example.

<sup>8</sup> καὶ περὶ τὰ ἡμέτερα σώματα even at the risk of our lives.

<sup>9</sup> ποιεῖτε: ποιέω. Verbs in -έω are contracted like liquid futures.

<sup>10</sup> δὴ of course.

<sup>11</sup> εἰ δὴ whether indeed.

<sup>12</sup> σατράπου: a from genitive 509 a. What different idea would be given by εἰ μὴ ἴστε instead of ἐὰν μὴ εἰδῆτε?

<sup>13</sup> πράγμασι troubles.

<sup>14</sup> τί χρὴ ποιεῖν what we ought to do.

<sup>15</sup> Use dative of possessor. Cp. 223, 3.



Drinking-horns.

## XXV Ω-VERBS

## PARTICIPLES, FORMATION AND USES

236 **Paradigms 252-254, 331, 336, 348, 367.**

**Formation.** a Present, future, thematic aorist, and future passive **275, 276, 349, 310.** In the active nominative singular masculine **-ο-ντ-ς** makes **-ων 166.**

b Sigmatic and liquid aorists **286**; **θη-ε-** and **η-ε-** passives, and root-aorists active **309, 335, 368 a.** In the nominative **-αντ-ς = -ās, -άντ-ς = -ás, -έντ-ς = -éis, -όντ-ς = -oús, -ύντ-ς = -ús.** All **ντ-** participles ending in **-ς**, except the **α-**aorists, accent the ultima.

c The **κα-** and **α-**perfects **297, 333.**

d Perfect middle **300 d.**

e The **-ς** in all participles nominative singular masculine is the case ending, **-α-ντ-ς, -οτ-ς, -μενο-ς.**

237 The above facts may be used in this form :<sup>1</sup>

a **Paradigms 252-254, 331, 336, 348, 367.**

b **Formation.** The future passive and all middle participles add **-μενο-ς** to the *tense-stem*; the active perfects substitute **-οτ** for **α**, nominative **-ός -ῶα -ός**; all others add **-(ντ)-ς.**

c **Accent.** The thematic aorist active, the active perfects, and **ντ-**participles ending in **-ς**, except the **α-**aorists, accent the ultima; the perfect middle accents the penult.

---

<sup>1</sup> It will be better to check and study the references in 236 and use 237 for drill. This section should be learnt word for word.

'8 Group in this manner :

Active stems in	-ο:ε	-οντ-ς	= -ων	παύων
Active α-aorists in	-(σ)α	-(σ)α-ντ-ς	= -(σ)ᾱς	παύσᾱς
Active perfects in	-(κ)α	-(κ)-ότ	-(κ)ώς	πεπαυκώς
Passives in	-θη:ε, -η:ε	-(θ)έντ-ς	= -(θ)είς	παυθείς
Other active stems in	-α	-άντ-ς	= -ᾶς	στιάς
Active stems in	-ε	-έντ-ς	= -είς	εῖς
Active stems in	-ο	-όντ-ς	= -ούς	γνούς
Active stems in	-υ	-ύντ-ς	= -ύς	δύς
Other forms		-μενο-ς	as	παυσάμενος

19 The declension has already been given. Study it in 155, 166, 162 b, 164 b, 165. Compare 169 for γνούς, and 170. Learn also εἰδώς 172.

a Observe that the declension of all ντ-participles is exactly the same, when once the nominative singular masculine is made. In that form ο:ε before -ντ-ς makes -ων.<sup>1</sup> In all other forms before -ς the -ντ is dropt and the vowel is lengthened by 28 and b.

10 Standing alone the participles may be translated as in Latin :

παύων	<i>stopping</i>
παύόμενος	<i>stopping myself, ceasing</i>
παύσων	<i>going to stop</i>
παυσόμενος	<i>going to cease</i>

<sup>1</sup> But not ο belonging to a verb-stem, as γνό-ντ-ς = γνούς, δό-ντ-ς = δοός, ἄλδ-ντ-ς = ἄλοός.

<i>παύσᾱς</i>	<i>stopping, having stopt</i>
<i>παυσάμενος</i>	<i>ceasing, having ceased</i>
<i>πεπαυκώς</i>	<i>having stopt</i>
<i>πεπαυμένος</i>	<i>having ceased, having been stopt, being stopt</i>
<i>πεπαυσόμενος</i>	<i>going to be stopt (state)</i>
<i>παυθείς</i>	<i>stopt, being stopt, having been stopt</i>
<i>παυθησόμενος</i>	<i>going to be stopt (act)</i>

## PARTICIPLES

24/	VERB-STEM. MEANING . .	βαλ-, βλη- <i>throw</i>	κριν-, κρι- <i>judge</i>	γνο:ω- <i>come to know</i>
	PRES. ACT.	βάλλων	κρίνων	γιγνώσκων
	MID., PASS.	βαλλό-μενος	κρίνό-μενος	γιγνώσκó-μενος
	FUT. ACT	βαλῶν	κρινῶν	
	FUT. MID.	βαλού-μενος	κρινού-μενος	γνώσó-μενος
	AOR. ACT.	βαλὼν	κρίνᾱς	γνοῦς
	AOR. MID.	βαλό-μενος	κρίνά-μενος	
	PERF. ACT.	βεβληκώς	κεκρικώς	ἐγνωκώς
	PF. MID., PS.	βεβλη-μένος	κεκρι-μένος	ἐγνωσ-μένος
	FUT. PF. PS.	βεβλησό-μενος		
	AOR. PASS.	βληθείς	κριθείς	γνωσθείς
	FUT. PASS.	βληθησό-μενος	κριθησό-μενος	

Write similar tables if needed. Hereafter include participles in the partial synopses by tense-systems, which should be written every day. Arrange in this order: *Indicative, Subjunctive, Infinitive, Participle.*

## 2 Observe the following :

**a** οἱ ὄπλα ἔχοντες *those who have arms*

**b** οἱ ὄπλα ἔχοντες ἔμενον *those who had arms remained*

**c** οἱ ταῦτα εἰπόντες πάρ-εισιν *those who said this are present*

**d** οἱ ταῦτα λέξοντες παρήσαν *there were present men who will say this*

**e** ταῦτα εἰπὼν ἀπ-ῆλθεν *after saying this he went away*

Notice that in *a* the time of the participle is present or universal ; in *b* present for ἔμενον ; in *c* and *e* past ; in *d* future. Read 580 and *a*, 581 and *a*.

3 Examine 582 *a*, *b*, *c*, 583 *a* *end*, and *b*, 585 *a*, *b*, 586 *a*, 587, 589, in connection with the references in the exercise. See τυγχάνω 261 *c* in the Verb-list.

## VOCABULARY AND EXERCISES

4 ἀ-δύνατος -ον *unable, impossible*; τυγχάνω *G hit, reach, obtain*; with  
a- neg. and δύναμαι 167 *pred. ptc., happen, chance*

5 Πάντες οἱ παρ-όντες εἶδον τὸν κήρῡκα. 582 *a*. 2 πάντες ὅσοι παρ-ῆσαν ἐπέμφθησαν ὑπὸ τοῦ ἄρχοντος. 582 *a*. 3 οἱ τὸν λόφον λαβόντες κατ-ελήφθησαν<sup>1</sup> πρὶν τοὺς ἄλλους ἀφ-ικέσθαι. 582 *a*. 4 ὁ δὲ Σωκράτης τοὺς μὴ δυναμένους ἑαυτῶν ἄρχειν οὐκ ἔφη<sup>2</sup> δυνήσεσθαι ἄλλων ἄρχειν. 582 *c*. 5 βουλόμενος οὖν λέγειν τῷ στρατεύματι ἐκέλευσε τὸν κήρῡκα συν-αγαγεῖν καὶ ἡμᾶς πάντας τοὺς οὐ παρ-όντας<sup>3</sup> and συν-αγαγεῖν πάντας τοὺς μὴ παρ-όντας. 583, 582 *c*. 6 οὗτοι οὐ δυνάμενοι ἀπο-φυγεῖν

ἀπ-έθανον. 583. 7 νυκτός τε καὶ ἡμέρας ἐπορεύθησαν τὸν Εὐφράτην ποταμὸν ἐν δεξιᾷ ἔχοντες. 583. 8 ταῦτα ἀκούσασιν τοῖς φύλαξιν ἔδοξεν<sup>4</sup> ἀπ-ελθεῖν εἰς τὸ στρατόπεδον. 583. 9 ἔπεμψα τὸν παῖδα ληψόμενον ὕδωρ τῷ ἵππῳ ἐκ τῆς διώρυχος. 583 b. 10 αἱ ἄμαξαι ἐφ' ὧν ἦγοντο αἱ ἀσπίδες καὶ τὰ δόρατα καὶ τὰ τοξεύματα ἐτύγχανον οὕσαι<sup>5</sup> ἐπὶ τῷ δεξιῷ κέρατι. 585 a. 11 Μένων δῆλος ἦν οἰόμενος<sup>6</sup> σοφὸς εἶναι. 585 a. 12 τὰ ἄρματα ἰδόντες<sup>7</sup> οὐκ ἐδύναντο παύεσθαι φεύγοντες. 583, 585 b. 13 εἶδον Ξενίαν φεύγοντα. 586 a. 14 οἶδα αὐτὸν φυγόντα. οἶδα αὐτὸν φεύγοντα. 586 a. 15 εἶδομεν<sup>8</sup> ἀδυνατοὶ ὄντες ἀπο-φυγεῖν. ᾗδεσαν<sup>9</sup> ἡμᾶς ἀδυνάτους ὄντας ἀπο-φυγεῖν. 587, 586 a. 16 τοῦ ἐμοῦ φίλου ἄκοντος οὐ πορεύσομαι. 589 a.

- 246 Taking the horses they proceeded by night keeping the river on the right. 583. 2 All who could not fight were captured by the Persians. 582 c. 3 We knew that the road was long and difficult.<sup>10</sup> 586 a. 4 We happen to be present whenever he speaks. 585 a. 5 They were evidently marching as rapidly as they could. 585 a. 6 They did not cease fleeing until they reached<sup>11</sup> the camp. 585 b.

247 <sup>1</sup> κατ-ελήφθησαν: aor. pass. of κατα-λαμβάνω *capture*.

<sup>2</sup> οὐκ ἔφη δυνήσεσθαι *used to say they would not be able*.

<sup>3</sup> παρ-όντας: παρών ptc. of παρ-εἶναι *be present*.

<sup>4</sup> ἔδοξεν αὐτοῖς *they decided*.

<sup>5</sup> οὕσαι: ptc. fem. of ὢν *being*, agreeing with ἄμαξαι the subject of ἐτύγχανον.

<sup>6</sup> δῆλος ἦν οἰόμενος *he evidently thought*.

<sup>7</sup> ἰδόντες *seeing*: aor. ptc. of εἶδον *I saw*. Translate *when they saw*.

<sup>8</sup> εἶδομεν *we saw*.

<sup>9</sup> ᾗδεσαν *they knew*: imperf. of οἶδα *know*.

<sup>10</sup> χαλεπός -ή -όν.

<sup>11</sup> Use the proper form of ἀφικνέομαι with εἰς or ἐπὶ.

## COMPARISON OF IDIOMS

48 In studying participles mark sharply what is like the English:

**a** Like the Greek idioms in 582 **a** and **b** are these English expressions: *the fleeing prisoner; the captured rebel; a running brook; a finished task; the dying; the wounded. All desiring to remain may do so.*

**b** As in 583 we have in English: *Taking the money he went away. Standing at the entrance he watched them passing out.*

**c** 585 **a** πολλάκις φανερός ἦν λέγων *he was frequently seen talking; δι-ἤγε λέγων he kept saying.* These are common English idioms.

**d** Like 585 **b** and **c**, we say: *He did not cease lamenting. He began speaking. He went dashing down the field.*

**e** *I saw him running* is not quite the same as *I saw that he was running*, though Greek expresses both by the participle: εἶδον αὐτὸν θέοντα 586 **a**.

**f** *All opposing, I had to desist* is similar to the form in 589.

9 There remain then only three points that are unfamiliar:

**a** The Greek frequently requires the article where we omit it: *all desiring* is πάντες οἱ βουλόμενοι, *anyone desiring* is ὁ βουλόμενος.



**b** In ἐτύγχανον λέγων *I happened to be saying* we must use the infinitive, or say *by chance I was saying*, or some equivalent.

**c** In οἶδα αὐτὸν τεθνηκότα *I know that he is dead*, οἶδα οὐ σοφὸς ὦν *I know that I am not wise*, we use a *that* clause; and the Greek frequently uses a **ὅτι** clause.

Of course all these forms above we may translate into any idiom that suits the context.

## XXVI PARTICIPLES

THE GENITIVE ABSOLUTE. 'Ως WITH THE PARTICIPLE  
NUMERALS

250 **a** Learn the first twenty **cardinal** numbers **188**, and **188-189 a**.

**b** Review **580-587**, **589**, **590**. Examine **588** for reference. Study **592**, **593 c**.

25/ As we have seen, the **subject** of the predicate participle is omitted when it is the same as that of the leading verb, and participle and modifiers of the subject agree with the subject of the leading verb **587**. Compare **571** and **62**.

βούλομαι εἶναι σοφός *I wish to be wise*

οἶδα αὐτὸς οὐκ ὦν σοφός *I know that I myself  
am not wise*

But οἶδα τοῦτον οὐκ ὄντα σοφόν *I know that HE is  
not wise*

2 **Tenses 581 a.** Compare **577 a** and **6/**. The negative remains unchanged.

ἡμεῖς πορευόμεθα, πορευσόμεθα, ἐπορεύθημεν  
*We are advancing, we shall advance, we advanced.*

ἔφη ἡμᾶς πορεύεσθαι, πορεύσεσθαι, πορευθῆναι  
*He said that we were were going to had*  
*advancing, advance, advanced.*

ᾤσθητο ἡμᾶς πορευομένους, πορευσομένους, πορευθέντας  
*He perceived that we were going to had*  
*were advancing, advance, advanced.*

**a** See the Verb-list for λανθάνω **261 c**, -λέγω *gather*, μανθάνω **261 c**, τρέπω, τρέφω, φθάνω **261 a**.

## VOCABULARY AND EXERCISES

- 3 **πεζός** -ή -όν *afoot; foot-soldier; οἱ πεζοὶ the infantry; πεζῷ on foot* /25; **πούς** 232
- μηδείς, οὐδείς** -μία, -ῖν *not one, no one, differing as the simple μή and οὐ; μηδέ, οὐδέ + εἰς*
- δι-σπάρῃω** *tear apart, plunder, sack; διδ + ἀρπάζω seize. Harry*
- ἐπι-τρέπω** *D give over to, entrust; D and inf. clause, allow, permit; ἐπί + τρέπω turn*
- λανθάνω** *lie hid; A escape the notice of. Latin lateō; leth-argy*
- μανθάνω** *learn, understand. math-ematics*
- λόν**, etc. of **λέναι**, *going, marching*
- προσ-ίναί** *come to, approach, advance*
- συν-λέγω** *bring together, collect; pass. come together; σύν + λέγω gather*
- τρέφω** *nourish, support, maintain; keep, as ἵππον τρέφω*
- φθάνω** *A get the start of, anticipate*
- οὕτω πράττω** *fare thus, meet with this result; εὖ or καλῶς πράττω am successful; κακῶς πράττω fare ill, am unfortunate*
- \* **αὖ** *adv. again, in turn, on the other hand*

4 Ὁ νεανίας ἐλθὼν συν-εβουλεύσατο τῷ θεῷ. **583.**

2 Σωκράτης ἐκέλευσε τὸν νεανίαν εἰς Δελφοὺς ἐλ-

θόντα συμ-βουλευσασθαι τῷ θεῷ. συμ-βουλεύει τῷ  
 νεανίᾳ ἐλθόντα (ἐλθόντι) συμ-βουλευσασθαι.  
 583. 3 οὕτω πράξαντες ἀπ-ἤλθον ἔχοντες τὰ  
 ἄρματα. 583, 583 a *encl.* 4 ταύτην τὴν χώραν ἐπ-  
 ἔτρεψε δι-αρπάσαι τοῖς φύλαξι ὡς πολεμίαν οὖσαν.  
 593 c. 5 ἐπ-εβούλευε τοῖς στρατηγοῖς ὡς ἄρξων  
 τοῦ στρατεύματος ἀντ' ἐκείνων. 593 c. 6 ἅμα δὲ τῇ  
 ἡμέρᾳ συν-ελθόντες οἱ στρατηγοὶ συν-εβουλεύ-  
 σαντο ὡς πορευσόμενοι εἰς τὸ πρόσθεν. 583,  
 593 c, 583 b. 7 ἐπεὶ δ' οὖν ἦσθετο τὸν φίλον τεθνη-  
 κότα ἔφυγεν ἔχων καὶ τοὺς στρατιωτᾶς πάντας ὧν  
 ἦρχεν. 586 a, 583. 8 τῇ δ' ὑστεραίᾳ ἦκεν ἄγγελος  
 λέγων ὅτι λελοιπὴς ἐστὶ Σύννεσις τὰ ἄκρα, ἐπεὶ  
 ἦσθετο ὅτι τὸ Μένωνος στράτευμα ἤδη ἐν Κιλικίᾳ ἐστίν.  
 ἡμεῖς δ' οὖν ἀν-έβημεν ἐπὶ τὰ ἄκρα οὐδενὸς κωλύ-  
 οντος, καὶ εἶδομεν τὰς σκηναὺς οὐ οἱ Κίλικες ἐφύλατ-  
 τον. 583, 584, 588 a, 589. 9 ὁ μὲν σατράπης μάχη  
 ἀπ-έθανε καλῶς μαχόμενος, ἡμεῖς δ' οὐκ ἦσμεν  
 τεθνηκότα τούτον. 583, 586 a. 10 προ-ιόντες  
 ὁδὸν ἡμερῶν τεττάρων ὁψόμεθα τοὺς καλοὺς ἵππους τοὺς  
 τῶν Ἀράβων. 583, 506 a, *ew.* 4. 11 προσ-ιοῦσι  
 αὐτοῖς τῇ σάλπιγγι ἐσήμηνε Τολμίδης ὁ κῆρυξ. 583.  
 12 καὶ ἐφθησαν ἐπὶ τῷ ἄκρῳ γενόμενοι τοὺς  
 πολεμίους. 585 a. 13 φθησόμεθα τοὺς φίλους  
 κατα-λαβόντες τοὺς φεύγοντας. 585 a, 582 a.  
 14 τοὺς στρατιωτᾶς ὁ σατράπης ἔλαβεν ὧδε. Κλε-  
 ἀρχῳ ἔπεμψε πολλὰ χρήματα· ὁ δὲ λαβὼν στρά-  
 τευμα συν-έλεξεν τούτοις τοῖς χρήμασι. 583. 15  
 οὕτω δὲ αὖ ἄλλο στράτευμα ἐλάνθανεν αὐτῷ τρε-  
 φόμενον. 585 a. 16 λαβόντες τοὺς πεζοὺς

ἐλάθομεν τοὺς φύλακας ἀπ-ελθόντες νυκτός.  
 583, 585 a. 17 εὐθὺς παῖδες ὄντες μαθάνουσιν  
 ἄρχειν τε καὶ ἄρχεσθαι. 592, 588 c. 18 ἐὰν μηδεὶς  
 ἔλθῃ, ἀνάγκη δὴ ἔσται ἡμῖν πορευθῆναι μόνοις. 19  
 μὴ δια-βῶμεν τὸν ποταμὸν πρὶν τοὺς ἄλλους ἀφικέ-  
 σθαι. 20 φίλοι μὲν ἦσαν αὐτῷ πολλοί, ὀλίγοι δὲ  
 πολέμοι.

## THE GENITIVE ABSOLUTE

- 5 When there is a word in the sentence with which the participle can agree, the genitive absolute is not commonly used, nor is the Greek forced to the absolute construction for lack of a participle as the Latin is. The participle ὄν *being* should not be omitted. The Latin has none.

a *Caesar equitatū praemissō subsequēbātur*  
 προ-πέμψας δὲ τοὺς ἱππέας Καῖσαρ ἐφ-είπετο  
*Sending forward the cavalry, Caesar followed after.*

b *Hāc orātiōne habitā adsēdit*  
 ταῦτα εἰπὼν ἐκαθέζετο  
*After these remarks he took his seat.*

c *Hōc factō eōs ab sē dimisit*  
 ταῦτα ποιήσας ἀπ-επέμψατο αὐτούς  
*After he had done this, he let them depart.*

d But *Eō praesente nōlō dicere*  
 τούτου παρ-όντος οὐ βούλομαι εἰπεῖν  
*I prefer not to speak in this man's presence.*

## XXVII THE CONSONANT DECLENSION

## LIQUID STEMS. NUMERALS

256 a Review 187, 188, 189. Learn the cardinal numbers through one hundred in 188 and 190.

b Study the paradigms 99–103 a, c, d; εὐδαίμων 147, 148. ν disappears before -σι in the dative plural without vowel-lengthening.

c Learn πῦρ 142, 8; χεῖρ 142, 10.

## VOCABULARY AND EXERCISES

- 257 ἀγών -ῶνος ὁ *gathering; contest, games; ἀγῶνα ποιεῖν hold games; ἄγω 30. Latin āgmen; agony, ant-agonist*  
 Ἕλλην -ηνος ὁ *Greek; Ἕλληνι-κός 9/*  
 ἡγεμὼν -όνος ὁ *leader, guide; ἄγω 30. hegemony*  
 λιμὴν -ένος ὁ *harbor*  
 μὴν μηνός ὁ *month. Latin mēnsis*  
 πῦρ πυρός τό *fire. pyre, pyrotechnic*  
 ῥήτωρ -ορος ὁ *orator. rhetoric ἡ ῥητορικὴ 425 end*  
 χεῖρ χειρός ἡ *hand. ohro-graphy γράφω 114*
- χιών χιόνος ἡ *snow*  
 εὐ-δαίμων -ον *happy, prosperous; εὖ 139 + δαίμων divinity*  
 σῶ-φρων -ον *of sound mind, sensi-ble, discreet*  
 ἐπ-ί-ναι *go on, come up; D go against, attack*  
 καθ-οράω *look down on; observe; κατά + ὁράω 186 c, 320*  
 ὑπερ-βάλλω *throw beyond; cross over, cross. hyperbole*  
 ὑπο-μένω *stay behind; A wait for*  
 ὁμ-ως *adv. all the same, neverthe-less, however; ἄμα 173*

258 Οἱ ἡγεμόνες ὑμῶν φανεροί εἰσι σοφοί τε καὶ σώφρονες ὄντες. 2 τρεῖς μῆνας οἱ ἄρχοντες ἦγον ἡμᾶς διὰ πολ-λῆς χιόνος. 3 αὐταὶ αἱ κῶμαι εἰς ἃς ἀφ' ἰκόμεθα ἦσαν μεγάλαι τε καὶ εὐδαίμονες. 4 ὁψόμεθα ἐκεῖ πολλὰ μακρὰ πλοῖα ἐν τῷ λιμένι. 5 ὁ μὲν ἀγὼν ἰσχυρὸς ἦν, ἡ δὲ νίκη καλή· ὑπὲρ γὰρ τῆς πατρίδος ἐμαχόμεθα.

6 οἱ ῥήτορες ἔλεγον τοῖς πολίταις περὶ τῆς πατρίδος αὐτῶν. 7 χαλεπά ἐστι τὰ παρ-όντα διὰ τὸ<sup>1</sup> τοὺς στρατηγούς τεθνηκέναι ἡμῶν. 8 οἱ φύλακες ἔτοιμοι ἦσαν ἔχοντες τὰ δόρατα ἐν ταῖς χερσὶ ἡνίκα ἐφάνησαν ἔμπροσθεν οἱ βάρβαροι προσ-ιόντες ὥς ἐδύναντο τάχιστα.

## A LITTLE DIVERSION

ἰ9 Ἐντεῦθεν ἔπεμψαν νυκτὸς Δημοκράτην ἄνδρας<sup>2</sup> δόντες ἐπὶ τὰ ἄκρα ἔνθα ἔφασαν οἱ σκοποὶ κατ-ιδεῖν τὰ πυρά· οὗτος γὰρ σώφρων ἦν ἀπαγγέλλων τὰ ὄντα<sup>3</sup> τε ὥς ὄντα καὶ τὰ μὴ ὄντα ὥς οὐκ ὄντα. πορευθεὶς δὲ τὰ μὲν πυρὰ οὐκ ἔφη ἰδεῖν, ἄνδρα<sup>4</sup> δὲ συλ-λαβὼν ἤκεν ἄγων ἔχοντα ὅπλα Περσικά. ἐρωτώμενος<sup>5</sup> δὲ τίς ἐστι, Πέρσης μὲν ἔφη εἶναι, πορεύεσθαι δ' ἀπὸ τοῦ Τιριβάζου στρατοπέδου ἵνα ἐπιτήδεια λάβῃ. οἱ δὲ ἤρουντο αὐτὸν τὸ στράτευμα<sup>6</sup> πόσον τέ ἐστι καὶ διὰ τί<sup>7</sup> συνειλεγμένον.<sup>8</sup> ὁ δὲ εἶπεν ὅτι Τιρίβαζός ἐστιν, ἔχων τήν τε ἑαυτοῦ στρατιὰν καὶ ἄλλους πολλοὺς Χάλυβάς τε καὶ Ταόχους· μέλλειν δὲ αὐτὸν ἔφη ἐν τοῖς στενοῖς, οὗ ἦν μόνη πάροδος, ἐνταῦθα ἐπ-ιέναι τοῖς Ἑλλησι παρ-ιούσιν.

Ἀκούσᾱσι<sup>9</sup> ταῦτα τοῖς στρατηγοῖς ἔδοξε τὸ στράτευμα συν-αγαγεῖν· καὶ εὐθὺς φύλακας κατὰ-λιπόντες καὶ στρατηγὸν ἐπὶ τοῖς μένουσι Σοφαίνετον Στυμφάλιον ἐπορεύοντο ἔχοντες ἡγεμόνα<sup>10</sup> τὸν ἀλόντα<sup>11</sup> ἄνθρωπον. ἐπειδὴ δὲ ὑπερ-έβαλλον τὰ ἄκρα, οἱ πελτασταὶ προσ-ιόντες καὶ κατ-ιδόντες τὸ τῶν βαρβάρων στρατόπεδον οὐκ ἔμειναν τοὺς ὀπλίτας, ἀλλ' ἔθεον ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον. οἱ δὲ βάρβαροι ἀκούσαντες τὸν θόρυβον<sup>12</sup> οὐχ ὑπ-έμειναν, ἀλλ' ἔφευγον· ὁμως δὲ καὶ

ἀπ-έθανόν τινες<sup>13</sup> τῶν βαρβάρων καὶ ἵπποι ἤλωσαν εἰς<sup>14</sup> εἴκοσι καὶ ἡ σκηνὴ ἡ Τιριβάζου ἔάλω καὶ ἐν αὐτῇ πολλὰ χρήματα. ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἐπύθοντο<sup>15</sup> ταῦτα οἱ τῶν ὀπλιτῶν στρατηγοί, ἔδοξεν αὐτοῖς ἀπ-ιέναι ὡς τάχιστα ἐπὶ τὸ ἑαυτῶν στρατόπεδον, δεδοικότες μὴ οἱ βάρβαροι ἐπ-ίωσι<sup>16</sup> τοῖς κατα-λελειμμένοις.<sup>17</sup> καὶ εὐθὺς κελεύσαντες τῇ σάλπιγγι σημαίνειν Τολμίδην τὸν κήρυκα ἀπ-ῆλθον καὶ ἀφ-έκοντο τῇ αὐτῇ ἡμέρᾳ ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον.

- 260 We could see no one coming up with the guide. 2 Few leaders<sup>18</sup> were seen going into the contests. 3 We found<sup>19</sup> the horses well kept. 4 We are all willing<sup>20</sup> to incur danger for our native country, even at the risk of our lives.<sup>21</sup> 5 In the same month<sup>22</sup> boats were brought into the harbor. 6 We have never ceased planning for our native country.

26/ <sup>1</sup> διὰ τὸ . . . τεθνηκέναι: translate as a clause *because of the fact that, or because our generals are dead.*

<sup>2</sup> ἄνδρας δό-ντ-ες giving him men. Cp. for form Latin *dantēs*, *dō*, *dare*.

<sup>3</sup> τὰ ὄντα facts as facts.

<sup>4</sup> ἄνδρα a man: cp. ἄνδρας. Translate *seized and brought back a man who carried*. Note the agreement and use of each participle.

<sup>5</sup> ἐρωτώμενος being asked: pres. pass. ptc. of ἐρωτάω. See 157, 2 and 159, 1.

<sup>6</sup> στράτευμα: the English order is πόσον τὸ στράτευμά ἐστιν.

<sup>7</sup> διὰ τί for what purpose? διὰ ὅτι on account of (what)?

<sup>8</sup> συν-ειλεγμένον: perf. ptc. pass. of συλ-λέγω.

<sup>9</sup> ἀκούσῃσι: notice the lack of

conjunction, frequent with forms of οὗτος 800 (2).

<sup>10</sup> ἔχοντες ἡγεμόνα taking as a guide. ἡγεμόνα is in apposition with ἄνθρωπον.

<sup>11</sup> ἀλόντα: aor. ptc. of ἀλίσκομαι. Notice the other forms of ἔαλων in this selection.

<sup>12</sup> θόρυβον: we had the genitive before 2/6, 2.

<sup>13</sup> τινες some.

<sup>14</sup> εἰς with numerals means about, to the number of.

<sup>15</sup> ἐπύθοντο: aor. of πυνθάνομαι.

<sup>16</sup> ἐπ-ίωσι: subjv. of ἐπ-ιέναι.

<sup>17</sup> κατα-λελειμμένοις: perf. ptc. pass. of κατα-λείπω.

The importance of participles is indicated by the fact that there are twenty-five in this selection.

<sup>18</sup> Use a participle.

<sup>19</sup> καταλαμβάνω.

<sup>21</sup> Compare 233, 9 and note.

<sup>20</sup> Express by ἰκόν agreeing with the subject.

<sup>22</sup> See 527 c.

### THE PARTICIPLE

- 2 The wide range of the **Uses of the Participle** does not admit of their close tabulation. The following is intended merely to be suggestive.

Time 581 and a, 252. Negative οὐ or μή 582 c

#### I *Attributive*, with or without the article

a Agreeing with a noun 582, 248 a

b Used as a noun 582 a, 248 a

#### II *Circumstantial*, without the article, representing a phrase or finite verb clause and modifying the main action

a Agreeing with a noun or pronoun in subject or predicate 583 and a, b, 248 b

b As a *Genitive Absolute* 589, 590, 255

c As an *Accusative Absolute*, mostly impersonal 591

#### III *Predicate*, without the article, agreeing with

##### a The Subject, with

1 Verbs like τυγχάνω, λανθάνω, φαίνομαι, δηλός εἰμι 585 a, 248 c

2 Verbs meaning *begin* and *cease* 585 b, 248 d

3 Οἶχομαι 585 c, 248 d

4 Verbs meaning *perceive* and *know*, stating a fact; equivalent to a ὅτι clause. 587, 251

##### b The Object, with

1 Verbs meaning *perceive*, *know*, *remember*, *show*, *make known*, stating a fact; equivalent to a ὅτι clause. 586 a, b, 248 e

2 Verbs meaning *perceive* (as *see*, *hear*), *find*, *catch*, describing an act or state. 586 a, 248 e



With some verbs participles are so used that it is not always easy to determine, and certainly not necessary to name, the use. In such cases the meaning is not in doubt.

## XXVIII THE CONSONANT DECLENSION

STEMS IN **-ερ**. REFLEXIVE AND OTHER PRONOUNS.  
CORRELATIVE ADVERBS

263 **a** Learn **άνήρ, πατήρ, μήτηρ, θυγάτηρ** 105-107; **άλλήλων** 202.

**b** Review pronouns 194-204 and 226, 227, 228; 557.

**c** Review adverbs 236 and 219, 220.

### VOCABULARY AND EXERCISES

264 **άδελφός -οῦ ὁ** brother. **Adelphi,**

**Phil-adelphia φίλος** 2/

**άνήρ άνδρός ὁ** man; equivalent to

Latin *vir*; cp. **άνθρωπος** 39

**θυγάτηρ -τρός ἡ** daughter

**μήτηρ μητρός ἡ** mother. Latin *māter*.

**πατήρ πατρός ὁ** father. Latin *pater*

**έπι-οψιᾶ -αῖς ἡ** suspicion; **ὄψομαι** 186 c **ὄραω**. **εὑν ορσις, optio**

**χάρις -ιτος ἡ** graciousness, gratitude, thanks; **χάριν αἶδα** or **έχω** am thankful. **ευ-oharist**

**άξιος -α -ον** G worth, worthy of;

**άγω** 30. axiom

**κοινός -ή -όν** common, public. **epi-**  
**cene**

**πάσχω** experience, undergo, am treated; **εὔ** or **άγαθόν** **πάσχω** am

well treated, receive benefits; **κα-κῶς** or **κακόν** **πάσχω** am badly treated, am injured. See 154 and **εὔπαθον** 86. **pathos, a-pathy, sym-pathy** **σύν** 178

**εὔ** or **άγαθόν** **ποιῶ** A treat well, do a favor to; **κακῶς** or **κακόν** **ποιῶ** A treat ill, injure. Cp. **εὔ πράττω** 253

**συν-γίγνομαι** D am with, associate with, meet; **γίγνομαι** 187

**ώφελίω** A help, assist

**ὥσ-περ** conj. adv. 216, just as

**άλλήλων** reciprocal pron. one another, each other. **par-allel**

**άμφότερος -α -ον**, usually plural, both. For position cp. **οὔτος** and see 554.

\* **γε** intensive particle 671 b, yet, at least

ἰ Ὅτε ἡμεῖς ἐμαχόμεθα ὑπὲρ τῆς πατρίδος, ὑμεῖς ἐπεβουλευέτε τοῖς πολίταις. 2 ἐγὼ μὲν τοῖς καλοῖς τε καὶ ἀγαθοῖς φίλος εἰμί, σὺ δὲ συγγίγναι τοῖς κακοῖς. 3 εἶδομεν τὸν πατέρα σου ἔχοντα καὶ ἀσπίδα καὶ δόρατα. 4 ἡμεῖς γε ὤμεν ἀξιοὶ ἀγαθῶν καὶ μὴ φύγωμεν. 5 ἂν μὴ πείθῃ<sup>1</sup> τῷ σεαυτοῦ πατρί, οὐ σοφὸς εἶ. ἔσει. 6 πάντες οἱ ἄνδρες ἔσονται ἀγαθοὶ πολῖται, καὶ<sup>2</sup> ἂν μὴ ἀκούωσι τῶν ῥητόρων λεγόντων. 7 ἡμεῖς μὲν τὰ ἡμέτερα αὐτῶν πλοῖα ληψόμεθα, ὑμῖν δὲ ἀνάγκη ἔσται τὰ ἄλλα λαβεῖν. 8 ὁ νεανίας τῇ μητρὶ χάριν ἔχει διὰ πολλά. 9 ὁ ἄρχων ἀφηρέθη<sup>3</sup> ὑπὸ τῶν ἑαυτοῦ ἀνδρῶν. 10 τί ἐμὲ ἄκουτα ἔπεμψας; 11 ἀμφοτέρω οἱ ἀδελφοί μου παρήσαν ἐν τῇ μάχῃ καὶ ἀμφοτέρω ἀπέθανον μαχόμενοι. 12 χάριν οἶδά σοι ὅσων<sup>4</sup> ἐποίησάς μοι.<sup>5</sup> πολλὴν χάριν ἔχομεν ὑμῖν ὧν<sup>6</sup> εὖ ἐποιήσατε ἡμᾶς. 13 ἐφυλάττοντο<sup>7</sup> δὲ ἀμφοτέρω ὥσπερ πολεμίους ἀλλήλους καὶ εὐθύς τοῦτο ὑποψιᾶν παρεῖχεν.<sup>8</sup> 14 ἐβουλόμην ὠφελῆσαι αὐτὸν ἀνθ' ὧν εὖ ἔπαθον<sup>9</sup> ὑπ' ἐκείνου. 15 τοῖς οὖν θεοῖς χάρις ὅτι οὐ μετὰ πολλῶν ἀλλὰ μετ' ὀλίγων ἦλθον οἱ βάρβαροι. 16 ἡ πατρίς ἐστὶ κοινὴ μήτηρ ἡμῶν πάντων. 17 ἄξω ὑμᾶς, ὦ ἄνδρες Ἑλληνες, εἰς τὴν ἑμαυτοῦ χώρᾱν. 18 ἔγωγε μὲν πιστεύω σοί· σὺ δὲ ἐμοὶ πιστεύεις; 19 μετ' ἐπέμψατο Ἀστυάγης τὴν ἑαυτοῦ θυγατέρα καὶ τὸν παῖδα αὐτῆς.

Both my father and mother were with them. 2 These men were grateful to the orator for his speech.<sup>10</sup> 3 He saw his own men dying before his eyes.<sup>11</sup> 4 Our native country is dear to us all. 5 I fear that they can not govern themselves<sup>12</sup> without us.

- 267 <sup>1</sup> *παύθη* obey: subjv. mid.  
<sup>2</sup> *καὶ ἰάν* even if 670 a.  
<sup>3</sup> *ἀφ' ἧς* was rescued: aor. pass. of ἀφαιέω.  
<sup>4</sup> *δοῦν* for all that 509 c.  
<sup>5</sup> *μοι*: a for dative; not like the use of the accusative ἡμᾶς below.  
<sup>6</sup> *ὧν ἐν* for the favors that.
- <sup>7</sup> *ἀπαλλάττοντο* 500 b. It takes an object in the accusative, ἀλλήλους.  
<sup>8</sup> *παράγειν* occasioned, caused.  
<sup>9</sup> *ἀντὶ ὧν ἐν ἐπαύειν* in return for the favors I had received. See ἀντὶ / 67.  
<sup>10</sup> Compare numbers 8 and 12.  
<sup>11</sup> Write before himself.  
<sup>12</sup> Use the genitive. Cp. 245, 4.

## REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS

268 A reflexive pronoun agrees with its antecedent in person, number, and gender; its case depends on its construction. Examine 269–273 carefully and use for reference:

269 The reflexive regularly refers to the most important word in its own clause, usually the subject, sometimes another word, **Direct Reflexive**. Compare *sē*, *suus* in Latin, West's *Grammar* 421, 1, 423.

*δύναμαι ἐμαυτὸν σώζειν* I can save myself.  
*ὁπότ' ἔγνωσ τὴν σαυτοῦ δύναμιν* when you recognized your own power.  
*δύνασθε ὑμῶν αὐτῶν ἄρχειν* you can govern yourselves.  
*ἀπέπεμψεν τοὺς εἰς τὴν ἐαυτῶν χώρην* he sent these back to their own country.

270 In subordinate clauses a reflexive sometimes refers to the subject of the leading clause, **Indirect Reflexive**. Compare *sē* in Latin, West's *Grammar* 421, 2.

*ἐβούλετο Κλέαρχος τὸ στράτευμα πρὸς ἐαυτὸν ἔχειν τὴν γνώμην* Klearchos wished the army to be devoted to him.

- 71 Frequently however the simple αὐτοῦ, αὐτῷ, αὐτῶν in subordinate clauses is used instead of a reflexive referring to the subject of the leading clause.

τῶν παρ' ἐαυτῷ βαρβάρων ἐπ-εμέλετο ἵνα εὐνοϊκῶς ἔχωσιν αὐτῷ *he took care that the barbarians at his own court should be well disposed toward him.* οὗτος τῷ σατράπῃ εἶπεν ὅτι ἐὰν αὐτῷ δῷ στρατιώτᾱς, αἰρήσει τοὺς πολεμίους *he told the satrap that if he would give him soldiers he would capture the enemy.*

- 72 We find also both in one clause referring to the subject.

συγ-καλεῖ εἰς τὴν ἐαυτοῦ σκηνὴν Πέρσᾱς τοὺς ἀρίστους τῶν περὶ αὐτὸν ἑπτά *he called together in his own tent seven Persian nobles of his staff.* In 271 ἐαυτῷ and αὐτῷ refer to the same person, but are in different clauses.

- 73 In τοὺς ἐμὸν παῖδας ἀφ-είλετο καὶ ἐμὲ αὐτόν *he rescued my sons and me myself*, neither ἐμούς nor ἐμὲ αὐτόν are reflexive, but both are emphatic. Review in this connection 227, 228.

## XXIX Ω-VERBS

### THE OPTATIVE MODE, FORMATION AND SOME USES

- 74 **Paradigms 252-254, 331, 336, 348, 367, 382, 384.**

**Formation.** a Forms in -οιμι and -οίμην, present and future 270, thematic aorist 347, active perfects 295, 333, future and future perfect passives 310, 301.

b Forms in -αιμι and -αίμην, sigmatic and liquid aorists 283, 328.

c Forms in -ίν, θη:ε- and η:ε- passives and root-aorists active **306, 335, 368 a**.

d The perfect middle and compound forms of the perfect active **300 b, 295 end**.

e The only irregularity of inflection is in the α-aorists active **283**.

f Accent **14 a, 306 end**.

275 A condensed statement of the above facts is given in b-f:<sup>1</sup>

a Paradigms **252-254, 331, 336, 348, 367, 382, 384**.

b Stems. In the optative, tense-stems in ο:ε use ο, and active perfects have ο in place of α.

c Mode-suffix. The optative has three mode-suffixes, -ι, -ιη, -ιε. In the singular before active endings in the μ-form<sup>2</sup> and contract forms,<sup>3</sup> use -ιη; in the third plural before the ending -ν use -ιε; elsewhere use -ι.<sup>4</sup>

d Endings. The optative has the secondary endings, but with -μ instead of -ν in the ω-form.<sup>5</sup> In the third plural, when -ιη is used, it takes -σαν, as εἰεν or εἰησαν of εἰμι *am*. The middle endings are used as in the indicative, -σο becoming -ο.

e Accent. Final αι and οι do not affect the accent as short vowels, and in the μ-form the accent does not go back of the mode-suffix.

<sup>1</sup> The references in 274 should be studied and checked in the *Grammar* and 275 should be learnt word for word and used for drill.

<sup>2</sup> See 192.

<sup>3</sup> Contracts will be given later.

<sup>4</sup> This rule answers all practical purposes for writing. Do not use the longer forms in the plural, unless so requested. εἰησαν is the only one likely to occur for a long time.

<sup>5</sup> See 192.

f The α-aorists active have three irregular forms -εας, -ειε, and -ειαν, the common prose forms.

Using the following tense-stems, the same for all modes, group as below: παυο:ε-, παυσο:ε-, παυσα-, φήνα-, λιπο:ε-, πε-παυκα-, λελοιπα-, πεπαυ-, πεπαυσο:ε-, παύθη:ε-, παύθησο:ε-, φανη:ε-, φανησο:ε-, βα:η-, γνο:ω-.

## OPTATIVES

Ω-FORM	FORMS WITH TENSE-SUFFIX ENDING IN -ο:ε OR -α		
PRESENT	παύο-ι-μι παυο-ί-μην	AORISTS	λίπο-ι-μι λιπο-ί-μην παύσα-ι-μι παυσα-ί-μην φήνα-ι-μι φηνά-ι-μην
FUTURES	παύσο-ι-μι παυσο-ί-μην παυθησο-ί-μην πεπαυσο-ί-μην		
PERFECTS	πεπαυσο-ί-μην πεπαύκο-ι-μι λελοίπο-ι-μι		
Μι-FORM	FORMS WITHOUT TENSE-SUFFIX		
PERFECTS COMPOUND	πεπαυκῶς ε-ἴη-ν πεπαυμένος ε-ἴη-ν	AORISTS	παυθε-ἴη-ν φανε-ἴη-ν βα-ἴη-ν γνο-ἴη-ν

a The presents δύναμαι *can* and ἐπίσταμαι *know*, as also the aorist ἐπριάμην, though without tense-suffix, are not made as μι-forms either in the subjunctive (compare /66, /72) or the optative. They have recessive accent 365 a:

Subjunctive δύνωμαι δύνῃ δύνῃται δυνώμεθα δύνῃσθε δύνωνται. So ἐπίστωμαι and πρίωμαι.

## Optative

TENSE-STEM . MEANING . . .	δυνα- <i>can</i>	ἐπιστα- <i>know</i>	πρια- <i>buy</i>
SINGULAR	δυναίμην δύναιο δύναιτο	ἐπισταίμην ἐπίσταιο ἐπίσταιτο	πριαίμην πρίαιο πρίαιτο
PLURAL	δυναίμεθα δύναισθε δύναιντο	ἐπισταίμεθα ἐπίσταισθε ἐπίσταιντο	πριαίμεθα πρίαισθε πρίαιντο

277 After learning the optative inflections write out partial synopses on the tense-stems in 276. Hereafter include the optative in the daily synopsis, putting it after the subjunctive. Use the following for models :

## PARTIAL SYNOPSSES

	PRESENT ACTIVE	FUTURE MIDDLE	SIGMATIC AORIST ACTIVE	SIGMATIC AORIST MIDDLE
TENSE-STEM MEANING	παυο : ε - <i>stop</i>	παυο ο : ε - <i>cease</i>	καλεσ α - <i>call</i>	ἀρξ α - <i>begin</i>
IND.	παύω	παύσομαι	ἐκάλεσα	ἤρξαμην
SUBJV.	παύω		καλέσω	ἄρξωμαι
OPT.	παύοιμι	παυσοίμην	καλέσαιμι	ἀρξάιμην
IMPV.				
INF.	παύειν	παύεσθαι	καλέσαι	ἀρξασθαι
PTC.	παύων	παυόμενος	καλέσας	ἀρξάμενος

THEMATIC AORIST ACTIVE	THEMATIC AORIST MIDDLE	PERFECT ACTIVE	AORIST Θη- PASSIVE	ROOT- AORIST ACTIVE	ROOT- AORIST ACTIVE
λαβο:ε- <i>take</i>	γνο:ε- <i>become</i>	ἤχα- <i>drive</i>	ἄχθη:ε- <i>drive</i>	βα:η- <i>go</i>	γνο:ω- <i>recognize</i>
ἔλαβον λάβω λάβοιμι	ἔγενόμην γένομαι γενοίμην	ἤχα ἤχη ἤχω ἤχοιμι	ἤχθην ἄχθῶ ἄχθειν	ἔβην βῶ βαίην	ἔγνων γνῶ γνοίην
λαβεῖν λαβών	γενέσθαι γενόμενος	ἤχέναι ἤχῶς	ἄχθῆναι ἄχθεις	βῆναι βάς	γνώναι γνούς

We begin here the **Uses of the Optative**.

Tenses **483**. Compare **475** and **45, 60, 63, 119**.

**I** In Optative Sentences, *Independent*

**a** In *Wishes*, with or without εἴθε or εἰ γάρ, **476, 477**  
Time future. Negative μή

**b** With ἄν, *Hypothetical Optative*, **479, 480**

Time commonly future or universal. Negative οὐ

**a** The Indicative in *Hopeless Wishes*, negative μή, **470, a, b**.

**b** The *Hypothetical Indicative*, negative οὐ, **461, c, d, 467 c, 468, a, b**.

**c** See the Verb-list for δέχομαι, ὀφείλω, σφίζω.

#### VOCABULARY AND EXERCISES

δέχομαι receive, accept; δεξιός 222

ὀφείλω owe; aor. ὀφελον with inf.  
ought, would that

παρ-γίνομαι am present, arrive.

See παρ-εἶναι 179

σφίζω save, rescue; σάφρων 257

ἄλλως adv. otherwise, in another  
way; ἄλλος 21

ἴσως adv. equally; perhaps; ίσος  
equal. iso-thermal, iso-soles



μήποτε, οὐποτε adv. not ever. οἶδέ-ποτε, οἶδε-πό-ποτε, οὐ-πό-  
 never; differing as the simple μή ποτε in the general vocabulary  
 and οὐ: μή and οὐ + ποτε 215. See 5th conj. 622 b, because

281 Εὖ πράττοις. εἰ γὰρ ἴδοιτε τοὺς φίλους. μηδέποτε  
 κακῶς πάθοις.<sup>1</sup> 476, 477. 2 μηδέν<sup>2</sup> κακὸν ποιήσειαν  
 ἡμᾶς. εἴθε πείθοιο τῷ πατρί. 3 εἴθε σὺ φίλος ἡμῖν  
 γένοιο. 4 τὸ νῦν<sup>3</sup> ταῦτα πράττοις ἂν ἐν χερσὶν ἔχεις.  
 5 ἐγὼγε οὐκ ἂν βουλοίμην τοῖς Πέρσαις πιστεύειν.  
 479. 6 μηκέτι μένωμεν· οὕτως<sup>5</sup> γὰρ ἴσως ἂν δυναί-  
 μεθα καταλαβεῖν τοὺς ἡγεμόνας. 7 ἐν μάχῃ μὲν  
 οὐδέποτε ἂν φύγομεν ἡμεῖς, οὗτοι δὲ ἰδόντες τοὺς πολε-  
 μίους οὐκ ἂν, οἶμαι, δέχοντο αὐτούς. 8 βουλοίμην οὖν  
 ἂν τοῦτο οὕτω γενέσθαι. 480 end. 9 εἴθε ὁ ἄρχων  
 ἡμῶν παρ-ῆν. εἰ γὰρ μὴ ἐγένετο τοῦτα. 470 a. 10  
 ὦ παῖδες, ὠφέλετε<sup>4</sup> τοὺς καλοὺς ἵππους ἰδεῖν. 470 b.  
 11 εἰ γὰρ ὠφέλομεν παρα-γενέσθαι· οὕτω<sup>5</sup> γὰρ ἂν  
 ἡμεῖς οὐκ ἐφύγομεν. 470 b. 467 c. 12 τί γὰρ ταῦτα  
 οὐκ εἶπες: ὅτι σὺ οὐκ ἂν ἐβουλήθης. 467 c. 13 ἐν  
 τῷ στρατοπεδῷ<sup>5</sup> ἐσώζοντο ἂν. 461 c. 14 ἐβουλό-  
 μην ἂν τοῦτο οὕτω γενέσθαι. 461 d. 15 τί νυκτὸς  
 ἐπορεύεσθε: ὅτι ἐν ἄλλῳ χρόνῳ ἰδεῖν ἂν ἡμᾶς ἐδύ-  
 ναντο οἱ πολέμοι. 461 c, 481.

282 May we never<sup>6</sup> again see these men. 476. 2 Without  
 you I could<sup>7</sup> not have succeeded.<sup>8</sup> 461 c. 3 I should  
 prefer not<sup>9</sup> to do what you ask. 479. 4 I should not  
 march into this country without you. 479. 5 You ought  
 to-have-been-present<sup>10</sup> when he was speaking. 470 b.

283 <sup>1</sup> πάθοις: aor. opt. of πάσχω 26 f.

<sup>2</sup> μηδὲν κακόν is cognate accusa-  
 tive and ἡμᾶς is the object of the  
 expression. Cp. 536 c.

<sup>3</sup> τὸ νῦν for the present.

<sup>4</sup> ὠφέλετε . . . ἰδεῖν you ought to  
 have seen.

<sup>5</sup> οὕτως and ἐν τῷ στρατοπεδῷ

in 13 suggest the circumstances to . <sup>3</sup> Use the aorist infinitive of εἶ which the statement applies. 481. πρᾶττω 253.

<sup>6</sup> μηδέποτε.

<sup>9</sup> οὐκ ἂν βουλοίμην.

<sup>7</sup> Use the proper form of δύναμαι.

<sup>10</sup> παραγενέσθαι.

### XXX THE OPTATIVE MODE

#### REVIEW OF CORRELATIVE PRONOUNS AND ADVERBS. FORMS OF Εἴμι AND Οἶδα

**4 a** In 227 observe how the relative stem *ὁ* unites with the indefinites making the general relative pronouns, just as with adverbs in 236 and 219. Review 220 *a* and apply it to general relative pronouns. Review 227 and learn the new forms omitting the words in -*λίκος* and forms in parenthesis. *τοιόσδε* and *τοσούδε* differ from *τοιούτος* and *τοσοῦτος* as *ᾧδε* differs from *οὗτος*: *such* and *so much* or *so many*, as follows; *such* and *so much* or *so many*, as mentioned. See 211, 212, 222. Observe that *τοιούτος* and *τοσοῦτος* are declined like *οὗτος* 209 and 97. Notice the groups with the *initial* syllables in *οσ* and *οι*.

**b** Review 84, 85 *a*, 103, and 236, omitting the forms in parenthesis. Notice that the *final* syllable indicates the group to which a form belongs.

**c** In studying the references to clauses that take the optative note carefully the translations. They will help in translating these pronouns and adverbs. Observe too that the general relatives are frequently translated by simple relatives and that Greek is far more exact than English in indicating quantity and quality in relatives. The English idiom must be the guide in translating.

**d** Like general relative adverbs the general relative pronouns are common in quoted questions. Carefully study the following examples :

## CORRELATIVES

285 Τοιοῦτοι οἷους ἔχομεν *such men as we have.*

2 τοσοῦτοι ὅσους ἔχομεν *as many men as we have.*

3 οὗτος μὲν τοιαῦτα εἶπεν· ὁ δὲ Περικλῆς ἀπεκρίνατο τοιάδε *such were his remarks, but Pericles replied as follows.*

4 τούτων τοιούτων ὄντων *quae cum ita sint, such being the case.*

5 ὥς δυνατὸν ἐκ τοῦ τοιούτου τρόπου οἷον ἐκείνος εἶχεν *as far as was possible with such a character as he had.*

6 ἐπορεύθη τοσαύτην ὁδὸν ὅσην ἐδύνατο *he made as long a march as he could.*

7 ὅπόσον διώξαιαν τοσοῦτον πάλιν ἐλθεῖν μαχομένους ἔδει *as far as they pursued so far they had to return fighting.*

8 θύομαι ὅποσα δύναμαι ἵνα πράττω ὅποῖα μέλλει ἄριστα ἔσεσθαι *I sacrifice to the best of my ability that I may do whatever will result in the best advantage.*

9 ἐπράττον ὅποῖόν τι βούλονται *they did whatever they wished.*

10 πράξουσιν ἄλλα ὅποῖα ἂν δύνωνται *they will do whatever else they can.*

11 ἔλαβον ὅποῖα τῶν χωρίων ἐδύναντο *they captured such of the places as they could.*

12 λέξω ὅποίοις λόγοις ἔπεισα αὐτόν *I will tell by what sort of arguments I persuaded him.*

13 ὅποσοι ἀπέθνησκον λέγει *he tells how many were killed.*

14 ἦρετο ὅποση τις εἶη ἡ χώρα *he asked about how large the country was.*

15 ἦρετο ὁποίων τινῶν ἡμῶν ἔτυχον *he asked just what sort of men they found us to be.*

16 ὁπότεροι ἂν φίλοι γένωνται τούτους αἰρησόμεθα *we shall choose whichever party proves to be friendly.*

17 δεῖ ὁπότερον βούλει ἐλέσθαι *you must choose whichever (of the two) you wish.*

18 ἐθέλοιτε ἂν τούτοις ἐπιτρέψαι, ὁπότερα ἂν ψηφίσωνται, εἴτε . . . εἴτε; *would you be willing to submit it to these men, whichever way they vote, whether . . . or?*

19 οὕτως οὐκ ἂν, ὅποτε ἔλθοιεν, βουλευέσθαι ἡμᾶς δεοί *in that case we should not have to make plans whenever they came.*

20 οὐκ ἦν ὁπόθεν οὐκ εἶχον ἱκανά *there was no place where they did not get enough.*

6 Examine the forms of εἶμι *go* in 385 and a, fixing the subjunctive, optative, infinitive, and participle. Learn the optative of οἶδα 386.

7 In studying the following clauses compare the uses of the optative with those of the indicative and the subjunctive usually given in the grammar in the same section. Carefully note the translations. Compare also with the table in 203. These uses of the optative are merely an extension of uses already familiar.

a *Mή* clauses 610, 611 a, b, c. Negative οὐ.

b Ὅς and ὅτις clauses 616 a, b, 617, 618 a, b, c. Negative μή.

c Other relative clauses 620, 627, 629, 630, 631; ὅπως with the future indicative 638 a. Negative μή.

d Πρίν clauses, indicative, subjunctive, and optative 643, 644 a, b, c.

The following may be used in writing: In *before* clauses, when *until* cannot be substituted for *before*, use πρίν with the infinitive. In *until* clauses, when *before* cannot be substituted for *until*, do not use πρίν for *until*.

See the Verb-list for ψεύδω.

#### VOCABULARY AND EXERCISES

- 288 ναύ-αρχος -ου ὁ admiral: ναῦς κατ-έγω bring down, bring to land;  
ship + ἄρχω 66. Latin nāvis; restore; κατέ + ἔγω 30  
καρσος φοβέω frighten; φοβεῖμαι 185, am  
Ἀθηναῖος -ῆ -ον Athenian; as frightened, fear; φόβος 30  
subst. an Athenian ψεύδω deceive; mid. A am deceit-  
ἐν-σηλος -ον evident thereby, plain; ful, am false to. pseud-aym  
ἐν + ὅλος 30 δόγμα 222  
ἐχθρός -ά -όν hostile; as subst. ἐγγός adv. G near, nearly  
enemy; equivalent to Latin in- δ-πως conj. adv. how, in what way;  
imicus like ἔναι 139, that, in order that

- 289 Δέδοικα ἐλθεῖν. δέδοικα μὴ ἐψευσμένοι ἐσμέν. δέ-  
δοικε μὴ ὁ ἵππος ἀπο-θάνη. ἔδεισε μὴ ὁ ἵππος ἀπο-  
θάνοι. 611 a, b, c. 2 οἱ ἡγεμόνες ἐφοβήθησαν μὴ οἱ  
Θράκες δια-βαῖεν νυκτὸς τὸν ποταμόν. 3 ὁ ἀνὴρ  
χαλεπὸς ἐχθρὸς ἐστίν ᾧ ἂν πολέμιος ᾗ. 616 a.  
4 ὁ τι ἂν βούλῃ πέμπειεν ἄν. πέμπειεν ἂν ὁ τι  
βούλοιο. ὁ τι βουλοίμην ἔπεμπον.<sup>1</sup> 616 a, b, 618 b,  
479. 5 ὅτῳ<sup>2</sup> φαίη φίλος εἶναι, τούτῳ ἐνδηλος ἐγίγνετο  
ἐπι-βουλεύων.<sup>3</sup> 618 b. 6 ναύαρχον εἶλοντο Πολυκρά-

την Ἀθηναίων, ὃς ὅποσα λαμβάνοι πλοῖα<sup>4</sup> κατήγεν ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον. 620, 616 b. 7 οἱ ἄρχοντες ἔδεισαν μὴ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια<sup>5</sup> οὐκ ἔχοιεν ὁπόθεν<sup>6</sup> λαμβάνοιεν. 611 c; 620, 616 b. 8 εἶμι ὅπῃ ἂν καὶ ὑμεῖς ἦτε. 620, 385. 9 ὁπότε σημήνει τῇ σάλπιγγι ὃ κῆρυξ, σύμπαντες προῆμεν. 627, 385. 10 οἱ στρατιῶται ἔβαλλον αὐτὸν λίθοις, ἐπειδὴ ἄρξαντο προ-ιέναι. 629. 11 ἐπορεύοντο νυκτός, ὁπότε οἰοῖντο τοὺς πολεμίους ἐγγὺς εἶναι. 627. 12 ἕως μὲν ἂν μένωμεν ὅπου νῦν ἐσμεν καλῶς ἔχει, ὁπότεν δὲ ἀπ-έλθωμεν κινδυνεύομεν. 631, 627. 13 ἕως ὃ παῖς παρ-ῆν ἡμῖν εὖ ἔπασχεν ὑφ' ἡμῶν. 631. 14 σπονδαὶ ἔσονται ἕως ἂν οἱ Ἕλληνες ἀφ-ίκωνται εἰς τὸ ἑαυτῶν στρατόπεδον. 631. 15 ἔδοξεν τοῖς Ἕλλησι προ-ιέναι ἕως κατα-λάβοιεν τοὺς Πέρσας. 631. 16 οὐκ ἀπ-ήλθομεν πρὶν<sup>7</sup> ὃ ἡγεμῶν ἀφ-ίκετο. 644 a. 17 μὴ ἔλθωμεν πρὶν ἂν συμβουλευσώμεθα τοῖς ἡγεμόσι. 644 b. 18 οὐκ ἂν πορευθεῖεν πρὶν οἱ κῆρυκες ἦκοιεν. 644 c. 19 ἕως μένομεν αὐτοῦ χρὴ ἡμᾶς βουλευέσθαι ὅπως τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἔξει ἡ στρατιά. 631, 638 a. 20 ἐκέλευσε τὸν ἄρχοντα ἄγειν τοὺς Ἕλληνας κατὰ τὸ ἀριστερὸν κέρας τὸ τῶν πολεμίων ὅτι ἐκεῖ ὃ ἑαυτοῦ ἐχθρὸς εἶη.<sup>8</sup>

- We were afraid that the citizens would not remain with us on that day. 611 c. 2 As long as they were going-back-with you, they were not in danger. 631. 3 They would not go away before asking your advice. 644 c. 4 Whenever they saw us advancing, they would<sup>9</sup> run away, being frightened by the shouting.<sup>10</sup> 627. 5 For many days they had no place<sup>11</sup> to get provisions. 6 Let us now plan how<sup>12</sup> we may get horses for the others. 638 a.

29/ <sup>1</sup> ἔπειπον: notice the difference in time between πέμποιεν *du* and ἔπειπον, though each may be translated by *would*.

<sup>2</sup> ὅτε: compare 78. *To whomsoever he said he was a friend is equivalent to whenever he said he was a friend to anyone.*

<sup>3</sup> ἐπιβουλεύων: pred. ptc. after ἐνθελος ἐγγίγντο. See 585 a.

<sup>4</sup> πλοῖα: antecedent within the relative clause.

<sup>5</sup> τὰ ἐπιτήδεια: inserted before its clause but to be translated with λαμβάνουεν.

<sup>6</sup> ὁπόθεν *a place to get.*

<sup>7</sup> πρὶν may generally be translated *before* or *until* when a negative precedes. But see 644 d.

<sup>8</sup> εἰη *was*. In such clauses with ὅτι *because* 622 b, the optative refers the reason to the speaker. His thought was ὅτι ἐκεῖ δ' ἐχθρὸς μοι ἔστιν *because my enemy is there.*

<sup>9</sup> Notice the force of *would* here. Compare ἔπειπον in number 4 and note.

<sup>10</sup> κραυγῇ 596 a.

<sup>11</sup> ὁπόθεν: compare number 7.

<sup>12</sup> ὅπως: compare number 19.

## XXXI THE OPTATIVE MODE

QUOTED CLAUSES WITH Ὅτι. QUOTED QUESTIONS.

Ἴνα CLAUSES WITH THE OPTATIVE

292 Learn τίς, τις, ὅστις 217-221 a, b. Review 222, 223, 227, 236.

a From the beginning we have been using clauses introduced by ὅτι *that* after some verbs of *saying, telling, knowing, hearing, and perceiving*; after λέγω and εἶπον regularly, after οἶδα, ἀκούω, and αἰσθάνομαι occasionally. After some of these we have also used questions introduced by τίς, τί, ὅστις, ὅ τι, πόθεν, ὁπόθεν, and the other interrogatives and general relatives 227, 236. See 64, 65, 220.

b For ὅτι *that* clauses study 622 and a, 624 a, b. ὥς *how, that* is frequently used like ὅτι 634, 635.

c For quoted questions study 621; εἰ *if, whether* 655; εἰ . . . ἥ and εἴτε . . . εἴτε in 653, as εἰ in 655.

293 Observe that the only principle involved in these indirect quotations is that we may, when the lead-

ing clause is historical, change an indicative or subjunctive of the original thought to an optative of the same tense. Person changes as in English but the tense remains the same. In English we usually change the tense after historical expressions. Note the translations in the examples. We may even say τί λέγω; νῦν μὲν οἶδα, ἀλλ' αὔριον οὐκ ἂν δυναίμην εἰπεῖν ὃ τι λέγεις *What am I saying? I know now, but tomorrow I should not be able to tell what you said (for are now saying)*. Frequently the quotation is merely implied, or is quotation in form only. Compare 64, 65.

#### 14 THE SUBJUNCTIVE WITH ἄν IN QUOTATIONS

In quoting clauses which have ἄν and the subjunctive, if the subjunctive is changed to the optative, the ἄν disappears:

ἐπειδὴ ἄν τι λάβῃ χάριν οἶδε *whenever he receives anything he is grateful*; εἶπον ὅτι ἐπειδὴ τι λάβοι χάριν εἰδείη *they said that whenever he received anything he was grateful*.

a The ἄν clause then takes the form in 629 last example and 616 b. The same is true of all the other relatives with ἄν, and of ἐάν. The latter, εἰ + ἄν, becomes εἰ.

#### 15 THE OPTATIVE WITH ἄν IN QUOTATIONS

a In quoting optatives with ἄν, the ἄν is never dropt. After words like ἔφη, οἶομαι, and νομίζω that require the infinitive, the optative changes to the *infinitive* of the same tense, retaining ἄν.



b In quoting optatives with *ἄν* after words like *οἶδα*, *ἀκούω*, *αἰσθάνομαι*, and *ἀγγέλλω*, if a participle is used, the optative changes to the *participle* of the same tense, retaining *ἄν*.

c Thus Κλέαρχος οὐκ ἄν πορευθείη μόνος  
*Klearchos would not proceed alone.*

ἐνόμιζον Κλέαρχον οὐκ ἄν πορευθῆναι μόνον  
*They thought that Klearchos would not proceed alone.*

ἠγγειλαν Κλέαρχον οὐκ ἄν πορευθέντα μόνον  
*They reported that Klearchos would not proceed alone.*

Compare 577 a, b, c; 579, 595, 61, 64.

## 296 THE POSITION OF *ἄν* WITH THE OPTATIVE

When used with the optative *ἄν* is *postpositive*, it cannot come first in its clause. But it comes early in the clause, frequently after a negative, or interrogative, or important : dverb. In a clause depending on *οἶομαι*, it may be closely attached to *οἶομαι*. When there is no word to attract it, *ἄν* stands near its verb. Note a similar tendency in the enclitic pronouns *τις*, *μοι*, *σοι*, and others :

τί δ' ἄν ἄλλο ἐγώ σοι δυναίμην δια-πρᾶξαι;  
*What else can I do for you?*

τοῦτο γὰρ ἄν οἶμαι ἀγαθὸν καὶ ἐμοὶ γενέσθαι  
*For this I think would be a good thing for me too.*

εἰ μή τι οὖν ἄλλο ἔχετε λέγειν ἀπ-ίετε ἄν  
*Now if you haven't anything else to say, you may go.*

- 7 In clauses with **ἵνα** *that* final, we may also have the optative  
**642 a, b.** So with **ὥς** **636 a, b** and **ὅπως** **638 c.**<sup>1</sup>

**a.** See **ἀλέξω** and **θαυμάζω** in the Verb-list and /84.

## VOCABULARY AND EXERCISES

- 8** **ἀ-πιστία** -ᾱς ἡ *distrust, treachery*; **ἀλέξω** /84, *ward off*; commonly  
 α- neg., **πιστός** 2/, **πιστεύω** 39 *mid. repulse; requite*  
**λόγος** -ον ὁ *word, speech, story*; **θαυμάζω** /84, *wonder at, am sur-*  
*prised; wonder*  
**εἰς λόγους ἐλθεῖν** D *have a con-*  
*ference with*; **λέγω** 30. **hlo-logy**  
**30, chrono-logy** /73 **συν-απ-ίναμι** *go away with or to-*  
*gether*  
**σύν-θημα** -ατος τό *agreement*; **μηδέ, οὐδέ** adv. *not even*, differing as  
*the simple μή and οὐ; οὐδέ ὥς not*  
*even thus 239.* Of course in other  
*combinations the regular prose*  
*word οὐτω(ς) is to be used for thus*  
**ἐρημος** -η -ον and -ος -ον *lonely,*  
*empty; G without*; **σταθμοὶ ἐρη-**  
**μοὶ** *days' march through a desert*  
*country. eremite, hermit*  
**τίμιος** -ᾱ -ον *valuable; honored*;  
*τῆμή 3/2, τιμάω 3/7*  
**μήτε . . . μήτε, οὔτε . . . οὔτε** conj.  
*neither . . . nor*, differing as the  
*simple μή and οὐ*

- 19** Ἐλεγεν ὅτι ἡ ὁδὸς ἔσοιτο<sup>1</sup> εἰς Βαβυλῶνα. 2 ἤκουσαν  
 οἱ ἄρχοντες τοῦ ἀγγέλου ὅτι οἱ Ἕλληνες νικήσειαν.<sup>1</sup>  
 3 ᾔδει ὅτι ὁ ἄρχων μέσον ἔχοι<sup>1</sup> τοῦ ἑαυτοῦ στρατεύ-  
 ματος. 4 τίς ὁ θόρυβός ἐστιν; ἤρετο τίς ὁ θόρυβος  
 εἶη. 5 τί τὸ σύνθημά ἐστιν; ἤρετο ὃ τι εἶη τὸ σύν-  
 θημα. 6 ἀκούσας δὲ ὁ Κλέαρχος ταῦτα ἤρετο τὸν  
 ἀγγελον πόση τις<sup>2</sup> εἶη χώρᾱ ἢ ἐν μέσῳ τοῦ Τίγρητος  
 καὶ τῆς διώρυχος. ὁ δὲ εἶπεν ὅτι πολλὴ εἶη καὶ κῶμαι  
 ἐν-εῖεν πολλαὶ καὶ μεγάλαι. 7 πάντες ἐθαύμαζον τί

<sup>1</sup> Use **ἵνα** generally to express *that, in order that*, in the pure final sense, instead of **ὥς** or **ὅπως**, which are not used in ordinary prose so freely as in Xenophon.

οἱ ἄνδρες λέγοιεν. 8 ἐθαύμαζον εἰ οἱ στρατηγοὶ νυκτὸς πέμψοιεν στρατιώτᾱς. 9 ἐβουλευόντο εἰ πέμποιέν τινας ἢ πάντες ἴοιεν ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον. 10 Κλεάνωρ καὶ Σῶσις ἦλθον ἵνα ἴδοιεν τοὺς ἀγῶνας. 11 ποῦ ἂν ἴδοιμι αὐτόν; ὁ ἄγγελος ἠρώτησε τοὺς φύλακας ποῦ ἂν ἴδοι Πρόξενον ἢ Κλέαρχον. 12 ὥστε ἔδοξέ μοι εἰς λόγους<sup>3</sup> σοι ἐλθεῖν ὅπως<sup>4</sup> ἐξ-έλοιμεν ἀλλήλων τὴν ἀπιστίαν ταύτην. 13 οὐδ' ἂν ὥς δυναίμεθα συν-απιέναι ἡμῖν. 14 ὁ φύλαξ τὸν κήρυκα ἤρετο εἰ τι λέγειν βούλοιο. 15 μεθ' ἡμῶν μὲν ἂν οἶμαι εἶναι τίμιος,<sup>5</sup> ἡμῶν δὲ ἔρημος ὣν οὐκ ἂν ἱκανὸς εἶναι οὔτε φίλον ὠφελῆσαι<sup>6</sup> οὔτε ἐχθρὸν ἀλέξασθαι. 16 ἐκέλευσαν αὐτὸν προ-ιέναι μόνον· οὐ γὰρ ἂν δύνασθαι<sup>7</sup> πορευθῆναι.

300 I did not know where<sup>8</sup> they were going.<sup>8</sup> 2 Kleānor replied that he would not send the men until the captain returned.<sup>9</sup> 3 You ought<sup>10</sup> to-have-seen what we took from the villages. 4 They said that the enemy were crossing the river. 5 I did not suppose that even<sup>11</sup> thus would they go alone.

301 <sup>1</sup> ἔστοιτο, νίκησειαν, ἔχοι: the original forms were ἔσται, ἐνίκησαν, ἔχει.

<sup>2</sup> πόση τις about how large.

<sup>3</sup> εἰς λόγους σοι into a conference with you.

<sup>4</sup> ὅπως: equivalent to ἵνα.

<sup>5</sup> τίμιος is nominative to agree with the subject of οἶμαι and εἶναι. So with ἱκανός. Consult 62. Note also the position of ἂν before οἶμαι though it belongs to εἶναι. See 296. εἶναι represents an optative.

<sup>6</sup> ὠφελῆσαι: the infinitives depend upon ἱκανός.

<sup>7</sup> δύνασθαι represents an optative. The infinitive shows that the clause is part of what they said: οὐ γὰρ ἂν δυναίμεθα.

<sup>8</sup> ὅποι with a present tense.

<sup>9</sup> Not an aorist indicative.

<sup>10</sup> Compare 28/, 10.

<sup>11</sup> καὶ οὕτως ἂν οὐκ ἔμην or οὐδ' ἂν ὥς as in 299, 13, where the normal Attic prose form would be καὶ οὕτως ἂν οὐ δυναίμεθα.

## XXXII EΙ CLAUSES

## REVIEW OF Φημι AND Είμι

. Review carefully 645, 646 and *end.* We have already had *ι* *if* with the indicative in simple forms of condition 647, and *ἐάν* *if*, *εἰ* + *ἄν*, with the subjunctive 650. Review these sections.

**b** Study 649 and remember that we have had these senses of the indicative in hopeless wishes 470 a. Notice the tendency of the hypothetical indicative with *ἄν* 461 c, 67 c, to unite with these *εἰ* clauses.

**c** Study 651. Notice in (2) that if we desire to express the same idea for present time we use *ἐάν* and the subjunctive; and in connection with (3) that in *εἰ* questions and *να* clauses we have used the optative when there was an implied quotation 655, 642 b.

Review *φημι* 382 a, b, c and *εἰμι* 384 a-d learning all except the imperatives.

See *δέω* 321 a, *παίω*, *πλέω* 257 b, 321 in the Verb-list.

## VOCABULARY AND EXERCISES

·ολλοῦ ἄξιος <i>worth much, valuable</i>	<i>to</i> ; impersonal active forms of <i>δέω</i> , <i>δέομαι</i> 187
κενο-φόρος -ον <i>carrying baggage</i> ; as subst. <i>carriers, pack animals</i> ;	ζητέω <i>ask for, seek</i> ; cp. ἐρωτάω, αἰτέω 156
τὰ σκευοφόρα <i>the baggage train</i> ;	κολάζω <i>check, punish</i>
φέρω 362. Latin <i>ferō</i>	παίω <i>strike, beat</i> . Latin <i>paviō</i> , <i>paveō</i> ; <i>ana-present</i>
ἔπο-πλέω <i>sail away or back</i> ; <i>πλοῖον</i> 30	περι-μένω <i>stay around, remain</i> ;
ἄλᾱκεύω <i>am idle, shirk</i>	<i>A wait for</i>
εἰ, δεῆσαι, A and inf. clause, <i>it is, will be, necessary</i> ; <i>must, have</i>	ἄλλο-θεν adv. <i>from another place</i> ;
	ἄλλος 21

**b** With *ἄν*, *Hypothetical Optative*, 479, 480

Time commonly future or universal. Negative οὐ

**II** In Subordinate Clauses, *Dependent*

**a** *Μή* clauses. Time future. Negative οὐ. 611 c

**b** Relative clauses. Time future or universal with reference to the time of the leading verb. Negative *μή*. 616 b, 618 b, 620, 627, 629, 631, 632 A ; *πρίν* 644 c

**c** *ἵνα* *that* clauses. Purpose to be accomplished. Negative *μή*. 642 b

So *ὥς that* 636 b, *ὥπως that* 638 c

**d** *Εἰ* *if* clauses. Negative *μή*

1 *Possible*. Time future, sometimes present or universal. 651 (1)

2 *Repeated*. Time past. 651 (2)

3 *Quoted*. Time future or present or universal with reference to the leading verb. 651 (3)

**e** *Ὅτι* *that* and *ὥς how, that* clauses in indirect quotations when the leading verb is historical 624 b, 635

**f** Quoted questions after a leading historical expression, with interrogatives, general relatives, and *εἰ if, whether* 621, 655

In comparing these uses of the optative with the corresponding uses of the subjunctive observe that the optative removes the thought further from the speaker, or throws it into the past, or quotes it. Notice the tendency of the optative to follow past tenses and other optatives. In quotations it is allowed, not required.<sup>1</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> Some assert that it is required in quoted reasons with *ὅτι because, since* and similar words.

## XXXIII Ω-VERBS

CONTRACT PRESENTS IN -έω. REVIEW OF LIQUID  
FUTURES

9 a Paradigms of ποιέω 314 and στελῶ 331. Study all but the imperative. Learn the present active indicative and use it as a model for the rest. Consult 316 a, 317, 318, 319, 321 and a, 322 c.

b See ὠνόμαι 291 a and apply 267 to the imperfect ὠνούμην.

c Participles in -έων are declined in 168 b.

0 a The contractions in -έω verbs are included in this rule:

ε + ε = εε

ε + ο = ου

ε + a long vowel or diphthong is absorbed.

b Accent. In all contract verbs, if either of the contracting syllables had an accent, the contracted syllable is accented, taking the circumflex, if possible 12.

c Follow the rule for the optative mode-suffix in 275 c: *In the singular before active endings . . . in contract forms use -ιη.* Always write -ιη in the active singular optative of -έω, -έω, and -όω contracts and not in the middle and plural forms.

3// In studying these forms, after learning the rules write the uncontracted forms first and then the contracted forms. Always use the contracted forms in writing Greek, and master them as soon as possible. Write synopses in the contracted form.

a Use the tense-stems in this form: **τίμαο:ε-, ποιεο:ε-, δουλοο:ε-, στελεο:ε-.**

b Learn **οἴκοι, οἴκαδε, and οἴκοθεν** in 228.

c Consult the Verb-list for **αἰνέω, αἰρέω, δέω, καλέω, πλέω, φημι ἐρῶ, ὠνόμαμι.**

### VOCABULARY AND EXERCISES

- 3/2 ἀρετή -ης ἡ *goodness, valor* κρατέω G *rule*; A or G *conquer*;  
 συλ-λογή -ης ἡ *gathering, levy*; τὸ κράτος *strength*. αυτο-αται,  
 συλ-λέγω 253 δαμο-αται  
 τιμή -ης ἡ *worth, honor*; τίμιος οἰκέω  *dwell, live*; A *live in*; pass.  
 298, τιμάω 320 *am inhabited, am situated*; οἶκος  
 φίλιᾱ -ᾱς ἡ *friendship*; φίλος 2/ 30  
 ἀπο-δίδω *shall give back, shall* πολεμέω D *make war, fight*; πόλε-  
 pay μος 50  
 ἀπο-χωρέω *go away from, retreat*; συμ-πολεμέω D *help in war*; σύν  
 χωρίον 38, χῆρᾱ 72 178  
 ἐπ-αινέω *praise, commend*; ἐπὶ 178 συγκαλέω *call together*; σύν 178  
 ἡγέομαι D *lead, guide*; G *lead, ὠνόμαμι* *buy*  
*command*; sometimes *think*, as ἐντός adv. G *within*  
 Latin *dūcō*; ἡγεμών 257 ἦν for *idn* conj. with subjv. *if*.  
 καλέω *call, summon*; name. Latin Notice the accent and avoid con-  
 Kalendae; *calendar, eo-eclesiastic* fusing *ην* *if* with *ην* *was*.

3/3 Δέω, δεῖ, δεῖται, δέονται, δεόμεθα, ἐδεῖτο, ἐδέοντο. 2 οἰκοῦσι, οἰκοῦνται, ὥκουν, ὥκει, ἐὰν οἰκῶσι, εἰ οἰκοίη, εἰ οἰκοῖεν. 3 ἀπ-αιτοῦμεν, ἀπ-αιτεῖ, ἀπ-ήτει, ἦν ἀπ-αιτῶμεν, εἰ ἀπ-αιτοίης. 4 ὑπ-ισχνούμαι, ὑπ-ισχνεύτο, ὑπ-ισχνοῦντο, ὑπ-ισχνεῖται, ὑπ-ισχνοῦνται, ἐὰν ὑπ-ισχνῶνται, εἰ ὑπ-ισχνοίμεθα. 5 ὠφελεῖ, ὠφέλει, ὠφελοῦσι, ὠφελουν, ὠφελῶμεν αὐτούς, ὠφελοῖην ἄν.

3/4 \*Ωδε οὖν ὁ σατράπης ἐποιεῖτο<sup>1</sup> τὴν συλλογὴν. 2 μεθ' ὑμῶν συν-επολέμει<sup>2</sup> Κλεάνορι τοῖς Θραξῶσι τοῖς ὑπὲρ

τὸν Ἑλλήσποντον οἰκοῦσι καὶ ὠφέλει τοὺς Ἕλληνας. 3 οἱ οἴκοι<sup>3</sup> ἐν οἷς οἰκοῦσι καλοῦνται οἰκίαι. 4 πολλοὶ ἀπο-θανοῦνται οἴκοθεν πολεμοῦντες ὑπὲρ τῶν οἴκοι.<sup>3</sup> 5 οἱ θεοὶ ὠφελήσουσι τοὺς ἑαυτοὺς ὠφελοῦντας. 6 ὁπότεν ἀπ-αιτῶσι μισθὸν τὸν τριῶν μηνῶν ἀπο-δώσο-μεν καὶ οὐκ ἀπο-πέμψομεν αὐτούς. 7 μενοῦσιν ἐν τῇ χώρᾳ ἕως ἂν ἀφ-ικνώμεθα. 8 οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐπειδὴ ὁ Κλέαρχος ἡγοῖτο αὐτοῖς<sup>4</sup> ἐκράτουν τῶν Περσῶν.<sup>5</sup> 9 εἰ ὠφελοῖης τὸν παῖδά μου, ἐπ-αινοίην ἂν σε. 10 ἡμῶν μὴ ὠφελούντων<sup>6</sup> οὐκ ἂν ἐδύναιτο κρατεῖν τούτων. οὐκ ἂν δύναιτο. 11 οὐκ ἀπο-κρινοῦνται οἱ Ἕλληνες πρὶν ἂν οὗτος ὁ ἀνὴρ ἀπο-χωρῇ. 12 ἐκέλευσαν ἡμᾶς αἰρεῖσθαι ὃ τι ἂν ἡμῖν δοκῇ ἐπιτήδειον εἶναι. 13 ὅστις ἀφ-ικνοῖτο πρὸς αὐτὸν πάντας οὕτως εὐδαίμονας ἐποίει ὥστε φίλους αὐτῷ εἶναι. 14 συγ-καλεῖ τοὺς ἑαυτοῦ στρατιώτας καὶ ὑπ-ισχνεῖται αὐτοῖς, ἔὰν καλῶς πράξωσι, μὴ παύσεσθαι<sup>7</sup> τοῦ πολέμου πρὶν ἂν πάντες λάβωσι ὅσα ἂν βούλονται. 15 διὰ φιλίαν τῶν βαρ-βάρων δυνάμεθα τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ὠνεῖσθαι ὅσων ἂν δεώ-μεθα. 16 τῇ ἀρετῇ τίμην λήψεσθε ὅπου ἂν ᾔτε. 17 τὸν μισθὸν ὑπ-ισχνεῖτο αὐτοῖς ἐντὸς ὀλίγων ἡμε-ρῶν παρ-έσεσθαι δύο μηνῶν<sup>8</sup> καὶ συν-στρατεύεσθαι ἐκέλευεν. 18 εἰ δέ τινα ἴδοι ὠφελοῦντα τοὺς δεο-μένους τούτων οὐπώποτε ἀφ-ηρεῖτο τὰ χρήματα.

- <sup>15</sup> If you should ask for boats, I promise to send them.  
 2 If he should fight in-our-company,<sup>9</sup> we should conquer.  
 3 They were assisting the Greeks at home. 4 We shall remain in that country many months. 5 On the next day they arrive at<sup>10</sup> the fort bringing the men that they had overcome.



3/6 <sup>1</sup>ἐποιεῖτο: notice the middle made his.

<sup>2</sup>συν-επολέμα joined Kleānor in the war against. Κλεάνορι depends upon σὺν 598 a and Θράξ is dative by 525.

<sup>3</sup>οἱ οἶκοι the dwellings; οἱ οἶκοι the friends at home.

<sup>4</sup>αὐτοῖς: ἡγέμαι frequently takes the dative in the sense of *guide*, *lead*, as a for dative 510 c end.

<sup>5</sup>Περσῶν 510 c.

<sup>6</sup>ἀφελούτων: translated by an *if* clause. How does the change in

the leading verb here affect the meaning of this genitive absolute?

<sup>7</sup>μὴ παύσασθαι: he said οὐ παύσομαι *I shall not cease*. Read carefully 564, 577 b, 579 a. μὴ is the regular form after verbs meaning *swear*, *promise*, *hope*, whether the infinitive is future or not.

<sup>8</sup>μηνῶν: genitive of *measure* with μέθην.

<sup>9</sup>Express by σὺν in composition and the dative ἡμῖν.

<sup>10</sup>ἐπὶ or εἰς and the accusative.

## XXXIV Ω-VERBS

### CONTRACT PRESENTS IN -άω AND -όω

3/7 **Paradigms 313, 315.** Study all but the imperative. Learn the present active indicative and use it as a basis for the other forms. Consult 316 a, b, 317.

a Participles in -άων and -όων are declined in 168 a, b.

3/8 The contractions for -άω and -όω verbs are covered by the following:<sup>1</sup>

α + an e-sound (ε, η, ει, η) = ā (ᾱ)

α + an o-sound (ο, ω, οι, ου) = ω (ῶ)

ο + ε, or ο, or ου = ου

ο + η or ω = ω

ο + an ι-diphthong (ει, οι, η) = οι

ι is retained except in the infinitive 316 b.

a Use the same rules for accent and for writing as in -έω verbs 3/0 b, c.

<sup>1</sup> Compare with the general rules for contraction 29, 30.

1. Review adjectives in -ος -ον 73, 74.

b The declension of γῆ 85.

c For μά with the accusative see 532.

d Consult the Verb-list for ἰάω,<sup>1</sup> ἐλαύνω,<sup>2</sup> ὁράω,<sup>1</sup> χράομαι.<sup>3</sup>

### VOCABULARY AND EXERCISES

ἡ γῆς ἡ earth, land, country. ge-o-graphy, ge-o-metry, George γῆ and ἔργον 379	ὄρθιος -ᾱ -ον steep; ὀρθός straight. ortho-graphy
εἰσβολή -ης ἡ invasion; pass; εἰσβάλλω	ἰάω allow, permit; let go εἰσβάλλω throw into; invade ἐν-οικέω live in, inhabit
θάλαττα -ης ἡ sea. thalassio 46	ὁράω, pred. ptc. see, perceive
ξύλον -ον τό wood; pl. fuel. ξυλο- nite, xylo-phone	πειράομαι 185 try, attempt
μαξιτός -όν passable by wagons; μαξα 79, λίνα go	τιμᾶω value, esteem, honor; τιμή 312
μηχανος -ον without means, im- practicable; α- neg. + μηχανή con- trivance, machine	χράομαι D use; treat; find λοχῶρως adv. strongly, violently, exceedingly; λοχῶρως 156
	διό adv. wherefore, therefore; διό+δ

Πειρῶμαι, πειρᾶται, πειρῶνται, ἐπειρώμεθα, ἐπειρᾶτο  
'πειράθῃ. 2 ἐρωτᾶς, ἐρωτᾶ, ἡρώτᾱς, ἡρώτᾱ, ἐὰν  
'ρωτᾶ, ἐὰν ἐρωτῶμεν, εἰ ἐρωτῶῃ, εἰ ἐρωτῶεν, ἐρωτῶῃν  
ἴν. 3 ὁρᾶ, ἐώρων, ἐώρᾱ, εἰ ὁρῶῃ, ὁρῶεν ἄν. 4 ἀξιοῖ,  
ἰξιούνται, ἀξιούσι, ἡξιού, ἡξιούμεν, ἐὰν ἀξιοῖ. 5 ἐᾶ,  
ἱᾶ, εἰῶμεν, ἐρεῖς, ἐλᾶ, ἐλῶμεν. ἔλεγεν ὅτι ἐλῶμεν.

Ο νεανίας ἐν μεγάλῃ τιμῇ ἔστιν ὅτι<sup>1</sup> ἐπειρᾶτο κατ-  
ίγειν οἴκαδε τοὺς φεύγοντας. 2 ὁ παῖς πειρᾶται ἐξ-

<sup>1</sup> ἰάω and ὁράω: for the imperfect see 261 and α; for the perfect see 291 α.

<sup>2</sup> ἐλαύνω 261 d; for the future ἐλῶ, -ᾶς, -ᾶ, -ᾶμεν, -ᾶτε, -ᾶσι see 22 c end.

<sup>3</sup> χράομαι 317 α, 320.

ελαύνειν τοὺς ἵππους ἐκ τοῦ πεδίου. 3 οἱ παῖδες ἐώρων  
πολλὰ δῶρα καλὰ ἐν ταῖς οἰκίαις. 4 Σῶσις ἡρώτᾱ  
τὸν φύλακα ὃ τι ποιοίη.<sup>2</sup> 5 οἱ Ἕλληνες ὁπότε πολε-  
μοῖεν τοῖς Πέρσαις ἐνίκων διὰ τὴν ἀρετὴν. 6 μικρὸν<sup>3</sup>  
προϋόντες ἀπὸ τῆς φάλαγγος οὐ ἡ μάχη ἐγένετο οἱ  
Ἕλληνες ἐχρῶντο ξύλοις<sup>4</sup> ταῖς τῶν πολεμίων ἀσπίσι  
καὶ τοῖς δόρασι πολλοῖς οὖσιν. 7 ἡρώτων τὸν παῖδα  
τί<sup>5</sup> δῶρα αἰτοίη τὸν πατέρα. 8 ἐπειδὴ οἱ φύλακες  
πειρῶντο ἀποφυγεῖν ἐκωλύθησαν ἄν.<sup>6</sup> 9 οἰκοι μενοῦ-  
σιν ἕως ἂν οἱ φίλοι δέωνται αὐτῶν. 10 εἰ ἐρωτῆσης  
αὐτὸν ὅτου δέοιτο οὐκ ἂν ἀποκρίναιτο. 11 ὑπέσχετο  
ἡμῖν ἐκ τῆς χώρᾱς ἐξ-ελᾶν<sup>7</sup> τοὺς Θρᾶκας πειρωμένους  
ἀφαιρεῖσθαι<sup>8</sup> τοὺς ἐν-οικοῦντας Ἕλληνας τὴν γῆν.  
12 ἐντεῦθεν ἐπειρῶντο εἰσβάλλειν εἰς τὴν Κιλικίαν·  
ἡ δὲ εἰσβολὴ ἦν ὁδὸς ἀμαξιτὸς ὀρθιᾷ ἰσχυρῶς καὶ  
ἀμήχανος εἰσ-ελθεῖν στρατεύματι, εἴ τις ἐκώλυεν.<sup>9</sup> ἐλέ-  
γετο δὲ καὶ Σύνενεσις εἶναι ἐπὶ τῶν ἄκρων φυλάττων  
τὴν εἰσβολήν· διὸ ἔμειναν ἡμέρᾱν ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ. τῇ δ'  
ὑστεραῖᾱ ἦκεν ἄγγελος λέγων ὅτι λελοιπῶς εἴη<sup>10</sup> Σύνε-  
νεσις τὰ ἄκρα ἐπεὶ ἦσθετο ὅτι τὸ Μένωνος στρατεύμα  
ἤδη ἐν Κιλικίᾳ εἴη.<sup>10</sup> 13 ἵνα δέ γε μηδενὶ τῶν Ἑλλή-  
νων πολέμοι γένοισθε,<sup>11</sup> πᾶν ὅσον ἐγὼ ἐδυνάμην πρὸς  
ὑμᾶς πέπραγα. καὶ γὰρ οὖν<sup>12</sup> νῦν ὑμῖν ἕξ-εστιν τῇ  
τοῦ σατράπου φιλίᾳ χρωμένοις πορεύεσθαι ὅποι ἂν  
ἔλησθε καὶ κατὰ γῆν καὶ κατὰ θάλατταν. 14 ἀλλὰ  
μὰ τοὺς θεοὺς οὐκ ἔγωγε αὐτοὺς διώξομαι οὐδ' ἐρεῖ  
οὔδεις<sup>13</sup> ὥς ἐγὼ ἕως μὲν ἂν παρ-ῇ τις χρῶμαι, ἐπειδὴν  
δὲ ἀπιέναι βούληται, συλ-λαβὼν καὶ αὐτοὺς<sup>14</sup> κακῶς  
ποιῶ καὶ τὰ χρήματα ἀφαιροῦμαι. 15 ὁπότεν μὲν  
μὴ ἀγορὰν παρ-έχωμεν λαμβάνειν ὑμᾶς ἐκ τῆς χώρᾱς

ἔασομεν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ὁπόθεν ἂν δύνησθε. ἦν δὲ παρ-  
έχωμεν ἀγοράν, δεῖ ὑμᾶς ὑποισχνεῖσθαι ὠνούμενους<sup>15</sup>  
ἕξειν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια.

I know that they are trying to drive out the citizens. 2  
They would not see us if we should try to-escape-their-  
notice.<sup>16</sup> 3 The guide was asking us where we wished to  
go. 4 They saw where the guards had-been-keeping-  
watch.<sup>17</sup> 5 They used the tents for<sup>18</sup>-houses.

<sup>1</sup> ὅτι *because*.

<sup>2</sup> ὃ τι ποιῶν: what two mean-  
ings could these words take?

<sup>3</sup> μικρόν 540, 538.

<sup>4</sup> ξύλους *for firewood*: a predi-  
cate noun with ἀσπίσι and δόρασι.  
See 502, 547. These are dative  
with χρᾶμαι, the regular use. Com-  
pare the Latin *utor* with the ab-  
lative.

<sup>5</sup> τί *why*?

<sup>6</sup> ἂν 487 a.

<sup>7</sup> ἐξ-ελῶν: fut. inf. of ἐξ-ελαίνω.  
He said ἐξ-ελῶ.

<sup>8</sup> ἀφαιρείσθαι *to deprive* 535.

<sup>9</sup> ἐκάλυσεν *tried to prevent* 459 a.

<sup>10</sup> λαλοῦντες εἰς: compare 254, 8.

<sup>11</sup> πολέμοι γένοιθε *make your-  
selves enemies to*.

<sup>12</sup> καὶ γὰρ οὖν *and so then*;  
*therefore* 672 d.

<sup>13</sup> οὐδ' ἔπει οὐδέ τις *and no man  
shall ever say that (ὅς = ὅτι) I use  
a man (τις) as long as he stays with  
me, but whenever*.

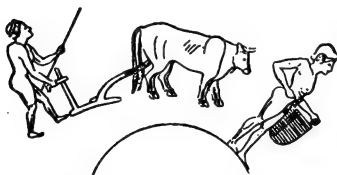
<sup>14</sup> αὐτούς: translate as if αὐτόν  
*him*.

<sup>15</sup> ὀνούμενους *by purchase*.

<sup>16</sup> λαμβάνω *with the accusative*.

<sup>17</sup> Use the imperfect of φυλάττω.  
See 254, 8 end.

<sup>18</sup> Express by a predicate noun.  
Compare 322, 8.



Ploughing and sowing.

## XXXV THE CONSONANT DECLENSION

## STEMS IN -ι AND -ευ. ORDINALS

325 a Learn the declension of πόλις 130, 131 a and ἵππεύς 134.

b Learn the first ten **ordinals**. Review 187, 189.

c For τάξις from τάττω (ταγ-) *arrange* see 406, suffix -σι, like πράξις. For ἵππεύς from ἵππος see 430 a. Examine the nouns in 403, 404, suffixes -ο and -ᾱ.

d Examine σῶς in 96.

e Review 165, 167, 172, 106.

f Check in the Verb-list ἀχθῶμαι and νομίζω 346 a.

## VOCABULARY AND EXERCISES

- 326 βασιλεύς -εως ὁ *king*; βασίλειος ἀρχαῖος -ᾱ -ον *old, ancient*; τὸ  
 180. *basillea* ἀρχαῖον adv. *originally*; ἀρχή  
 βασμός -ου ὁ *division*; *tax* 139. *archaia, archaio-logy*  
 δύναμις -εως ἡ *ability*; *force*; σῶς σῶν *safe and sound, alive and*  
*power*; δύναιμι 167. *dynasty* well, *safe, unharmed*; σφίζω 280,  
 ἐπι-βουλή -ης ἡ *plot*; ἐπι-βουλεύω σῶφρων 257  
 50 ἀχθῶμαι *am troubled, am dis-*  
 ἵππεύς -εως ὁ *horseman*; pl. *pleased*  
*alry*; ἵππος 21. Φίλιπ φίλος 2/ δαπανᾶω *expend*  
 πόλις -εως ἡ *city, state*; πολίτης νομίζω *think regular*; inf. clause,  
 86. *metro-polis μήτηρ* 264 *think, consider*; νόμος 367  
 τάξις -εως ἡ *arrangement, order*; παρα-καλέω *call to my side, sum-*  
*line*; *post*; *division*; τάττω 156. *mon*  
 tactios  
 ὑπο-στράτηγος -ου ὁ *under-com-*  
*mander*; equivalent to Latin  
*legātus* οἱ ὀπισθεν, τὸ ὀπισθεν *the rear*  
 πάνυ adv. *very*; πῶς 232  
 ἢ conj. *than*; μᾶλλον ἢ *rather than*

Καὶ οἱ μὲν<sup>1</sup> ἡγούντο, Φιλήσιος μέντοι ἐπορεύετο τὰς μὲν<sup>1</sup> σπονδὰς ποιησάμενος, τὸ δὲ στράτευμα ἔχων ἐν τάξει, καὶ αὐτὸς ἐκ τοῦ ὀπισθεν ἐφυλάττετο τοὺς ἱππέας τοὺς τῶν Θυράκων. 2 οἱ δὲ ἄλλοι παρὰ τὰς τάξεις ἰόντες ὅπου<sup>2</sup> μὲν στρατηγὸς σῶς εἶη τὸν στρατηγὸν παρεκάλουν, ὁπόθεν δὲ οἴχοιτο, τὸν ὑποστράτηγον, ὅπου δ' αὖ λοχᾶγός σῶς εἶη, τὸν λοχᾶγόν. 3 τῇ δὲ ὑστεραίᾳ ἀφ'έκετο Σπιθριδάτης τοὺς τε ἱππέας ἔχων οὓς αὐτὸς ἀνέβη ἔχων εἰς Βαβυλῶνα καὶ τὴν Ὀρόντου δύναμιν τοῦ τὴν βασιλέως θυγατέρα ἔχοντος καὶ πρὸς τοῦτοις ὅσους βασιλεὺς ἐπεμψε πρὸς αὐτόν, ὥστε ἡ στρατιὰ πάνυ πολλὴ ἐφάνη.<sup>3</sup>

## THE SATRAP'S PLOT

Βουλόμενός ποτε ἐπι-στρατεύεσθαι βασιλεῖ τῷ τῶν Περσῶν ὁ σατράπης τῆς Λυδίας παρ-ῆγγελε τοῖς ἄρχουσι πᾶσῶν τῶν φυλακῶν ὁπόσας εἶχεν ἐν ταῖς πόλεσι λαμβάνειν δύναμιν Ἑλληνικὴν ὅσῃν ἂν δύνωνται, λέγων αὐτοῖς ὅτι Πολυνίκος ὁ τῆς Ἰωνίας σατράπης ἐπι-βουλεύει ταῖς Ἰωνικαῖς πόλεσιν. καὶ γὰρ<sup>4</sup> ἦσαν αἱ Ἰωνίᾳς πόλεις Πολυνίκου<sup>5</sup> τὸ ἀρχαῖον<sup>6</sup> ὑπὸ βασιλέως δε-δο-μέναι,<sup>7</sup> τότε δὲ ἀφ-εισπή-κε-σαν<sup>8</sup> πρὸς τὸν Λυδίας σατράπην. ὁ δὲ πρὸς βασιλέᾳ πέμπων ἡξίου ἀδελφὸς ὦν αὐτοῦ δο-θῆ-ναι<sup>9</sup> ἑαυτῷ ταύτας τὰς πόλεις μᾶλλον ἢ Πολυνίκον ἄρχειν αὐτῶν, καὶ ἡ μήτηρ συν-ἐπράττεν<sup>10</sup> αὐτῷ ταῦτα. ὥστε βασιλεὺς τὴν μὲν πρὸς ἑαυτὸν ἐπιβουλὴν οὐκ ᾔσθάνετο,<sup>3</sup> Πολυνίκῳ δὲ ἐνόμιζε πολεμοῦντα<sup>11</sup> αὐτὸν εἰς τὰ στρατεύματα δαπανᾶν.<sup>12</sup> ὥστε οὐδὲν<sup>6</sup> ἤχθετο<sup>3</sup> αὐτῶν πολεμοῦντων.<sup>13</sup> καὶ γὰρ οὗτος ὁ σῶφρων σατράπης ἀπ-

ἐπεμπε<sup>14</sup> τοὺς γιγνομένους<sup>15</sup> δασμοὺς βασιλεῖ ἐκ  
 πᾶσων τῶν πόλεων τῶν τε ἑαυτοῦ καὶ τῶν τοῦ ἐχθροῦ  
 ὡς τότε ἐτύγχανεν αὐτὸς ἔχων.

- 329 The enemies of the king were plotting against his<sup>16</sup> cities.  
 2 With my own force I cannot overcome the cavalry of  
 the king. 3 This ancient city once<sup>17</sup> belonged to the  
 Greeks. 4 This arrangement of cavalry is considered<sup>18</sup> to  
 be a good one. 5 What tribute<sup>19</sup> we have we remit to  
 the king.

- 330 <sup>1</sup> οἱ μὲν *they*: the correlative of  
 the first μὲν is μέντοι. The sec-  
 ond μὲν with δέ may be translated  
*though . . . yet*.

<sup>2</sup> εἶπον . . . εἰη 630.

<sup>3</sup> ἐφάνη 639 a. So ἡσθάνετο and  
 ἤχθετο below.

<sup>4</sup> καὶ γάρ *and in fact* 672 d.

<sup>5</sup> Πολυνίκου: with ἦσαν *belonged*  
*to* 508.

<sup>6</sup> τὸ ἀρχαῖον *of old, originally*  
 540. Also οὐδέν below.

<sup>7</sup> δε-δο-μένοι: perf. pass. ptc. *hav-*  
*ing been given*.

<sup>8</sup> ἀφ-εστή-κε-σαν: pluperf. act.  
 ind., *had revolted*.

<sup>9</sup> δο-θή-ναι: aor. pass. inf. *to be*  
*given*. πόλεις is the subject:  
*claimed that these cities should*  
*be given*.

<sup>10</sup> συν-ἐπράττεν: compare 181, 7.

<sup>11</sup> πολεμοῦντα *while fighting*: ac-  
 cusative ptc. limiting αὐτόν. The  
 order here indicates that the mean-  
 ing is, *he thought that his war with*  
*Polynikos was the reason for his*  
*expending*.

<sup>12</sup> δαπανᾶν: active infinitive.

<sup>13</sup> πολεμοῦντων 590: cause: *at*  
*their fighting*.

<sup>14</sup> ἀπ-έπεμπε: note the force of  
 ἀπό: *sent what was due, remitted*.

<sup>15</sup> γιγνομένους *as it became due,*  
*accruing*.

<sup>16</sup> ἐκείνου.

<sup>17</sup> ποτε.

<sup>18</sup> νομίζεται.

<sup>19</sup> Retain the antecedent *tribute*  
 in the ὅσος clause and repeat it in  
 the proper form of οὗτος.



Cylix with low base.

## XXXVI THE CONSONANT DECLENSION

NOUN AND ADJECTIVE STEMS IN **-es**. ADVERBS.  
NUMERALS

3/ **a** Learn the declension of **γένος** 124, 125 and **Σωκράτης** 127, 128.

**b** Learn **σαφής** 151-154. Decline **πλήρης** *full* like **εὐθήης**, noting carefully the accent 153 **a**.

**c** See **στάδιον** in 144.

2 **a** By 229 make **adverbs** and give their meaning from **σαφής**, **ἀσφαλής**, **πᾶς**, **ἄλλος**, **φανερός**, **ὅμοιος**.

**b** By 230, using the singular form, make **adverbs** from **πρῶτος**, **δεύτερος**, **τρίτος**, **δέκατος**.

**c** Review and finish the table of **cardinals** 188.

**d** Review 62, 71, 76, 99, 102.

**e** See the Verb-list and 257 **b**, 321, 392 for **ῥέω**.

## VOCABULARY AND EXERCISES

3 **βάθος** -ους τό *depth* or *hight*.

**bathos**

**γένος** -ους τό *race*; **γίγνομαι** 187.

Latin *genus*, *hetero-geneous* *ἕτερος*  
180

**εὖρος** -ους τό *width*

**μήκος** -ους τό *length*; **μακρός** 30

**ὄρος** -ους τό *mountain*

**πλήθρον** -ου τό *plethron*, about one  
hundred feet

**στάδιον** -ου τό *stadium*, *race*  
*course*; *stade*, about six hun-  
dred feet. Latin *spatium*

**τείχος** -ους τό *wall*, *fortress*

**ὑψος** -ους τό *hight*; **ὑπέρ** 173.

Latin *super*

**ἀσφαλής** -ες *not to be tript*, *sure*,  
*secure*; **σφάλω** *trip*. Latin *fallō*

**πλήρης** -ες *G full*, *rich in*; *in*  
*full*. Latin *plēnus*

**σαφής** -ες *plain*, *certain*

**ὕψηλός** -ή -όν *high*, *lofty*; **ῥέω**

*flow*. STREAM, cp. **Στρυμών** the  
*Strymon*; *rheumatism*

**ἔπ-ετα** adv. *thereupon*, *then*; *be-*  
*sides*; *next*, *afterwards*



334 Πρῶτον μὲν οἱ Ἕλληνες οὐκ ᾔδεσαν μὲν τὸν σατράπην πορευόμενον<sup>1</sup> ἐπὶ βασιλεῆ<sup>2</sup> εἰς Βαβυλῶνα, ἐνόμιζον δὲ στρατεύεσθαι<sup>1</sup> αὐτὸν ἐπὶ τοὺς ἑαυτοῦ ἐχθροὺς εἰς Πισιδίαν. ἔπειτα δὲ μέντοι ἐπεὶ σαφὲς πᾶσιν ἦδη ἔδόκει εἶναι ὅτι ἐπὶ βασιλεῆ<sup>2</sup> μέλλοι στρατεύσεσθαι ἐκεῖνος, τότε δὴ ἔδοξεν αὐτοῖς διὰ φιλιᾶν<sup>2</sup> συν-έπεσθαι αὐτῷ καὶ ὃ τι ἂν δέη<sup>3</sup> πάσχειν. ἔτι δὲ πολλὰ ὑπ-ἰσχυεῖτο αὐτοῖς ὁ σατράπης. 2 οὕτως οὖν πεισθέντες ἐκ τούτων κατα-βάντες τῶν ὑψηλῶν ὁρῶν ἐν οἷς ἔμενον ἐπορεύθησαν διὰ πεδίου καλοῦ οὗ ἀσφαλεῖς ἔδόκουν εἶναι ἐν δεξιᾷ ἔχοντες τὰ ὄρη. διὰ τούτου τοῦ πεδίου ῥεῖ ποταμὸς μικρός, ὄνομα<sup>4</sup> Φᾶσις, τὸ εὖρος<sup>4</sup> ὧν<sup>5</sup> εἴκοσι καὶ πέντε ποδῶν.<sup>6</sup> τούτον δια-βάντες ἐπορεύ-οντο ἕως ἀφ-ἴκοντο πρὸς δύο διώρυχας μεγάλας, εὖρος μὲν ποδῶν πεντήκοντα βάθος δὲ ὀκτὼ καὶ δέκα, καὶ πλήρεις ὕδατος.<sup>7</sup> 3 μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα πορευόμενοι ἦλθον ἐπὶ ὄρη ὑψηλὰ ὑφ' οἷς ἦν ποταμός, τὸ εὖρος πλέθρων τριῶν. πρὸς δὲ τῷ ὄρει ᾠκέιτο χωρίον ἰσχυρόν· τοῦ δὲ τείχους αὐτῷ<sup>8</sup> ἦν τὸ μὲν ὕψος πόδες πεντήκοντα, τὸ δὲ μῆκος στάδιοι ἑξ. ἡ δὲ ὁδὸς ἡ ἐπὶ τὴν πλησίον πόλιν ἦν στάδια<sup>9</sup> πέντε μακρά. τὴν δὲ πόλιν κατέ-λαβον νυκτός.

335 The road was fifty stades long.<sup>10</sup> 2 This river was forty feet wide and fifteen feet deep. 3 How<sup>11</sup> high was the wall of this fort? 4 It was not evident what they were trying to do. 5 They thought<sup>12</sup> that they would be safe here.

336 <sup>1</sup> πορευόμενον, στρατεύεσθαι: notice the pred. ptc. object (586) and the inf. as parallel constructions: *did not know that he was marching . . ., but thought that he was making an expedition.* This is

not uncommon. νομίζω requires the infinitive; οἶδα takes the participle or a ὅτι clause.

<sup>2</sup> διὰ φιλήν because of their affection for him.

<sup>3</sup> ὅ τι ἂν θέη whatever they must.

<sup>4</sup> ὄνομα, εὖρος 537.

<sup>5</sup> ὧν: ptc. being; we say which was or omit it.

<sup>6</sup> ποδῶν 508: predicate genitive of measure. Instead of saying being of twenty-five feet in width we say twenty-five feet wide.

<sup>1</sup> ἴδατος 512.

<sup>8</sup> αὐτῷ its: a for dative 523 a. Compare also 524 a. The genitive αὐτοῦ would be proper.

<sup>9</sup> στάδια πέντε μακρά five stades long. στάδια: accusative of extent 538; μακρά: predicate adjective.

<sup>10</sup> Write this sentence in three different ways.

<sup>11</sup> Say of what height or of how many feet in height.

<sup>12</sup> Use νομίζω with fut. inf. or a construction with ἰδέκουν as in 334, 2.

## XXXVII Ω-VERBS

### REVIEW

<sup>a</sup> Review the different aorist systems active and middle and passive 252-254, 331, 336, 348, 367, writing the forms side by side. Take the verbs from this lesson.

<sup>b</sup> Collect and study the different ways of expressing measure, accusative and genitive and nominative, in this and the previous lesson.

<sup>c</sup> Learn or review the following verbs in the Verb-list: ἔρχομαι, εὑρίσκω,<sup>1</sup> ἔχω, -θνήσκω, κρύπτω,<sup>2</sup> νομίζω, φθάνω.

### VOCABULARY AND EXERCISES

<sup>3</sup> ἀκρό-πολις -εως ἡ acropolis, citadel; ἄκρος 180, πόλις 326

ἔτος -ους τό year; ἦν ἑτῶν τριάκοντα he was thirty years old.

Latin vetus old

θηρίον -ου τό animal; pl. game

μηχανή -ης ἡ contrivance, device; ἀ-μήχανος 320. mechanio μηχανικός

μέρος -ους τό part, share

ξένος -ου ὁ stranger; guest or host; mercenary, hired soldier

<sup>1</sup> εὑρίσκω 260 (4), 265 b.

<sup>2</sup> κρύπτω 258 (2).

πλήθος -ους τό multitude, numbers; extent; πλήρης 333	γυμνάζω exercise. gymnasium γυμνάσιον, gymnast γυμναστής
πορεύω -ās ή going, march; ἀ-πορος 72, πορεύομαι 167	δι-έρχομαι go through, march; διά 178, έρχομαι 199
τέλος -ους τό completion, end; τέλος adv. finally	εὕρισκω find; mid. get, procure. eureka
ἀδιάβατος -ον impassable, not fordable; α- neg. + δια-βαίνω 173	εἰς-εὕρισκω find out, discover; εἰ 178
ἀναγκάζω force, compel; ἀνάγκη 232	θηρέω hunt; θήριον
ἀπ-έχω hold off; G am distant from; mid. G keep away from; ἀπό 178, έχω 30. The participle ἀπ-έχων is frequently translated at a distance, far from	κρύπτω hide, conceal. αγρα, αγρα-gram γράφω 114; grotto
	παντά-πᾶσιν adv. all in all, entirely, wholly; πᾶς 232
	καί-τεπ adv. used only with the participle 870 e, although

339 Ἐν ταύτῃ τῇ χώρᾳ οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐώρων πολλά ὄρη ὑψηλά. ἐντεῦθεν ἐπορεύθησαν παρασάγγας εἴκοσι καὶ δύο ἐπὶ τὸν Μαίανδρον ποταμόν. τούτου τὸ εὖρος δύο πλέθρα.<sup>1</sup> ἐνταῦθα<sup>2</sup> τῷ σατραπῇ βασίλεια ἦν καὶ παράδεισος θηρίων πλήρης, ἃ ἐκεῖνος ἐθήρρευεν ἀφ' ἵππου,<sup>3</sup> ὁπότε γυμνάσαι βούλοιτο ἑαυτὸν τε καὶ τοὺς ἵππους. διὰ μέσου δὲ τοῦ παραδείσου ρεῖ ὁ Μαίανδρος ποταμός· αἱ δὲ πηγαὶ αὐτοῦ εἰσιν ἐκ<sup>5</sup> τῶν βασιλείων· ρεῖ δὲ καὶ<sup>4</sup> διὰ τῆς Κελαινῶν πόλεως. ἔστι δὲ καὶ μεγάλου βασιλέως<sup>6</sup> βασίλεια ἐν Κελαιναῖς ἐπὶ ταῖς πηγαῖς τοῦ Μαρσίου ποταμοῦ ὑπὸ τῇ ἀκροπόλει· ρεῖ δὲ καὶ<sup>4</sup> οὗτος διὰ τῆς πόλεως καὶ ἐμ-βάλλει εἰς τὸν Μαίανδρον· τοῦ δὲ Μαρσίου τὸ εὖρος ἔστιν εἴκοσι καὶ πέντε ποδῶν.

2 ἐδόκει οὖν αὐτοῖς ἀσφαλὲς εἶναι δια-βῆναι· ὥστε ἐπειρῶντο τὸ χωρίον λαβεῖν· ἦν γὰρ οὕτως σωτηριὰ ἀσφαλής,<sup>7</sup> ἄλλως δὲ χαλεπὸν ἐδόκει εἶναι ἀπ-ελθεῖν.

δι-ελθόντες δὲ σταθμοὺς τρεῖς ἀφ-ίκοντο πρὸς τὸ Μη-  
 διάας καλούμενον<sup>8</sup> τείχος καὶ παρ-ῆλθον εἴσω αὐτοῦ.  
 τοῦτο εὖρος μὲν εἴκοσι ποδῶν ὕψος δὲ ἑκατόν. μῆκος  
 δ' ἐλέγето εἶναι εἴκοσι παρασαγγῶν· καὶ<sup>4</sup> ἐλέγето δὲ  
 ἀπ-έχειν Βαβυλῶνος οὐ πολὺ.<sup>9</sup> τῷ δὲ ὄντι<sup>10</sup> ἡ ὁδὸς ἦν  
 εἴκοσι παρασάγγας μακρά. τέλος δὲ μέντοι μέρος  
 τῶν στρατιωτῶν ἔχοντες ἀφ-ίκοντο εἰς Βαβυλῶνα,  
 καίπερ τοῦ πλήθους τῶν πολεμίων πολλοῦ ὄντος, ἔνθα  
 ἀπ-έθανεν ὁ Σῶσις ἐν τῷ ξένων οἴκῳ ἀπ-έχων ἀπὸ τῆς  
 πατρίδος.

3 εἰ δὲ καὶ δυνηθεῖτε τά τε ὄρη φθάσαι λαβόντες<sup>11</sup>  
 καὶ ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ κρατῆσαι μαχόμενοι τοὺς ἱππέας,  
 ἤξετε ἐπὶ τοὺς ποταμούς, πρῶτον μὲν τὸν Θερμῶδοντα,  
 εὖρος τριῶν πλέθρων, ὃν χαλεπὸν οἶμαι δια-βαίνειν.  
 δεύτερον δὲ τὸν Ἰριν καὶ τριῶν πλέθρων· τρίτον δὲ τὸν  
 Ἄλυν δύο σταδίων, ὃν οὐκ ἂν δύνασθε ἄνευ πλοίων  
 δια-βῆναι· πλοῖα δὲ τίς ἔσται ὁ παρ-έχων;<sup>12</sup> καὶ ἀδιά-  
 βatos δὲ ὁ Παρθένιος, ἐφ' ὃν ἔλθοιτε ἂν, εἰ τὸν Ἄλυν  
 δια-βαῖτε. ἐγὼ μὲν οὖν οὐ μόνον<sup>13</sup> χαλεπὴν ὑμῖν εἶναι  
 νομίζω τὴν πορείαν ἀλλὰ καὶ παντάπῃσιν ἀδύνατον.  
 ὥστε κατὰ θάλατταν δεῖ ὑμᾶς ἐλθεῖν καὶ ἀπο-πλεῦσαι.<sup>14</sup>

#### ΑΧΙΛΛΕΥΣ ΑΡΙΣΤΟΣ ΑΧΑΙΩΝ

<sup>1</sup> Ἀχιλλεύς, ὥς φησιν Ὅμηρος, ἄριστος<sup>15</sup> ἦν τῶν Ἀχαιῶν  
 ὅσοι συν-εστρατεύσαντο ἐπὶ Τροίᾳ. πατὴρ<sup>16</sup> μὲν ἦν  
 Πηλέως μητὴρ δὲ Θέτιδος. ἔτι δὲ παῖδα ὄντα ἔκρυψεν  
 αὐτὸν ἡ μήτηρ ἐν<sup>17</sup> ταῖς θυγατράσι Λυκομήδους βασι-  
 λέως Σκύρου, ἵνα μηδεὶς τῶν βασιλέων αὐτὸν εὖρὼν  
 ἀναγκάσειε συ-στρατεύεσθαι· καὶ γὰρ ᾔδει ὅτι ἔὰν  
 συμ-πλεύσῃ<sup>18</sup> ἀπο-θανοῖτο νέος.<sup>19</sup> Ὀδυσσεὺς μέντοι

ἐξ-εὔρεν αὐτὸν μηχανῇ σοφῇ καὶ ἤγαγε πρὸς τὸ στράτευμα ἐπεὶ ἤδη ὁ πόλεμος πολλὰ ἔτη ἦν.<sup>20</sup> ἐν<sup>21</sup> δὲ τῷ ἐνάτῳ ἔτει ἔρις ἐγένετο<sup>22</sup> Ἀγαμέμνονι καὶ Ἀχιλλεῖ, ὥστε οὗτος<sup>23</sup> οὐκ ἔφη ἔτι μαχεῖσθαι.

34/ <sup>1</sup> πλέω: the verb is omitted 493 b.

<sup>2</sup> ἐνταῦθα: notice the lack of conjunction, frequent with demonstrative pronouns and adverbs. ἐνταῦθα is the connective 600 (2).

<sup>3</sup> ἀφ' ἵππου on horseback. Greek emphasizes the *from* relation. He rides ἐκ τοῦ ἵππου but hunts ἀπὸ τοῦ ἵππου.

<sup>4</sup> καὶ δὲ καὶ: notice δὲ and καὶ together several times in this lesson: δὲ is the conjunction, καὶ meaning *also* and emphasizing the expression before which it is placed.

<sup>5</sup> ἐκ: the *from* relation again prominent. We should say *in* or *under*. The castle was built over the springs to ensure a safe water supply in time of war.

<sup>6</sup> βασιλεὺς and the great king also had a castle. Compare with dative of possessor above, τῷ στρατῷ.

<sup>7</sup> ἀσφαλῆς assured.

<sup>8</sup> τὸ καλούμενον the so-called 582 b.

<sup>9</sup> οὐ πολὺ not far. πολὺ will be given later.

<sup>10</sup> τῷ δὲ ὄντι but in reality: ὄντι the ptc. ὡν being. Compare τὰ ὄντα and τὰ μὴ ὄντα in 259, 262/3.

<sup>11</sup> φθάσαι λαβόντες seize the

heights before the enemy: φθάω 585 a.

<sup>12</sup> τίς . . . παρέχων who will furnish?

<sup>13</sup> οὐ μόνον . . . ἀλλὰ καὶ not only . . . but also or even.

<sup>14</sup> ἀπο-πλεῖναι: aor. inf. from ἀπο-πλέω.

<sup>15</sup> Ἀχιλλεὺς . . . ἄριστος according to Homer Achilles was the bravest of the Achaeans.

<sup>16</sup> πατὴρ ἦν his father was: genitive of source 509 a. Do not translate he was of.

<sup>17</sup> ἐν among.

<sup>18</sup> ἐὰν συμ-πλεύσῃ if he should sail with them: συμ-πλέω.

<sup>19</sup> ἀπο-θανοῖτο νέος that he would die young. He was fated to win great renown and die young or live a long but uneventful life. He chose the former.

<sup>20</sup> ἦν had lasted.

<sup>21</sup> ἐνᾷτῳ δὲ ἔτει in the ninth year would have been proper 527 a. The omission of the preposition is the regular form with words for year, month, day, night with an adjective.

<sup>22</sup> ἔρις ἐγένετο a quarrel arose between: the dative is a *for* dative 523 a, 524 a. ἤρσαντο Ἀγαμέμνονι καὶ Ἀχιλλεῖ. ἔρις is strife, ἐρίσω I engage in strife.

<sup>23</sup> οὗτος the latter.

## XXXVIII THE CONSONANT DECLENSION

## Μέγας, Πολύς, Ταχύς, Βελτίων, Μέλᾱς

2 a Learn ταχύς 155 and add *and the feminine genitive plural has -ῶν*, 158, 159 b.

b Learn μέγας and πολύς 174, 175 and see πολύ, πολλά in 556, and πρέσβυς 142, 7.

c Decline ὅσπερ 214, 216, 612. The accent remains unchanged, ἥπερ, οἷπερ, οὔσπερ.

d Learn βελτίων 149, 150 and μέλᾱς 156, 157.

3 a By 229 make adverbs from ταχύς, ἡδύς, δασύς, χαλεπός and give their meanings.

b Learn the adverbs in 230. Read 231 and 232 and notice πολλάκις *often*.

c Observe how 233 and 236 *end* explain the meaning of such forms as ἄλλῃ, ταύτῃ, ἥπερ in this lesson. ἥπερ is equivalent to τῇ αὐτῇ ὁδῷ ἥ *by the same road by which*.

d See πίπτω in the Verb-list and 257 a, 326.

III.

## VOCABULARY AND EXERCISES

4 δένδρον -ου τό *tree*. rhodo-dendron.  
ρόdon *rose*

Ἑλλάς -άδος ἡ *Greece*; Ἑλλην  
257

Ἴων Ἴωνος ὁ *Ionian*. Ἰωνία 328  
οἶνος -ου ὁ *wine*. Latin vinum  
δασύς -εια -ύ D *dense, thickly covered*. Latin dēnsus

ἡδύς -εια -ύ *sweet*; ἡδίως *adv. gladly*. Latin suāvis, suādeō

ἡμισυς -εια -υ *half*; ἡμι-. Latin sēmi; hemi-sphere

μέγας μεγάλη μέγα *great, large, tall*; μεγάλη 187, μακρός 30, μήκος 333. Latin māgnus; megaphone. o-mega

πολύς πολλή πολύ *much, many; strong*; πολλοί 21, πλήρης 333. poly-gon, poly-nomial

πρέσβυς *old*; οἱ πρέσβεις -ων *ambassadors*. presbyter, priest

ταχύς -εια -ύ *quick, swift*

ἐκβαίνω *step out, march out*

ἐπι-πίπτω D *fall upon, attack*

345 Ὅταν δὲ διώξωμεν αὐτούς, ἔφη Ξενιάς, ἀπο-φεύγουσιν· οὐδὲ<sup>1</sup> γὰρ εἰ ταχὺς εἴη ὀπλίτης πελταστήν ἂν δύνατο κατα-λαμβάνειν ἀπ-έχοντα<sup>2</sup> πόδας ἑκατόν. 2 οἱ τῶν βαρβάρων ἄρχοντες νομίζουσιν, ἔαν μέσον ἔχωσι τὸ ἑαυτῶν, εἴ τι παρα-αγγεῖλαι βούλονται, ἡμίσει ἂν χρόνῳ αἰσθάνεσθαι τὸ στράτευμα.<sup>3</sup> 3 οἱ πρέσβεις καὶ οἱ κήρυκες συν-εβουλεύοντο τοῖς πολίταις περὶ τῆς σωτηρίας τῆς πόλεως καὶ Τίμασιών συν-εβούλευσεν αὐτοῖς ἀγγέλους πέμψαι εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα· οὕτως δὲ οἱ Ἴωνες ἤτησαν τοὺς Ἀθηναίους ὠφελῆσαι ἑαυτοὺς ἐν τῷ πολέμῳ τῷ πρὸς βασιλεῆ τῶν Περσῶν, Ἴωνας ὄντας<sup>4</sup> καὶ αὐτοὺς τούτους τὸ γένος·<sup>5</sup> τὸν γὰρ ἀγῶνα ἔφασαν εἶναι κοινόν. 4 ἤκουσαν τοῦ ἀγγέλου μέγαν βασιλεῆ ὄντα ἐν τῷ πλησίον παραδείσῳ ἔχοντα στράτευμα πολὺ. τοῦτον μέντοι οὐκ εἶδον· ἦν γὰρ φανερὸς δεδοικῶς<sup>6</sup> μὴ ἐπι-πέσωσιν ἑαυτῷ καίπερ μῦρίους ἔχων στρατιωτᾶς. 5 καὶ ἐπορεύθησαν δὲ διὰ πεδίου μεγάλου καὶ καλοῦ καὶ δασέος δένδροις<sup>7</sup> παρὰ τὸν ποταμόν. ἐκ δὲ τῶν κωμῶν ἐλάμβανον πολὺν οἶνον ἡδύν. 6 λαβὼν τὸ ἡμισυ τοῦ στρατεύματος ὁ ἡγεμὼν ἡγεῖτο ἡμῖν τὴν ἐτέρᾳ ὁδόν.<sup>8</sup> καὶ αὐτοὶ μὲν ἂν ἐπορεύθημεν ἥπερ οἱ ἄλλοι, τοὺς δὲ ὀπλίτᾶς οὐκ ἂν ἦν<sup>9</sup> ἄλλη ἢ ταύτη ἐκβῆναι.

346 Let us go back by the very same road<sup>10</sup> by which we came. 2 We need fleet horses for our cavalry.<sup>11</sup> 3 It would not have been possible to overtake them, if we had gone by any other road. 4 They proceeded rapidly as<sup>12</sup> the enemy were following with<sup>13</sup> a large army. 5 Let us send ambassadors to the great king at<sup>14</sup> Babylon. 6 They asked us to assist them, for they could<sup>15</sup> not go alone.

7 <sup>1</sup> οὐδέ not even.

<sup>2</sup> ἀπ-έχοντα πόδας ἑκατόν *dis-*  
*tant a hundred feet*: translate with  
*a hundred feet start*. The hoplite  
wore a helmet κράνος, coat of mail  
θώραξ, shield ἄσπίς, and greaves  
κνημῖς and carried two spears δόρυ  
and a sword ξίφος. These weighed  
nearly seventy-five pounds. The  
peltast was light-armed with a  
crescent shield πέλιτη and spears  
and perhaps a short sword.

<sup>3</sup> Read this sentence aloud and  
observe the difference between the  
ἴαν clause and the εἰ clause.

<sup>4</sup> ὄντας καὶ αὐτοὺς *because they*  
*were themselves also Ionians in*  
*race*.

<sup>5</sup> τὸ γένος 537.

<sup>6</sup> ἦν φανερός δεδουκώς *he was*  
*evidently afraid* 585 a.

<sup>7</sup> δένδροις *with trees*: the regu-  
lar construction with δαός.

<sup>8</sup> ὁδόν: the road *by which*, prob-  
ably cognate accusative 536.

<sup>9</sup> οὐκ ἂν ἦν *it would not have*  
*been possible* 461 c. ἦν, and ἔστιν  
with this accent, frequently mean  
*it was, is, possible*.

<sup>10</sup> Use the accusative. Use δοπερ  
and compare 343 c.

<sup>11</sup> Dative plural of ἱππεύς.

<sup>12</sup> ὅτι or γάρ.

<sup>13</sup> ἔχων in the proper form.

<sup>14</sup> εἰς.

<sup>15</sup> οὐ γὰρ δύνασθαι: cp. 299, 16.

## XXXIX COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

### SEVERAL FORMS AND IDIOMS

8 Learn 177. Remember that a penult with a short vowel is  
not necessarily short, as μακρός, πιστός. Learn σχολαῖος  
and φίλος 178 and *end*, εὐδαίμων and σώφρων 179, and  
180-183 *entire*. Review βελτίων 149.

a ἄξιος	ἀξιώτερος	ἀξιώτατος	worthy
πολλοῦ ἄξιος	πλείονος ἄξιος	πλείστου ἄξιος	valuable

9 a Γυνή 142, 1.

b Βέλτιστοι δῆ 671 c (1).

c Ὡς πλείστοι 633 f. In this connection ὥς ἂν δύνηται  
refers to the future, a relative with ἂν and the subjunctive.  
Compare a past, ὥς ἐδύναντο τάχιστα 181, 6.

d Ὡς with the participle 593 c, 594, 595 *first example*,  
ὥς here being equivalent to λέγων ὅτι.

e See 320 for ζάω and 257 a, 350, 5 for γίγνομαι.



## VOCABULARY AND EXERCISES

- 350 γυνή γυναικός ἡ woman, wife. ἴμο-λογέω say the same, agree, miso-gynist admit; ἴμα 173, ἴμοιος 232, βραχύς -εία -ύ short. Latin brevis; brachy-logy λόγος 298. homologous περι-γίγνομαι G get the better of, overcome συμ-πέμπω D send with or together  
νέος -ᾱ -ον young, new; νεανίας 86. Latin novus; neo-logy, neo-phyta, συμ-πέμπω D send with or together  
ἴαω live, am alive. ποῶ-logy ζῶν ἀεί adv. ever, always, from time to time. Latin aevum; ΔΥΕ

351 Οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐδόκουν εἶναι βελτίονες στρατιῶται ἢ οἱ πολλοὶ<sup>1</sup> καὶ ἴσως βέλτιστοι δὴ<sup>2</sup> τῶν<sup>3</sup> τότε. 2 τῶν παίδων ὁ μὲν πρεσβύτερος ἦν Εὐκλείδης ὁ δὲ νεώτερος Ξανθικλῆς. 3 ἐντεῦθεν ὁ σατράπης Ἐπίαξαν τὴν Σουενέσιος<sup>4</sup> γυναῖκα εἰς τὴν Κιλικίαν ἀπ-έπεμψε τὴν ταχίστην ὁδόν,<sup>5</sup> καὶ συν-έπεμψεν αὐτῇ τοὺς στρατιωτὰς οὓς Μένων εἶχε καὶ αὐτόν. οὗτοι δὲ πρότεροι<sup>6</sup> τοῦ σατράπου<sup>7</sup> πέντε ἡμέραις<sup>8</sup> εἰς Ταρσοὺς ἀφ-έκοντο. 4 ὁ δὲ Ὀρόντας νομίσας ἐτοίμους εἶναι αὐτῷ τοὺς ἱππέας ἔγραψεν ἐπιστολὴν παρὰ βασιλεῆ<sup>9</sup> ὅτι ἤξιοι ἔχων ἱππέας ὥς ἂν δύνηται πλείστους. 5 ἐνομίζομεν παρὰ<sup>9</sup> τῷ σατράπῃ ὄντες<sup>10</sup> ἀγαθοὶ ἀξιώτερās ἂν τιμῆς<sup>11</sup> τυγχάνειν ἢ παρὰ βασιλεῖ. 6 καὶ νῦν οἴχονται εἰδότες ὅτι κακίους εἰσὶ περὶ ἡμᾶς ἢ ἡμεῖς περὶ ἐκείνους. 7 οὐδεὶς πάντων τῶν τότε ζώντων σοφώτερος ἢ δικαιότερος ἦν τοῦ ἄρχοντος ἡμῶν. 8 ὁ ἡμέτερος σατράπης ἦν ἀξιώτερος τοῦ εὖ πράττειν<sup>12</sup> ἢ ἕτεροι καὶ τῶν<sup>3</sup> τότε ἀξιωτάτος ἄρχειν, ὥς ὁμολογεῖται<sup>13</sup> ὑπὸ πάντων τῶν ἐγνωκότων<sup>14</sup> οἶος ἦν. 9 οἱ Ἕλληνες πλείονος ἀξιοὶ στρατιῶται εἶναι ἐλέγοντο τῶν Περσῶν· ἀμείνονες γὰρ εἶναι<sup>15</sup> τῇ ἀρετῇ. 10 πρὶν ἐγνωμεν αὐτὸν ἐν μάχῃ

οὐκ ἦσμεν<sup>16</sup> ὁποῖος ἄρχων εἶη. 11 ποῦ δυνήσεσθε ἰδεῖν μείζονας πόλεις καὶ εὐδαιμονεστέρας τούτων τῶν ἐν τῇ ἡμετέρᾳ χώρᾳ οὐσῶν;<sup>17</sup> 12 ἦρτησεν αὐτοὺς συ-στρατεῦεσθαι ὥς εἰσ-βαλῶν<sup>18</sup> εἰς τοὺς Πισιδᾶς. 13 Ἀρίστιππος αἰτεῖ αὐτὸν εἰς δισχιλίους ξένους καὶ<sup>19</sup> τριῶν μηνῶν μισθόν, ὥς οὕτως περι-γενόμενος<sup>20</sup> ἂν τῶν ἐχθρῶν.<sup>21</sup> 14 ἡ ταχίστη ὁδὸς οὐκ αἰεὶ ἐστὶν ἡ βραχυτέρᾳ.

- 2 These men are more valuable soldiers with<sup>22</sup> their arms than without<sup>22</sup> them. 2 Not often have I seen women fairer than these. 3 We arrived too<sup>23</sup> late for the battle. 4 We are more friendly to the satrap than<sup>24</sup> to his brother. 5 These are the bravest men of our time.<sup>25</sup>

3 <sup>1</sup> οἱ πολλοὶ *the many, most men.*

<sup>2</sup> ἡ strengthens the superlative: *the very best.*

<sup>3</sup> τῶν τότε *of the men of that time* 507 e.

<sup>4</sup> Συεννέσιος: a genitive, -is -ios.

<sup>5</sup> ὁδόν 540, 536.

<sup>6</sup> πρότεροι *before, earlier*: an adjective where English uses an adverb 546.

<sup>7</sup> σατράπου 517: the regular use when ἢ *than* is omitted.

<sup>8</sup> ἡμέραις 526 c. Translate the adjective, genitive, and dative *five days before the satrap.*

<sup>9</sup> παρὰ *in the service of.*

<sup>10</sup> ὅτε: *if we were.*

<sup>11</sup> ἄξιωτέρας τιμῆς *more adequate honor* 510 d end. τυγχάνω with the genitive means *hit, reach, obtain.*

<sup>12</sup> τοῦ εὖ πράττειν *more deserving of success* 516 a.

<sup>13</sup> ὁμολογεῖται: the subject is personal *he*, though we say *as is acknowledged.*

<sup>14</sup> ἐγνωκότων *who have come to know*: perf. act. ptc. of γινώσκω.

<sup>15</sup> εἶναι: the infinitive shows that the γάρ clause is part of what was reported.

<sup>16</sup> ἦσμεν: from ὀδα.

<sup>17</sup> οὐσῶν: fem. gen. pl. ptc. ὄν *being*: translate *that are* or omit.

<sup>18</sup> ὡς εἰσ-βαλῶν *eis saying that he intended to make an incursion into the country of.* The participle is future 533 b.

<sup>19</sup> καί: omit and translate *three months' pay for (eis) two thousand troops.*

<sup>20</sup> περι-γενόμενος ἂν 525.

<sup>21</sup> τῶν ἐχθρῶν 509 b.

<sup>22</sup> Use a participle ἔχων and μὴ ἔχων. Why μὴ? See 486.

<sup>23</sup> Express by the comparative

adjective ὕστερος followed by the  
genitive 517: *later than the battle.*

<sup>24</sup> ἢ must be expressed here.  
<sup>25</sup> τῶν νῦν: compare τῶν τότε.

## XL ADVERBS AND COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

354 a Read 228 and learn the forms from οἶκος, ἄλλος, Ἀθήναι, ἕτερος, πᾶς, and those in 228 a.

b Review 229, 230, 231, 232. The -άκις forms are used in making the thousands, ἑξ-ακισ-χίλιοι *six thousand*.

c Learn 234, 235, 240 a, b, c, d, 241.

d Review 236, 237 omitting the forms in parenthesis.

e Check in the Verb-list σκοπέω σκέπτομαι and τρέχω.

### VOCABULARY AND EXERCISES

355 ἀργύριον -ου τό *silver, money.*

Latin *argentum*

ἄνθος -ου ὁ *ass*

ἀ-παράσκευος -ον *unprepared*; a-  
neg. cp. παρα-σκευάζω 397, σκευο-  
φόρος 304

ἱερός -ᾶ -όν *holy, sacred*; τὰ ἱερά  
*the sacrifices; the omens* from  
inspecting the vitals of the  
victim. hiero-glyphic, hier-archy  
ἄρχω 66

σχολαῖος -ᾶ -ον *leisurely, slow*;  
σχολαῖως adv. *slowly*; σχολή  
*leisure. school, scholiast*

εὔχομαι D *pray, make vows*

σκοπέω σκέπτομαι *watch, observe*;  
*consider, deliberate*; σκοπός 166.

σκοπε, σκοπτιο, ἐπι-σκοπι, bishop

τρέχω *run. troche, trochee.* With  
the aorist ἔ-δραμ-ον cp. δρόμος  
397. dromedary

ἀ-μαχεί adv. *without fighting*; a-  
neg. + μάχη 104

ἔστε adv. *even to*; conj. adv. 631,  
*until, as long as*

πότερον adv. *whether*: πότερον or  
πότερα . . . ἢ *whether . . . or*

τήμερον adv. *today*; ἡμέρα 72

ἕκαστος -η -ον *each*; pl. *several*

ἤν-περ, ἔάν-περ conj. with subjv.  
*if at least*; ἔάν *if*

356 Ὅποτε οἱ Ἕλληνες διώξαιαν τοὺς ὄνους χαλεπὸν ἦν  
λαμβάνειν αὐτούς· πολὺ γὰρ τῶν ἵππων ἔτρεχον θᾶτ-  
τον. 2 ἐκεῖ δύο ἵπποι ἦσαν· ὁ δὲ ἵππεὺς ἐρωτῶμενος

ὁπότερον αἰρήσοιτο ἀπ-εκρίνατο ὅτι τὸν μὲν ἐγγυτέρω αὐτός γε νομίζοι εἶναι καλλίονα, τὸν δὲ ἕτερον ἂν ἔλοιτο ὡς νεώτερόν τε ὄντα καὶ θάπτονα. 3 νῦν δὲ οὕτως ἔχει.<sup>1</sup> ἀμαχεὶ μὲν ἐνθένδε οὐκ ἔστιν ἀπ-ελθεῖν· ἦν γὰρ μὴ ἡμεῖς ἴωμεν ἐπὶ τοὺς πολεμίους, οὗτοι ἡμῖν ὁπότεαν ἀπ-ιώμεν ἔψονται καὶ ἐπι-πεσοῦνται.<sup>2</sup> 4 ἐνθάδε οὖν μένωμεν, ἔνθα νῦν ἐσμεν· οὐδὲ γάρ τι<sup>3</sup> ἄλλοθεν ἔχομεν ἐλπίδας σωθῆναι. 5 σκεψώμεθα οὖν πότερον τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ὠνεῖσθαι κρείττον ἐστὶν ἐκ τῆς ἀγορᾶς ἢς οὗτοι παρ-εἶχον ὀλίγα πολλοῦ ἀργυρίου,<sup>4</sup> μηδὲ τοῦτο ἔτι ἔχοντας,<sup>5</sup> ἢ αὐτοὺς<sup>6</sup> λαμβάνειν, ἥπερ κρατῶμεν, τοιοῦτοις χρωμένους ὁποίοις<sup>7</sup> ἂν ἕκαστος βούληται. 6 ἔλεγον ὅτι εὐχοίτο τοσοῦτον χρόνον ζῆν ἔστε νικῶν καὶ τοὺς εὖ καὶ τοὺς κακῶς ποιοῦντας ἀλεξόμενος.<sup>8</sup> 7 ἐπειδὴ δὲ σαφῶς ἀπ-ιόντας αὐτοὺς ἡδὴ ἐώρων οἱ Ἕλληνες, ἐπορεύοντο καὶ αὐτοὶ καὶ δι-ῆλθον ὅσον<sup>9</sup> ἐξήκοντα σταδίους. καὶ ἐγένετο τοσοῦτον μεταξὺ τῶν στρατευμάτων ὥστε τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ οὐκ ἐφάνησαν οἱ πολέμοι οὐδὲ τῇ τρίτῃ,<sup>10</sup> τῇ δὲ τετάρτῃ νυκτὸς προσελθόντες κατ-έλαβον χωρίον οἱ βάρβαροι, ἧ<sup>11</sup> ἔμελλον οἱ Ἕλληνες παρ-ιέναι, τὸ ἀκρότατον τοῦ ὄρους ὑφ' ᾧ ἡ ὁδὸς ἦν εἰς τὸ πεδῖον. 8 ἐνόμιζε ὅσῳ<sup>12</sup> μὲν θάπτον ἔλθοι, τοσοῦτῳ<sup>12</sup> ἀπαρασκευότερον βασιλεῆα λήψεσθαι, ὅσῳ δὲ σχολαίτερον, τοσοῦτῳ πλείον στρατευμα δυνήσεσθαι συλ-λέγειν βασιλεῆα. 9 μετὰ τὴν μάχην ὁπόσα ἐντὸς αὐτῶν<sup>13</sup> καὶ χρήματα καὶ ἄνθρωποι ἐγένοντο πάντα ἔσωσαν οἱ Ἕλληνες.

- 7 They proceeded rapidly as they wished to arrive before Klearchos. 2 The<sup>14</sup> more rapidly<sup>15</sup> we travel the<sup>14</sup> sooner<sup>15</sup> we shall arrive. 3 They were considering

whether they should wait or go today. 4 We cannot take these towns without <sup>16</sup> fighting. 5 At the foot of the mountain was a road where they were intending to pass.

358 <sup>1</sup> οὕτως ἔχει the matter stands thus: οὕτως is sometimes used for ὥδε.

<sup>2</sup> ἐπι-πεσόνται: fut. of ἐπι-πίπτω.

<sup>3</sup> τι in any way: adverbial.

<sup>4</sup> ἀργυρίου 513.

<sup>5</sup> μηδὲ τοῦτο ἐτι ἔχοντας and we no longer have this either: μηδὲ instead of οὐδέ, being in an infinitive clause 564.

<sup>6</sup> αὐτοὺς ourselves.

<sup>7</sup> τοιούτους . . . ὅποιοις such kinds as, whatever kind.

<sup>8</sup> ἀλεξόμενος by repaying.

<sup>9</sup> ὥσον as much as, about: adverbial like ὥς.

<sup>10</sup> τῇ τρίτῃ: with us the third day would be the second.

<sup>11</sup> ἧ where.

<sup>12</sup> ὥσπερ . . . τοσούτῃ by as much as . . . , by so much is best rendered in English by the . . . the. For the dative see 526 c and compare 351, 3 and 353, 8.

<sup>13</sup> ἐντὸς αὐτῶν within their ranks:

<sup>14</sup> Use note 12.

<sup>15</sup> θάπτον.

<sup>16</sup> μὴ μαχόμενοι.



The theater at Athens, in its present condition,

## XLI Ω - VERBS

## THE IMPERATIVE MODE

79 a Paradigms 252-254, 313-315, 331, 336, 348, 367.

b Learn the endings 271 and formation 272, 284, 300 c, 307, 349 and a. Notice that the only peculiarities occur in the second singular.

c Learn the imperatives of φημι, εἰμι, εἶμι, οἶδα in 382, 384, 385, 386.

0 Imperative Sentences 484, 485. Negative μή. Review 473 a, b, c.

a Present Imperative μὴ θαυμάζετε *do not be surprised*, as you seem to be.

b Aorist Subjunctive μὴ θαυμάσητε *do not be surprised*, at what I shall say.

c Present Imperative μὴ λεγέτω *let him not go on saying*, *let him not say*.

d Aorist Subjunctive μὴ λέξη *let him not say*.

3/ We now have the forms to make a complete synopsis by *tense-systems* and by using all the *tense-stems* a complete synopsis of the verb.

a Use for models the synopses in 36/ (A) and 36/ (B).

b Study the synopses in 336, 348, 350, and in 369 ἔβην, ἔβραν, ἐπριάμην, ἔφθην, ἔάλων.

c Insert the imperative forms in the synopses in 277.

d In the Verb-list see εἰρίσκω, -θνήσκω and -κτείνω, θύω, -μυμνήσκω, φέρω.

36/  
(4)

## SYNOPSIS OF

ACTIVE				
	PRESENT SYSTEM	FUTURE SYSTEM	AORIST SYSTEM	PERFECT ACTIVE SYSTEM
PRINCIPAL PARTS	παύω	παύσω	ἔπαυσα	πέπαυκα
STEMS	παυ-, παυο:ε-	παυσο:ε-	παυσα-	πεπαυκα-
IND.	παύω	παύσω		πέπαυκα
SUBJV.	ἔπαυον		ἔπαυσα	ἔπεπαύκη
OPT.	παύωμαι	παύσοιμι	παύσωμαι	πεπαύκω
IMPV.	παύει	παύσει	παύσον	πεπαύκοιμι
INF.	παύειν	παύσειν	παύσαι	πεπαυκέναι
PTC.	παύων	παύσων	παύσας	πεπαυκώς
MIDDLE				
IND.	παύομαι	παύσομαι	ἔπαυσάμην	
SUBJV.	ἐπαυόμην		παύσωμαι	
OPT.	παύωμαι	παυσοίμην	παυσαίμην	
IMPV.	παύου	παύσεσθαι	παύσαι	
INF.	παύεσθαι	παύσεσθαι	παύσασθαι	
PTC.	παυόμενος	παυσόμενος	παυσάμενος	
PASSIVE				
IND.	παύομαι			
SUBJV.	ἐπαυόμην			
OPT.	παύωμαι	See Passive System	See Passive System	
IMPV.	παυοίμην			
INF.	παύου			
PTC.	παύεσθαι παυόμενος			

παύω stop

VOICE			
PERFECT MIDDLE SYSTEM		PASSIVE SYSTEM θη:ε- PASSIVE	
πέπαυμαι		ἐπαύθην	
PERFECT πεπαυ- FUTURE PERFECT		AORIST παυθη:ε- FUTURE	

VOICE			
πέπαυμαι ἐπεπαύμην πεπαυμένος ὦ πεπαυμένος εἶην πέπαυσο πεπαύσθαι πεπαυμένος			
	πεπαυσο:ε-		παυθησο:ε-

VOICE			
πέπαυμαι ἐπεπαύμην πεπαυμένος ὦ πεπαυμένος εἶην πέπαυσο πεπαύσθαι πεπαυμένος	πεπαύσομαι	ἐπαύθην παυθῶ παυθείην παύθητι παυθήναι παυθῆς	παυθήσομαι  παυθησοίμην  παυθήσεσθαι παυθησόμενος
	πεπαυσοίμην  πεπαύσεσθαι πεπαυσόμενος		



## SYNOPSSES

36/  
(B)

	PRESENT	PRESENT	PRESENT	PRESENT	PRESENT
STEM . . MEANING	ἀγο:α <i>drive</i>	κελευ:α <i>urge, bid</i>	ὄραο:α <i>see</i>	ποιεο:α <i>make, do</i>	βουλο:α <i>will, wish</i>
IND.	ἄγω ἦγον	κελεύω ἐκέλευον	ὄρω έώρων	ποιῶ ἐποιοῦν	βούλομαι ἐβουλόμην
SUBJV.	ἄγω	κελεύω	ὄρω	ποιῶ	βούλωμαι
OPT.	ἄγοιμι	κελεύοιμι	ὄρῃην	ποιόιην	βουλοίμην
IMPV.	ἄγε	κέλευε	ὄρᾱ	ποίει	βούλου
INF.	ἄγειν	κελεύειν	ὄρᾶν	ποιεῖν	βούλεσθαι
PTC.	ἄγων	κελεύων	ὄρων	ποιῶν	βουλόμενος

FUTURE	σα-AORIST	σα-AORIST	σα-AORIST	ο:ε-AORIST
ἥξο:ε <i>come</i>	τελεσα- <i>complete</i>	τελεσα- <i>finish</i>	ποιησα- <i>make, do</i>	ἔλθο:ε <i>come, go</i>
ἥξω	ἐτέλεσα τελέσω	ἐτελεσάμην τετέσθωμαι	ἐποίησα ποιήσω	ἦλθον ἔλθω
ἥξοιμι	τελέσαιμι τέλεσον	τελεσαίμην τέλεσαι	ποιήσαιμι ποιήσον	ἔλθοιμι ἐλθέ
ἥξειν ἥξων	τελέσαι τελέσᾱς	τελέσασθαι τελεσάμενος	ποιήσαι ποιήσᾱς	ἐλθεῖν ἐλθών

ο:ε-AORIST	θη:ε-AORIST	PRESENT	PRESENT	PRESENT	PRESENT
ἔλο:ε <i>choose</i>	πᾶχθη:ε <i>accomplish</i>	ἔσ- <i>am</i>	ἔ-, εἰ- <i>go</i>	οἶδ-, οἶδ- <i>know</i>	φᾶ.η <i>say</i>
εἰλόμην ἔλωμαι εἰλοίμην ἐλοῦθι ἐλέσθαι ἐλόμενος	ἐπᾶχθην πᾶχθῶ πᾶχθείην πᾶχθητι πᾶχθῆναι πᾶχθεις	εἰμι ἦν ᾶ εἴην ἴσθι εἵναι ᾶν	εἰμι ἦα ἴω ἴοιμι ἴθι εἵναι ἴων	οἶδα ἦδη εἶδῶ εἰδείην ἴσθι εἰδέναι εἰδῶς	φῆμι ἔφην φῶ φαίην φάθι φάναι φάσκων

## VOCABULARY AND EXERCISES

- 2** **καιρός** -οῦ ὁ *the right time, opportunity; advantage, advantageous*  
**σίμ-μαχος** -ον *allied; subst. ally; σύν 178 + μάχομαι 199, μάχη 104*  
**ἀδικέω** *do wrong; A treat unjustly, injure; ἄδικος unjust, a- neg. + δίκη 397*  
**ἀντι-λέγω** *speak against, object*  
**ἀπο-κτείνω** *kill off, put to death; used as active to ἀπο-θνήσκω 208*  
**δια-βάλλω** *throw across at with words, slander, accuse falsely. diabolio, devil*  
**ἐφ-οράω** *look upon, keep in sight; ἐπί + ὁράω 320; ἐφορος 416*  
**ἡττάομαι** *am inferior, am surpassed, am defeated; ἡττων 182, 2.*  
**θύω** *sacrifice; mid. consult the omens by sacrifice. Latin fūmus; tlyme*  
**ἀνα-μνησκω** 185, two A, *remind; perf. μέμνημαι G, see also 588 a, c,*  
*call to mind, remember; μανθάνω 253. mnemonics*  
**προ-ελαίνω** *drive ahead, march on*  
**στρατοπεδεύομαι** *encamp; στρατόπεδον 66*  
**συ-σκενάζω** *pack up; σύν 178; cp. ἀπαράσκευος 355*  
**τίμωρέω** *D of person avenged, A of person punished, G of the crime; help, avenge; mid. punish*  
**φέρω** *bear, carry; σκευο-φόρος 304. Latin ferō; meta-phor μετά 178*  
**συμ-φέρω** *bring together; D am of advantage to*  
**αὔριον** *adv. tomorrow*  
**εἶτα** *adv. then, thereupon, afterwards*  
**οὐ-πώ-ποτε** *adv. never yet, never; οὐπω 367*  
**εἰ δὲ μή** 656 c, *but if not, otherwise, else*  
**\*τοί-νυν** *conj. adv. 673 b, accordingly, well then*

**3** Μὴ δια-βάλλετε τοὺς συμμάχους ἡμῶν· οὐ γὰρ πώποτε<sup>1</sup> οὐδὲν ἡδίκηκάσιν ἡμᾶς. **2** θυσάσθων τοῖς θεοῖς ἐπὶ νίκη πρὶν προσ-ελθεῖν εἰς τὴν πόλιν ἵνα σώσωσι τοὺς ἐν-οικούντας, καλὰ<sup>2</sup> δὲ αὐτοῖς τὰ ἱερὰ ἔστω.  
**3** μὴ ἀπο-κτείνης τὸν κήρῡκα· οἱ γὰρ θεοὶ τίμωρήσουσιν<sup>3</sup> αὐτῷ, οὕτως τίμωρούμενοί σε ὑπὲρ ἐκείνου.  
**4** ἐλθόντες πάλιν παρὰ βασιλεῆα εὔρετε ἐκεῖ ὃ τι ἂν

δύνησθε ἀγαθόν. 5 ἀλλ' εἰ βούλεσθε συν-απ-ιέναι, ἦκειν ἤδη κελεύει τῆς νυκτός, εἰ δὲ μή, αὐριον ἀπ-ιέναι φησίν. ὁ δὲ Κλέαρχος εἶπεν, ἀλλ' οὕτω χρή ποιεῖν· ἐὰν μὲν ἦκωμεν, ὥσπερ λέγετε· εἰ δὲ μή, πράττετε ὅποιον ἂν τι ὑμῖν<sup>4</sup> οἴησθε μάλιστα συμ-φέρειν. ὁ τι δὲ ποιήσοι οὐδὲ<sup>5</sup> τούτοις εἶπεν. 6 ἀπ-ιόντες<sup>6</sup> τοίνυν, ἔφη, συ-σκευάζεσθε καὶ ἐπειδὰν παρ-αγγειλῇ<sup>7</sup> τις, ἔπεσθε τῷ ἡγουμένῳ<sup>8</sup> καὶ μὴ κατα-ληφθῇτε ὑπὸ τούτων. 7 νῦν μὲν οὖν στρατοπεδευσώμεθα προ-ελθόντες<sup>9</sup> ὅσον ἂν δοκῇ καιρὸς εἶναι. ἕως δ' ἂν πορευώμεθα, Τιμασίῳ<sup>10</sup> ἔχων τοὺς ἱππέας προ-ελαυνέτω ἐφ-ορῶν ἡμᾶς καὶ σκοπεῖτω τὰ ἔμπροσθεν,<sup>10</sup> ὥς μηδὲν ἡμᾶς λάθῃ.<sup>11</sup> 8 εἰ δέ τις ἄλλο ὁρᾶ βέλτιον, λεξάτω. ἐπεὶ δ' οὐδεὶς ἀντ-έλεγεν, ἔδοξε ταῦτα. νῦν τοίνυν, ἔφη, ἀπ-ιόντας ποιεῖν δεῖ τὰ δεδογμένα.<sup>12</sup> καὶ ὅστις τε<sup>13</sup> ὑμῶν τοὺς οἴκοι ἐπι-θῦμει ἰδεῖν, μεμνήσθω ἀνὴρ ἀγαθὸς εἶναι· οὐ γὰρ ἔστιν ἄλλως τούτου<sup>14</sup> τυχεῖν· ὅστις τε<sup>13</sup> ζῆν ἐπιθῦμει, πειράσθω νικᾶν· τῶν μὲν γὰρ νικῶντων<sup>15</sup> τὸ ἀπο-κτείνειν, τῶν δὲ ἡττωμένων τὸ ἀπο-θνήσκειν ἐστίν· καὶ<sup>13</sup> εἴ τις δὲ χρημάτων<sup>16</sup> ἐπι-θῦμει, κρατεῖν πειράσθω· τῶν γὰρ νικῶντων ἐστὶ καὶ τὰ ἐαυτῶν σφύζειν καὶ τὰ τῶν ἡττωμένων λαμβάνειν. 9 σύγε οὐδὲ<sup>17</sup> ὁρῶν γινώσκεις οὐδὲ ἀκούων μέμνησαι. 10 εἶτα δὲ Κλέαρχος ἔλεξε τοιάδε· ὦ ἄνδρες στρατιῶται, μὴ θαυμάζετε ὅτι χαλεπῶς φέρω<sup>18</sup> τοῖς παρούσι πράγμασιν.<sup>19</sup>

- 364 Try to do well whatever you do. 2 Do not go before our friends come. 3 Let each man tell what he thinks is best. 4 Always remember to be brave men. 5 Let us remember<sup>20</sup> that to the victors<sup>21</sup> belong the spoils.<sup>21</sup>

γὰρ *πάνποτε* for *never yet*,  
cp. *οὐπάνποτε* and *οὐποτε*;  
cognate accusative, repeats  
enlengthens the negation 487  
ἀ *propitious*.

ᾠρήσουσιν: note the differ-  
ent meaning, and in the case  
neg the verb, between the  
end and the middle.

ἡ μάλιστα συμ-φέρειν *is most  
r own advantage*. ὅμην *is  
e*.

ἴ *not even*.

ἰόντες: translate by a verb  
end: *go back and pack up*.  
83.

δὲν παραγγεῖλη τις *when  
ler is given*. The Greek is  
al and active: *when one gives  
ler*; this is not natural in  
γ.

ἡγουμένῳ 520 a end.

-ελθόντες δευον ἂν δοκῇ και-  
αι *after advancing as far  
shall seem to be advanta-*

ἔμπροσθεν *what is ahead*.

<sup>11</sup> ὥς μηδὲν ἡμᾶς λάθῃ *that noth-  
ing may escape our notice*. ὥς: like  
Iva. λάθῃ: from λαθάνω, with ob-  
ject accusative ἡμᾶς.

<sup>12</sup> τὰ δεδογμένα: perf. mid. ptc.  
from δοκέω; cp. τὰ δόξαντα 307, 10.

<sup>13</sup> τε . . . τε . . . καὶ mark the  
correlation of the clauses. In the  
last clause δέ is the connective and  
καὶ is not *and*.

<sup>14</sup> τούτου 510 d end: τυγχάνω  
means here *obtain*.

<sup>15</sup> τῶν νικάντων 508 end.

<sup>16</sup> χρημάτων 511 e end.

<sup>17</sup> οὐδὲ . . . οὐδέ: not οὐτε . . .  
οὐτε. The former is *not even . . .  
nor yet, not only not . . . but not  
even*; the latter *neither . . . nor*.

<sup>18</sup> χαλεπῶς φέρω *take it hard,  
am greatly troubled*. Compare  
Latin *aegrē* or *molestē ferō*.

<sup>19</sup> πράγμασιν 526 a end.

<sup>20</sup> μεμνόμεθα: perf. subjv. mid.,  
not the compound form. Use a  
participle or εἶτι clause after it.

<sup>21</sup> Find the expression in the last  
clause in number 8.



Practising the broad jump.

## XLII Ω-VERBS

## VERBS ASSUMING σ. LIQUID AND MUTE PERFECTS

366 Review and learn 322 a, b, c and 338-345 entire with all cross references.

In studying these paradigms observe that we have already had the consonant changes before σ, μ, and θ: 37, 133 a, 145 a. The only new facts are:

a Σ between two consonants and before another σ is dropt 55 b, c.

$$\begin{array}{l} \text{b A } \left. \begin{array}{l} \pi \\ \beta \\ \phi \end{array} \right\} \text{ } \pi\text{-mute} \left. \begin{array}{l} \pi \\ \beta \\ \phi \end{array} \right\} + \tau\alpha\iota = -\pi\tau\alpha\iota, \text{ a } \left. \begin{array}{l} \kappa \\ \gamma \\ \chi \end{array} \right\} \text{ } \kappa\text{-mute} \left. \begin{array}{l} \kappa \\ \gamma \\ \chi \end{array} \right\} \\ + \tau\alpha\iota = -\kappa\tau\alpha\iota, \text{ a } \left. \begin{array}{l} \tau \\ \delta \\ \theta \end{array} \right\} \text{ } \tau\text{-mute} \left. \begin{array}{l} \tau \\ \delta \\ \theta \end{array} \right\} + \tau\alpha\iota = -\sigma\tau\alpha\iota. \end{array}$$

Consult 43 a, b.

We have already had π, β, φ and κ, γ, χ before θ changing to φ and χ respectively 145 a. So we have a smooth mute before a smooth mute and a rough mute before a rough mute: πτ, κτ and φθ, χθ.

c Remember that the perfect middle tense-stems from φαίνω *show*, βλάπτω *injure*, τάττω *arrange*, πείθω *persuade* are πεφαν-, βεβλαβ-, τεταγ-, πεπειθ-. Examine the forms in 366 f and note the consonant changes.

d Write synopses of the perfect middle on the forms in 322 b, 339, 341, 345, writing the *tense-stem* at the top. Use 366 g as a model.

e Learn the principal parts of δια-λέγομαι 185 and see 291 b.

## PERFECT MIDDLE FORMS.

f

INDICATIVE	πέφαν-μαι πέφαν-ται		πέφασ-μαι πέφαν-ται
	βέβλαβ-μαι βέβλαβ-ται		βέβλαμ-μαι βέβλαπ-ται
	τέταγ-μαι τέταγ-ται		τέταγ-μαι τέτακ-ται
	πέπειθ-μαι πέπειθ-ται		πέπεισ-μαι πέπεισ-ται
INFINITIVE	πεφάν-σθαι βεβλάβ-σθαι τετάγ-σθαι πεπειθ-σθαι	βεβλάβ-θαι τετάγ-θαι (πεπειθ-θαι)	πεφάν-θαι βεβλάφ-θαι τετάχ-θαι πεπεισ-θαι

## PERFECT MIDDLE SYNOPSSES

g

VERB . .	πέμπω	ἄρχω	πείθω
STEM . . MEANING	πεπεμπ- send	ἤρχ- begin	πεπειθ- persuade
IND.	πέπεμμαι ἐπεπέμμην	ἤργμαι ἤργμην	πέπεισμαι ἐπεπεισμην
SUBJV.	πεπεμμένος ᾧ	ἤργμένος ᾧ	πεπεισμένος ᾧ
OPT.	πεπεμμένος εἶην	ἤργμένος εἶην	πεπεισμένος εἶην
IMPV.	πέπεμψο	ἤρξο	πέπεισο
INF.	πεπέμφθαι	ἤρχθαι	πεπεισθαι
PTC.	πεπεμμένος	ἤργμένος	πεπεισμένος

## VOCABULARY AND EXERCISES

- 367 ἀπορίᾱ -ᾱς ἡ *want, difficulty, perplexity*; ἀ-πορος 72  
νόμος -ου ὁ *custom, law*; νομίζω 326. Latin *numerus*; ἀστρο-νομy, εὐο-νομy οἶκος 30  
τοξότης -ου ὁ *bowman, archer*; τόξον *bow* 402, τόξευμα 222.  
τοξολογy  
προτεράιος -ᾱ -ον *former*; τῇ προτεράῳ *on the day before*; πρό, πρότερος 183  
ἀπ-ελαύνω *drive away, ride away*  
δια-λέγομαι 185, D of person, A of thing, *talk with*; λέγω 30. dialect, dialogue  
δια-πράττω usually mid. *do thoroughly, effect, stipulate*  
ἐπι-τάττω *draw up next*; D put upon, *enjoin, command*  
ὀρμάω 185, *set going; hasten on*; frequently in mid. *set out, start*  
προσ-ελαύνω *drive towards; ride towards; march against*  
συν-εφ-έπομαι D *follow on with, accompany*  
βαρέως adv. *heavily*; βαρὺς *heavy*. bary-tone  
πλὴν adv. G *except*; conj. adv. *except that*  
πολλ-άκις adv. 232, *many times, frequently, often*; πολλός 344  
μή-πω, οὐ-πω adv. *not yet*; οὐδέποτε 362  
ταχύ adv. 230, 231, *speedily, soon*; ταχύς 344, ταχέως  
ἕστερον adv. *later, afterwards*; ὕστερος 183

- 368 Οὕτως οἱ πεζοὶ νῦν τεταγμένοι εἰσίν, ὥς ἔστιν<sup>1</sup> ὁ τῶν Ἑλλήνων νόμος εἰς<sup>2</sup> μάχην. 2 ταῦτα ἀκούσαντες οἱ ἄγγελοι ἀπ-ήλαννον καὶ ἤκον ταχύ· ᾧ<sup>3</sup> καὶ δῆλον ἦν ὅτι ἐγγύς που βασιλεὺς ἦν ἢ ἄλλος τις ᾧ ἐπετέτακτο<sup>4</sup> ταῦτα πράττειν. 3 πολλάκις ἤδη δι-ειλέγμεθα αὐτῷ περὶ τῆς σωτηρίᾱς τῆς πόλεως, ἀλλ' οὐπώποτε δέδοκται οὔτε ἡμῖν οὔτε τούτῳ πειρᾶσθαι κωλύειν τοὺς πολίτας μὴ<sup>5</sup> ἀθροίζεσθαι εἰς τὴν ἀγοράν. 4 ὁ δὲ στρατάρχης ἔχων τοὺς πεζοὺς οὐπω ἀφ-ῖκτο ἀλλ' ἔτι προσήλανεν, ἥνίκα ἡμεῖς ὠρμώμεθα ἐκ τοῦ στρατοπέδου λαβόντες τοὺς ἱππέας. 5 ἐπεὶ δὲ ἄλλοι στρατηγοὶ ῥηρητο<sup>6</sup> ἀντὶ τῶν τεθνηκότων ἀπ-ήλθον εἰς τὸν σταθ-

μόν ὄθεν ὤρμηντο, ἔνθα ἤδη δι-επέπρᾱκτο τὰ τῇ προ-  
 τεραϊᾷ δεδογμένα. 6 ἐπεὶ δὲ οἱ στρατηγοὶ συν-ειλημ-  
 μένοι<sup>7</sup> ἦσαν καὶ τῶν λοχᾶγῶν καὶ τῶν στρατιωτῶν οἱ  
 συν-επι-σπόμενοι<sup>8</sup> ἀπ-έθανον, ἐν πολλῇ δὲ<sup>9</sup> ἀπορίᾳ  
 ἦσαν οἱ Ἕλληνες· καὶ μόνοι δὲ καταλελειμμένοι<sup>7</sup>  
 ἦσαν οὐδὲ ἱππέᾱ οὐδένα σύμμαχον ἔχοντες, ὥστε  
 δῆλον ἦν ὅτι νικῶντες μὲν οὐδένα ἂν ἀπο-κτείνειαν,  
 ἡττηθέντων δὲ αὐτῶν οὐδεὶς ἂν λειφθεῖη. 7 ὁ σκοπός  
 φησι<sup>10</sup> τοὺς πεζοὺς ἤδη προσ-ῆχθαι ἐπὶ τοὺς τοξότας  
 καὶ ἀπ-εληλάσθαι,<sup>11</sup> ἀλλ' ὕστερόν φησι πάλιν πειράσε-  
 σθαι αὐτούς. 8 πάντες οἱ τοξόται πλην τῶν μεθ'  
 ἡμῶν ἐάλώκασιν.<sup>12</sup> 9 ἀκούσαντες τοῦ κήρυκος οὐ  
 καλὰ ὄντα τὰ ἱερὰ βαρέως ἔφερον<sup>13</sup> οἱ ἄρχοντες.

- '9 The archers have been drawn up in ranks before the camp.  
 2 We have been led into many battles by this commander.  
 3 He says<sup>14</sup> that the cavalry have been overtaken by the  
 enemy and captured. 4 He has been abandoned by those  
 very men who were formerly<sup>15</sup> his friends. 5 Why had  
 he not been sent for when<sup>16</sup> we arrived? <sup>17</sup>

0 <sup>1</sup> ἔστιν: for the accent see 20 a.

<sup>2</sup> eis for.

<sup>3</sup> ᾧ by this.

<sup>4</sup> ἐπ-ετέτακτο: the subject is  
 πράττειν.

<sup>5</sup> μὴ ἀθοροῖσθαι 572.

<sup>6</sup> ἦρηντο had been chosen: plu-  
 perf. pass. of αἰρέω.

<sup>7</sup> συν-ελημμένοι: compare the  
 passive perfect and aorist forms of  
 λείπω and λαμβάνω.

<sup>8</sup> συν-επι-σπόμενοι: aor. ptc. of  
 συν-εφ-έπομαι.

<sup>9</sup> δὲ emphasizes πολλῇ. Consult  
 671 c (1).

<sup>10</sup> φησι 382.

<sup>11</sup> ἀπ-εληλάσθαι: ἀπ-ελαύνω.  
 Study the Attic Reduplication in  
 291 c.

<sup>12</sup> ἐάλώκασιν have been captured:  
 ἀλίσκομαι.

<sup>13</sup> βαρέως ἔφερον took it to heart,  
 were troubled. Cp. Latin *graviter*  
*ferō*.

<sup>14</sup> Use φησι and infinitive.

<sup>15</sup> πρόσθεν.

<sup>16</sup> ἤνικα.

<sup>17</sup> Use the aorist indicative of  
 ἀφικνέομαι.



## XLIII VERBAL ADJECTIVES

371 **a** Review **φημι** 382 **a-e**, **εἰμι** 384 **a-d**, **εἶμι** 385 **a, b**, **οἶδα** 386 **a-d**.

**b** Verbals 352, 353 **a, b**, 354 ; 596 **a-c**, 524 **b**.

**c** Give the meaning of the following verbals : **αἰρετός**, **ἀπ-ιτέος**, **δια-βατός**, **ἀ-διά-βατος**, **δια-βατέος**, **διωκτέος**, **δυνατός**, **ἀ-δύνατος**, **πειστέος**, **ποιητέος**, **πορευτέος**.

372 **a** See **σίτος** 144, **εὐελπὺς** 146, **ὑπ-οπτεύω** 438 **a**, 268 **b**.

**b** **Ἐπί-σταμαι** though beginning with **ἐπί** is not augmented as a compound 268 **c**. Check it in the Verb-list and note that the inflection is like that of **δύναμαι** 365 **a**; 164-166, 276 **a**.

**c** See **ἐπί-σταμαι** and **φοβοῦμαι** in 185 and review all the verbs in that list that have been used.

## VOCABULARY AND EXERCISES

- 373 **ἑρμηνεύς** -εύς ὁ *interpreter*; **Ἑρμῆς** **εὐ-ελπὺς** -ι *of good hope, hopeful*;  
*Hermes. hermeneutlo* **ἐλπίς** 222  
**κωμ-άρχης** -ου ὁ *village ruler, ko-* **ἰν-οράω** *see therein*  
*march*; **κώμη** 79 + **ἄρχω** **ἐπί-σταμαι** 185, *know, understand*  
**μάντις** -εως ὁ *prophet, soothsayer*; **ὑπ-οπτεύω** **Α**, or inf. clause, or **μή**  
*μανθάνω* 253. *neuro-mancy* *clause, suspect, apprehend*; **ὑπ-**  
**σίτος** -ου ὁ *grain, wheat*; *provi-* **οπτος** *suspicious, ὑψομαι* 186 **a**  
*sions. para-site* \* **ἄρα** conj. adv. 673 **a**, *therefore,*  
**βασιλ-ικός** -ή -όν *belonging to a* *accordingly*  
*king*; **βασιλεύς** 326. *basilica*

374 Μηδεὶς ὑμῶν λεγέτω ὅτι ἐγὼ στρατηγὸς ἔσομαι· πολλὰ γὰρ ἐν-ορῶ δι' ἃ ἐμοὶ τοῦτο οὐ ποιητέον· τῷ δὲ ἀνδρὶ ὄν ἂν ἐλησθε πείσομαι<sup>1</sup> ἢ δυνητὸν μάλιστα,<sup>2</sup> ἵνα εἰδῆτε ὅτι καὶ ἄρχεσθαι ἐπί-σταμαι.<sup>3</sup> 2 οἱ δὲ αἰρετοὶ<sup>4</sup>

ἤροντο τὸν σατράπην τί<sup>5</sup>. βούλοιτο ἑαυτοῖς χρῆσθαι. ὁ δ' ἀπ-εκρίνατο ὅτι ἀκούοι Ἀβροκόμαϊν ἐχθρὸν ἄνδρα ἐπὶ τῷ Εὐφράτῃ ποταμῷ εἶναι, ἀπ-έχοντα δώδεκα σταθμούς· πρὸς τοῦτον οὖν ἔφη βούλεσθαι ἐλθεῖν. ἀκούσαντες δὲ ταῦτα ὑπ-ώπτευν μὲν ὅτι ἄγοι πρὸς βασιλεῆ, ὅμως δὲ ἐδόκει ἔπεσθαι. **3** ἐκ τούτου<sup>6</sup> Εὐκλείδῃ ἐδόκει διωκτέον τοὺς Πέρσας· καὶ ἐδίωκον τῶν ὀπλιτῶν οἱ ἔτυχον παρ-όντες· διώκοντες δὲ οὐδένα κατ-ελάμβανον. οὔτε γὰρ ἵππεῖς ἦσαν τοῖς Ἑλλήσιν οὔτε οἱ πεζοὶ τοὺς πεζοὺς ἐκ πολλοῦ<sup>7</sup> φεύγοντας ἐδύναντο κατα-λαμβάνειν. **4** πορευτέον δ' ἡμῖν τοὺς πρώτους σταθμούς<sup>8</sup> ὥς ἂν δυνώμεθα μακροτάτους ἵνα ὥς πλείστον<sup>9</sup> ἀπό-σχωμεν τοῦ βασιλικοῦ στρατεύματος. **5** ὅπόσοι στρατιῶται ἦσαν ἐν τῷ Ἑλληνικῷ στρατεύματι πάντες ᾔδεσαν ὅτι πειστέον εἶη Κλεάρχῳ. **6** ἡμῖν δὲ ταῦτα εἰδόσι πάντα ποιητέα<sup>10</sup> ὥς μήποτε ἐπὶ<sup>11</sup> τοῖς βαρβάροις γενώμεθα ἀλλὰ μᾶλλον ἐκείνοι ἐφ' ἡμῖν. **7** ποταμὸς δ' εἰ μὲν τις καὶ ἄλλος ἄρα<sup>12</sup> ἡμῖν ἐστι δια-βατέος οὐκ οἶδα· τὸν δ' οὖν Εὐφράτην<sup>13</sup> ἴσμεν ὅτι ἀ-δύνατον δια-βῆναι κωλυόντων<sup>14</sup> πολεμίων. **8** ἀπιτέον ἡμῖν καὶ πειστέον<sup>15</sup> τούτους τοὺς ἄνδρας συν-έπεσθαι ἡμῖν ἵνα φοβῶμεν τοὺς ἱππέας. **9** οἱ μάντις ἔφασαν τοῖς θεοῖς χάριν εἰδέναι πάντων τούτων ὥς ἀγαθῶν ὄντων. **10** ἐν τῇ κώμῃ ἠρωτήσαμεν τὸν κωμάρχη, δια-λεγόμενοι διὰ ἑρμηνέως, πότερον σίτος εἶη πολὺς ἐν ταῖς πόλεσι ταῖς ἐγγὺς τοῦ ποταμοῦ· ὁ δὲ οὐκ ἔφη εἰδέναι, ἴσως φοβούμενος. ἄλλος δ' οὐκ ἔφη οὐδὲν τῶν ἐπιτηδείων ἐν-εῖναι. τούτοις οὖν οἱ ἄρχοντες βαρέως μὲν ἔφερον· ἐδέοντο γὰρ οἱ στρατιῶται τῶν ἐπιτηδείων· εὐέλπιδες δ' ἔτι ἦσαν.

375 We must proceed by night, if we wish to get away without being seen by the enemy.<sup>16</sup> 2 You must cross the river before the others reply. 3 We must go away now, if we intend to reach the city before Eukleides. 4 What use<sup>17</sup> do you suppose he wishes to make of us? 5 He said that he did not know where you could get grain for your horses.

376 <sup>1</sup> πείσομαι: πείθω.

<sup>2</sup> ἢ δυνατόν (ἴσσι) μάλιστα to the best of my ability.

<sup>3</sup> ἐπί-σταμαι know how 588 c.

<sup>4</sup> αἰρετοί delegates.

<sup>5</sup> τί βούλοιντο ἑαυτοῖς χρῆσθαι what use he wished to make of them: τί: cognate accusative. See 536 b, ex. 3.

<sup>6</sup> ἐκ τούτου in consequence of this, thereupon.

<sup>7</sup> ἐκ πολλοῦ with a long start. Compare 347, 2.

<sup>8</sup> σταθμοῖς: cognate accusative: make our first marches as long as we possibly can.

<sup>9</sup> ὥς πλείστον: adverbial, as far as possible.

<sup>10</sup> ἡμῶν . . . εἰδότες . . . ποιητέα knowing this we must make every exertion.

<sup>11</sup> ἐπὶ in the power of.

<sup>12</sup> ἄρα as is likely.

<sup>13</sup> Εὐφράτην: ahead of its clause.

<sup>14</sup> κωλύόντων try to prevent: co-native 454 c.

<sup>15</sup> παστίον: with the accusative here cannot mean obey as in 5.

<sup>16</sup> Use λανθάνω and a participle: going away escape the notice of the enemy.

<sup>17</sup> Compare 374, 2 and note.

## XLIV MI-VERBS

### Δαίνυμι AND THE ROOT-AORIST OF Δύω

377 Paradigms 360, 367. Write the tense-stems δαίνυ:ϋ-, δυ:ϋ-.

a Study 243, 355, 356, 358 (1)–(5) very carefully, 359 b, 366, 368.

378 a Compare the principal parts of δαίνυμι with those of παύω and write the synopsis of each tense-system, using the tense-stem. The perfect middle is like ἡλλαγμαὶ 345: δεδεικ-, δέδειγμαί, δέδειξαι, δέδεικται.

**b** Review the present and the future system of *παύω* 252-254, writing the forms parallel with those of *δείκνυμι* and note the few differences in the present system. There are none in the other systems.

**c** Compare the inflection of *δείκνυμι* and *ἔδυν*.

**d** Review the declension of the participles *δεικνύς* and *δύς* 170.

**e** In the Verb-list check *ἐθέλω*, *-ὄλλυμι*, *ὀμνύμι*. Review *ἐλαβον* and *ἔβαλον* 350, 1, 4.

# VOCABULARY AND EXERCISES

- 9 *ἔργον -ου τό* *work, deed, result.* *en-ergy, organ, George* 320 *ἀπο-δείκνυμι* *point out; two A ap-point. apo-deictic*
- ὑπο-ζύγιον -ου τό* *under the yoke, beast of burden; pl. baggage animals, baggage train. Latin jugum* *ἐπι-δείκνυμι* *point to; D of person show, display. epi-deictic*
- ἀτιμάζω* *blame, accuse; αἰτίας* 50 *ἐθελω* *am willing, volunteer*
- ἀναγκάζω* *force, compel; ἀνάγκη* *ἐκ-βάλλω* *throw out, banish*
- 232 *ἐκ-πίπτω* *fall out or down; am banished, am exiled; used as passive of ἐκ-βάλλω*
- ἀντι-ποιέω* *do in return; mid. D of person, G of thing, contend for, vie with* *ἐξ-απατάω* *deceive completely*
- ἀπ-ὄλλυμι* *destroy utterly, lose; mid. perish, am lost. Latin ab-oleō* *ὀμνυμι* *swear; D swear to; A swear by*
- βοηθέω* *run to a cry; D help, come to the rescue of, rescue; βοηθός* *προσ-ὀμνύμι* *take an additional oath*
- 416 c, 437, 438 b. *ὕπο-λαμβάνω* *take under my protection; reply; interrupt*
- δείκνυμι* *point at, show. Latin doceō, dicō, deictic, para-digm* *ὀρθῶς* *adv. rightly, justly; ὀρθός* *straight, ὀρθος* 320
- ἡ μὴν* *adv. 871 a, in very truth, on word and honor*

10 Πολύνικος μὲν οὖν ποτε αἰτιάσάμενος τοὺς πόλεώς τινος πολίτας ἐπι-βουλεύειν αὐτῷ τοὺς μὲν ἀπ-έκτεινε τοὺς δὲ ἐξ-έβαλεν. ὁ δὲ σατράπης ὑπο-λαβὼν<sup>1</sup> τοὺς

φεύγοντας συλ-λέξας στρατεύμα ἐπολέμησε τῷ Πολυνίκῳ καὶ ἐπειράτο κατ-άγειν τοὺς ἐκ-πεπτωκότας.<sup>2</sup> 2 ἐπεὶ δὲ ὁ φίλος ἡμῶν ἀπ-εδείχθη ὑπὸ τοῦ πατρὸς σατράπης<sup>3</sup> Λυδίας καὶ Καππαδοκίας, καὶ ἔργῳ ἐπ-εδείκνυτο καὶ ἔλεγεν ὅτι οὐκ ἂν ποτε κατα-λίποι ἡμᾶς εὖ αὐτὸν ποιῶντας. πολλοὶ οὖν αὐτῷ ἦσαν ἐθέλοντες κινδυνεύειν αὐτῷ. 3 ἀπ-ώλλυντο δὲ πολλοὶ καὶ στρατιῶται καὶ ὑποζύγια, ἡνίκα ἡμεῖς ἐβοηθήσαμεν αὐτοῖς ἔχοντες σῖτα καὶ ἄλλα ἐπιτηδεια. 4 καὶ ὤμοσαν οἱ τε Ἕλληνες καὶ ὁ Ἀριαῖος καὶ τῶν μετ' αὐτοῦ<sup>4</sup> οἱ κράτιστοι μήτε<sup>5</sup> ἀδικήσιν ἀλλήλους σύμμαχοί τε ἔσσεσθαι. οἱ δὲ βάρβαροι προσ-ώμοσαν ἥ μὴν καὶ ἡγήσεσθαι καλῶς. 5 ὑπ-έσχετο ἡμῖν πρὸς αὐτοὺς πέμψειν τινὰ σηματοῦντα ὅ τι χρὴ ποιεῖν· ἀλλὰ τοῦτο<sup>6</sup> ἐξ-ηπατήθημεν. 6 ὁ δὲ λοχᾶγὸς κρίνας ἰτέον εἶναι ὥρματο· ἀλλὰ τοῦτο οὐκ ὀρθῶς ἔκρινεν· οὐδὲν γὰρ ἐδύνατο πράττειν. ὥστε οἱ πρεσβύτατοι τῶν στρατηγῶν ᾗτινόν αὐτὸν ὅτι ἐδίωκεν ἀπὸ τῆς φάλαγγος καὶ αὐτός τε<sup>7</sup> ἐκινδύνευε καὶ τοὺς πολεμίους οὐδὲν μᾶλλον ἐδύνατο κακὸν<sup>8</sup> ποιεῖν. ἀκούσας δὲ ὁ λοχᾶγὸς ἔλεγεν ὅτι ὀρθῶς αἰτιῶντο καὶ τὸ ἔργον οὕτως ἔχει· ἀλλ' ἐγὼ ἔφη, ἡναγκάσθην διώκειν, ἐπειδὴ ἐώρων ἡμᾶς ἐν τῷ μένειν κακῶς μὲν πάσχοντας, ἀντι-ποιεῖν δὲ οὐδὲν δυναμένους.

- 38/ You have destroyed the very men to whom you swore to be friends. 2 They swore that they would save them and thus deceived them. 3 He was appointing men to point out the road to us and conduct us to a friendly city. 4 They were being driven<sup>9</sup> out of the country in large numbers, on the charge<sup>10</sup> of being hostile to the rulers. 5 We

shall appoint him satrap<sup>11</sup> instead of his brother, as<sup>10</sup> he is more friendly to us.

2 <sup>1</sup> ὑπο-λαβὼν . . . συλ-λέξας . . . ἐπολέμησε *after taking under his protection . . . collected . . . and opened hostilities with.* The idea in ὑπο-λαβὼν is subordinate to that in συλ-λέξας and ἐπολέμησε.

<sup>2</sup> τοὺς ἐκ-πεπτωκότας *the exiles.*

<sup>3</sup> σατράπης 534 b.

<sup>4</sup> τῶν μετ' αὐτοῦ *his attendants, staff.*

<sup>5</sup> μήτε 579 a. The τε is correlative with the following τε: *both not . . . and.*

<sup>6</sup> τοῦτο: cognate accusative 536 c end.

<sup>7</sup> τε: correlative with the following καί.

<sup>8</sup> κακόν is cognate accusative with ποιεῖν, equivalent to κακῶς ποιεῖν, and τοὺς πολέμιους is the object of the whole expression. οὐδέν probably goes with κακόν, though the οὐ-part affects μᾶλλον.

<sup>9</sup> Use ἐκ-πίπτω.

<sup>10</sup> Use ὥς and a participle.

<sup>11</sup> Consult 534.

## XLV MI-VERBS

### Ἰστημι AND ITS COMPOUNDS. THE ROOT-AORIST OF Διδράσκω

3 Paradigms 362, 367. Ἔδρᾱν 369 a.

a Study 357, 361, 363 and a, 366, 368.

b Write the tense-stems ἰστα:η-, στα:η-, δρα:ᾱ-.

c In making the subjunctive and optative of these verbs and the other μι-verbs use the rules in 193 and 275. Read carefully 192 and the note. In ἔδρᾱν after ρ the α is retained as ᾱ and in the contraction of the subjunctive it is not absorbed as in other α-stems.

4 Notice the effect of the rough breathing in making the principal parts of compounds of ἰστημι. The augment is ἐ, the reduplication is ἐ:

ἴσθημι	ἀφ-ίστημι	καθ-ίστημι
στήσω	ἀπο-στήσω	κατα-στήσω
ἔστησα	ἀπ-έστησα	κατ-έστησα
ἔστην	ἀπ-έστην	κατ-έστην
ἔστηκα	ἀφ-έστηκα	καθ-έστηκα
ἑστά-θην	ἀπ-εστάθην	κατ-εστάθην

a Remember that the principal parts are made from the *verb-stem* and not from the present *tense-stem*.<sup>1</sup> Compare the principal parts of ἴσθημι with the principal parts of παύω 311 and write the synopsis of each tense-system, using the tense-stem.

385 a Compare the present system of ἴσθημι with the present system of δείκνυμι and 361 with 358.

b Review the σα-aorist system of παύω, writing it parallel with ἔστησα; and the ο:ε-aorist ἔλιπον 348, writing it parallel with ἔστην and ἔδραν, and compare the sets.

c Compare ἔστην throughout with the θη:ε- and η:ε-passives and note that the inflection is the same, the tense-stems being στα:η-, πανθη:ε-, φανη:ε- 368, 254, 336.

d Review the declension of the participles ἰστάς, στήσας, στάς, δράς 162 b.

e Εἰκός is the neuter participle of ἵκωκα *am like*, 370 (6), declined like the neuter of εἰδώς 172.

f In the Verb-list see καλέω and καθ-έζομαι 268 c. Review ἐγενόμην and ἤγαγον 350, 5, 10.

#### VOCABULARY AND EXERCISES

386 κεφαλή -ης ἡ head. Latin caput; τρόπαιον -ου τό trophy; τροπή a-cephalous a- negative turning, τρέπω 253. τροπε

<sup>1</sup> ἀπ-έστησα is not made from ἀφ-ίστημι. It is made from ἔστησα by prefixing ἀπό. ἀφ-έστηκα is made from ἔστηκα by prefixing ἀπό.

**ἀσμενος** -η -ον *with pleasure, gladly*. Cp. ἡδέως 344 and see 545, 546

**εἰκός** -ότος ptc. neut. *natural, reasonable*; ὡς εἰκός *as is natural, probable, naturally*

**τελευταῖος** -ᾱ -ον *last*; **τελευτή** *end*, τέλος 338

**ψῖλος** -ή -όν *bare, barren*

**καθ-ίζομαι** *sit down*; *encamp*; κατά + ἵζομαι. Latin *sedeō*; *cathedral*

**ίστημι** *make stand, set, stop, station*; intr. forms *stand*; mid. *set myself, stand*; *set for myself*. Latin *sistō*; *statics, hydrostatics* ὕδωρ 222

**ἀν-ίστημι** *make stand up, arouse*; intr. forms and mid. *stand up, arise*; ἀνά 178. *anastatio*

**ἀφ-ίστημι**, G of person, *set off from, cause to revolt*; intr. forms and mid. *revolt, withdraw from*; ἀπό 178. *apostasy*

**καθ-ίστημι** *set down, settle, station, establish, appoint*; intr. forms *am stationed, take my place, become established*; mid. *take my place, get myself into (eis)*; *establish for myself, appoint*; κατά 178

**προ-ίστημι** *set at the head of*; intr. forms G *am at the head of, command*; πρό 178

**μέχρι** *adv. up to, as far as, even to*; equivalent to Latin *usque*; G *as far as, until*; conj. *adv. 631, so long as, until*; equivalent to Latin *dum, quoad*

**πάντη** *adv. in every way, on all sides*

97 Ἐπειδὴ δὲ πάντας παρ-ήλασε,<sup>1</sup> στήσας τὸ ἄρμα πρὸ τῆς φάλαγγος μέσης,<sup>2</sup> ἐκέλευσε τοὺς Ἕλληνας προ-ιέναι. 2 ὥς δὲ ἀν-έβησαν, θύσαντες καὶ τρόπαιον στήσά-μενοι κατ-έβησαν εἰς τὸ πεδίον. ἐνταῦθα δ' ἔστη-σαν<sup>3</sup> οἱ Ἕλληνες. 3 αὐτίκα ἐπείθοντο ὅπου ἔτυχεν ἕκαστος ἐστηκώς. 4 οἱ μὲν ἵππεῖς εἰς χιλίους παρὰ Κλέαρχον ἔστη-σαν<sup>4</sup> ἐν τῷ δεξιῷ, ὁ δὲ σατράπης ψιλὴν<sup>5</sup> ἔχων τὴν κεφαλὴν εἰς τὴν μάχην καθ-ίστατο κατὰ τὸ μέσον. 5 καὶ οἱ μετὰ Ἀριαίου οὐκέτι ἴστανται ἀλλὰ φεύγουσι διὰ τοῦ αὐτῶν στρατοπέδου εἰς τὸν σταθμὸν ἔνθεν ὥρμητο. 6 οἱ δὲ πάντες μὲν οὐκ ἦλθον, Ἀριαῖος δὲ καὶ Ἀρτάοζος καὶ Μιθριδάτης.



ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἔστησαν<sup>6</sup> εἰς τὸ πρόσθεν εἶπεν Ἀριαῖος  
 τάδε. 7 κατέστησε<sup>7</sup> τὴν φάλαγγα πάλιν ὥσπερ τὸ  
 πρῶτον εἰς τὴν μάχην. 8 ἐπεὶ δὲ κατέστησε τὸ στρά-  
 τευμα, ὥστε καλῶς ἔχειν ὁρᾶσθαι<sup>8</sup> πάντη φάλαγγα,  
 ἐκάλεσε τοὺς ἀγγέλους. 9 ὑπέσχετο<sup>9</sup> πλήρη τὸν  
 μισθὸν μέχρι ἂν καταστήσῃ τοὺς Ἑλλήνας εἰς Ἰωνίαν  
 πάλιν. 10 ἠθέλομεν Ἀριαῖον βασιλεῖα καθ-ιστάναι.<sup>10</sup>  
 ἄρχοντας κατέστησα-ν ὀκτώ. 11 ἐπεὶ οὗτος ὁ σα-  
 τράπης κατέστη εἰς τὴν ἀρχήν, κατέστησε στρατη-  
 γοὺς τρεῖς. 12 ἐπεὶ κατέστησα-ν τὴν ἀρχήν ὡς  
 ἐδόκει ἑαυτοῖς οἱ τριάκοντα, οἱ πολῖται ἀπέστησαν  
 καὶ κατεστήσαντο πάλιν τὴν ἑαυτῶν ἀρχήν. 13 οἱ  
 Ἰῶνες ἀποεστήσαντο<sup>11</sup> ἀπὸ βασιλέως. 14 οἱ μὲν ἀπο-  
 στάντες<sup>12</sup> ἐνίκηθησαν ὑπὸ βασιλέως, νεανίας δέ, ἄρχων  
 κατασταθείς, ἀπέστησεν<sup>11</sup> αὐτοὺς πάλιν. 15 ἀπέστη  
 τούτων<sup>13</sup> εἰς τὴν πόλιν οὗ προειστήκει τῶν ξένων τῇ  
 σατράπῃ. 16 εἶδον τὴν ὁδὸν πρὸς τὸ χωρίον τοῦτο  
 διὰ λόφων ὑψηλῶν γιγνομένην,<sup>14</sup> οἱ καθ-ῆκον ἀπὸ τοῦ  
 ὄρους εἰς τὸ πεδῖον. καὶ εἶδον δὴ τοὺς λόφους ἄσμενοι  
 οἱ Ἕλληνες, ὡς εἰκός, τῶν πολεμίων ὄντων ἱππέων.  
 17 ἐπειρώμεθα ἀν-ιστάναι αὐτούς· οἱ δὲ οὐκ ἔφασαν  
 ἰέναι. 18 ὁ μὲν ταῦτ' εἰπὼν ἐκαθέζετο. Θηραμένης  
 δὲ ἀνα-σταῖς ἔλεξεν· ἀλλὰ πρῶτον μὲν μνησθήσομαι,<sup>15</sup>  
 ὦ ἄνδρες, ὃ τελευταῖον κατ' ἐμοῦ εἶπεν. φησὶ γάρ<sup>16</sup> με  
 τοὺς στρατηγοὺς ἀπο-κτεῖναι κτλ.<sup>17</sup>

- 388 He set<sup>18</sup> the tent beside the road. Where did you stand?  
 Where was he standing? 2 They established a govern-  
 ment of the few. 3 He could not make them get up.  
 4 The revolutionists were many. The by<sup>19</sup>-standers were  
 few. 5 They revolted and got themselves into a war.

39 <sup>1</sup> παρ-ήλασε *had driven by all.*

<sup>2</sup> μέσης *center of: in predicate position 556.*

<sup>3</sup> ἔστησαν *stood, halted, root-aorist.* Carefully note ἔστησαν σα-aorist, transitive and ἔστησαν root-aorist, intransitive. Use 363 and a constantly till the distinctions are fixed.

<sup>4</sup> ἔστησαν: the accusative with παρά shows that the verb means *went and took a position near.*

<sup>5</sup> ψῆλῃν 552 d, ex. 3.

<sup>6</sup> ἔστησαν eis: compare note 4.

<sup>7</sup> κατέστησε: the σα-aorist, transitive.

<sup>8</sup> καλῶς ἔχεν ὁρᾶσθαι *was good to be seen, presented a fine appearance 565 and a.*

<sup>9</sup> ἐπ-ίσχετο: ἐπ-ισχνέομαι.

<sup>10</sup> καθ-ιστάναι: with two accusatives 534.

<sup>11</sup> ἀπ-εστήσαντο *got them to revolt from.* ἀπ-έστησεν αὐτοὺς πάλιν *got them to revolt again.* The σα-aorist is transitive in both active and middle and there is practically very little difference in meaning.

<sup>12</sup> οἱ ἀπο-στάντες *the rebels.*

<sup>13</sup> τούτων: a *from* genitive.

<sup>14</sup> τὴν ὁδὸν . . . γιγνομένην *that the road was.*

<sup>15</sup> μνησθήσομαι *I will mention.* See μέμνημαι 185

<sup>16</sup> γάρ 672 b.

<sup>17</sup> κτλ or κ. τ. λ.: καὶ τὰ λοιπὰ *et cetera.*

<sup>18</sup> Consult 363 constantly throughout this exercise.

<sup>19</sup> Use παρά.

## XLVI MI-VERBS

### Δίδωμι

#### Ο Principal parts 375. Paradigms 372.

a Study 371, 376, 378, 379, learning the parts that apply to δίδωμι. Use 193 and 275 c, d, e for the subjunctive and optative.

b In studying the paradigms compare the present system, *tense-stem* δίδω-ω-, with the present system of ἵστημι 362 and the present system of παύω 252-254.

c Compare the root-aorist system, *tense-stem* δο-, with ἔγνων 367 and ἔλιπον 348. Observe that these three μι-verbs, δίδωμι, ἵημι, and τίθημι, have a middle form in the root-aorist.

d In the Verb-list check ἀλλάττω 341, and καίω for κάω 259 e. Review ἐφυγον and ἔπαθον 350, 2, 3.

## VOCABULARY AND EXERCISES

- 39/ νεκρός -ου ὁ dead body, corpse. don, surrender; πρό 178. Latin  
Latin *necō*; *neurology*, *neuro-mancy* *prōdō*  
373 κατ-αλλάττω change; mid. and  
προδότης -ου ὁ traitor; προ-δίδωμι pass. become reconciled; κατέ  
τρόπος -ου ὁ turn, manner, char- 178  
acter; τρέπω 253, τρόπων 386. κάω burn, consume; καυ-. caustic,  
trope, tropic cauterize  
ἀνα-γινώσκω know again, recog- προ-κατα-κάω burn down in ad-  
nize; read; ἀνά 178 vance, lay waste a country with  
δίδωμι give, allow, grant; δῶρον fire before one  
30. Latin *dō*; dose, an-*eo-dote*,  
anti-dote προσ-ήκω have come to, reach; D  
ἀπο-δίδωμι give back, restore, pay; belong to, am related to; impers.  
mid. sell; ἀπό 178 it belongs to, it is proper; πρός  
δια-δίδωμι give separately, distrib- 178, ἦκω 148  
ute; διὰ 178 συν-ομολογέω agree upon with, as-  
παρα-δίδωμι give over to, surren- sent to; ὁμολογέω 350, σύν 178  
der; παρά 178 αὖθις adv. again, once more; αὖ  
προ-δίδωμι give forth, betray, aban- 253  
δὶς adv. 232, twice

- 392 Ταῦτα τὰ δῶρα τοῖς φίλοις ἄσμενος δι-εδίδου πρὸς τοὺς τρόπους ἐκάστου σκοπῶν καὶ οὗτου μάλιστα ὁρώη<sup>1</sup> ἕκαστον δεόμενον. 2 ταύτην τὴν ἐπιστολὴν δίδωσι πιστῷ ἀνδρὶ ὡς ᾤετο· ὁ δὲ λαβὼν τῷ σατράπῃ δίδωσιν. 3 ταῦτα ἔδοξε, καὶ ὤμοσαν καὶ δεξιὰς ἔδωσαν Πολύνικος καὶ ὁ τῆς βασιλείας γυναικὸς ἀδελφὸς τοῖς Ἑλλήσι καὶ ἔλαβον παρὰ τῶν Ἑλλήνων. 4 ἐὰν δῶμεν ἀργύριον, ἴσως τινὲς φανοῦνται, ὡς καὶ εἰκός, ἱκανοὶ ἡμᾶς ὠφελεῖν. 5 τί οἶε πείσεσθαι,<sup>2</sup> ἐὰν προ-δῶς σεαυτὸν τοῖς πολεμίοις; 6 ὤμοσαν μηδέποτε προ-δώσειν ἡμᾶς τοῖς ἐχθροῖς ἡμῶν. 7 ἀνάγκη δὴ μοί ἐστιν ἢ ὑμᾶς προ-δοῦναι ἢ πρὸς ἐκείνον ψεύσασθαι.

8 ἄρα οὐκ ἐπί-στασθε<sup>3</sup> τοῦτον ὑμᾶς προ-δόντα; 9 νῦν δὲ προ-δεδώκασιν ἡμᾶς καὶ<sup>4</sup> οἱ μετὰ τοῦ σατράπου ἀνα-βάντες βάρβαροι. 10 καὶ Νίκαρχος δι-ελέγετο αὐτοῖς δι' ἐρμηνέως περὶ σπονδῶν καὶ τοὺς νεκροὺς ἀπ-ήτει. οἱ δὲ ἔφασαν ἀπο-δώσειν ἐφ' ᾧ<sup>5</sup> μὴ κᾶειν τὰς οἰκίᾳς. συν-ωμολόγει ταῦτα Νίκαρχος. 11 οὐκ ἦν πρὸς<sup>6</sup> τοῦ Νικάνδρου τρόπου ἔχοντα τὰ χρήματα μὴ ἀπο-διδόναι. 12 λέγουσί τινες ὅτι οὐδ' <sup>7</sup> εἰ βούλοιο δύναιο ἂν ἀπο-δοῦναι ὅσα ὑπ-ισχνεῖ. 13 τὸν ἡγεμόνα παρα-διδόασιν αὐτοῖς καὶ οὗτος κελεύει αὐτοὺς κατα-λαμβάνειν τὰ ἄκρα. 14 Πολύνικος δὲ αὐτὸς<sup>8</sup> ὁμόσᾳς ἡμῖν, αὐτὸς δεξιᾶς δούς, αὐτὸς ἐξ-απατήσᾳς συν-έλαβε τοὺς στρατηγοὺς ἡμῶν καὶ οὕτως ἐξ-απατήσᾳς τοὺς ἄνδρας ἀπο-λώλεκεν. 15 Ἀριαῖος δὲ ὃν ἡμεῖς ἡθέ-λομεν βασιλεῶ καθ-ιστάναι, καὶ<sup>9</sup> ἔδομεν καὶ ἐλάβομεν πιστὰ<sup>10</sup> μὴ προ-δώσειν ἀλλήλους, καὶ οὗτος,<sup>11</sup> οὐδὲ τοὺς θεοὺς οὐδὲν<sup>12</sup> δεῖσᾳς, νῦν πρὸς τοὺς ἐχθίστους ἡμῶν ἀπο-στὰς ἡμᾶς κακῶς ποιεῖν πειρᾶται. 16 ἀλλὰ τούτους μὲν οἱ θεοὶ τιμωρήσαιντο.<sup>13</sup> ἡμᾶς<sup>14</sup> δὲ δεῖ ταῦτα ὁρῶντας μήποτε ἐξ-απατηθῆναι ἔτι ὑπὸ τούτων, ἀλλὰ μαχομένους ὥς ἂν δυνώμεθα κράτιστα τοῦτο<sup>15</sup> ὅ τι ἂν δοκῇ τοῖς θεοῖς πάσχειν.

#### ΠΡΟΔΟΤΗΣ

33 Ὁρόντᾳς μὲν δὴ Πέρσης ἀνὴρ ἦν γένει<sup>16</sup> τε βασιλεῖ προσ-ήκων καὶ τῶν<sup>17</sup> περὶ τὸν Λυδίας σατράπην καὶ<sup>18</sup> πρόσθεν μὲν ἤδη δις τῷ σατράπῃ πολεμήσας αἰθῖς δὲ κατ-αλλαγείς. ἐδεήθη δὲ τοῦ σατράπου χιλίους ἱππέας ὑπο-σχόμενος τούτοις<sup>19</sup> ἢ ἀπο-κτενεῖν ἢ ζῶντας λήψε-σθαι τοὺς τῶν πολεμίων στρατιώτᾳς οἱ τῷ στρατεύ-

ματι προ-κατ-έκαον. ὁ μὲν οὖν σατράπης ἐκέλευσεν αὐτὸν λαμβάνειν μέρος παρ' ἐκάστου τῶν ἡγεμόνων, ἐκεῖνος δὲ ἔπειτα ἔγραψεν ἐπιστολήν παρὰ βασιλεῆα ὅτι ἄξιοι παρ' αὐτὸν μεγάλην δύναμιν ἱππέων, εἰ βασιλεὺς κελεύσοι<sup>20</sup> τοὺς ἐαυτοῦ ἱππεῖς μὴ μαχέσασθαι αὐτῷ ἡκοντι. ταύτην δὲ τὴν ἐπιστολήν ἔδωκε τις τῷ σατράπῃ, ὁ δὲ αὐτίκα<sup>21</sup> ἀνα-γνοὺς αὐτὴν συν-έλαβε τὸν προδότην.

- 394 Let us immediately arrest the traitor and hand him over to the authorities<sup>22</sup> for execution.<sup>22</sup> 2 If we surrender our arms we shall have no hope of safety. 3 He can pay now all that he promised then. 4 He exchanged pledges with the Greeks that they would not betray their friends. 5 They made an agreement to give up the dead under<sup>23</sup> a truce.

- 395 <sup>1</sup> ὁράη: pres. opt. act. of ὁράω.

<sup>2</sup> πείσσειν: πάσχω.

<sup>3</sup> ἐπι-στασθε: ἐπι-σταμαι.

<sup>4</sup> καὶ also.

<sup>5</sup> ἐφ' ᾧ 587

<sup>6</sup> πρὸς according to.

<sup>7</sup> οὐδέ not even.

<sup>8</sup> αὐτός . . . αὐτός . . . αὐτός: this triple αὐτός with the omission of conjunctions is exceedingly emphatic. We may say *the very man who . . . the very man who . . . this very man deceived and arrested*.

<sup>9</sup> καὶ 615 a: the relative construction abandoned. Instead of saying *to whom . . . and from whom*, we may unite and say *with whom we exchanged pledges*.

<sup>10</sup> πιστά: neut. acc. from πιστός, here equivalent to δεξιὰς.

<sup>11</sup> καὶ οὗτος *this man too*.

<sup>12</sup> οὐδέ . . . οὐδέν not even in any way.

<sup>13</sup> τιμωρήσονται 476.

<sup>14</sup> ἡμᾶς δὲ δεῖ . . . πάσχειν *while for ourselves we must never again . . . but must endure*.

<sup>15</sup> τοῦτο δτι . . . θεοῖς *whatever the gods decree*.

<sup>16</sup> γένει . . . προσ-ἦκων *a relative of the king*. γένει 527 b.

<sup>17</sup> τῶν περὶ τὸν σατράπην *one of the satrap's attendants*.

<sup>18</sup> τε . . . καὶ . . . καὶ connect the three groups προσ-ἦκων, τῶν περὶ, and πολεμήσας and κατ-αλλαγείς. The latter pair are connected by μὲν . . . δέ. We may translate *a relative of the king, one of the satrap's staff, who had . . . fought against . . . but had come to terms*.

<sup>19</sup> τοῦτοις *with these*.  
<sup>20</sup> εἰ κελεύσει represents an original εἰ κελεύσεις 648 b.

<sup>21</sup> αὐτίκα 592.  
<sup>22</sup> Use participle and infinitive.  
<sup>23</sup> κατὰ and accusative.

## XLVII MI-VERBS

## Τίθημι AND Κεῖμαι

96 Principal parts 375. Paradigms 373, 387 a, b, c.

a Study 371, 376–379, learning the parts that apply to τίθημι. Use 193 and 275 c, d, e for the subjunctive and optative.

b In studying the paradigms compare the present of τίθημι with the present of παύω and of δίδωμι. Compare the active present and aorist forms with the θη:ε- passive, and the present and aorist systems with each other, writing the three in parallel columns with the tense-stems at the top, τιθε:η-, θε-, παυθη:ε-. Remember that the root-aorists of three verbs, δίδωμι, ἵημι, and τίθημι, do not lengthen the stem-vowel.

c Review the κα- and α-perfects 252, 336. δέδωκα, τέθηκα, and εἶκα are the same. Write the synopsis of all the tense-systems, using tense-stems.

d In the Verb-list see μέλω for ἐπι-μέλωμαι 185 and διδράσκω for ἀπο-διδράσκω. Review εἶδον and εἶπον 350, 7, 8.

## VOCABULARY AND EXERCISES

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <p>7 γνώμη -ης ἡ <i>opinion, judgment</i>;<br/>         γινώσκω 199. <i>gnome</i><br/>         δίκη -ης ἡ <i>custom, justice</i>; δίκαιος<br/>         72, ἀδικέω 362. Latin <i>jūdex</i><br/> <i>judge</i><br/>         δρόμος -ου ὁ <i>a running, run; race</i><br/> <i>course. dromedary, hippo-drome</i> 2/</p> | <p>τόπος -ου ὁ <i>place, region. topos,</i><br/> <i>topo-graphy, U-topia</i><br/>         ἀπο-διδράσκω <i>run away, with-</i><br/> <i>draw</i>; cp. ἔδραμον fr. τρέχω 355<br/>         and δρόμος<br/>         ἀπο-θύω <i>pay a vow by sacrifice</i><br/> <i>sacrifice</i>; ἀπό 178 + θύω 367</p> |
|---|---|

ἐπι-μελομαι 185, G take care of; ἐπιμελῶς 156	ἐπι-τίθῃμι D put on, as in δίκην ἐπι-τιθέναι inflict punishment; mid. fall upon, attack
κατα-πίπτω fall down, fall off κείμεαι am laid, lie, am stationed; used also as pass. of τίθῃμι	κατα-τίθῃμι put down; mid. lay away, lay up, deposit
παρα-σκευάζω get ready, prepare; mid. make preparations, pro- cure, provide; ἀ-παράσκευος 355, σκευο-φόρος 304, συ-σκευάζω 362	προς-τίθῃμι D add to; mid. join in, agree with, agree to
τίθῃμι put, place; get ready; mid. arrange. thesis, hypo-thesis, theme	συν-τίθῃμι place together; mid. D make an agreement with, con- tract; σύνθημα 298. <i>synthesis</i>
δια-τίθῃμι set in order, dispose, treat	εὐνοικῶς ἔχω am well disposed; equivalent to εὖνους εἰμί.

- 398 Μετὰ δὲ τοῦτο ἃ θῦσαι εὗξαντο<sup>1</sup> παρ-εσκευάζοντο. ἐποίησαν δὲ καὶ ἀγῶνα ἐν τῷ ὄρει ἔνθα κατ-έστη-σαν καὶ εἶλοντο μὲν Δρακόντιον Σπαρτιάτην, ὃς ἔφυγε παῖς ὢν οἰκοθεν παῖδα ἄκων<sup>2</sup> ἀπο-κτείνᾱς, δρόμου τ' ἐπι-μεληθῆναι καὶ τὸν ἀγῶνα τιθέναι. ἔπειτα δὲ καὶ ἀπ-έθυσαν ἃ εὗξαντο. μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα τοὺς ἵππους παρ-έδοσαν τῷ Δρακοντίῳ καὶ ἡγείσθαι ἐκέλευον ὅπου τὸν δρόμον πεποικῶς εἶη. ὁ δὲ δείξᾱς οὐπερ ἑστηκότες ἐτύγχανον, οὗτος ὁ λόφος, ἔφη, κάλλιστος τρέχειν ὅπου ἂν τις βούληται. πῶς οὖν, ἔφασαν, δυνήσονται τρέχειν οἱ ἵπποι ἐν τόπῳ δασεῖ οὕτως; ὁ δ' εἶπε, κάκίον τι πείσεται<sup>3</sup> ὁ κατα-πεσών. 2 μάλιστα δὲ τράπεζαι κατὰ τινας τῶν ξένων ἀεὶ ἐτίθεντο, καὶ καθ' οὓς αἱ τράπεζαι ἔκειντο οὗτοι ἐν μεγάλῃ τιμῇ ἐδόκουν εἶναι. 3 ὁ δὲ ἀπ-εκρίνατο, ἀλλ' εὖ γε λέγετε καὶ ποιήσω ταῦτα· εἰ δὲ τούτων ἐπι-θυμεῖτε, θέσθε<sup>4</sup> τὰ ὅπλα ἐν τάξει ὡς τάχιστα· καὶ αὐτὸς παρ-ήγγειλε τίθεσθαι τὰ ὅπλα. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἔκειτο τὰ ὅπλα, συγ-καλεῖ ὁ ἄρχων τὴν στρα-τιὰν καὶ λέγει τάδε. 4 ὁ δὲ Σιλᾶνός ἐλεγε ὡς δίκαιον

εἷη ἀπ-ιέναι τὸν βουλόμενον. οἱ δὲ στρατιῶται οὐκ ἦν-είχοντο<sup>5</sup> ἀλλ' εἶπον αὐτῷ ὅτι εἰ λήψονται ἀπο-διδράσκοντα, τὴν δίκην<sup>6</sup> ἐπι-θήσοιεν. 5 ἐκ τούτου ἐθύοντο οἱ στρατηγοί, μάντις δὲ παρ-ἦν Ἀρηξίων Ἀρκάς· ὁ δὲ Σιλᾶνός ὁ Ἀμβρακιώτης ἤδη ἀπ-εδεδράκει πλοῖον λαβὼν ἐξ Ἡρακλείας. 6 ταῦτα μὲν τῆς ἡμέρας ἐγένετο· εἰς δὲ τὴν ἐπ-ιοῦσαν νύκτα ἰσχυρῶς ἐπ-ετίθεντο αὐτοῖς ἐλθόντες ἐκ τοῦ ὄρους οἱ Θυνοί. 7 τοῦτο τὸ ἀργύριον ἐγὼ λαβὼν οὐ κατ-εθέμην ἐμοὶ ἀλλ' εἰς ὑμᾶς ἔδαπάνων. 8 ταύτη δὲ τῇ γνώμῃ ἔφη καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους προσ-θέσθαι. 9 ὅστις δ' ἀφ-ικνοῖτο τῶν παρὰ βασιλέως<sup>7</sup> πρὸς αὐτὸν πάντας οὕτω δια-τιθεῖς ἀπ-επέμπετο ὥστε<sup>8</sup> αὐτῷ μᾶλλον φίλους εἶναι ἢ βασιλεῖ. καὶ τῶν παρ' ἑαυτῷ<sup>9</sup> δὲ βαρβάρων<sup>10</sup> ἐπ-εμέλετο ὅπως πολέμειν τε ἱκανοὶ ἔσονται καὶ εὐνοϊκῶς ἔξουσιν αὐτῷ.<sup>11</sup> 10 συν-τίθενται τοῖς νεανίαις τὴν μὲν νύκτα, ἔὰν λάβωσι τὸ ἄκρον, τὸ χωρίον φυλάττειν, ἅμα δὲ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ τῇ σάλπιγγι σημαίνειν.

- 9 He ordered them to ground arms where they were standing. 2 If we attack them by night, they cannot run away. 3 He is making his preparations carefully, that he may catch you unprepared. 4 They were laying aside many things for themselves. 5 When they saw us approaching, they ran away up the mountain.

Ο 1 α θύσαι εἴξαντο the offerings they had pledged themselves to make.

2 ἀκων unintentionally.

3 κάκτιόν τι πέσεται the one that falls will be hurt somewhat more: translate all the worse for the one that falls.

4 τίθεσθαι τὰ ὅπλα is to order arms, or ground arms, halt under arms. The passive is κείσθαι τὰ ὅπλα. See the general vocabulary.

5 οὐκ ἦν-είχοντο would not put up with it. ἀν-έχουαι restrain myself, endure. For the double augment see 268 d.



<sup>6</sup> τὴν δίκην: note the article:  
*the proper punishment.*

<sup>7</sup> τῶν παρὰ βασιλέως of the attendants at the court of the king. Here again we have the genitive of the point of departure where the English would lead us to expect παρὰ βασιλεῖ.

<sup>8</sup> ὥστε . . . εἶναι 506 b.

<sup>9</sup> παρ' ἑαυτοῦ at his own court.

Note the position of δέ.

<sup>10</sup> τῶν . . . βαρβάρων ὅπως ἔσονται: by anticipation for ὅπως αἱ . . . βάρβαροι ἔσονται 638 a. For the genitive see 511 c.

<sup>11</sup> αὐτῷ: compare 271.

## XLVIII MI - VERBS

### ἴημι

#### 40/ Principal parts 375. Paradigms 374.

a Review and complete 375-379. In studying ἴημι compare throughout with τίθημι. Be careful not to confuse the aorist active forms with the forms of εἶμι *am* 384. Notice that ἴημι has the rough breathing throughout, ἴη-, ἴησο:-, ἴ-, εἰκα-, εἴ-, ἐθη:-.

b Write synopses of the different tense systems, using tense-stems, and compare with the corresponding tenses of any verb.

c Locate the following forms :

ἴσ- <i>am away</i>	ἵ- <i>send away</i>	ἔ- <i>go away</i>
ἀπ-εἶναι	ἀφ-εἶναι	ἀπ-ιέναι
ἀπ-ών	ἀφ-είς	ἀπ-ιών
ἀπ-ῶσι	ἀφ-ῶσι	ἀπ-ίωσι
ἀπ-εἶη	ἀφ-εἶη	ἀπ-ίοι
ἀπ-ῆσαν	ἀφ-εἶσαν	ἀπ-ῆσαν
	ἀφ-έσαν	

d See στερέω, στέρομαι in the Verb-list. Review ἔρχομαι and εἶλον 350, 6, 9.

## VOCABULARY AND EXERCISES

- 12 **δεσπότης** -ου ὁ master, lord; 72 d. *myself up, entrust, surrender;*  
 despot *πρό* 178  
**θεράπων** -οντος ὁ servant, attend- *ὑφ-ίημι* put under, concede, admit;  
 ant; **θεραπεύω** attend to. *thera-* mid. D *yield, surrender; allow;*  
 peutis *ὑπό* 178  
**νάπη** -ης ἡ glen, ravine *πρό-κειμαι* am laid before; am pre-  
**τόξον** -ου τό bow; **τόξευμα** 222, *scribed; used as pass. of προ-*  
**τοξότης** 367 *τίθημι*  
**ἀπο-στέλλω** send off, send away, *προσ-τάττω* assign to a duty, give  
 despatch; send back; **στέλλω** an order to; cp. **ἐπι-τάττω** 367  
 173. apostle *στερέω*, G of thing and A of per-  
**δια-πέμπω** send in different direc- son, rob, deprive of  
 tions; **διά** 178 *στέρομαι* G am deprived of, am  
**ἐξ-αγγέλλω** bring word out, report, without  
 make known; **ἐξ** 178 *ἄνω* adv. G above, up  
**ἔημι** send, throw; mid. rush, *ἐκάστο-τε* adv. each time, every  
 charge time; **ἐκαστος** 355; cp. -τε in  
**ἀφ-ίημι** send away, let go; let es- *ῖ-τε, τό-τε, πό-τε, ἄλλο-τε*  
 cape; **ἀπό** 178 *πρὸς δ' ἔτι καὶ* and besides too  
**προ-ίημι** send forth; mid. D give *τρίς* adv. 232, thrice, three times

13 **Λίθοις ἔσαν τοῦ στρατηγοῦ**<sup>1</sup> **ἐπεὶ** πειρῶτο προ-ίεναι.  
 2 οἱ δὲ πολέμοι δέισαντες εἶσαν ἑαυτοὺς κατὰ τῆς  
 χιόνος εἰς τὴν νάπην. 3 εὐθὺς ἔεντο ἄνω κατὰ<sup>2</sup> τὴν  
 φανεράν ὁδόν. 4 καὶ ἐπεὶ ἤρξαντο κατα-βαίνειν ἀπὸ  
 τοῦ λόφου πρὸς τοὺς ἄλλους ἔνθα τὰ ὅπλα ἔκειτο,  
 ἔπειτα δὴ ἔεντο οἱ πολέμοι πολλῶ πληθῇ καὶ θορύβῳ.<sup>3</sup>  
 5 πολλοὶ ἀντ-έλεγον ὥς οὐκ ἄξιον<sup>4</sup> εἶη βασιλεῖ ἀφ-  
 εἶναι τοὺς ἐφ' ἑαυτὸν στρατευσαμένους. 6 τούτῳ  
 ἤθελον καὶ χρήματα καὶ πόλεις καὶ τὰ ἑαυτῶν σώματα

14 <sup>1</sup> τοῦ στρατηγοῦ 510 d: threw  
 stones at.

<sup>2</sup> ἄνω κατὰ up along.

<sup>3</sup> πληθῇ 525 a, θορύβῳ 526 b.

<sup>4</sup> ὥς οὐκ ἄξιον εἶη that it was  
 not right.

προ-έσθαι. 7 καὶ μὴν εἰ ὑφ-ησόμεθα καὶ ἐπὶ<sup>5</sup> βασιλείᾳ  
γενησόμεθα, τί οἴόμεθα πείσεσθαι; 8 ἄνδρες στρα-  
τιῶται, χαλεπὰ μὲν τὰ παρ-όντα, ὅποτε στρατηγῶν  
τοιούτων στερόμεθα καὶ λοχᾶγῶν καὶ στρατιωτῶν,  
πρὸς δ' ἔτι καὶ οἱ ἀμφὶ Ἀριαῖον,<sup>6</sup> οἱ πρόσθεν σύμ-  
μαχοι ὄντες, προ-δεδώκασιν ἡμᾶς· ὅμως δὲ δεῖ<sup>7</sup> ἐκ  
τῶν παρ-όντων ἄνδρας ἀγαθοὺς ἰέναι καὶ μὴ ὑφ-ίεσθαι,  
ἀλλὰ πειρᾶσθαι ὅπως<sup>8</sup> ἦν μὲν δυνώμεθα καλῶς νικῶντες  
σφῳόμεθα· εἰ δὲ μή, ἀλλὰ καλῶς γε ἀπο-θνήσκωμεν,<sup>9</sup>  
ζῶντες δὲ μηδέποτε γενώμεθα ἐπὶ τοῖς πολεμίοις.  
οἶμαι γὰρ ἂν ἡμᾶς τοιαῦτα παθεῖν οἶα<sup>10</sup> τοὺς ἐχθροὺς  
οἱ θεοὶ ποιήσειαν. 9 αἰρεῖσθαι οὖν ἡμᾶς ἔασομεν ὃ  
τι ἂν ἡμῖν δοκῇ κράτιστον εἶναι. 10 ἦγον δὲ ὄθεν  
ῶμην<sup>11</sup> τάχιστ' ἂν ὑμᾶς εἰς τὴν Ἀσιᾶν δια-βῇναι.

#### MEMNHΣO TON AΘHNAIΩN

405 Βασιλεῖ δὲ Δᾶρεϊφ ὡς ἐξ-ηγγέλθη Σάρδεις ἁλῶναι<sup>12</sup>  
ὑπὸ τε Ἀθηναίων καὶ Ἰώνων, πρῶτον μὲν λέγεται<sup>13</sup>  
αὐτόν, ὡς ἐπύθετο ταῦτα, Ἰώνων οὐδένα λόγον ποιη-  
σάμενον ἐρέσθαι οἷτινες εἶεν οἱ Ἀθηναῖοι· πυθόμενον

<sup>5</sup> ἐπὶ . . . γενησόμεθα fall into the power of.

<sup>6</sup> οἱ ἀμφὶ Ἀριαῖον *Ariaios* and his men, a common expression.

<sup>7</sup> δεῖ extends its force to πειρᾶσθαι.

<sup>8</sup> ὅπως . . . σφῳόμεθα strive how we may save ourselves by an honorable victory is simply strive to etc. ἦν is for ἰέν.

<sup>9</sup> ἀλλὰ . . . ἀπο-θνήσκωμεν yet let us meet death 472.

<sup>10</sup> τοιαῦτα οἶα . . . ποιήσεαν

such treatment as may the gods inflict upon our enemies 476.

<sup>11</sup> ῶμην: for φόμην impf. of οἶμαι.

<sup>12</sup> Σάρδεις ἁλῶναι that *Sardeis* had been captured: an infinitive instead of a ὅτι clause.

<sup>13</sup> λέγεται αὐτόν it is related that he: the impersonal where before we have had the personal construction. αὐτόν is the subject of the infinitives ἐρέσθαι, αἰτῆσαι, ἀφ-εῖναι, εἰπεῖν, and προσ-τάξει and of the six participles that go with them.

δὲ ἔπειτα αἰτῆσαι τὸ τόξον, λαβόντα δὲ καὶ ἐπιθέντα τόξευμα ἄνω ἀφ-εῖναι καὶ αὐτὸ<sup>14</sup> βάλλοντα εἰπεῖν, ὦ Ζεῦ, δός μοι Ἀθηναίους τῖμωρήσασθαι. εἰπόντα δὲ ταῦτα προστάξαι ἐνὶ τῶν θεραπόντων, δείπνου προ-κειμένου αὐτῷ, εἰς τρὶς ἐκάστοτε εἰπεῖν, Δέσποτα, μέμνησο τῶν Ἀθηναίων. μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα ἐπειρᾶτο ὁ Δᾶρείος τῶν Ἑλλήνων ὃ τι μέλλοιεν ποιήσειν, πότερον πολεμεῖν ἑαυτῷ ἢ παραδιδόναι ἑαυτούς. δι-έπεμπε οὖν κήρυκας, ἄλλους ἄλλη<sup>15</sup> τάξας ἀνὰ τὴν Ἑλλάδα κελεύων αἰτεῖν βασιλεῖ γῆν τε καὶ ὕδωρ.<sup>16</sup> οἱ μὲν δὴ πολλοὶ εἰς οὓς ἀφ-έκοντο οἱ κήρυκες ἔδοσαν ὅσα ἀπ-ήτησε ὁ Πέρσης, οἱ δὲ Ἀθηναῖοι οὐκ ἔφασαν ἀποδώσειν. χαλεπῶς οὖν ἔχων<sup>17</sup> Δᾶρείος ἀπ-έστελλε ἐπὶ Ἀθήνας Δάτιν τε καὶ Ἀρταφέρνην πολὺν στράτευμα ἔχοντας. τούτοις δὲ Μαραθῶνι<sup>18</sup> μαχεσάμενοι οἱ Ἀθηναῖοι καλῶς ἐνίκων καὶ τρόπαιον ἐστήσαντο. οὕτως οὖν τῶν Ἀθηναίων ἐμέμνητο ὁ Δᾶρείος.

- 16 When they saw the cavalry they rushed down the hill and attacked them fiercely. 2 He asked the general to let him go and capture the place for them. 3 We must never again yield but must fight as best we can. 4 They will pay the sacrifice they have vowed when they reach a friendly country. 5 If the soldiers had caught Silānos when<sup>19</sup> he ran away, they would have punished him.

<sup>14</sup> αὐτὸ βάλλοντα and as he let it fly.

<sup>15</sup> ἄλλους ἄλλη τάξας assigning them to different sections. Cp. Latin *aliōs aliam in partem*. For ἄλλη compare 236 end.

<sup>16</sup> γῆν τε καὶ ὕδωρ: the tokens of submission.

<sup>17</sup> χαλεπῶς ἔχων being angry. Cp. χαλεπῶς φέρω 365, 18.

<sup>18</sup> Μαραθῶνι: consult 527 a.

<sup>19</sup> Express by a participle.

## A SLAVE FROM THE MAKRŌNES

## VOCABULARY

- 407 λόγχη -ης ἡ spearhead, spear  
 φωνή -ης ἡ voice; dialect, lan-  
 guage. *phōnēis, phōnē-graph, tele-*  
*phōnē*  
 βαρβαρικῆς -ῆς ἡ not Greek, for-  
 eign, barbarian; *βάρβαρος* 39  
 ἀντι-τάττω set against; mid. array  
 my forces against  
 δοῦλεύω am a slave; *δοῦλος* 148  
 ἐπι-μαρτύρομαι<sup>1</sup> call upon to wit-  
 ness, invoke; ὁ μάρτυς -υρος wit-  
 ness. *martyr*  
 ὁδο-ποιῶ make a road; *ὁδός* 72  
 παρ-έγω lead alongside, conduct;  
*παρά* 178  
 συν-εκ-κόπτω<sup>1</sup> help cut out, we say  
 cut down. *CHOP, συναρπάω*  
 Ἀθήνῃ adv. 238, at Athens

- 408 Ἐνθα δὴ προσ-έρχεται Νικομάχῳ τῶν πελταστῶν ἀνὴρ  
 Ἀθήνησι φάσκων δεδουλευκέναι, λέγων ὅτι γιγνώσκω  
 τὴν φωνὴν τῶν ἀνθρώπων. καὶ οἶμαι, ἔφη, ἐμὴν<sup>2</sup> ταύ-  
 την πατρίδα εἶναι. καὶ εἰ μὴ τι κωλύει ἐθέλω αὐτοῖς  
 δια-λεχθῆναι. ἀλλ' οὐδὲν κωλύει, ἔφη, ἀλλὰ δια-λέγου  
 καὶ μάθε<sup>3</sup> πρῶτον τίνες εἰσίν. οἱ δ' εἶπον ἐρωτή-  
 σαντος<sup>4</sup> ὅτι Μάκρωνες. ἐρώτῃ τοῖνυν, ἔφη, αὐτοὺς τί  
 ἀντι-τεταγμένοι εἰσὶ καὶ βούλονται ἡμῖν πολέμοι εἶναι.  
 οἱ δ' ἀπ-εκρίναντο ὅτι<sup>5</sup> καὶ ἡμεῖς ἐπὶ τὴν ἡμετέρῃν  
 χώρῃν ἔρχεσθε. λέγειν ἐκέλευον οἱ στρατηγοὶ ὅτι οὐ  
 κακῶς γε<sup>6</sup> ποιήσοντες, ἀλλὰ βασιλεῖ πολεμήσαντες ἀπ-  
 ερχόμεθα εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα, καὶ ἐπὶ θάλατταν βουλό-  
 μεθα ἀφικέσθαι. ἡρώτων ἐκείνοι εἰ δοῖεν ἂν τούτων  
 τὰ πιστά. οἱ δ' ἔφασαν καὶ δοῦναι καὶ λαβεῖν ἐθέλειν.  
 ἐντεῦθεν διδοῶσιν οἱ Μάκρωνες βαρβαρικὴν λόγχην  
 τοῖς Ἑλλήσι, οἱ δὲ Ἕλληνες ἐκείνους Ἑλληνικὴν ταῦτα

- 409 <sup>1</sup> See the Verb-list for *μαρτύρο-*  
*μαι* and *κόπτω* 258.

<sup>2</sup> ἐμὴν . . . πατρίδα *this is my*  
*native land.*

<sup>3</sup> μάθε: aor. impv. of *μαθάνω*.

<sup>4</sup> ἐρωτήσαντος 590 a.

<sup>5</sup> ὅτι *because.*

<sup>6</sup> κακῶς γε: [*we are come ἐπὶ upon*  
*but not ἐπὶ against*]: *not to do any*  
*harm at least (γε).*

γὰρ ἔφασαν πιστὰ εἶναι· θεοὺς δ' ἐπ-εμαρτύροντο ἀμφότεροι. μετὰ δὲ τὰ πιστὰ εὐθὺς οἱ Μάκρωνες τὰ δένδρα συν-εξ-έκοπτον τήν τε ὁδὸν ὥδοποιοῦν καὶ ἀγορὰν οἶαν ἐδύναντο παρ-εἶχον, καὶ παρ-ήγαγον ἐν τρισὶν ἡμέραις ἕως εἰς τὴν Κόλχων χώρην κατ-έστησαν τοὺς Ἑλλήνας.

## THE RUINS OF CALAH AND NINEVEH

## VOCABULARY

- 10 βιά -as ἡ *force, violence*; βιά as *adv. by force, by assault*  
 βροντή -ης ἡ *thunder*  
 κρητῆς -ιδος ἡ *foundation*  
 κύκλος -ου ὁ *circle, circumference.*  
 οὔαλε, bi-ούαλε, en-ούαλο-pedia  
 νεφέλη -ης ἡ *cloud.* Latin *nebula*  
 περί-οδος -ου ἡ *way around, circuit.* period  
 πλίνθος -ου ἡ *brick.* plinth  
 πύραμῖς -ιδος ἡ *pyramid*  
 λίθ-ινος -ῃ -ον *of stone, stone;*  
 λίθος 173, 426  
 λοιπός -ῃ -όν *left, remaining*; οἱ λοιποὶ *the rest*; τὸ λοιπὸν *for the future*; λείπω 66  
 πλίνθ-ινος -ῃ -ον *of brick, brick*; πλίνθος, 426  
 ἀφανίζω *make unseen, hide, destroy*; ἀφανής *unseen, a- neg.*  
 + φαίνω 173, 418  
 κατα-πλήττω<sup>1</sup> *strike down, terrify.*  
 Latin *plangō*; ἀπο-πλᾶξ ἀπό  
 πολιορκέω *besiege*; πόλις 326  
 ὑπ-εἶναι *be under*  
 ἀσφαλῶς *adv. safely*; ἀσφαλής 333

- 11 Καὶ οἱ μὲν πολέμοι οὕτω πράξαντες<sup>2</sup> ἀπ-ῆλθον, οἱ δὲ Ἑλλήνες ἀσφαλῶς πορευόμενοι τὸ λοιπὸν τῆς ἡμέρας ἀφ-έκοντο ἐπὶ τὸν Τίγρητα ποταμόν. ἐνταῦθα πόλις ἦν ἐρήμη<sup>3</sup> μεγάλη, ὄνομα δ' αὐτῇ ἦν Λάρισσα.<sup>4</sup> ὥκουν δ' αὐτὴν τὸ ἀρχαῖον Μῆδοι. τοῦ δὲ τείχους αὐτῆς ἦν

- 12 <sup>1</sup> See πλῆττω in the Verb-list.  
<sup>2</sup> οὕτω πράξαντες *faring thus, with this result.*  
<sup>3</sup> ἐρήμη *deserted.*  
<sup>4</sup> Λάρισσα: Calah, eighteen miles

south of Nineveh. The site is now called Nimrud. Genesis x 11, 12. The pyramid was originally a truncated pyramid, with inclined planes for ascent.

τὸ εὖρος πέντε καὶ εἴκοσι πόδες, ὕψος δ' ἑκατόν. τοῦ δὲ κύκλου ἡ περίοδος δύο παρασάγγαι· πεποιημένον δ' ἦν πλίνθοις· κρηπὶς δ' ὑπ' ἡν λιθίνη τὸ ὕψος εἴκοσι ποδῶν. ταύτην βασιλεὺς<sup>5</sup> ὁ Περσῶν ὅτε παρὰ Μῆδων τὴν ἀρχὴν ἐλάμβανον Πέρσαι πολιορκῶν οὐδενὶ τρόπῳ ἐδύνατο ἐλεῖν· ἥλιον<sup>6</sup> δὲ νεφέλη ἠφάνισε μεχρὶ ἐξέλιπον οἱ ἄνθρωποι καὶ οὕτως ἐάλω. παρὰ ταύτην τὴν πόλιν ἦν πύραμις λιθίνη, τὸ μὲν εὖρος ἐνὸς πλέθρου τὸ δὲ ὕψος δύο πλέθρων. ἐπὶ ταύτης πολλοὶ τῶν βαρβάρων ἦσαν ἐκ τῶν πλησίον κωμῶν πεφευγότες. ἐντεῦθεν δ' ἐπορεύθησαν σταθμὸν ἓνα παρασάγγας ἐξ πρὸς τεῖχος ἔρημον μέγα κείμενον· ὄνομα δὲ ἦν τῇ πόλει Μέσπιλα.<sup>7</sup> Μῆδοι δ' αὐτὴν ποτε ᾤκουν. ἦν δὲ ἡ κρηπὶς λίθου, τὸ εὖρος πεντήκοντα ποδῶν καὶ τὸ ὕψος πεντήκοντα. ἐπὶ δὲ ταύτῃ ἦν πλίνθινον τεῖχος, τὸ μὲν εὖρος πεντήκοντα ποδῶν, τὸ δὲ ὕψος ἑκατόν· τοῦ δὲ τείχους ἡ περίοδος ἐξ παρασάγγαι. ἐνταῦθα λέγεται Μῆδεια γυνὴ βασιλέως<sup>8</sup> καταφυγεῖν ὅτε ἀπώλλυσαν τὴν ἀρχὴν ὑπὸ Περσῶν Μῆδοι. ταύτην δὲ τὴν πόλιν πολιορκῶν ὁ Περσῶν βασιλεὺς οὐκ ἐδύνατο οὔτε χρόνῳ<sup>9</sup> ἐλεῖν οὔτε βίᾳ· Ζεὺς δὲ βροντῇ κατέπληξε τοὺς ἐν-οικούντας καὶ οὕτως ἐάλω.

<sup>5</sup> βασιλεὺς: Cyrus the Great, B. C. 549.

<sup>6</sup> ἥλιον νεφέλη ἠφάνισε: an eclipse.

<sup>7</sup> Μέσπιλα: part of Nineveh, capital of the Assyrian empire. This part of Nineveh, the north-west side, extended along the Tigris river for two and a half miles. The Assyrian empire was overthrown by the Medes and Babylo-

nians before 600 B. C. The Median empire was overthrown by Cyrus the Great. Excavations on these sites have disclosed splendid palaces; also works of art of great value, many of which are deposited in the British Museum.

<sup>8</sup> βασιλεὺς: Astyages was the last king of Media.

<sup>9</sup> χρόνῳ: that is by siege.

## WHEN GREEK MEETS GREEK

## VOCABULARY

13 προσβέω *act as envoy or ambassador* \* τοι *adv.* 671 e, *really, of course*  
*dor*; πρέσβυς 344

4 Μετὰ τὴν μάχην τὴν πρὸς Κουνάξῃ οἱ Ἕλληνες συνελθόντες ἐβουλευόντο· ἀκούσαντες δὲ τεθνηκότα τὸν σατράπην βαρέως ἔφερον· ὁ δὲ Κλέαρχος τοῖς ἀγγέλοις εἶπεν· ἡμεῖς μὲν οὖν, ἔφη, νικῶμέν τε βασιλεῆα καὶ ὡς ὁρᾶτε οὐδεὶς ἔτι ἡμῖν μάχεται. Ἀριαῖον<sup>1</sup> δέ, ἔὰν ἐνθάδε ἔλθῃ, τοῦτον κατα-στήσομεν βασιλεῆα· τῶν γὰρ μάχῃ νικῶντων<sup>2</sup> καὶ τὸ ἄρχειν ἐστίν. ταῦτα εἰπὼν ἀπο-στέλλει τοὺς ἀγγέλους. καὶ ἤδη τε ἦν περὶ μέσον ἡμέρας καὶ ἦλθον παρὰ βασιλέως κήρυκες οἱ μὲν ἄλλοι βάρβαροι, ἦν δὲ αὐτῶν Φαλῖνος εἰς Ἕλληνα ὃς ἐτύγχανε παρὰ<sup>3</sup> βασιλεῖ ὦν. οὗτοι δὲ προσελθόντες καὶ καλέσαντες τοὺς τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἄρχοντας ἔλεγον ὅτι βασιλεὺς κελεύει τοὺς Ἕλληνας, ἐπεὶ νικῶν τυγχάνει καὶ τὸν σατράπην ἀπ-έκτονε, παρα-δοῦναι τὰ ὄπλα. ταῦτα μὲν εἶπον οἱ βασιλέως κήρυκες· οἱ δὲ Ἕλληνες βαρέως<sup>4</sup> μὲν ἤκουσαν, ὁμῶς δὲ Κλέαρχος εἶπεν ὅτι οὐ τῶν νικῶντων εἷη τὰ ὄπλα παρα-διδόναι· ἀλλ', ἔφη, ἡμεῖς μὲν, ὦ ἄνδρες στρατηγοί, τοῦτοις ἀποκρίνασθε ὅ τι κάλλιστόν τε καὶ ἄριστον ἔχετε.<sup>5</sup> ἐγὼ δὲ αὐτίκα ἤξω. ἐκάλεσε γάρ τις αὐτόν, ὅπως ἴδοι τὰ ἱερά· ἔτυχε γὰρ θυόμενος. ἐνθα δὲ ἀπ-εκρίνατο Κλεά-νωρ ὁ Ἀρκὰς πρεσβύτατος ὦν ὅτι πρόσθεν<sup>6</sup> ἂν ἀπο-

15 <sup>1</sup> Ἀριαῖον: first for emphasis, repeated in τοῦτον.

<sup>2</sup> τῶν νικῶντων: cp. 363, 8, 15.

<sup>3</sup> παρὰ in the service of.

<sup>4</sup> βαρέως with indignation.

<sup>5</sup> ἔχετε hold, consider.

<sup>6</sup> πρόσθεν ἢ sooner than.



θάνοιεν ἢ τὰ ὄπλα παρα-δοίεν· Πρόξενος δὲ ὁ Θηβαῖος, ἀλλ' ἐγώ, ἔφη, ὦ Φαλῖνε, θαυμάζω πότερα ὥς<sup>7</sup> κρατῶν βασιλεὺς αἰτεῖ τὰ ὄπλα ἢ ὥς διὰ φιλιᾶν δῶρα. εἰ μὲν γὰρ ὥς κρατῶν, τί δεῖ<sup>8</sup> αὐτὸν αἰτεῖν καὶ οὐ<sup>8</sup> λαβεῖν ἐλθόντα; εἰ δὲ πείσας<sup>9</sup> βούλεται λαβεῖν, λεγέτω τί ἔσται τοῖς στρατιώταις, εἴαν αὐτῷ ταῦτα παρα-δῶσιν. πρὸς ταῦτα Φαλῖνος εἶπεν, βασιλεὺς νικᾶν ἡγείται,<sup>10</sup> ἐπεὶ τὸν σατράπην ἀπ-έκτονε τὸν ἄρχοντα ὑμῶν. τίς γὰρ αὐτῷ ἐπὶ τῆς ἀρχῆς<sup>11</sup> ἀντι-ποιεῖται;<sup>12</sup> νομίζει δὲ καὶ ὑμᾶς ἑαυτοῦ<sup>13</sup> εἶναι, ἔχων<sup>14</sup> ἐν μέσῃ τῇ ἑαυτοῦ χώρᾳ καὶ ποταμῶν ἐντὸς ἀδιαβάτων καὶ πληθὸς ἀνθρώπων ἐφ' ὑμᾶς δυνάμενος<sup>14</sup> ἀγαγεῖν ὅσον<sup>15</sup> οὐδ' εἰ παρ-έχοι ὑμῖν δύναισθε ἂν ἀπο-κτεῖναι.

Μετὰ τοῦτον Θεόπομπος Ἀθηναῖος εἶπεν· ὦ Φαλῖνε, νῦν, ὥς σὺ ὀρᾷς, ἡμῖν οὐδέν ἐστιν ἀγαθὸν ἄλλο<sup>16</sup> εἰ μὴ ὄπλα καὶ ἀρετή. ὄπλα μὲν οὖν ἔχοντες οἴομεθα ἂν καὶ τῇ ἀρετῇ χρῆσθαι, παρα-δόντες δ' ἂν ταῦτα καὶ τῶν σωματῶν στέρηθῇναι. μὴ οὖν οἴου<sup>17</sup> τὰ μόνα

<sup>7</sup> ὥς κρατῶν *because he thinks he is the victor.* The suggestion of cause is in the participle, not in ὥς 593 e. So too the next ὥς does not mean simply *as gifts*. That would be expressed by δῶρα alone. The idea is *as gifts on the pretext of friendship*.

<sup>8</sup> δεῖ belongs in construction to λαβεῖν but in meaning only to αἰτεῖν. We can say τί δεῖ αἰτεῖν, ἀλλὰ τί οὐ μᾶλλον ἐλθὼν λαμβάνει; or ἀντὶ τοῦ ἐλθόντα λαβεῖν. οὐ: to be taken with δεῖ: *why should he not come and get them?*

<sup>9</sup> πείσας *by persuasion.*

<sup>10</sup> ἡγείται *considers.*

<sup>11</sup> τῆς ἀρχῆς 510 d.

<sup>12</sup> ἀντι-ποιεῖται *asserts a rival claim.*

<sup>13</sup> ἑαυτοῦ 508 a.

<sup>14</sup> ἔχων, δυνάμενος *since he has you, and is able.*

<sup>15</sup> ὅσον οὐδ' εἰ *so great that not even if he should put them into your hands.* There are too many for the mere labor of killing.

<sup>16</sup> οὐδὲν ἄλλο εἰ μὴ *no advantage except: no other if not does not suit the English idiom.*

<sup>17</sup> μὴ οἴου: μὴ shows that οἴου is imperative.

ἀγαθὰ ἡμῖν ὄντα ὑμῖν παραδώσειν, ἀλλὰ σὺν τούτοις<sup>18</sup> καὶ περὶ τῶν ὑμετέρων ἀγαθῶν μαχούμεθα. ἀκούσας δὲ ταῦτα ὁ Φαλῖνος εἶπεν· ἀλλ' ἴσθι οὐ σοφὸς ὢν, εἰ οἶσι τὴν ὑμετέρᾳν ἀρετὴν περι-γενέσθαι ἂν τῆς βασιλέως δυνάμεως. ἄλλους δὲ τινὰς ἔφασαν λέγειν ὅτι καὶ τῷ σατράπῃ πιστοὶ ἐγένοντο καὶ βασιλεῖ ἂν πολλοῦ ἀξιοὶ γένοιτο εἰ βούλοιο φίλος γενέσθαι. ἐν τούτῳ<sup>19</sup> Κλέαρχος ἦκε καὶ ἠρώτησεν εἰ ἤδη ἀπο-κεκριμένοι εἶεν. Φαλῖνος δὲ ὑπο-λαβὼν<sup>20</sup> εἶπεν· οὗτοι μὲν, ὦ Κλέαρχε, ἄλλος ἄλλα<sup>21</sup> λέγει· σὺ δ' ἡμῖν εἰπὲ τί λέγεις.<sup>22</sup> ὁ δ' εἶπεν· ἐγὼ σε, ὦ Φαλῖνε, ἄσμενος ἐώρᾳκα,<sup>23</sup> οἶμαι δὲ καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι πάντες· σύ τε γὰρ Ἕλληνα εἶ καὶ ἡμεῖς τοσοῦτοι<sup>24</sup> ὄντες ὅσους σὺ ὀρᾷς· ἐν τοιούτοις δὲ ὄντες πράγμασι συμ-βουλευόμεθά σοι τί χρὴ ποιεῖν περὶ ὧν λέγεις. σὺ οὖν πρὸς θεῶν συμβούλευσον ἡμῖν ὅ τι σοι δοκεῖ κάλλιστον καὶ ἄριστον εἶναι, καὶ ὁ σοι τιμὴν οἶσει εἰς τὸν ἔπειτα χρόνον αἰὲ λεγόμενοι,<sup>25</sup> ὅτι Φαλῖνός ποτε πεμφθεὶς παρὰ βασιλέως κελύεσσαν τοὺς Ἕλληνας τὰ ὅπλα παρα-δοῦναι συμβουλευομένοις συν-εβούλευσεν<sup>26</sup> αὐτοῖς τάδε. οἶσθα δὲ ὅτι ἀνάγκη λέγεσθαι ἐν τῇ Ἑλλάδι ἅ ἂν συμβουλευσῆς. ὁ δὲ Κλέαρχος ταῦτα εἶπε βουλόμενος καὶ αὐτὸν τὸν παρὰ βασιλέως πρεσβεύοντα<sup>27</sup> συμβουλευ-

<sup>18</sup> σὺν τούτοις: where we should write τούτοις with these or ταῦτα ἔχοντες.

<sup>19</sup> ἐν τούτῳ meanwhile.

<sup>20</sup> ὑπο-λαβὼν taking up the talk.

<sup>21</sup> ἄλλος ἄλλα some one thing, some another: cp. 404, 15.

<sup>22</sup> λέγας have to say, think.

<sup>23</sup> ἄσμενος ἐώρᾳκα 548.

<sup>24</sup> καὶ ἡμεῖς τοσοῦτοι . . . ὀρᾷς and so are we all whom you see.

<sup>25</sup> αἰὲ λεγόμενον every time it is told.

<sup>26</sup> συμ-βουλευομένοις συν-εβούλευσεν αὐτοῖς advised them when they asked his advice.

<sup>27</sup> καὶ αὐτὸν τὸν . . . πρεσβεύοντα that even the very envoy.

4/7 Ἡ μὲν δὴ Ἀθήνησι στάσις<sup>2</sup> οὕτως ἐτελεύτησεν. ἐκ δὲ τούτου πέμψας Κύρος ἀγγέλους εἰς Λακεδαιμόνα ἡξίου, οἷόσπερ<sup>3</sup> αὐτὸς Λακεδαιμονίους ἦν ἐν τῷ πρὸς Ἀθηναίους πολέμῳ, τοιοῦτους καὶ Λακεδαιμονίους αὐτῷ γίγνεσθαι. οἱ δ' ἔφοροι δίκαια νομίσαντες λέγειν αὐτὸν Σαμῖν τῷ τότε ναυάρχῳ ἐπ'έστειλαν ὑπηρετεῖν Κύρῳ, εἴ τι δέοιτο. κάκεινος<sup>4</sup> μέντοι προθύμως ὅπῃ ἐδεήθη ὁ Κύρος ἔπραξεν· ἔχων γὰρ τὸ ἑαυτοῦ ναυτικὸν σὺν τῷ Κύρῳ περι-έπλευσεν εἰς Κιλικίαν, καὶ ἐποίησε τὸν τῆς Κιλικίας ἄρχοντα Σύννεσιν μὴ δύνασθαι<sup>5</sup> κατὰ γῆν ἐν-αντιοῦσθαι Κύρῳ πορευομένῳ ἐπὶ βασιλεῖ. ὥς<sup>6</sup> μὲν οὖν Κύρος στρατεύμα' τε συν-έλεξε καὶ τοῦτ' ἔχων ἀν-έβη ἐπὶ τὸν ἀδελφόν, καὶ ὥς ἡ μάχη ἐγένετο, καὶ ὥς ἀπ-έθανε, καὶ ὥς ἐκ τούτου ἀπ-εσώθησαν<sup>7</sup> οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐπὶ θάλατταν, Θεμιστογένει<sup>8</sup> τῷ Συρᾶκοσίῳ γέγραπται.

Ἐπεὶ μέντοι Τισσαφέρνης, πολλοῦ ἄξιος βασιλεῖ δόξας<sup>9</sup> γεγενῆσθαι ἐν τῷ πρὸς τὸν ἀδελφὸν πολέμῳ, σατράπης<sup>10</sup> κατ-επέμφθη ὧν τε αὐτὸς πρόσθεν ἦρχε καὶ ὧν Κύρος, εὐθὺς ἡξίου τὰς Ἰωνικὰς πόλεις ἀπάσας ἑαυτῷ πείθεσθαι. αἱ δὲ ἅμα<sup>11</sup> μὲν ἐλεύθεραι βουλό-

4/8 <sup>2</sup> στάσις *discord*: the rule of the Thirty, οἱ τριάκοντα, and the consequent disturbances 404, 403 B. C. ἐκ δὲ τούτου: in 401 B. C.

<sup>3</sup> οἷόσπερ αὐτὸς . . . τοιοῦτους καὶ as he himself had treated . . . so also.

<sup>4</sup> κάκεινος: καὶ ἐκεῖνος: *crasis*, cp. 4/15, 43.

<sup>5</sup> μὴ δύνασθαι made it impossible for.

<sup>6</sup> ὥς how.

<sup>7</sup> ἀπ-εσώθησαν got back in safety.

<sup>8</sup> Θεμιστογένης: he is otherwise unknown. See 524 b, c.

<sup>9</sup> δόξας γεγενῆσθαι who was considered to have been.

<sup>10</sup> σατράπης ὧν as satrap of the cities which he himself had formerly governed as well as of those which Cyrus had governed.

<sup>11</sup> ἅμα μὲν . . . ἅμα δέ not only . . . but at the same time.

μεναι εἶναι, ἅμα δὲ φοβούμεναι τὸν Τισσαφέρην, ὅτι Κῦρον, ὅτ' ἔζη, αὐτ' ἐκείνου ἡρημέναι ἦσαν,<sup>12</sup> εἰς μὲν τὰς πόλεις οὐκ ἐδέχοντο<sup>13</sup> αὐτόν, εἰς Λακεδαίμονα δὲ ἔπεμπον πρέσβεις καὶ ἠξίου, ἐπεὶ πάσης τῆς Ἑλλάδος ἄρχοντές εἰσιν,<sup>14</sup> ἐπι-μεληθῆναι<sup>15</sup> καὶ σφῶν<sup>16</sup> τῶν ἐν τῇ Ἀσίᾳ Ἑλλήνων, ὅπως ἢ τε χώρᾳ μὴ δι-αρπάζοιτο αὐτῶν καὶ αὐτοὶ ἐλεύθεροι εἶεν. οἱ οὖν Λακεδαιμόνιοι πέμπουσιν αὐτοῖς Θίβρων ἀρμοστήν, δόντες στρατιώτᾱς εἰς πεντακισχίλιους. ἡτήσατο<sup>17</sup> δ' ὁ Θίβρων καὶ παρ' Ἀθηναίων τριακοσίους ἱππέας, εἰπὼν ὅτι αὐτὸς μισθὸν παρ-έξει. οἱ δ' ἔπεμψαν τῶν<sup>18</sup> ἐπὶ τῶν τριάκοντα ἱππευσάντων. ἐπεὶ δ' εἰς τὴν Ἀσίαν ἀφ-έκοντο,<sup>19</sup> συν-ήγαγε στρατιώτᾱς καὶ ἐκ τῶν Ἑλληνίδων πόλεων· πᾶσαι γὰρ τότε αἱ πόλεις ἐπείθοντο ὃ τι Λακεδαιμόνιος ἀνὴρ<sup>20</sup> ἐπι-τάττοι. καὶ ἔχων μὲν ταύτην τὴν στρατιὰν Θίβρων εἰς τὸ πεδίον οὐ κατ-έβαιναν· ἐπεὶ δὲ σωθέντες οἱ ἀνα-βάντες<sup>21</sup> μετὰ Κύρου συν-έμειξαν αὐτῷ, ἐκ τούτου ἤδη καὶ<sup>22</sup> ἐν τοῖς πεδίοις αὐτ-

<sup>12</sup> ἡρημέναι ἦσαν *had taken up the cause of, had sided with.*

<sup>13</sup> οὐκ ἐδέχοντο *refused to admit him.*

<sup>14</sup> εἰσιν *were.*

<sup>15</sup> ἐπι-μεληθῆναι *assume the protection of, take them also under their protection.*

<sup>16</sup> σφῶν: *εὐωνῶν* 197, 203.

<sup>17</sup> ἡτήσατο: the middle here hardly differs from the active: *he asked for them to use in this undertaking.*

<sup>18</sup> τῶν . . . ἱππευσάντων *some of the men that had served in the cau-*

*alry in the time of the Thirty.* The genitive is predicate and partitive. Compare 507 a, 510 a. Xenophon adds in this connection νομίζοντες κέρδος τῷ δήμῳ εἰ ἀποδημοῖεν καὶ ἐναπόλιντο *thinking it a gain for the state if they should go abroad and perish there.*

<sup>19</sup> ἀφ-έκοντο: early in 399 B. C.

<sup>20</sup> Λακεδαιμόνιος ἀνὴρ *any Lacedaemonian.*

<sup>21</sup> οἱ ἀνα-βάντες: the Ten Thousand now reduced to less than five thousand.

<sup>22</sup> καὶ . . . *not only withstood.*

ετάττετο τῷ Τισσαφέρνει καὶ<sup>23</sup> πόλεις πολλὰς προσ-  
έλαβε καὶ Πέργαμον ἐκοῦσαν.

<sup>23</sup> καὶ . . . προσ-έλαβε καὶ . . . cities, including (καὶ) Pergamos,  
ἐκοῦσαν but also (καὶ) secured many which surrendered voluntarily.

## XENOPHON THE AUTHOR OF THE ANABASIS

### VOCABULARY

- 419 ἀνά-βασις -εως ἡ going up, march up or inland; ἀνα-βαίνω 179.  
*Anabasis*  
 ἀριθμός -οῦ ὁ number, enumeration, extent. *arithmetico*  
 ἐνιαυτός -οῦ ὁ any long period of time, year, as a period of twelve months; ἔτος 338, a chronological year; ἔτος ἦλθε περιπλομένων ἐνιαυτῶν as times rolled on the year came, volventibus annis  
 κατά-βασις -εως ἡ going down, march down or to the coast; κατα-βαίνω 179. *Katabasis*  
 στόλος -ου ὁ equipment, expedition, army; στέλλω 173. *apo-stile*  
 στρατεία -ᾱς ἡ expedition, campaign; στρατεύομαι 406 a
- ἀν-αίρω take up; of an oracle answer, direct; mid. *undertake*  
 ἀνα-κοινός D make common cause, confer with, consult; κοινός 264; ἀνδ 178  
 ἐκ-πλέω sail out or off  
 ἐπ-ρωτάω ask in reference to, ask, inquire, demand; ἐπί 178  
 ἐπι-νοέω set my mind on, purpose, intend; ὁ νοῦς mind; γνώμη 397  
 προ-θύμέομαι 185, desire, wish earnestly; προθύμως 416; ἐπι-θύμει 179  
 συμ-προθύμέομαι unite earnestly with in desiring or urging  
 συν-ίστημι bring together, introduce; intr. forms and mid. stand together; combine. *system*
- 420 Ὅστις μὲν οὖν ὁ Κῦρος ἦν καὶ οἶος, καὶ ὅσα ἐν τῇ Κύρου ἀναβάσει οἱ Ἕλληνες ἔπραξαν μέχρι τῆς πρὸς Κουνάξῃ μάχης καὶ ὅσα ἐν τῇ καταβάσει τῇ μέχρι ἐπὶ θάλατταν τὴν ἐν τῷ Εὐξείνῳ Πόντῳ καὶ ὅσα μετὰ ταῦτα ἐγένετο μέχρι εἰς Πέργαμον τῆς Ἀσίας ἀφ' ἴκοντο, Ξενοφῶντι ἐν τῇ Ἀναβάσει γέγραπται.

Ξενοφῶν δὲ ἦν Ἀθηναῖος ἐν τῇ Κύρου στρατιᾷ οὔτε στρατηγὸς οὔτε λοχαγὸς οὔτε στρατιώτης ὢν, ἀλλὰ Πρόξενος αὐτὸν μετ-επέμψατο<sup>1</sup> οἰκοθεν ξένος ὢν ἀρχαῖος· ὑπ-ισχνεῖτο δὲ αὐτῷ, εἰ ἔλθοι, φίλον αὐτὸν Κύρῳ ποιήσειν. ὁ μέντοι Ξενοφῶν ἀνα-γνοὺς τὴν ἐπιστολὴν συν-εβουλεύσατο Σωκράτει τῷ Ἀθηναίῳ περὶ τῆς πορείας. καὶ ὁ Σωκράτης ὑπ-οπτεύσας μή τι αἰτιῶτο<sup>2</sup> ἢ πόλις Ξενοφῶντα, ἐὰν Κύρῳ φίλος γένηται, ὅτι ἐδόκει<sup>3</sup> ὁ Κύρος προθύμως τοῖς Λακεδαιμονίοις ἐπὶ τὰς Ἀθήνας συμ-πολεμήσαι, συμ-βουλεύει τῷ Ξενοφῶντι ἐλθόντα εἰς Δελφοὺς ἀνα-κοινῶσαι τῷ θεῷ περὶ τῆς πορείας. ἐλθὼν δ' ὁ Ξενοφῶν ἐπ-ήρητο τὸν Ἀπόλλω τίνοι ἂν θεῶν θύων καὶ εὐχόμενος κάλλιστα καὶ ἄριστα ἔλθοι<sup>4</sup> τὴν ὁδὸν ἣν ἐπι-νοεῖ καὶ<sup>5</sup> καλῶς πράξας σωθεῖν. καὶ ἀν-εἶλεν αὐτῷ ὁ Ἀπόλλων θεοῖς<sup>6</sup> οἷς ἔδει θύειν. ἐπεὶ δὲ πάλιν ἦλθε λέγει τῷ Σωκράτει. ὁ δ' ἀκούσας ἡτιᾶτο αὐτὸν ὅτι οὐ τοῦτο<sup>7</sup> πρῶτον ἡρώτῃ πότερον βέλτιον εἶη αὐτῷ πορευέσθαι ἢ μένειν, ἀλλ' αὐτὸς κρίνῃς<sup>8</sup> ἰτέον εἶναι τοῦτ' ἐπυνθάνετο ὅπως ἂν κάλλιστα πορευθεῖν. ἐπεὶ μέντοι οὕτως<sup>9</sup> ἤρου, ταῦτ', ἔφη,<sup>10</sup> χρὴ ποιεῖν ὅσα ὁ θεὸς ἐκέλευσεν.

2/ <sup>1</sup> μετ-επέμψατο *had sent for*.

<sup>2</sup> ὑπ-οπτεύσας μή τι αἰτιῶτο *apprehending that the state might have some ground for censuring him*. αἰτιῶτο: αἰτιόμαι; so ἡτιᾶτο below.

<sup>3</sup> ἐδόκει . . . συμ-πολεμήσαι *was reputed to have aided in the war*.

<sup>4</sup> τίνοι ἂν . . . ἔλθοι τὴν ὁδὸν *to what god he should offer sacrifice and prayer that he might make the journey*. ὁδόν: cognate accusative.

<sup>5</sup> καὶ καλῶς πράξας σωθεῖν *and attain a safe and successful result*.

<sup>6</sup> θεοῖς οἷς: for τοὺς θεοὺς οἷς or οἷς ἔδει θεοῖς θύειν 613 a.

<sup>7</sup> τοῦτο: here refers forward to πότερον . . . ἢ.

<sup>8</sup> αὐτὸς κρίνῃς *deciding for himself*.

<sup>9</sup> οὕτως ἤρου *since you put the question in this way*. ἤρου: ἡρόμην, ἑρωτάω.

<sup>10</sup> ἔφη Σωκράτης.

Ὁ μὲν δὴ Ξενοφῶν οὕτω θυσάμενος οἷς ἀνείλεν ὁ θεὸς ἐξέπλει καὶ καταλαμβάνει ἐν Σάρδεσι Προξένον καὶ Κῦρον μέλλοντας ἤδη<sup>11</sup> ὁρμᾶν τὴν ἄνω ὁδὸν καὶ συν-εστάθῃ<sup>12</sup> Κύρῳ. προ-θυμουμενὸν δὲ τοῦ Προξένου καὶ ὁ Κῦρος συμ-πrouθυμείτο μείναι αὐτόν, εἶπε δὲ ὅτι ἐπειδὰν τάχιστα<sup>13</sup> ἡ στρατεῖα τελετηθῇ, εὐθὺς ἀποπέμψει αὐτόν. ἐλέγετο δὲ ὁ στόλος εἶναι εἰς Πισιδᾶς. ἐστρατεύετο μὲν δὴ οὕτως<sup>14</sup> ἐξ-απατηθεῖς<sup>15</sup>—οὐχ ὑπὸ<sup>16</sup> Προξένου· οὐ γὰρ ἦδει ἐπὶ βασιλεῖ Κῦρον ἰόντα οὐδὲ ἄλλος οὐδεὶς τῶν Ἑλλήνων πλὴν Κλεάρχου· ἐπεὶ μέντοι εἰς Κιλικίαν ἦλθον, σαφὲς πᾶσιν ἦδη ἐδόκει εἶναι ὅτι ὁ στόλος εἶη ἐπὶ βασιλεῖ. φοβούμενοι δὲ τὴν ὁδὸν καὶ ἄκοντες<sup>17</sup> ὁμῶς οἱ πολλοὶ συνεπορεύθησαν· ὧν εἰς καὶ Ξενοφῶν ἦν.

Ἀριθμὸς<sup>18</sup> μὲν συμπάσης τῆς ὁδοῦ τῆς ἀναβάσεως καὶ καταβάσεως σταθμοὶ διακόσιοι δεκαπέντε, παρασάγγαι χίλιοι ἑκατὸν πενήκοντα πέντε, στάδια τρισμύρια τετρακισχίλια ἑξακόσια πενήκοντα. χρόνου δὲ πλῆθος τῆς ἀναβάσεως καὶ καταβάσεως ἐνιαυτὸς καὶ τρεῖς μῆνες.

<sup>11</sup> ἤδη immediately.

<sup>12</sup> συν-εστάθῃ was introduced to.

<sup>13</sup> ἐπειδὰν τάχιστα just as soon as.

<sup>14</sup> οὕτως in this way he came to go on the expedition: οὕτως with ἐστρατεύετο.

<sup>15</sup> ἐξ-απατηθεῖς because he was deceived.

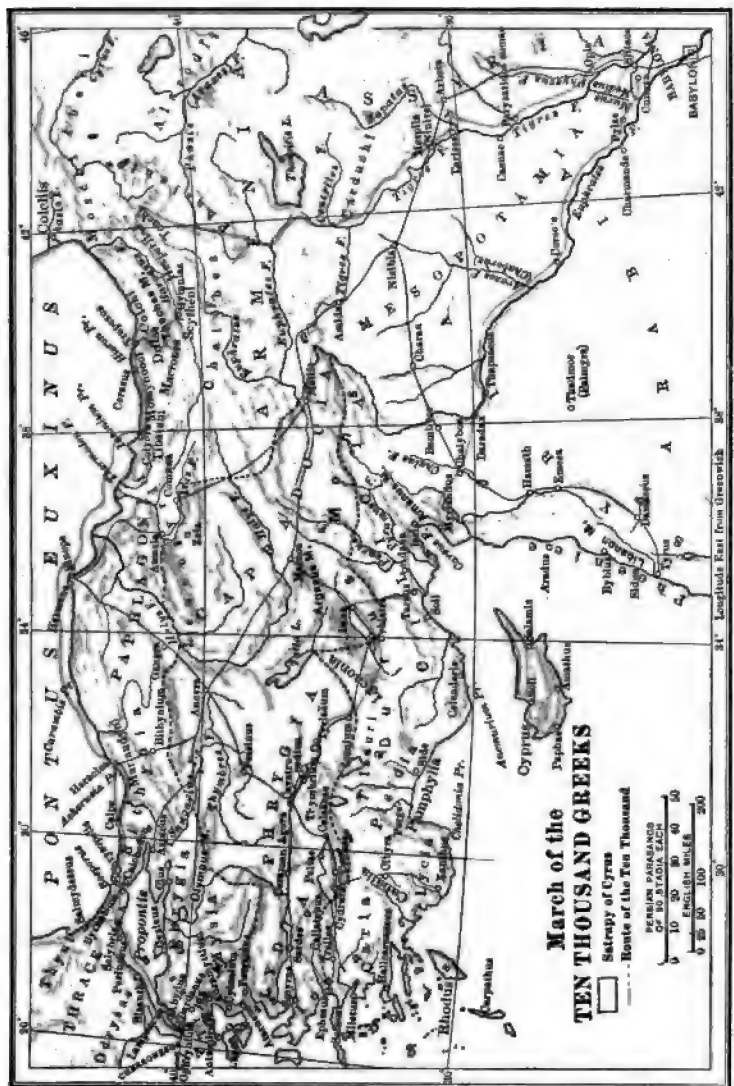
<sup>16</sup> οὐχ ὑπὸ though not by.

<sup>17</sup> φοβούμενοι καὶ ἄκοντες though they feared and were reluctant.

<sup>18</sup> ἀριθμός computation, estimate.



Obol and half-obol.





The thirty following pages contain the first three chapters of Book I of the *Anabasis*. The text and headings are substantially the same as used in Professor Smith's *Anabasis in the Twentieth Century Series*. In these chapters all new words are spaced. The notes with the references therein are to be studied as part of the daily lesson. These references to the Grammar are very important, and in many instances give not only the necessary explanation but also the translation of the passage in hand. They must not be neglected. So, too, if a passage fails to yield sense, consultation of the vocabulary may remove the difficulty by disclosing the full explanation of the expression that causes the trouble.



The Temple of Athēna Niké.

# ΞΕΝΟΦΩΝΤΟΣ ΚΥΡΟΥ ΑΝΑΒΑΣΙΣ

## Α

CYRUS SUMMONED TO HIS FATHER'S DEATHBED. ARTAXERXES  
KING AND CYRUS'S LIFE IN DANGER

Δαρείου καὶ Παρυσάτιδος γίγνονται παῖδες δύο, ἱ  
πρεσβύτερος μὲν Ἀρταξέρξης, νεώτερος δὲ Κύρος·  
ἐπεὶ δὲ ἦσθ' ἐν εἰ Δαρείος καὶ ὑπώπτευε τελευτὴν τοῦ  
βίου, ἐβούλετο τὸ παῖδε ἀμφοτέρω παρεῖναι. ὁ μὲν 2

Time: 405-402 B. C.

1. **Δαρείου καὶ Παρυσάτιδος . . .**  
**δύο** *Dareios and Parysatis had*  
*two sons.* The *from* genitive de-  
notes *origin* 509 a.—**γίγνονται** :  
historical present 454 b; very com-  
mon in lively narration for the  
aorist. Translate it regularly as  
if aorist.—**δύο** : notice the posi-  
tion of the numeral 679 b (2).  
There were thirteen children, four  
sons, but these two only are con-  
cerned in this story.

2. **πρεσβύτερος μὲν . . . νεώτερος**  
**δὲ** *an elder . . . a younger.* Ἀρτα-  
ξέρξης was called **μνήμων** *having a*  
*good memory.* *Kyros* is known as  
*Cyrus the Younger*, thus distin-  
guished from *Cyrus the Great*.

3. **ἦσθ' ἐν εἰ** *was ill.* See *ἀσθενέω*  
in vocab. Learn the references  
there on the derivation and forma-  
tion of this denominative verb,  
and see 399, 415. In general with  
all new words study carefully  
the references in the vocabulary,  
as also with any other words for  
which the vocabulary is consulted.

There are fewer than one hundred  
and fifty new words in these three  
chapters.—**Δαρείος** : the more im-  
portant, here the predicate, precedes.  
Study 675, 677 and a and keep it in  
mind. The line of Persian kings  
was Cyrus the Great, Kambyses,  
Dareios I, Xerxes I, Artaxerxes I,  
Dareios II, Artaxerxes II. This is  
Dareios II, B. C. 424-405.—**ἐπώ-  
πτευε** *apprehended* : see *ὕποπτεω* in  
vocab.—**τελευτὴν τοῦ βίου** *death.*  
In such compound expressions the  
dependent genitive only takes the  
article regularly, as *his life's end* ;  
cp. his lifetime.

4. **τὸ παῖδε ἀμφοτέρω** *both his*  
*sons* : dual acc. subject of *παρεῖναι*.  
For the dual forms see 61, 62, 99 ;  
they are very infrequent in the  
Anabasis.—**ἀμφοτέρω** 554.—  
**παρεῖναι** 570 d.—**ὁ μὲν οὖν πρε-  
σβύτερος** : note the position of *μὲν*  
and *οὖν*, both postpositive, both  
between the article and its noun,  
and *μὲν* preceding.—**μὲν** : looks  
forward to the following 84: cp.  
102.

5 οὖν πρεσβύτερος παρὼν ἐτύγχανε· Κῦρον δὲ μετα-Ι  
πέμπεται ἀπὸ τῆς ἀρχῆς ἧς αὐτὸν σατραπὴν ἐποίησε·  
καὶ στρατηγὸν δὲ αὐτὸν ἀπέδειξε πάντων ὅσοι εἰς  
Καστωλοῦ πεδῖον ἀθροίζονται· ἀναβαίνει οὖν ὁ Κῦρος  
λαβὼν Τισσαφέρην ὡς φίλον καὶ τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἔχων  
10 ὀπλίτας ἀνέβη τριακοσίους, ἄρχοντα δὲ αὐτῶν Ξενίαν  
Παρράσιον· ἐπεὶ δὲ ἐτελεύτησε Δαρεῖος καὶ κατέστη 3

5. οὖν *now*: here continuative, connects this statement with the preceding.—παρὼν 585 a.—Κῦρον δέ: emphatic position 677.—μεταπέμπεται *sent for, summoned*: translate as if aorist: cp. γίνονται in 1 and 454 b.

6. ἧς *of which*.—αὐτὸν σατραπὴν 534.—ἐποίησε, ἀπέδειξε 463.

7. καὶ . . . δέ: the conjunction is δέ *and*; καὶ is an adverb *also*, emphasizing the word after it.—αὐτόν: here as frequently the relative construction, ὃν καὶ στρατηγὸν ἀπέδειξε, is abandoned for the independent 615 a.—πάντων ὅσοι *all who*: note ὅσοι instead of οἱ.

8. ἀθροίζονται *eis muster in*: note the middle *gather themselves*, and *eis w. acc.* after the idea of motion. We say *in*. The present is not historical.—ἀναβαίνει οὖν *accordingly Cyrus went up*: to Babylon, 405 B. C. ἀναβαίνω is the regular word for going from the coast to the interior. Its opposite is καταβαίνω. Notice that the predicate here precedes its subject.—οὖν: here inferential.

9. λαβὼν *taking, with*: ptc. of attendant circumstance. So also

ἔχων in 9: see 583 a end.—ὡς φίλον *as he would a friend, on the pretext of friendship*. Cyrus now held much of the power formerly given to Tissaphernes and was probably afraid to leave his enemy behind.—τῶν Ἑλλήνων: emphatic position.

10. ὀπλίτας: see vocab. and 347, 2.—ἀνέβη: note the aorist with the historical present ἀναβαίνει in 8; note also the repetition of the verb and the inverted order 682 a.—τριακοσίους: position 680 a.—ἄρχοντα αὐτῶν *as their leader*: an appositive of Ξενίαν 502 or 534.

11. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἐτελεύτησε καὶ κατέστη *after the death of Dareios, when Artaxerxes had ascended the throne*: get the meaning of τελευτάω, καθίστημι, βασιλεῖα in the vocabulary.—ἐπεὶ 629.—δὲ *but*: better omitted in translation. It connects this section with the preceding.—Note that the aorists are here best translated by the pluperfect: cp. ἐποίησε and ἀπέδειξε in 6.—Note the position of both subjects after their verbs, while Τισσαφέρην, a new element, comes prominently first.

εἰς τὴν βασιλείᾱν Ἀρταξέρξης, Τισσαφέρνης δια- 1  
βάλλει τὸν Κῦρον πρὸς τὸν ἀδελφὸν ὡς ἐπιβουλεύει  
αὐτῷ. ὁ δὲ πείθεται καὶ λαμβάνει Κῦρον ὡς ἀποκτε-  
15 νῶν· ἡ δὲ μήτηρ ἐξαιτησαμένη αὐτὸν ἀποπέμπει  
πάλιν ἐπὶ τὴν ἀρχήν.

## CYRUS IN REVENGE PLOTS HIS BROTHER'S OVERTHROW

Ὁ δ' ὡς ἀπῆλθε κινδυνεύσας καὶ ἀτίμασθεις, 4  
βουλεύεται ὅπως μήποτε ἔτι ἔσται ἐπὶ τῷ ἀδελφῷ,

12. *εἰς*: the Greek regards the action while we think of the resultant state.

13. *διαβάλλει* *falsely accused*. The story was that he intended to kill Artaxerxes at the time of the coronation. Xenophon evidently disbelieved the story.—*τὸν Κῦρον* 551 a.—*τὸν ἀδελφόν* 551 d.—*ὡς ἐπιβουλεύει*: *ὡς* how is here not fully equivalent to *ὅτι* 635, 624 b. The idea of saying is implied in *διαβάλλει*.

14. *ὁ δὲ* and *he*: Artaxerxes 549 b. Notice the change of subject. In this demonstrative use the article is printed with an accent in these chapters.—*πείθεται καὶ λαμβάνει* 603.—*ὡς ἀποκτενῶν* 593 a, 583 b: the ptc. denotes purpose or intention. *ὡς* indicates that this was the purpose that was inferred from the king's actions. Translate *apparently intending to put him to death*.

15. *ἐξαιτησαμένη αὐτὸν ἀποπέμπει* begged him off and sent him back: ptc. and verb translated by two verbs connected by *and* 583. The

force of the middle, *for herself*, is lost in translation. Cp. the other compounds of *αἰτέω*: *ἀπ-αἰτέω*, *προσ-αἰτέω*.—*αὐτόν*: the common object expressed but once. English repeats *him*.

17. *ὁ δ' ὡς ἀπῆλθε* when he went away: *ὁ δὲ* is the subject: cp. *ὁ δὲ* in 14. In this meaning, *and he, but he*, it must begin its clause and so precedes *ὡς*.—*ὡς* as, when: we frequently use *as* for *when* 633 c.—*κινδυνεύσας καὶ ἀτίμασθεις* after being in danger and disgrace 583. See *ἀτιμάζω* in vocab. Note that these participles are aorist, rather than present or perfect. Observe everywhere the flexibility of the aorist.

18. *βουλεύεται ὅπως . . . ἐκείνου* he began to plan how he might never again be in the power of his brother but, if possible, might be king in his place.—*ὅπως . . . ἔσται* 638 a.—*ἐπὶ* in the power of: in this figurative use *ἐπὶ* takes the dative; in the literal sense *on*, more frequently the genitive, but the dative is not uncommon.

ἀλλά, ἣν δύνηται, βασιλεύσει ἀντ' ἐκείνου. Παρύ-  
 20 σατις μὲν δὴ ἡ μήτηρ ὑπῆρχε τῷ Κύρῳ, φιλοῦσα  
 αὐτὸν μᾶλλον ἢ τὸν βασιλεύοντα Ἀρταξέρξην. ὅστις  
 δ' ἀφικνεῖτο τῶν παρὰ βασιλέως πρὸς αὐτὸν πάντας  
 οὕτω διατιθεὶς ἀπεπέμπετο ὥστε αὐτῷ μᾶλλον φίλους  
 εἶναι ἢ βασιλεῖ. καὶ τῶν παρ' ἑαυτῷ δὲ βαρβάρων  
 25 ἐπεμελείτο ὡς πολεμεῖν τε ἱκανοὶ εἴησαν καὶ εἰνοϊκῶς  
 ἔχοιεν αὐτῷ. τὴν δὲ Ἑλληνικὴν δύναμιν ἡθροίζεν ὡς  
 μάλιστα ἐδύνατο ἐπικρυπτόμενος, ὅπως ὅτι ἀπα-  
 ρασκευότατον λάβοι βασιλεῖα.

19. ἦν: for ἐάν.—δύνηται 365 a, 276 a; 650.

20. μὲν δὴ: μὲν looks forward to ὅστις δέ: his mother's support contrasted with his own efforts. δὴ now: continuative: cp. μὲν οὖν in 5.—ὑπῆρχε: see ὑπάρχω in the vocab.—φιλοῦσα because she loved him 583. Note the tense.

22. ὅστις ἀφικνεῖτο 618 c: cp. 398, 9. Observe that the relative clause precedes the antecedent.—τῶν παρὰ βασιλέως of those at court: as frequently, the from idea where we make prominent the at idea 400, 7. οἱ παρὰ βασιλεῖ came παρὰ βασιλέως.—βασιλεῖς usually omits the article when designating the king of Persia.—πάντας: plural, as ὅστις is singular in form only. Translate ὅστις . . . πάντας all of the attendants at the king's court who came to him.

23. οὕτω διατιθεὶς ἀπεπέμπετο ὅστε . . . εἶναι he so treated that when he dismissed them they were. See 566 b, ex. 6.—διατιθεὶς: δια-

τίθηναι: observe the tense.—αὐτῷ: like ἑαυτῷ 271.

24. καὶ τῶν παρ' ἑαυτῷ δὲ βαρβάρων and too of the Persians at his own court: καὶ is here also, too and δέ is so far from the beginning of the clause in order to allow the καὶ to contrast the οἱ παρ' ἑαυτῷ with the οἱ παρὰ βασιλέως above.

25. ἐπεμελείτο: ἐπιμελόμαι: we have before used ἐπιμέλομαι. It governs the genitive.—ὡς ἦεν, that, somewhat like ἴνα 636. But the regular form would be ἐπεμελείτο ὅπως οἱ βάρβαροι ἱκανοὶ ἔσονται 638 a. Cp. ἔσται in 18 and 398, 9.—πολεμεῖν ἱκανοὶ ready for carrying on war 565 and a.

26. τὴν δὲ Ἑλληνικὴν . . . ἐπικρυπτόμενος . . . βασιλεῖα while collecting his Greek force he concealed his movements as much as he could that he might catch the king as unprepared as possible; he collected with the utmost secrecy.—δύναμις: emphatic position 677, 679 b (1), (4).

27. ὡς μάλιστα ἐδύνατο 638 f: so

CYRUS, UNDER COVER OF WAR WITH TISSAPHERNES, COLLECTS GREEK MERCENARIES. HIS MOTHER CONNIVES AND THE KING IS HOODWINKED

ᾧδε οὖν ἐποιεῖτο τὴν συλλογὴν. ὁπόσῃς εἶχε φυ- I  
 30 λακὰς ἐν ταῖς πόλεσι παρήγγειλε τοῖς φρουράρ-  
 χοις ἐκάστοις λαμβάνειν ἄνδρας Πελοποννησίου  
 ὅτι πλείστους καὶ βελτίστους, ὡς ἐπιβουλευόντος Τισ-  
 σαφέρνους ταῖς πόλεσι. καὶ γὰρ ἦσαν αἱ Ἴωνικαὶ  
 πόλεις Τισσαφέρνους τὸ ἀρχαῖον ἐκ βασιλέως δεδο-  
 35 μέναι, τότε δὲ ἀφειστήκεσαν πρὸς Κύρον πᾶσαι πλὴν  
 Μιλήτου· ἐν Μιλήτῳ δὲ Τισσαφέρνης προαἰσθό- 7  
 μενος τὰ αὐτὰ ταῦτα βουλευομένους, ἀποστήναι πρὸς  
 Κύρον, τοὺς μὲν αὐτῶν ἀπέκτεινε, τοὺς δ' ἐξέβαλεν. ὁ

ὅτι with ἀπαρασκευάστον: cp. ὡς τάχιστα that we have frequently met.—ὅπως: for ἵνα.

29. ᾧδε in the following manner.—ἐποιεῖτο made his 500 b: cp. mid. ἐξαίτησάμεν in 15.—ὁπόσῃς φυλακὰς . . . λαμβάνειν he sent word to the several commanders of the garrisons that he had in the cities to enlist.—φυλακὰς: antecedent in the relative clause. Again we have the relative clause preceding; but as many garrisons as he had he ordered the several commanders is not the English idiom. That would be τοῖς φρουράρχοις πᾶσων τῶν φυλακῶν ὅσας εἶχε.—φυλακὰς from φυλακή not φύλαξ.

31. ἐκάστοις 554.—ὅτι: cp. ὡς and ὅτι in 27.

32. ὡς ἐπιβουλευόντος asserting that Tissaphernes was plotting against their cities 593 c: ὡς with ptc. here nearly equivalent to λέγων ὅτι ἐπιβουλεύει. For the genitive

absolute see 590 and 255. Cyrus could readily get trained Greek soldiers, as at the close of the Peloponnesian war, B. C. 404, large bodies of men whose only occupation had been war were without employment. Greek soldiers were superior to the Persians in all points.

33. καὶ γὰρ and in fact 672 d.—ἦσαν had belonged to: with the genitive Τισσαφέρνους 508.

34. ἐκ: from emphasizing the source. Translate as if ὑπό by.

35. ἀφειστήκεσαν 457.

36. προαἰσθόμενος discovering beforehand that they were forming this same plan.

37. τὰ αὐτὰ ταῦτα: cognate object of βουλευομένους, which is pred. ptc. object of προαἰσθόμενος.—ἀποστήναι: appositive to τὰ αὐτὰ ταῦτα.

38. τοὺς μὲν . . . τοὺς δὲ some of them . . . others.

- δὲ Κῦρος ὑπολαβὼν τοὺς φεύγοντας συλλέξας στρα-  
 40 τευμα ἐπολιόρκει Μίλητον καὶ κατὰ γῆν καὶ κατὰ  
 θάλατταν καὶ ἐπειράτο κατάγειν τοὺς ἐκπεπτωκότας.  
 καὶ αὕτη αὖ ἄλλη πρόφασις ἦν αὐτῷ τοῦ ἄθροίζειν  
 στρατεύμα. πρὸς δὲ βασιλέᾳ πέμπων ἡξίου ἀδελφὸς 8  
 ὦν αὐτοῦ δοθῆναι οἱ ταύτας τὰς πόλεις μᾶλλον ἢ  
 45 Τισσαφέρην ἄρχειν αὐτῶν, καὶ ἡ μήτηρ συνέπρᾳττεν  
 αὐτῷ ταῦτα· ὥστε βασιλεὺς τὴν μὲν πρὸς ἑαυτὸν ἐπι-  
 βουλήν οὐκ ᾔσθάνετο, Τισσαφέρνει δὲ ἐνόμιζε πολε-  
 μούντα αὐτὸν ἀμφὶ τὰ στρατεύματα δαπανᾶν· ὥστε  
 οὐδὲν ἤχθετο αὐτῶν πολεμούντων. καὶ γὰρ ὁ Κῦρος

39. ὑπολαβὼν: subordinate to the pair συλλέξας ἐπολιόρκει: *taking the exiles under his protection he collected an army and laid siege to Miletos.*

41. ἐκπεπτωκότας: another term for exiles; perfect participle of ἐκπίπτω. Compare in the vocabulary ἐκβάλλω, φεύγω, ἐκπίπτω, κατάγω.

42. πρόφασις: as there is no article, this is predicate. The subject is αὕτη, for τοῦτο, attracted to the gender of the predicate.—αὐτῷ: dat. of possessor.—τοῦ ἄθροισαν: with πρόφασις 575. Translate and in this again he had another pretext for collecting an army. Cp. 75, 11.

43. ἡξίου he demanded: note the tense here and in πέμπων. See 328, 330 and notes throughout the section.

44. οἱ: equivalent to ἑαυτῷ 197: accented because emphatic in contrast to Tissaphernes.

45. συνέπρᾳττεν αὐτῷ ταῦτα *co-operated with him in this*: see 328.

46. ὥστε . . . ᾔσθάνετο 639 a.—τὴν μὲν . . . ἐπιβουλήν *the plot against himself.*

47. Τισσαφέρνει δὲ πολεμούντα: placed first as contrasted by μὲν and δέ with τὴν πρὸς ἑαυτὸν ἐπιβουλήν. The English idiom would naturally put these phrases each at the end of its clause 677 a.—πολεμούντα *because he was engaged in war with Tissaphernes*: ptc. of cause. *He thought his war with Tissaphernes was the reason for his expending money on his armies.*

48. ἀμφί: more commonly εἰς.—ὥστε οὐδὲν and so he was not at all displeased at their being at war.—οὐδέν: cognate accusative 540, 536 b.

49. αὐτῶν πολεμούντων: causal 509 c. It may also be taken under 590.—καὶ γὰρ *besides* 672 d.

50 ἀπέπεμπε τοὺς γιγνομένους δασμοὺς βασιλεῖ ἐκ τῶν ἰ  
πόλεων ὧν Τισσαφέρνους ἐτύγχανεν ἔχων.

## KLEARCHOS IN THE CHERSONESE

\* Ἄλλο δὲ στράτευμα αὐτῷ συνελέγετο ἐν Χερρο- 9  
νήσῳ τῇ κατ' ἀντιπέρᾳς Ἀβύδου τόνδε τὸν τρόπον.  
Κλέαρχος Λακεδαιμόνιος φυγὰς ἦν· τοῦτ' ὡς συγγενό-  
55 μενος ὁ Κῦρος ἡγάσθη τε αὐτὸν καὶ δίδωσιν αὐτῷ  
μυρίους δᾶρεικούς. ὁ δὲ λαβὼν τὸ χρῦσιον  
στράτευμα συνέλεξεν ἀπὸ τούτων τῶν χρημάτων καὶ  
ἐπολέμει ἐκ Χερρονήσου ὁρμώμενος τοῖς Θρᾷξι τοῖς  
ὑπὲρ Ἑλλήσποντον οἰκοῦσι καὶ ὠφέλει τοὺς Ἕλληνας·  
60 ὥστε καὶ χρήματα συνεβάλλοντο αὐτῷ εἰς τὴν  
τροφὴν τῶν στρατιωτῶν αἱ Ἑλλησποντιακαὶ πόλεις

50. τοὺς γιγνομένους *the accruing tribute.*

51. ὧν . . . ἔχων *which he happened to have that belonged to Tissaphernes.*—ὧν: *as* attracted to the case of its antecedent 613 b. —Τισσαφέρνους: *poss. gen. with* ὧν. It would naturally be ἐκ τῶν Τισσαφέρνους πόλεων *as*.

52. αὐτῷ *for him.*—συνελέγετο 459.

53. τῇ *that part of.*—τόνδε τὸν τρόπον *in the following manner* 540: cp. 28: in 29.

54. Κλέαρχος: the chief officer of the Greeks in this expedition. In the Peloponnesian war he commanded the Spartans in Byzantium, but was so severe that the people surrendered the town to the Athenians. Sent to protect the Greek colonies in Thrace but recalled before he got away, he

refused to obey and was banished.

55. ἡγάσθη *came to admire* 464: see 47αμ.

55. δ δὲ 549 b. Probably there was an understanding between them that Klearchos was to assemble this army and hold it in readiness.

57. ἀπὸ *from these means:* for τοῦτοις τοῖς χρήμασι. The Greek emphasizes the *from* relation. We say *with these means*.

58. καὶ ἐπολέμει *and was now carrying on war making his headquarters in the Chersonese.*—ἐκ . . . ὁρμώμενος: note the tense: *setting out from* repeatedly, each time.—Θρᾷξι: with ἐπολέμει 525: cp. Τισσαφέρειν in 47.—τοῖς . . . οἰκοῦσι 552 b.

60. καὶ *also, too.*—συνεβάλλοντο *contributed: συμβάλλω.*—αὐτῷ 520.—*as for*.



ἐκούσαι· τοῦτο δ' αὖ οὕτω τρεφόμενον ἐλάνθανεν ἰ  
αὐτῷ τὸ στράτευμα.

## ARISTIPPOS IN THESSALY

Ἀρίστιππος δὲ ὁ Θετταλὸς ξένος ὢν ἐτύγχανεν <sup>10</sup>  
<sup>65</sup> αὐτῷ, καὶ πιεζόμενος ὑπὸ τῶν οἰκοὶ ἀντιστα-  
σιωτῶν ἔρχεται πρὸς τὸν Κῦρον καὶ αἰτεῖ αὐτὸν εἰς  
δισχιλίους ξένους καὶ τριῶν μηνῶν μισθόν, ὥς οὕτως  
περιγενόμενος ἂν τῶν ἀντιστασιωτῶν. ὁ δὲ Κῦρος  
δίδωσιν αὐτῷ εἰς τετρακισχιλίους καὶ ἕξ μηνῶν μισθόν,  
<sup>70</sup> καὶ δεῖται αὐτοῦ μὴ πρόσθεν καταλῦσαι πρὸς τοὺς  
ἀντιστασιωτᾶς πρὶν ἂν αὐτῷ συμβουλευσῇται. οὕτω  
δὲ αὖ τὸ ἐν Θετταλίᾳ ἐλάνθανεν αὐτῷ τρεφόμενον  
στράτευμα.

Πρόξενον δὲ τὸν Βοιωτίον ξένον ὄντα ἐκέλευσε λα- <sup>11</sup>

62. ἰκοῦσαι *willingly*.—τοῦτο δ' αὖ . . . τὸ στράτευμα *in this way again this army was secretly supported for him*.—τρεφόμενον 585 a.

63. τὸ στράτευμα: needed to make τοῦτο clear but left for the least prominent place, the end, as wholly without emphasis.

64. ξένος *guest-friend*. The word means *stranger*; then *guest* or *host*. Below ξένοι is used euphemistically, as frequently, for *μισθοφόροι hired troops, mercenaries*, as if *bound by ties of hospitality*.

65. ὑπὸ τῶν οἰκοὶ ἀντιστασιωτῶν *by his opponents at home*.—οἰκοὶ 585 a.

66. αἰτεῖ αὐτὸν . . . μισθόν *asked him for three months' pay for two*

*thousand troops*. εἰς . . . ξένους and τριῶν μηνῶν, 506 a, both modify μισθόν and are connected by καὶ, which is better omitted in translation.

67. ὥς οὕτως . . . ἂν *saying that thus he would* 595, 479.—οὕτως 481.

68. ἀντιστασιωτῶν 509 b.

70. δεῖται αὐτοῦ 509 a.—πρός: see vocab.: translate *with*.—πρόσθεν: anticipates πρὶν and need not be translated separately.

71. πρὶν ἂν 644 b.

72. τὸ ἐν Θετταλίᾳ στράτευμα *the army in Thessaly*.

74. ὄντα *who was*.—λαμβάντα . . . παραγνίσθαι *to enlist* . . . and come: participle and verb equivalent to two verbs with *and*.

15 βόντα ἄνδρας ὅτι πλείστους παραγενέσθαι, ὥς εἰς I  
Πισιδᾶς βουλόμενος στρατεύεσθαι, ὥς πράγματα παρ-  
εχόντων τῶν Πισιδῶν τῇ ἑαυτοῦ χώρᾳ.

Σοφαίνεται δὲ τὸν Στυμφάλιον καὶ Σωκράτην τὸν  
'Αχαιοῖν, ξένους ὄντας καὶ τούτους, ἐκέλευσεν ἄνδρας  
80 λαβόντας ἐλθεῖν ὅτι πλείστους, ὥς πολεμήσων Τισσα-  
φέρνει σὺν τοῖς φυγάσι τοῖς Μίλησιων. καὶ ἐποίουν  
οὕτως οὗτοι.

PRETENSE OF ATTACKING THE PISIDIANS. MUSTER OF THE  
TROOPS AT SARDEIS

Ἐπεὶ δ' ἐδόκει ἤδη πορεύεσθαι αὐτῷ ἄνω, τὴν μὲν II  
πρόφασιν ἐποιεῖτο ὥς Πισιδᾶς βουλόμενος ἐκβαλεῖν  
παντάπασις ἐκ τῆς χώρᾳς· καὶ ἀθροίζει ὥς ἐπὶ τού-

75. ὥς . . . βουλόμενος *saying that he wished* 593 c: the reason he gave for his order.—*εἰς into the territory of, against.*

76. ὥς πράγματα παρεχόντων *asserting that the Pisidians were making trouble* 590.

80. λαβόντας ἐλθεῖν: λαβεῖν καὶ ἐλθεῖν *to enlist and come.*—ὥς πολεμήσων *telling them that he was going to make war on:* fut. ptc. of an intended act.

Notice these uses of ὥς with the participle: with ὥς the participle states the cause, reason, purpose, or fact *subjectively*, as held or alleged by the agent; without ὥς, *objectively*, as stated by the writer. The truth or falsity of the statement is implied by the context, not indicated by ὥς; nor does ὥς imply a condition or a purpose in

the participle. Compare ὥς πολεμήσων 80, ὥς παρεχόντων 76, ὥς βουλόμενος 75, ὥς περιγενόμενος ἂν 67, ὥς ἐπιβουλεύοντος 32, and ὥς ἀποκτενῶν 14 with ὥς ἐπιβουλεύοι 13.

81. σὺν *with the aid of*: Xenophon uses the poetical σὺν and the dative very frequently for the regular μετὰ and the genitive.—τοῖς Μίλησιων 552 b: cp. τοῖς οἰκοῦσι in 59.

## II

1. αὐτῷ 520 b.—ἤδη *finally*: early in 401 B.C.—ἄνω *inland*: cp. ἀνά in ἀναβαίνω.—μὲν: the contrasted idea is not expressed: τῷ δ' ὄντι ἐπὶ βασιλείᾳ ἐπορεύετο.

2. ὥς βουλόμενος *that he wished*: cp. on I 80.

3. ὥς ἐπὶ τούτους *ostensibly against these.*

- τους τό τε βαρβαρικὸν καὶ τὸ Ἑλληνικόν. ἐνταῦθα II  
 5 καὶ παραγγέλλει τῷ τε Κλεάρχῳ λαβόντι ἦκειν ὅσον  
 ἦν αὐτῷ στράτευμα, καὶ τῷ Ἀριστίπῳ συναλλα-  
 γέντι πρὸς τοὺς οἴκοι ἀποπέμψαι πρὸς ἑαυτὸν ὃ εἶχε  
 στράτευμα· καὶ Ξενίᾳ τῷ Ἀρκάδι, ὃς αὐτῷ προειστήκει  
 τοῦ ἐν ταῖς πόλεσι ξενικοῦ, ἦκειν παραγγέλλει λα-  
 10 βόντα τοὺς ἄλλους πλὴν ὅποσοι ἱκανοὶ ἦσαν τὰς  
 ἀκροπόλεις φυλάττειν. ἐκάλεσε δὲ καὶ τοὺς Μίλητον<sup>2</sup>  
 πολιορκοῦντας, καὶ τοὺς φυγάδας ἐκέλευσε σὺν αὐτῷ  
 στρατεύεσθαι, ὑποσχόμενος αὐτοῖς, εἰ καλῶς κατα-  
 πράξειεν ἐφ' ᾧ ἐστρατεύετο, μὴ πρόσθεν παύσα-  
 15 σθαι πρὶν αὐτοὺς καταγάγοι οἴκαδε. οἱ δὲ ἡδέως ἐπέ-  
 θοντο· ἐπίστευον γὰρ αὐτῷ· καὶ λαβόντες τὰ ὄπλα  
 παρήσαν εἰς Σάρδεις. Ξενίᾱς μὲν δὴ τοὺς ἐκ τῶν<sup>3</sup>

4 βαρβαρικόν *Persian*. — ἐν-  
 ταῦθα: with ἦκειν: there at Sar-  
 deis.

5. καί: correlative to καί in 8.  
 — τε: correlative to καί in 6. —  
 λαβόντι ἦκειν *to come with*: λα-  
 βόντι: dat. with Κλεάρχῳ instead  
 of λαβόντα agreeing with the im-  
 plied subject of ἦκειν 571 c. —  
 ὅσον ἦν αὐτῷ στράτευμα *all the*  
*force he had*: for πᾶν τὸ στράτευμα  
 ὅσον ἦν αὐτῷ 613 d: cp. ὁπόσας φυλα-  
 κάς I 29 and ὃ εἶχε στράτευμα in 7.

6. συναλλαγέντι πρὸς *to come to*  
*terms with* . . . and. Aristippos  
 sent Menon.

8. προειστήκει 457. — αὐτῷ *for*  
*him*: see 271.

10. λαβόντα 571 c: cp. λαβόντι  
 in 5. — πλὴν ὁπόσοι: *for πλὴν*  
*τοσούτων ὅσοι* 518 c.

11. φυλάττειν 565 a. — ἐκάλεσε,

ἐκέλευσε *summoned, urged*: chias-  
 mus 682 a.

13. ὑποσχόμενος αὐτοῖς *promis-*  
*ing them*: aor. ptc. time coincident  
 with ἐκέλευσε. — εἰ καλῶς κατα-  
 πράξειεν . . . ἐστρατεύετο *if he*  
*should successfully accomplish the*  
*object for which he was making the*  
*expedition*: the original thought  
 was: ἐὰν καταπράξῃ . . . στρατεύο-  
 μαι. See 651 (3): quoted condition.

14. ἐφ' ᾧ: *for ταῦτα ἐπὶ ᾧ* 614.  
 — ἐστρατεύετο: tense changed as  
 in the English idiom. The more  
 common Greek form would retain  
 the tense and use στρατεύεται or  
 στρατεύοιτο 624 a, b, c. — μή παύ-  
 σασθαι: μή is the regular negative  
 after verbs of promising.

15. πρὶν 644 c.

16. αὐτῷ 520 a.

17. παρήσαν *eis came to*. — ὃ

πόλεων λαβὼν παρεγένετο εἰς Σάρδεις ὀπλίτας εἰς **II**  
 τετρακισχίλιους, Πρῶξενος δὲ παρῆν ἔχων ὀπλίτας μὲν  
 20 εἰς πεντακοσίους καὶ χιλίους, γυμνήτας δὲ πεντα-  
 κοσίους, Σοφαίνετος δὲ ὁ Στυμφάλιος ὀπλίτας ἔχων  
 χιλίους, Σωκράτης δὲ ὁ Ἀχαιοὺς ὀπλίτας ἔχων ὡς πεν-  
 τακοσίους, Πᾶσιων δὲ ὁ Μεγαρεὺς τριακοσίους μὲν  
 ὀπλίτας, τριακοσίους δὲ πελταστὰς ἔχων παρεγένετο.  
 25 ἦν δὲ καὶ οὗτος καὶ ὁ Σωκράτης τῶν ἀμφὶ Μίλητον  
 στρατευομένων. οὗτοι μὲν εἰς Σάρδεις αὐτῷ ἀφίκοντο.

## TISSAPHERNES WARNS THE KING

Τισσαφέρνης δὲ κατανόησας ταῦτα, καὶ μείζονα **4**  
 ἡγησάμενος εἶναι ἢ ὡς ἐπὶ Πισιδᾶς τὴν παρα-  
 σκευήν, πορεύεται ὡς βασιλεῖα ἢ ἐδύνατο τάχιστα  
 30 ἰππέας ἔχων ὡς πεντακοσίους. καὶ βασιλεὺς μὲν δὴ **5**  
 ἐπεὶ ἤκουσε Τισσαφέρνους τὸν Κύρου στόλον, ἀντι-  
 παρῆσκεν ἄξιο.

accordingly.—τοὺς ἐκ τῶν πό-  
 λεων: the *from* idea again promi-  
 nent: translate *taking the men in*  
*the cities*: cp. *οἱ παρὰ βασιλέως* I 22.  
 But we may say *came with the men*  
*from the cities*.

19. εἰς τετρακισχίλιους *to the*  
*number of, about*.—Note care-  
 fully μὲν and δέ throughout this  
 section.—ἔχων 583 a end.

22. ὡς *about*: note that ὡς is  
 an adverb and does not affect the  
 case, while εἰς, so ἀμφὶ in 70, is a  
 preposition and requires the accu-  
 sative: ἄνδρες ὡς χίλιοι, ἄνδρες εἰς  
 χίλιους.

23. τριακοσίους μὲν 682 o end.

25. ἦν: agrees with the nearer

subject.—τῶν . . . στρατευομένων  
 508.—ἀμφὶ: the regular prose  
 word is περί.

26. οὗτοι μὲν: in contrast with  
 those who came later.—αὐτῷ *for*  
*him, at his orders*.

27. μείζονα . . . ἢ ὡς *greater*  
*than as*: in English becomes *too*  
*great to be* 586 a.

29. ὡς βασιλεῖα: prep. *to*. Re-  
 view the uses of ὡς in the vocabu-  
 lary.—ἢ ἐδύνατο τάχιστα: cp.  
 the frequent ὡς ἐδύνατο τάχιστα.  
 ἢ, for ταύτῃ τῇ ὁδῷ ἢ, is equivalent  
 to ὡς.

30. μὲν δὴ 671 o (2).

31. ἤκουσε: with gen. and acc.  
 511 a.

DEPARTURE FROM SARDEIS. MARCH THROUGH LYDIA AND PHRY-  
GIA. ROYAL PALACE AT KELAINAI. MYTH OF MARSYAS. RE-  
VIEW AND ENUMERATION OF TROOPS

Κῦρος δὲ ἔχων οὓς εἶρηκα ὠρμάτο ἀπὸ Σάρδεων  
καὶ ἐξελαύνει διὰ τῆς Λυδίας σταθμούς τρεῖς παρα-  
85 σάγγας εἴκοσι καὶ δύο ἐπὶ τὸν Μαίανδρον ποταμόν.  
τούτου τὸ εὖρος δύο πλέθρα· γέφυρα δὲ ἐπ' ἣν ἑπτὰ  
ἐξευγμένη πλοίοις. τοῦτον διαβὰς ἐξελαύνει διὰ 8  
Φρυγίᾳ σταθμὸν ἓνα παρασάγγας ὀκτὼ εἰς Κολοσ-  
σάς, πόλιν οἰκουμένην καὶ εὐδαίμονα καὶ μεγάλην. ἐν-  
40 ταῦθα ἔμεινεν ἡμέρας ἑπτὰ· καὶ ἦκε Μένων Θετταλὸς  
ὀπλίτας ἔχων χιλίους καὶ πελταστὰς πεντακοσίους,  
Δόλοπας καὶ Αἰνιᾶνας καὶ Ὀλυνθίους. ἐντεῦθεν ἐξε- 7  
λαύνει σταθμούς τρεῖς παρασάγγας εἴκοσιν εἰς Κε-  
λαινας, τῆς Φρυγίᾳ πόλιν οἰκουμένην, μεγάλην καὶ  
45 εὐδαίμονα. ἐνταῦθα Κύρῳ βασιλεία ἦν καὶ παράδει-  
σος μέγας ἀγρίων θηρίων πλήρης, ἃ ἐκεῖνος ἐθή-  
ρευεν ἀπὸ ἵππου, ὅποτε γυμνάσαι βούλοιτο ἑαυτὸν τε  
καὶ τοὺς ἵππους. διὰ μέσου δὲ τοῦ παραδείσου ῥεῖ ὁ  
Μαίανδρος ποταμός· αἱ δὲ πηγαὶ αὐτοῦ εἰσιν ἐκ τῶν  
50 βασιλείων· ῥεῖ δὲ καὶ διὰ τῆς Κελαινῶν πόλεως. ἔστι 8  
δὲ καὶ μεγάλου βασιλέως βασιλεία ἐν Κελαιναῖς ἐρυ-  
μνὰ ἐπὶ ταῖς πηγαῖς τοῦ Μαρσίου ποταμοῦ ὑπὸ τῇ

33. οὓς εἶρηκα *those whom I have mentioned*: see φημι.—ὠρμάτο: perhaps March 9, 401 B. C.

35. Μαίανδρον: the common position for the name of a river, between the article and noun.

36. ἐπ' ἣν: imperf. of ἐπ-εἶναι.

37. ἐξευγμένη: perf. pass. ptc. of ζεύγνυμι. See vocab. — τοῦτον 600 (2).

39. οἰκουμένην *inhabited*: many cities in this region were deserted.

40. Μένων: sent by Aristippos.

45. Κύρῳ 524 a.

47. ὅποτε βούλοιτο 627 end.

48. διὰ μέσου *through the middle of*.

49. ἐκ: we say *in*. Cp. 339, 1, 341, 3-6.

50. ἔστι 20 c.

ἀκροπόλει· ρεῖ δὲ καὶ οὗτος διὰ τῆς πόλεως καὶ ἐμ- II  
βάλλει εἰς τὸν Μαίανδρον· τοῦ δὲ Μαρσύου τὸ εὐρὸς  
55 ἐστὶν εἴκοσι καὶ πέντε ποδῶν. ἐνταῦθα λέγεται Ἀπόλ-  
λων ἐκδεῖραι Μαρσύαν νικήσας ἐρίζοντά οἱ περὶ  
σοφίᾳς, καὶ τὸ δέρμα κρεμάσαι ἐν τῷ ἄντρῳ  
ὅθεν αἱ πηγαί· διὰ δὲ τοῦτο ὁ ποταμὸς καλεῖται Μαρ-  
σύας. ἐνταῦθα Ξέρξης, ὅτε ἐκ τῆς Ἑλλάδος ἡγτηθεὶς 9  
60 τῇ μάχῃ ἀπεχώρει, λέγεται οἰκοδομησάι ταῦτά τε  
τὰ βασιλεια καὶ τὴν Κελαινῶν ἀκρόπολιν. ἐνταῦθα  
ἔμεινε Κῦρος ἡμέρας τριάκοντα· καὶ ἦκε Κλέαρχος ὁ  
Λακεδαιμόνιος φυγὰς ἔχων ὀπλίτας χιλίους καὶ πελ-  
ταστὰς Θρᾷκας ὀκτακοσίους καὶ τοξότας Κρήτας διᾶ-  
65 κοσίους. ἅμα δὲ καὶ Σῶσις παρῆν ὁ Συρᾶκόσιος ἔχων  
ὀπλίτας τριάκοσίους, καὶ Σοφαίνετος Ἀρκάδας ἔχων  
ὀπλίτας χιλίους. καὶ ἐνταῦθα Κῦρος ἐξέτασιν καὶ  
ἀριθμὸν τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἐποίησεν ἐν τῷ παραδείσῳ, καὶ  
ἐγένοντο οἱ σύμπαντες ὀπλῖται μὲν μύριοι χίλιοι, πελ-  
70 τασταὶ δὲ ἀμφὶ τοὺς δισχιλίους.

55. λέγεται . . . ἐκδεῖραι *Apollo is said to have flayed*: personal construction, more common in Greek than the impersonal. Translate as best suits the English. The impersonal form is λέγεται Ἀπόλλωνα ἐκδεῖραι *it is said that etc.* 574 a, 578 a.

56. ἐκδεῖραι: aor. act. inf. of ἐκδέρω.—ἐρίζοντα *in a contest*: ptc. —οἱ: for ἐαυτῶ, unaccented because unemphatic.

57. σοφίᾳς *skill* in music. See under Μαρσύας for the story.

59. ὅτε . . . ἀπεχώρει 627.—ἡγτηθεὶς τῇ μάχῃ *after his defeat in the (well known) battle of Salamis*, 480 B. C.

60. μάχῃ: the Greek regards this as means 526 a, and omits the preposition.

62. ἔμεινε: perhaps March 20 to April 19, 401 B. C.

66. Σοφαίνετος: had already joined at Sardeis, II 21: probably a slip for Ἀγίλας.

68. ἐποίησεν: usually middle in this use: cp. ποιεῖται 99.

69. σύμπαντες: see under σύμπας in vocab.—Notice μὲν . . . δέ. The position of μὲν shows that ὀπλῖται is not taken with οἱ σύμπαντες, but is predicate, with οἱ σύμπαντες as subject, of ἐγένοντο.

70. τοὺς: the article is common

CELEBRATION OF THE LYKAIA. VISIT OF EPYAXA. ARREARS PAID II  
TO THE TROOPS

Ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει σταθμοὺς δύο παρασάγγας δέκα <sup>10</sup>  
εἰς Πέλτας, πόλιν οἰκουμένην. ἔνταυθ' ἔμεινεν ἡμέρας  
τρεῖς· ἐν αἷς Ξενιάς ὁ Ἄρκας τὰ Λύκαια ἔθυσσε καὶ  
ἀγῶνα ἔθηκε· τὰ δὲ ἄθλα ἦσαν στλεγγίδες  
<sup>75</sup> χρῦσαί· ἐθεώρει δὲ τὸν ἀγῶνα καὶ Κῦρος. ἐν-  
τεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει σταθμοὺς δύο παρασάγγας δώδεκα  
εἰς Κεράμων ἀγοράν, πόλιν οἰκουμένην, ἐσχήτην  
πρὸς τῇ Μυσιᾷ χώρᾳ. ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει σταθμοὺς <sup>11</sup>  
τρεῖς παρασάγγας τριάκοντα εἰς Καῦστρου πεδίου,  
<sup>80</sup> πόλιν οἰκουμένην. ἔνταυθ' ἔμεινεν ἡμέρας πέντε· καὶ  
τοῖς στρατιώταις ὠφείλετο μισθὸς πλεόν ἢ τριῶν μη-  
νῶν, καὶ πολλάκις ἰόντες ἐπὶ τὰς θύρας ἀπήτουν. ὁ δὲ  
ἐλπίδας λέγων διήγε καὶ δῆλος ἦν ἀνιώμενος·  
οὐ γὰρ ἦν πρὸς τοῦ Κύρου τρόπον ἔχοντα μὴ ἀπο-

in approximate numbers. The exact number as already enumerated was heavy-armed 11,600, light-armed 2,300. The *πελτασταί* here include the *τοξόται* and the *γυμῆτες*.

71. *ἐντεῦθεν* κτλ.: see the whole passage in 679 c.

73. *ἐν αἷς* at this time: supply *ἡμέραις*.—τὰ Λύκαια 536 a.

74. ἦσαν: pl. with the predicate *στλεγγίδες* instead of the regular *ἦν* with the neut. pl. *ἄθλα*.

75. *χρῦσαι*: see 87-90.

77. Κεράμων ἀγοράν: the march from Kelainai has been northwest while before it had been southeast. Cyrus here strikes the main road and continues east.

79. παρασάγγας τριάκοντα: the longest marches recorded in the *Anabasis*.

81. πλέον ἤ: adverbial for *πλείονος ἤ*.—τριῶν μηνῶν: measure 506; cp. I 67.

82. ἀπήτουν: ἀπ-αἰτέω: note ἀπό in comp. Cp. ἀποδιδόναι in 84.

83. λέγων διήγε kept expressing hopes 585 a: but see also 583, ex. 3. διήγω has both meanings put off and continue.—ἀνιώμενος troubled 585 a: ἀνίδω.

84. οὐ γὰρ ἦν . . . μὴ ἀποδιδόναι it was not like Cyrus not to pay when he had the money.—πρός: see vocab.—ἔχοντα: with the understood subject of ἀποδιδόναι.—μή 564.

85 δίδοναι. ἐνταῦθα ἀφικνεῖται Ἐπύαξα ἡ Συεννέσιος Π  
 γυνὴ τοῦ Κιλικῶν βασιλέως παρὰ Κύρον· καὶ ἐλέγετο 12  
 Κύρῳ δούναι χρήματα πολλά. τῇ δ' οὖν στρατιᾷ  
 τότε ἀπέδωκε Κύρος μισθὸν τεττάρων μηνῶν. εἶχε δὲ  
 ἡ Κίλισσα φυλακὴν περὶ αὐτὴν Κίλικας καὶ Ἀσπεν-  
 90 δίους· ἐλέγετο δὲ καὶ συγγενέσθαι Κύρον τῇ Κιλίσσῃ.

MIDAS AND THE SATYR. GENERAL REVIEW AT TYRLÆION. MOCK  
 CHARGE OF THE GREEKS. FRIGHT OF EPYAXA AND THE BAR-  
 BARIANS

Ἐντεῦθεν δὲ ἐξελαύνει σταθμοὺς δύο παρασάγγας 13  
 δέκα εἰς Θύμβριον, πόλιν οἰκουμένην. ἐνταῦθα ἦν  
 παρὰ τὴν ὁδὸν κρήνη ἡ Μίδου καλουμένη τοῦ Φρυ-  
 γῶν βασιλέως, ἐφ' ἣ λέγεται Μίδας τὸν Σάτυρον  
 95 θηρεῦσαι οἶνῳ κεράσας αὐτήν. ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει 14  
 σταθμοὺς δύο παρασάγγας δέκα εἰς Τυριάειον, πόλιν  
 οἰκουμένην. ἐνταῦθα ἔμεινεν ἡμέρας τρεῖς. καὶ λέ-  
 γεται δεηθῆναι ἡ Κίλισσα Κύρου ἐπιδεῖξαι τὸ στρά-  
 τευμα αὐτῇ· βουλόμενος οὖν ἐπιδεῖξαι ἐξέτασιν ποιεῖ-  
 100 ται ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ τῶν Ἑλλήνων καὶ τῶν βαρβάρων.  
 ἐκέλευσε δὲ τοὺς Ἑλλήνας ὡς νόμος αὐτοῖς εἰς μάχην 15

87. δοῦναι. 578 a. Syennesis and Epyaxa played a double part, helping both sides.—οὖν at any rate.

88. ἀπέδωκε 462. At this time the pay was a daric a month.

90. ἐλέγετο . . . Κύρον: impersonal for the common personal construction. Κύρον is subject of the infinitive and the whole clause the subject of ἐλέγετο. See 574 and 404, 13.

93. παρὰ τὴν ὁδόν: we might

expect παρὰ τῇ ὁδῷ.—καλουμένη 583 b.

95. οἶνῳ 525: we reverse the Greek: by mixing wine with it.—κεράσας: aor. ptc. of κερδνῶμι.

98. δεηθῆναι . . . Κύρου: cp. δεῖται αὐτοῦ I 70.—ἐπιδεῖξαι: aor. inf. of ἐπι-δείκνυμι.

99. ποιῆται held.

101. ὡς νόμος 633 a: again the relative preceding: οὕτω . . . ὡς in the manner in which.



οὕτω ταχθῆναι καὶ στήναι, συντάξαι δ' ἕκαστον τοὺς Π  
 ἑαυτοῦ. ἐτάχθησαν οὖν ἐπὶ τεττάρων· εἶχε δὲ τὸ μὲν  
 δεξιὸν Μένων καὶ οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ, τὸ δὲ εὐώνυμον Κλέαρ-  
 108 χος καὶ οἱ ἐκείνου, τὸ δὲ μέσον οἱ ἄλλοι στρατηγοί·  
 ἐθεώρει οὖν ὁ Κῦρος πρῶτον μὲν τοὺς βαρβάρους· οἱ<sup>16</sup>  
 δὲ παρήλαννον τεταγμένοι κατὰ ἰλᾶς καὶ κατὰ τάξεις·  
 εἶτα δὲ τοὺς Ἑλλήνας, παρελάνων ἐφ' ἄρματος καὶ  
 ἢ Κίλισσα ἐφ' ἄρμα μάξης. εἶχον δὲ πάντες  
 110 κράνη χαλκᾶ καὶ χιτῶνας φοινῖκοῦς καὶ  
 κνημίδας καὶ τὰς ἀσπίδας ἐκκεκαλυμμένᾱς.  
 ἐπειδὴ δὲ πάντας παρήλασε, στήσας τὸ ἄρμα πρὸ τῆς<sup>17</sup>  
 φάλαγγος μέσης, πέμψας Πίγρητα τὸν ἑρμηνεῖα παρὰ  
 τοὺς στρατηγοὺς τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἐκέλευσε προβαλέ-  
 115 σθαι τὰ ὄπλα καὶ ἐπιχωρῆσαι ὅλην τὴν φά-  
 λαγγα. οἱ δὲ ταῦτα προεῖπον τοῖς στρατιώταις·  
 καὶ ἐπεὶ ἐσάλπιγξε, προβαλόμενοι τὰ ὄπλα ἐπῆ-

102. συντάξαι δ' ἕκαστον τοὺς ἑαυτοῦ *and each (commander) to arrange his own men together.*

103. ἐπὶ τεττάρων *four deep*: 10,600 hoplites arranged thus would extend over a mile and a half. The usual arrangement ἐπὶ φάλαγγος was eight deep, though sometimes twelve. This whole display was intended to impress the Kilikians with the strength of the army.—εἶχε: agrees with the nearest subject: cp. ἦν in 25.

104. τὸ δεξιόν: the post of danger, and therefore of honor, as the shield was carried on the left arm and the right side was unprotected.—οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ: Xenophon's frequent expression for οἱ μετ' αὐτοῦ

or οἱ περὶ αὐτόν.—τὸ εὐώνυμον: see vocab.

109. εἶχον: translate twice: *they all wore . . . and carried their shields uncovered*, that is without the leather case in which they were kept on the march.

110. χαλκᾶ, φοινῖκοῦς: see 87-90.

115. ἐπιχωρῆσαι ὅλην τὴν φάλαγγα *the whole line to advance*: ὅλος regularly takes the predicate position; but we may say *the line to advance in a body*. The usual word for *advance* is ἐπιέναι: see ἐπῆσαν in 117.

117. ἐσάλπιγξε: a subject σάλπιγξ is understood; see vocab. σάλπιζω.

σαν. ἐκ δὲ τούτου θάπτον προϊόντων σὺν κραυγῇ ἀπὸ II  
 τοῦ αὐτομάτου δρόμος ἐγένετο τοῖς στρατιώταις  
 120 ἐπὶ τὰς σκηναῖς, τῶν δὲ βαρβάρων φόβος πολὺς, καὶ 18  
 ἢ τε Κίλισσα ἔφυγεν ἐπὶ τῆς ἄρμαμάξης καὶ οἱ ἐκ  
 τῆς ἀγορᾶς καταλιπόντες τὰ ὄνια ἔφυγον. οἱ δὲ  
 Ἕλληνες σὺν γέλῳτι ἐπὶ τὰς σκηναῖς ἦλθον. ἡ δὲ  
 Κίλισσα ἰδοῦσα τὴν λαμπρότητα καὶ τὴν τάξιν  
 125 τοῦ στρατεύματος ἐθαύμασε. Κῦρος δὲ ᾗσθη τὸν  
 ἐκ τῶν Ἑλλήνων εἰς τοὺς βαρβάρους φόβον ἰδών.

## EPYCHA RETURNS HOME

Ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει σταθμοὺς τρεῖς παρασάγγας 19  
 εἴκοσιν εἰς Ἰκόνιον, τῆς Φρυγίᾳς πόλιν ἐσχάτην. ἐν-  
 ταῦθα ἔμεινε τρεῖς ἡμέρας. ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει διὰ τῆς  
 130 Λυκαονίᾳς σταθμοὺς πέντε παρασάγγας τριάκοντα.  
 ταύτην τὴν χώραν ἐπέτρεψε διαρπάσαι τοῖς Ἕλλησιν  
 ὡς πολεμίαν οὔσαν. ἐντεῦθεν Κῦρος τὴν Κίλισσαν 20

118. ἐκ δὲ τούτου . . . σκηναῖς  
*thereupon, as they were advancing  
 more and more rapidly, the sol-  
 diers of their own accord raised  
 a shout and began to run toward  
 their tents.* — προϊόντων 590 a.  
 — σὺν κραυγῇ: the dative with-  
 out σὺν, or a participle, is the regu-  
 lar Attic prose usage. Compare  
 also on I 81.

119. δρόμος ἐγένετο: *running  
 arose for the soldiers* is not the  
 English idiom: cp. *ἔρις ἐγένετο*  
 340, 341, 22 and 524 a.

120. τῶν βαρβάρων 506 a, *subjective*:  
 for ἐν τοῖς βαρβάροις. — καὶ  
 connects the τε . . . καὶ clauses  
 with what precedes.

121. ἔφυγεν, ἔφυγον: note the

repetition 681 c. — οἱ ἐκ τῆς ἀγο-  
 ρᾶς: for οἱ ἐν τῇ ἀγορᾷ.

123. σὺν γέλῳτι: for γέλῳτι or  
 γελῶντες: cp. on σὺν κραυγῇ in  
 118.

124. ἰδοῦσα, ἰδών: aor. ptc., time  
 coincident with the main verbs.  
 Note the chiasmic arrangement  
 ἰδοῦσα . . . ἐθαύμασε, ᾗσθη . . . ἰδών  
 682 a.

125. τὸν . . . φόβον *the fright  
 which the Greeks had given the  
 Orientals*: note both prep. phrases  
 in *attributive position*, and what  
 prepositions are used.

131. διαρπάσαι 565.

132. ὡς . . . οὔσαν 593 c: cp. on  
 I 80. He had passed the borders  
 of his own satrapy.

εἰς τὴν Κιλικίαν ἀποπέμπει τὴν ταχίστην ὁδόν· καὶ ἡ  
 συνέπεμψεν αὐτῇ τοὺς στρατιώτας οὓς Μένων εἶχε καὶ  
 135 αὐτόν. Κῦρος δὲ μετὰ τῶν ἄλλων ἐξελαύνει διὰ Καπ-  
 παδοκίᾳς σταθμοὺς τέτταρας παρασάγγας εἴκοσι καὶ  
 πέντε πρὸς Δάνα, πόλιν οἰκουμένην, μεγάλην καὶ εὐ-  
 δαίμονα. ἐνταῦθα ἔμειναν ἡμέρας τρεῖς· ἐν ᾧ Κῦρος  
 ἀπέκτεινεν ἄνδρα Πέρσῃν Μεγαφέρνην, φοινικι-  
 140 στὴν βασιλείον, καὶ ἕτερόν τινα τῶν ὑπάρχων  
 δυνάστην, αἰτιασάμενος ἐπιβουλεύειν αὐτῷ.

CYRUS PASSES THE KILIKIAN GATES AND REACHES TARSOS

Ἐντεῦθεν ἐπειρῶντο εἰσβάλλειν εἰς τὴν Κιλικίαν· ἡ 21  
 δὲ εἰσβολὴ ἦν ὁδὸς ἀμαξιτὸς ὀρθιᾷ ἰσχυρῶς καὶ ἀμή-  
 χανος εἰσελθεῖν στρατεύματι, εἴ τις ἐκώλυνεν. ἐλέγετο  
 145 δὲ καὶ Σύννεσις εἶναι ἐπὶ τῶν ἄκρων φυλάττων τὴν  
 εἰσβολήν· διὸ ἔμειναν ἡμέραν ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ. τῇ δὲ  
 ὑστεραίᾳ ἦκεν ἄγγελος λέγων ὅτι λελοιπῶς εἶη Σύν-  
 νεσις τὰ ἄκρα, ἐπεὶ ἦσθετο ὅτι τὸ Μένωνος στρατεύμα

133. τὴν ταχίστην ὁδόν 540.

138. ἐν ᾧ: χρόνος is understood: at this time: notice that ᾧ is a relative pronoun. Cp. ἐν αἷς 78.

140. ἕτερόν τινα another: 217, 219. τινα merely makes ἕτερον more indefinite.

141. αἰτιασάμενος ἐπιβουλεύειν αὐτῷ accusing them of plotting against him 578. — αὐτῷ: like εἰαυτῷ: see 271.

143. εἰσβολὴ pass: the so-called Kilikian gateway, Κιλικίαι πόλαι. See Πόλαι in Proper Names.

144. εἰσελθεῖν στρατεύματι for an army to enter: both depend on

ἀμήχανος 565 a, 523: both are datives. — ἐκώλυνεν: attempted to prevent 459 a.

147. ἦκεν: consult 664, ex. 2. In subordinate clauses, as ἐπεὶ ἦσθετο, past tenses usually retain the indicative when quoted. See also 662 and references. This is the first mention of the term indirect discourse; but we have used its principles in quotations from the very beginning and they should all be perfectly familiar now, except the statement in 662 and 663. See this passage in 254, 8 and 322, 12.

- ἤδη ἐν Κιλικίᾳ ἦν εἶσω τῶν ὁρέων, καὶ ὅτι τριήρεις II  
 150 ἤκουε περιπλεούσας ἀπ' Ἰωνίᾳς εἰς Κιλικίαν Ταμῶν  
 ἔχοντα τὰς Λακεδαιμονίων καὶ αὐτοῦ Κύρου. Κύρος 22  
 δ' οὖν ἀνέβη ἐπὶ τὰ ὄρη οὐδενὸς κωλύοντος, καὶ εἶδε  
 τὰς σκηναὺς οὗ οἱ Κίλικες ἐφύλαττον. ἐντεῦθεν δὲ  
 κατέβαιναν εἰς πεδίον μέγα καὶ καλόν, ἐπίρρυτον,  
 155 καὶ δένδρων παντοδαπῶν σύμπλεων καὶ ἀμ-  
 πέλων· πολὺ δὲ καὶ σήσαμον καὶ μελίνην καὶ  
 κέγχρον καὶ πῦρους καὶ κριθὰς φέρει. ὄρος  
 δ' αὐτὸ περιεῖχεν ὄχυρον καὶ ὑψηλὸν πάντη ἐκ  
 θαλάττης εἰς θάλατταν. καταβὰς δὲ διὰ τούτου τοῦ 23  
 160 πεδίου ἤλασε σταθμοὺς τέτταρας παρασάγγας πέντε  
 καὶ εἴκοσιν εἰς Ταρσοὺς, τῆς Κιλικίᾳς πόλιν μεγάλην

149. ἦν: for the regular *ἔστι* or *εἶη*. This change of tense in quotation is the common English idiom, but is to be avoided in writing Greek. More regular with *αἰσθάνομαι* would be: *ἤσθητο τὸ Μέγανος . . . στράτευμα ὅν* 586, 588. —καὶ ὅτι . . . ἤκουε and *because he heard*. The attempt to emphasize *τριήρεις* by its position causes a momentary ambiguity. When we reach *περιπλεούσας* it seems to be a pred. ptc. with *τριήρεις* as subject, but further reading shows that *ἔχοντα* is pred. ptc. with *Ταμῶν* as subject, and that *τριήρεις* is object of *ἔχοντα*. The English order is: *ἤκουε Ταμῶν ἔχοντα τριήρεις περιπλεούσας* heard that Tamos had triremes sailing around or more freely that Tamos was sailing around from Ionia to Kilikia with the triremes from the Spartans as well as Cy-

rus's own. See 4/7 for another account of this in which the name Samios has been substituted for Tamos.—*τριήρεις*: see vocab. and 154, 151.

150. Ταμῶν 91-93.

151. τὰς Λακεδαιμονίων 880 a.

152. οὖν: usually taken at any rate, as *ὅν* in 87; perhaps better accordingly, like *ὅν* I 8: there was no question as to whether or why Syennesis had left the heights.—*οὐδενὸς κωλύοντος* 589.

153. ἐφύλαττον had been on guard: cp. ἦσαν I 38.

154. κατέβαιναν: cp. ἀνέβη in 152 and see 486.

155. σύμπλεων 91-95.

157. φέρει bears, produces: not historical present.—ὄρος: Mt. Tauros.—αὐτὸ ἵ: τὸ πεδίων.

161. Ταρσοὺς Tarsoi or Tarsos: the birthplace of St. Paul.

καὶ εὐδαίμονα, οὗ ἦν τὰ Συεννέσιος βασιλεία τοῦ Κιλί- II  
 κων βασιλέως· διὰ μέσου δὲ τῆς πόλεως ῥεῖ ποταμὸς  
 Κύνδος ὄνομα, εὖρος δύο πλέθρων. ταύτην τὴν πόλιν 24  
 165 ἐξέλιπον οἱ ἐνοικούντες μετὰ Συεννέσιος εἰς χωρίον  
 ὀχυρὸν ἐπὶ τὰ ὄρη πλὴν οἱ τὰ καπηλεῖα ἔχοντες·  
 ἔμειναν δὲ καὶ οἱ παρὰ τὴν θάλατταν οἰκούντες ἐν  
 Σόλοις καὶ ἐν Ἰσσοῖς.

TWO COMPANIES OF MENON'S FORCE LOST IN CROSSING THE MOUN-  
 TAINS. FRIENDLY MEETING OF CYRUS AND SYENNESIS

Ἐπύαξα δὲ ἡ Συεννέσιος γυνὴ προτέρᾳ Κύρου πέντε 25  
 170 ἡμέραις εἰς Ταρσοὺς ἀφίκετο· ἐν δὲ τῇ ὑπερβολῇ  
 τῶν ὁρῶν τῇ εἰς τὸ πεδῖον δύο λόχοι τοῦ Μένωνος  
 στρατεύματος ἀπώλοντο· οἱ μὲν ἔφασαν ἀρπάζοντάς  
 τι κατακοπῆναι ὑπὸ τῶν Κιλίκων, οἱ δὲ ὑπο-

163. διὰ μέσου *through the middle of*: neut. of μέσος used as a substantive, as in μέσον ἡμέρας *mid-day* 4/4 l. 9.

164. ὄνομα 537. — πλέθρων: with ποταμός: *measure* 506.

165. ἐξέλιπον . . . εἰς . . . ἐπὶ *had abandoned for a stronghold on the mountains*: notice ἐξ in comp. and the acc. with prep. all implying motion.

166. πλὴν *except*: here a conjunction equivalent to πλὴν . . . οὐκ ἔφυγον. Compare πλὴν in 10. πλὴν τῶν . . . ἐχόντων would be proper. English freely uses *except* both as a preposition and as a conjunction.

167. παρὰ τὴν θάλατταν *along the sea-shore*: in such cases with παρὰ and the accusative, as here and in παρὰ τὴν ὁδόν in 93, there is

the idea of *extension*; any idea of antecedent motion is lost sight of, as also in ὑπὲρ Ἑλλάσποντον I 59.

169. προτέρᾳ 546.

170. ἡμέραις 526 c.

171. τῇ: introducing another attributive of ὑπερβολῇ 552 b.

172. ἀπώλοντο: aor. mid. of ἀπώλυμι.—οἱ μὲν . . . οἱ δὲ 549: cp. τοὺς μὲν . . . τοὺς δὲ I 38. For the lack of conjunction see 600 a.—ἀρπάζοντάς τι κατακοπῆναι *had been cut down while committing some act of depredation*: κατακοπῆναι: aor. pass. of κατακόπτω *cut down*.

173. οἱ δὲ . . . ἀπολλέσθαι *and others (said) that, falling behind and being unable to find the rest of the army or the roads either (οὐδέ), they then perished while wandering about*.

λειφθέντας καὶ οὐ δυναμένους εὐρεῖν τὸ ἄλλο II  
 175 στράτευμα οὐδὲ τὰς ὁδοὺς εἶτα πλανωμένους ἀπο-  
 λέσθαι. ἦσαν δ' οὖν οὔτοι ἑκατὸν ὀπλίται. οἱ δ' 26  
 ἄλλοι ἐπεὶ ἦκον, τὴν τε πόλιν τοὺς Ταρσοὺς διήρπα-  
 σαν, διὰ τὸν ὄλεθρον τῶν συστρατιωτῶν ὀρ-  
 γιζόμενοι, καὶ τὰ βασίλεια τὰ ἐν αὐτῇ. Κῦρος  
 180 δ' ἐπεὶ εἰσήλασεν εἰς τὴν πόλιν, μετεπέμπετο τὸν  
 Συνέννεσιν πρὸς ἑαυτόν· ὃ δ' οὔτε πρότερον οὐδενί πω  
 κρείττονι ἑαυτοῦ εἰς χεῖρας ἔλθειν ἔφη οὔτε τότε Κύρῳ  
 ἰέναι ἤθελε, πρὶν ἢ γυνὴ αὐτὸν ἔπεισε καὶ πίστει  
 ἔλαβε. μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα ἐπεὶ συνεγένοντο ἀλλήλοις, 27  
 185 Συνέννεσις μὲν ἔδωκε Κύρῳ χρήματα πολλὰ εἰς τὴν  
 στρατιάν, Κῦρος δὲ ἐκείνῳ δῶρα ἅ νομίζεται παρὰ

175. οὐδέ *and not, nor . . . either*: the regular negative for continuing a negative; just above καὶ οὐ introduced the negative after an affirmative. See 667.

176. δ' οὖν *but at any rate, however that was*: cp. on οὖν in 87 and 152. Two full companies would make two hundred men.

177. οἱ δ' ἄλλοι ἐπεὶ ἦκον: emphatic position of subject before ἐπεὶ. — Ταρσοὺς: appositive to πόλιν. — διήρπασαν: note διὰ in comp.

179. τὰ ἐν αὐτῇ 552 b. — Κῦρος δ' ἐπεὶ: cp. on 177.

180. μετεπέμπετο: cp. 459, ex. 2.

181. πρὸς ἑαυτόν *to come to him*. — δ' οὔτε . . . ἤθελε *but he declared that never yet had he got into the power of any one stronger than himself and at this time he refused to come into Cyrus's power*.

— οὔτε . . . οὔτε *both not . . . and not*: *both* is better omitted in translation. — οὐδενί: probably a *with* dative 525, with εἰς χεῖρας ἔλθειν: cp. εἰς λόγους ἔλθειν αὐτῷ *come to a conference with him*. εἰς χεῖρας ἔλθειν also means *come to close quarters with, fight hand to hand*. οὐδενί is also taken as a *for* dative 523, equivalent to a genitive. Κῦρος in 182 is used like οὐδενί with εἰς χεῖρας understood. — For the repeated negative in οὐδενί see 487. — οὐ . . . πρότερον . . . πω *not . . . before . . . as yet*: simply *never yet*. — ἔφη *he said* οὐκ ἤθεον. — οὐκ ἤθελε *he refused* is the statement of the historian.

183. πρὶν . . . ἔλαβε: consult 644 a.

186. ἅ νομίζεται: see vocab. — παρὰ βασιλεῖ *at court*.

βασιλεῖ τίμια, ἵππον χρῦσοχάλινον καὶ στρε-Π  
πτὸν χρυσούν καὶ ψέλια καὶ ἀκινάκην χρυσούν  
καὶ στολὴν Περσικὴν, καὶ τὴν χώραν μηκέτι διαρ-  
190 πάζεσθαι· τὰ δὲ ἡρπασμένα ἀνδράποδα, ἣν πον ἐν-  
τυγχάνωσιν, ἀπολαμβάνειν.

THE GREEKS REFUSE TO ADVANCE. KLEARCHOS IN DANGER OF  
BEING STONED TO DEATH

Ἐνταῦθα ἔμεινεν ὁ Κῦρος καὶ ἡ στρατιὰ ἡμέρας II  
εἴκοσιν· οἱ γὰρ στρατιῶται οὐκ ἔφασαν ἰέναι τοῦ  
πρόσω· ὑπώπτεον γὰρ ἤδη ἐπὶ βασιλεῶ ἰέναι·  
μισθωθῆναι δὲ οὐκ ἐπὶ τούτῳ ἔφασαν. πρῶτος δὲ  
5 Κλέαρχος τοὺς αὐτοῦ στρατιώτας ἐβιάζετο ἰέναι·  
οἱ δ' αὐτόν τε ἔβαλλον καὶ τὰ ὑποζύγια τὰ ἐκείνου,  
ἐπεὶ ἄρξαιντο προῖέναι. Κλέαρχος δὲ τότε μὲν μικρόν 2  
ἐξέφυγε μὴ καταπετρωθῆναι, ὕστερον δ' ἐπὶ  
ἔγνω ὅτι οὐ δυνήσεται βιάσασθαι, συνήγαγεν ἐκ κλη-

189. καὶ . . . διαπάζεσθαι: supply and the promise that.

190. τὰ δὲ . . . ἀπολαμβάνειν: supply and permission. Both infinitives are objects of ἔδωκε.

1. ἔμεινεν: cp. on ἦν II 25. Perhaps from June 8 to June 23, 401 B. C.

2. οὐκ ἔφασαν ἰέναι refused to go, said they would not go: they said οὐκ ἔμεν we are not going, with a future sense 385 b. In such uses ἰέναι is future; so with ὑπώπτεον ἰέναι in 3.—τοῦ πρόσω: the adverb would have been sufficient. See 515 end.

4. οὐκ ἐπὶ τούτῳ not for this: the position of οὐκ indicates that

the meaning is: they said that this was not the purpose for which they had been hired.—πρῶτος was the first who: the adverb πρῶτον would mean he first, before doing anything else. See 546 and ex. 6.

5. ἐβιάζετο 459 a: cp. ἐκώλυεν II 144.

7. ἐπεὶ ἄρξαιντο 639 end: cp. ὅποτε βούλοιο II 47. The context, here ἔβαλλον, indicates that the time is universal as regards the main verb: whenever they began.—μικρόν 540, 536 b.

8. μὴ καταπετρωθῆναι 572: note κατὰ in comp.: cp. κατακοπήναι II 173.

9. ἐκκλησίαν: regularly of citizens; here the army is the state.

10 σίᾱν τῶν αὐτοῦ στρατιωτῶν. καὶ πρῶτον μὲν ἐδά- III  
κρῦε πολὺν χρόνον ἐστῶς· οἱ δὲ ὁρῶντες ἐθαύμαζον  
καὶ ἐσιώπων. εἶτα δὲ ἔλεξε τοιαύδε.

SPEECH OF KLEARCHOS. HE WILL STAND BY HIS COUNTRYMEN

\* Ἄνδρες στρατιῶται, μὴ θαυμάζετε ὅτι χαλεπῶς 3  
φέρω τοῖς παροῦσι πράγμασιν. ἐμοὶ γὰρ ξένος Κῦρος  
15 ἐγένετο καὶ με φεύγοντα ἐκ τῆς πατρίδος τά τε ἄλλα  
ἐτίμησε καὶ μῦρίους ἔδωκε δᾶρεικούς· οὓς ἐγὼ λαβὼν  
οὐκ εἰς τὸ ἴδιον κατεθέμην ἐμοὶ οὐδὲ καθηδυνά-  
θησα, ἀλλ' εἰς ὑμᾶς ἐδαπάνων. καὶ πρῶτον μὲν 4  
πρὸς τοὺς Θρᾶκας ἐπολέμησα, καὶ ὑπὲρ τῆς Ἑλλάδος  
20 ἐτίμωρούμην μεθ' ὑμῶν, ἐκ τῆς Χερρονήσου αὐτοὺς  
ἐξελαύνων βουλομένους ἀφαιρεῖσθαι τοὺς ἐνοικοῦντας  
Ἑλληνας τὴν γῆν. ἐπειδὴ δὲ Κῦρος ἐκάλει, λαβὼν  
ὑμᾶς ἐπορευόμην, ἵνα εἴ τι δέοιτο ὠφελοῖν αὐτὸν ἀνθ'

10. καὶ . . . ἐστῶς: see 583.—  
ἐστῶς 370 (1), 173.

13. ἄνδρες στρατιῶται *fellow-soldiers*.—μὴ θαυμάζετε: see 485,  
360 a.—ὅτι . . . πράγμασιν  
622 b.

14. πράγμασιν 526 a.

15. ἐγένετο *became*.—φεύγοντα  
*when in exile*.—τά τε ἄλλα . . .  
καὶ . . . δᾶρεικούς: we may reverse  
the order: *he not only gave me ten  
thousand darics but honored me in  
other ways too; or better besides  
honoring me in other ways he gave  
me ten thousand darics too*.—τὰ  
ἄλλα 536 b and c.

16. μῦρίους ἔδωκε δᾶρεικούς: for  
the order see 680 a.—οὓς *this  
money*.

17. ἐμὸς *for myself*: reflexive.

18. ἐδαπάνων: note change from  
aorist to imperfect.

19. ἐπολέμησα *began a war* 484.  
—ὑπὲρ τῆς Ἑλλάδος: a subtle  
appeal to their sympathy through  
their patriotism.—καὶ ἐτίμωρού-  
μην *and was taking vengeance on  
them*.

21. ἐξελαύνων *driving them out*.  
—βουλομένους *because they  
wished*.

22. ἐπειδὴ . . . ἐπορευόμην: see  
629, ex. 3.—ἐκάλει: imperf. He  
was urgent.

23. ἵνα . . . ἐκείνου: see 642 b.  
—εἴ τι δέοιτο 651 (3): *his thought  
was ἴδν τι δέηταί μου*.—τι 536 b.  
—ἀνθ' ὧν: for ἀντὶ τούτων δ.



- ὦν εὖ ἔπαθον ὑπ' ἐκείνου. ἐπεὶ δὲ ὑμεῖς οὐ βούλεσθε II  
 25 συμπορεύεσθαι, ἀνάγκη δὴ μοι ἢ ὑμᾶς προδόντα τῇ<sup>5</sup>  
 Κύρου φιλίᾳ χρῆσθαι ἢ πρὸς ἐκείνον ψευδάμενον μεθ'  
 ὑμῶν εἶναι. εἰ μὲν δὴ δίκαια ποιήσω οὐκ οἶδα, αἰ-  
 ρήσομαι δ' οὖν ὑμᾶς καὶ σὺν ὑμῖν ὅτι ἂν δέῃ πεί-  
 30 σομαι. καὶ οὐποτε ἐρεῖ οὐδεὶς ὡς ἐγὼ Ἑλλήνας ἀγα-  
 γὼν εἰς τοὺς βαρβάρους, προδοὺς τοὺς Ἑλλήνας τὴν  
 τῶν βαρβάρων φιλίαν εἰλόμην, ἀλλ' ἐπεὶ ὑμεῖς ἐμοὶ<sup>6</sup>  
 οὐ θέλετε πείθεσθαι, ἐγὼ σὺν ὑμῖν ἔσομαι καὶ ὅτι  
 ἂν δέῃ πείσομαι. νομίζω γὰρ ὑμᾶς ἐμοὶ εἶναι καὶ  
 πατρίδα καὶ φίλους καὶ συμμάχους, καὶ σὺν ὑμῖν μὲν  
 35 ἂν οἶμαι εἶναι τίμιος ὅπου ἂν ᾖ, ὑμῶν δὲ ἔρημος ὦν  
 οὐκ ἂν ἱκανὸς οἶμαι εἶναι οὗτ' ἂν φίλον ὠφελῆσαι

24. *ἐπεὶ* since. — *ὅμοις*: these pronouns in nominative are emphatic.

25. ἀνάγκη δὴ μοι *I must of course*. — *προδόντα* 571 c: cp. *λαβόντα* II 9, *λαβόντι* II 5: *either betray you and avail myself of Cyrus's friendship or prove false to him and stay with you*.

27. *εἰ μὲν δὴ . . . οἶδα* now *whether*: see 655.

28. *δ' οὖν* but at all events: cp. on II 176. — *ὅ τι ἂν δέῃ πείσομαι* 618 a. Note the order: *οἶδα* at the end; then *αἰρήσομαι* at the beginning and *πείσομαι* at the end: cp. 682 a.

29. *οὐποτε ἐρεῖ οὐδεὶς* 487: cp. *οὐδεὶς* II 181. — *ὡς . . . εἰλόμην* 635. — *Ἑλλήνας ἀγαγὼν . . . προδοὺς τοὺς Ἑλλήνας* after *leading Greeks . . . abandoned the Greeks and*: note the order and the omis-

sion of the article with the first *Ἑλλήνας*. The participles are used like *ὑπολαβὼν* and *συναλλέξας* I 39.

31. *ἐπεὶ . . . ἔσομαι*: see 629, ex. 2. — *σὺν ὑμῖν*: instead of the usual simple dative.

32. *οὐ θέλετε*: *οὐκ ἐθέλετε*: *θέλω* for *ἐθέλω*.

33. *νομίζω γὰρ . . . φίλους*: see 678, ex. § 2, 1.

34. *καὶ . . . τίμιος*: see 579, ex. § 2, 1. — For the position of *ἂν* see 296.

35. *ὅπου ἂν ᾖ*: see 620, ex. 2. — *ὑμῶν δὲ ἔρημος ὦν*: for *εἰ δὲ ὑμῶν ἔρημος εἴην*: it corresponds better with *σὺν ὑμῖν with you*, to say simply *but without you*. — *ὑμῶν*: with *ἐρημος* by 512.

36. *οὗτ' ἂν . . . οὗτ' ἂν*: strengthen and distribute the negative *οὐκ ἂν* 487. Our idiom requires *either . . . or*.

οὐτ' ἂν ἐχθρόν ἀλέξασθαι. ὥς ἐμοῦ οὖν ἰόντος ὅπη III  
 ἂν καὶ ὑμεῖς οὕτω τὴν γνώμην ἔχετε.

KLEARCHOS OPENLY REFUSES TO GO TO CYRUS, BUT SECRETLY  
 REASSURES HIM

Ταῦτα εἶπεν· οἱ δὲ στρατιῶται οἱ τε αὐτοῦ ἐκείνου 7  
 40 καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι ταῦτα ἀκούσαντες ὅτι οὐ φαίη παρὰ βα-  
 σιλέᾳ πορεύεσθαι ἐπήνεσαν· παρὰ δὲ Ξενίου καὶ  
 Πασίωνος πλείους ἢ δισχίλιοι λαβόντες τὰ ὅπλα καὶ  
 τὰ σκευοφόρα ἐστρατοπεδεύσαντο παρὰ Κλεάρχῳ.  
 Κῦρος δὲ τούτοις ἀπορῶν τε καὶ λυπούμενος  
 45 μετεπέμπετο τὸν Κλεάρχον· ὃ δὲ ἰέναι μὲν οὐκ ἤθελε, 8  
 λάθρᾳ δὲ τῶν στρατιωτῶν πέμπων αὐτῷ ἄγγελον  
 ἔλεγε θαρρεῖν ὥς καταστησομένων τούτων εἰς τὸ  
 δέον. μεταπέμπεσθαι δ' ἐκέλευεν αὐτόν· αὐτὸς δ' οὐκ  
 ἔφη ἰέναι.

37. ὥς . . . ἔχετε: ὅτι ἐγὼ οὖν  
 εἰμι ὅπη ἂν καὶ ὑμεῖς ἦτε οὕτω γινώ-  
 σκετε you may be fully assured  
 therefore that I am going which-  
 ever way you go. ὥς with the geni-  
 tive absolute represents a ὅτι clause  
 and οὕτω repeats and emphasizes  
 that idea.—τὴν γνώμην ἔχετε is an  
 emphatic γινώσκετε.—καί: also.

39. ταῦτα εἶπεν thus he spoke:  
 as usually in the historical writers  
 ταῦτα refers to what has preceded,  
 τάδε to what is to follow. See  
 100 b.—αὐτοῦ self: emphasizes  
 ἐκείνου. Translate the two by his  
 own or Klearchos's.

40. ὅτι οὐ φαίη . . . πορεύεσθαι:  
 explanatory of ταῦτα which here  
 looks forward: that he said that  
 he was not going to the king. If  
 ταῦτα refers to what precedes, ὅτι

is to be translated because, giving  
 the reason for ἐπήνεσαν. In either  
 case πορεύεσθαι has a future sense  
 like ἰόντος in 37 and ἰέναι in 2.—  
 Note παρὰ with βασιλέᾳ here, not  
 emphasizing the hostile relation, for  
 πρὸς or ἐπὶ. παρὰ is common with  
 names of persons: note it also with  
 genitive and dative in this section:  
 παρὰ Ξενίου, παρὰ Κλεάρχῳ.

45. μετεπέμπετο kept sending  
 after; imperf.—οὐκ ἤθελε re-  
 fused, would not.

46. λάθρᾳ 518 b.—πέμπων kept  
 sending: present stem.

47. ἔλεγε θαρρεῖν told him to  
 keep up courage: pres. inf. Only  
 in the sense of *bid* does λέγω ac-  
 tive regularly take the infinitive.  
 —ὥς . . . δέον 593 c.

48. μεταπέμπεσθαι to keep send-

- 50 Μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα συναγαγὼν τοὺς θ' ἑαυτοῦ στρα-  
 τιώτᾱς καὶ τοὺς προσελθόντας αὐτῷ καὶ τῶν ἄλλων  
 τὸν βουλόμενον, ἔλεξε τοιάδε. Ἄνδρες στρατιῶται, τὰ  
 μὲν δὴ Κύρου δῆλον ὅτι οὕτως ἔχει πρὸς ἡμᾶς ὥσπερ  
 τὰ ἡμέτερα πρὸς ἐκείνον· οὔτε γὰρ ἡμεῖς ἐκείνου ἐπι-  
 55 στρατιῶται, ἐπεὶ γε οὐ συνεπόμεθα αὐτῷ, οὔτε ἐκείνος  
 ἐστὶ ἡμῖν μισθοδότης. ὅτι μέντοι ἀδικεῖσθαι νομί-  
 ζει ὑφ' ἡμῶν οἶδα· ὥστε καὶ μεταπεμπομένου αὐτοῦ 10  
 οὐκ ἐθέλω ἐλθεῖν, τὸ μὲν μέγιστον αἰσχυρόμενος  
 ὅτι σύνοιδα ἑμαυτῷ πάντα ἐψευσμένος αὐτόν, ἔπειτα  
 60 καὶ δεδιὼς μὴ λαβὼν με δίκην ἐπιθῇ ὧν νομίζει ὑπ'

ing for him.—αὐτὸς . . . ἵνα  
 but for himself he said he would  
 not go: αὐτός strengthens the sub-  
 ject of ἵνα: cp. αὐτός in 200, 15,  
 202, 10.

50. θ': for τε.

52. τὸν βουλόμενον 522 b: any  
 one who wished.—τοιάδε: here  
 as frequently the Greek gives  
 prominence to the idea of quality  
 when English rarely makes the  
 distinction. τοιάδε (such) as fol-  
 lows hardly differs in translation  
 from τᾶδε as follows. Compare  
 τοιάδε in 12.—τὰ μὲν . . . πρὸς  
 ἐκείνον 507 b.

53. δὴ now, you see.—δῆλον  
 ὅτι: for δῆλον ἔστι ὅτι: here used  
 parenthetically, equivalent to δῆλως  
 evidently.

55. ἐπεὶ γε since (indeed): γε is  
 hardly to be translated here. It  
 emphasizes ἐπεὶ but in speaking  
 the ε would be elided and the word

would not even make a separate  
 syllable.

56. ὅτι μέντοι that however 522 c:  
 note the pres. inf.

57. ὥστε and so.—καὶ even:  
 followed by a genitive absolute of  
 concession though 590, 870 a.

58. τὸ μὲν μέγιστον chiefly 540.  
 —αἰσχυρόμενος from a sense of  
 shame.

59. ὅτι σύνοιδα 622 b.—πάντα  
 in all respects, completely 536 b.  
 —ἐψευσμένος: cp. 537 last two  
 examples.—ἔπειτα καὶ then too:  
 correlative to μὲν 58. See 669 a.

60. δεδιὼς μὴ for fear that: see  
 370 (5).—μὴ . . . ἐπιθῇ 611 b.—  
 ὧν . . . ἡδικησθαι for the wrongs  
 which he thinks he has received  
 at my hands: note the perf. inf.  
 —ὧν: for τούτων δ: τούτων gen.  
 with δίκην: δ cog. acc. with ἡδικη-  
 σθαι.—ἐπ' ἑμοῦ by me: really the  
 genitive is agent.

ἐμοῦ ἡδικῆσθαι. ἐμοὶ οὖν δοκεῖ οὐχ ὥρᾱ εἶναι ἡμῖν III  
11  
καθεύδειν οὐδ' ἀμελεῖν ἡμῶν αὐτῶν, ἀλλὰ βου-  
λεύεσθαι ὅτι χρή ποιεῖν ἐκ τούτων. καὶ ἕως γε μένο-  
μεν αὐτοῦ σκεπτέον μοι δοκεῖ εἶναι ὅπως ὡς ἀσφαλέ-  
στατα μενοῦμεν, εἴ τε ἤδη δοκεῖ ἀπιέναι, ὅπως ὡς  
ἀσφαλέστατα ἄπιμεν, καὶ ὅπως τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἔχομεν.  
ἄνευ γὰρ τούτων οὔτε στρατηγοῦ οὔτε ἰδιώτου ὄφε-  
λος οὐδέν. ὁ δ' ἀνὴρ πολλοῦ μὲν ἄξιος ᾧ ἂν φίλος 12  
ᾧ, χαλεπώτατος δ' ἐχθρὸς ᾧ ἂν πολέμιος ᾧ, ἔχει δὲ  
70 δύναμιν καὶ πεζὴν καὶ ἰππικὴν καὶ ναυτικὴν ἣν πάντες  
ὁμοίως ὀρώμεν τε καὶ ἐπιστάμεθα. καὶ γὰρ οὐδὲ  
πὸ ῥῶ δοκοῦμέν μοι αὐτοῦ καθῆσθαι. ὥστε ὥρᾱ  
λέγειν ὅτι τις γιγνώσκει ἄριστον εἶναι. ταῦτα εἰπὼν  
ἐπαύσατο.

PROPOSALS AND COUNTER PROPOSALS OF AGENTS OF KLEARCHOS  
AGGRAVATE THE SITUATION

75 Ἐκ δὲ τούτου ἀνίσταντο οἱ μὲν ἐκ τοῦ αὐτομάτου,  
λέξοντες ἃ ἐγίγνωσκον, οἱ δὲ καὶ ὑπ' ἐκείνου ἐγκέ-

61. ἐμοὶ οὖν δοκεῖ *therefore I think*.—ὥρᾱ: really the subject of δοκεῖ on which εἶναι depends, quoted as after a verb of thinking. The negatives are retained, οὐχ, οὐδέ, as in such quotations. See 578 a, 584.

62. καθεῖδαν οὐδ' ἀμελεῖν 585. —ἀλλά . . . ἐκ τούτων *but (it is time) to be planning what we must do next*.

63. καὶ ἕως . . . εἶναι: see 631.

64. σκεπτέον 596 b.—δπως . . . μενοῦμεν: see 638 a.

67. οὔτε . . . οὔτε . . . οὐδέν *neither general nor private is of any use*.

68. μὲν: note the position.— ᾧ ἂν . . . ᾧ: see 616 a.

71. καὶ γὰρ . . . καθῆσθαι: see 574 a and 578 a end.

73. λέγειν: cp. καθεύδειν in 62. —τις: translate as if subject of λέγειν.—γιγνώσκει *judges*.

75. ἐκ τούτου: cp. ἐκ τούτων in 63.—ἀνίσταντο: note the imperf.

—οἱ μὲν . . . οἱ δέ: distribute the subject of ἀνίσταντο.—ἐκ τοῦ αὐτομάτου: cp. ἀπὸ τοῦ αὐτομάτου II 118.

76. λέξοντες 583 b.—ἃ ἐγίγνωσκον *what they (really) thought*: γιγνώσκω sometimes means *feel, think*.

λευστοι, ἐπιδεικνύντες οἷα εἶη ἡ ἀπορίᾳ ἄνευ τῆς III  
 Κύρου γνώμης καὶ μένειν καὶ ἀπιέναι. εἰς δὲ δὴ εἶπε 13  
 προσποιούμενος σπεύδειν ὡς τάχιστα πορεύε-  
 80 σθαι εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα στρατηγούς μὲν ἐλέσθαι ἄλλους  
 ὡς τάχιστα, εἰ μὴ βούλεται Κλέαρχος ἀπάγειν· τὰ δ' 14  
 ἐπιτήδει' ἀγοράζεσθαι — ἡ δ' ἀγορὰ ἦν ἐν τῷ βαρ-  
 βαρικῷ στρατεύματι — καὶ συσκευάζεσθαι· ἐλθόντας  
 δὲ Κύρον αἰτεῖν πλοῖα, ὡς ἀποπλέοιεν· ἔαν δὲ μὴ διδῶ  
 85 ταῦτα, ἡγεμόνα αἰτεῖν Κύρον ὅστις διὰ φιλίας τῆς  
 χώρας ἀπάξει· ἔαν δὲ μὴδὲ ἡγεμόνα διδῶ, συντάττε-  
 σθαι τὴν ταχίστην, πέμψαι δὲ καὶ προκαταληφόμενους  
 τὰ ἄκρα, ὅπως μὴ φθάσωσι μήτε Κύρος μήτε οἱ  
 Κίλικες καταλαβόντες, ὧν πολλοὺς καὶ πολλὰ χρήματα  
 90 ἔχομεν ἀνηρεπακότες. οὗτος μὲν τοιαῦτα εἶπε.

77. οἷα: the *quality* here emphasized of *what sort*, where we should say *how great* or merely *what*.

78. εἰς δὲ δὴ εἶπε and *one man in particular proposed*: in this sense εἶπε takes the infinitive: cp. ἔλεγε θαρρεῖν in 47. For the whole passage consult 664, last paragraph.

81. εἰ μὴ βούλεται: if this had been changed to optative, it would be ambiguous, 662.

82. ἡ δ' ἀγορὰ ἦν: thrown in parenthetically to show the intentional absurdity of the proposal.

83. ἐλθόντας δὲ . . . αἰτεῖν and *that men go and ask*: see 535, 583.

85. ὅστις . . . ἀπάξει *who* 619: see 552 d with examples.

87. πέμψαι . . . ἄκρα: see 583 b.

88. φθάσωσι . . . καταλαβόντες *might seize them first* 585 a.

89. ὧν . . . ἀνηρεπακότες *many of whom they held as prisoners together with much of their property that they had carried off; or many of whose men together with much property they had carried off and still retained*. Notice that the Greek retains the first person, where our idiom continues the indirect quotation to the end. See 663. If we prefer to put part in the direct form we should begin at the first of the sentence in 86 and say *and he also proposed that, if Cyrus should not give a guide either* (the δὲ in *μηδέ*), *we array ourselves etc.* We may also start from the beginning with *one man in particular proposed that we should choose*.

90. οὗτος μὲν τοιαῦτα εἶπε *such were his proposals*.

Μετὰ δὲ τούτον Κλέαρχος εἶπε τοσοῦτον· Ὡς μὲν III  
15  
στρατηγήσονται ἐμὲ ταύτην τὴν στρατηγίαν  
μηδεὶς ὑμῶν λεγέτω· πολλὰ γὰρ ἐνορῶ δι' ἃ ἐμοὶ  
τούτο οὐ ποιητέον· ὥς δὲ τῷ ἀνδρὶ ὃν ἂν ἔλυσθε πεί-  
95 σομαι ἢ δυνατόν μάλιστα, ἵνα εἰδῆτε ὅτι καὶ ἄρχεσθαι  
ἐπίσταμαι ὥς τις καὶ ἄλλος μάλιστα ἀνθρώπων. μετὰ 16  
τούτου ἄλλος ἀνέστη, ἐπιδεικνὺς μὲν τὴν εὐήθειαν  
τοῦ τὰ πλοῖα αἰτεῖν κελεύοντος, ὥσπερ πάλιν τὸν στό-  
λον Κύρου ποιουμένου, ἐπιδεικνὺς δὲ ὥς εὐήθεις εἴη  
100 ἡγεμόνα αἰτεῖν παρὰ τούτου ᾧ λῦμαι νόμεθα τὴν  
πρᾶξιν. εἰ δὲ καὶ τῷ ἡγεμόνι πιστεύσομεν ὃν ἂν  
Κῦρος διδῶ, τί κωλύει καὶ τὰ ἄκρα ἡμῖν κελεύειν  
Κῦρον προκαταλαβεῖν; ἐγὼ γὰρ ὀκνοίην μὲν ἂν 17

91. τοσοῦτον *only so much*: here looks forward.—ὥς . . . λεγέτω: see 594. For the order see 680.

92. στρατηγίαν 536 a.

93. λεγέτω 584.—πολλὰ γὰρ ἐνορῶ δι' ἃ for *I see in-that-course (ἐν) many reasons why*.—ἐμοὶ . . . ποιητέον 524 b, 596 a.

94. ὥς δέ: ὥς equivalent to *ὅτι*, depending on *ὅστε* or *λεγέτω* implied: *but be assured* or *but he may say*.—ὃν ἂν ἔλυσθε 616 a.

95. ἵνα εἰδῆτε 642 a.

96. ὥς . . . ἀνθρώπων *just as well as any other man*: μάλιστα ἀνθρώπων *most of men* is unnecessary. The common expression is *εἰ τις καὶ ἄλλος*. *καὶ* is *also*, but is better not translated.

97. ἐπιδεικνὺς μὲν, ἐπιδεικνὺς δέ: see 682 a.

98. τοῦ . . . κελεύοντος *of the man who urged* 582 a. Notice the

position of τὰ πλοῖα αἰτεῖν between τοῦ and κελεύοντος.—ὥσπερ . . . ποιουμένου: see 593 d.

100. ᾧ . . . πρᾶξιν *whose enterprise they were ruining*: note the change to direct form. The Greek says *for whom we are ruining the enterprise*. In translation reserve the first person till the next sentence. It may be well there, and in other such cases, to insert *said he*: and *if, said he*.

101. εἰ . . . πιστεύσομεν *if we are going to trust*: cp. 648 a.

102. τί κωλύει: see 572 b.—ἡμῖν 523.

103. ἐγὼ γάρ: ἐγὼ is emphatic 557. γάρ introduces the reason for the statement that it was foolish to ask such favors under these circumstances. We may translate: *why! for myself*: cp. 672 a.—ὀκνοίην ἂν: see 579.

- εἰς τὰ πλοῖα ἐμβαίνειν ἃ ἡμῖν δοίη, μὴ ἡμᾶς III  
 105 αὐταῖς τριήρεσι καταδύσῃ, φοβοίμην δ' ἂν τῷ  
 ἡγεμόνι ὃν δοίη ἔπεσθαι, μὴ ἡμᾶς ἀγάγῃ ὅθεν οὐκ  
 ἔσται ἐξελθεῖν· βουλοίμην δ' ἂν ἄκοντος ἀπῶν Κύρου  
 λαθεῖν αὐτὸν ἀπελθῶν· ὃ οὐ δυνατόν ἐστιν. ἀλλ' ἐγώ  
 φημι ταῦτα μὲν φλυᾶρίᾱς εἶναι· δοκεῖ δέ μοι ἂν 18  
 116 δρας ἐλθόντας πρὸς Κύρον οἵτινες ἐπιτήδαιοι σὺν Κλε-  
 ἀρχῳ ἐρωτᾶν ἐκείνων τί βούλεται ἡμῖν χρῆσθαι· καὶ  
 εἰ μὲν ἡ πρᾶξις ἧ παραπλησίᾱ οἴαμιν καὶ πρό-  
 σθεν ἐχρήτο τοῖς ξένοις, ἔπεσθαι καὶ ἡμᾶς καὶ μὴ  
 κακίους εἶναι τῶν πρόσθεν τούτῳ συναναβάντων·  
 116 εἰ μὲν δὲ μείζων ἡ πρᾶξις τῆς πρόσθεν φαίνεται καὶ 19  
 ἐπιπονωτέρᾳ καὶ ἐπικινδυνωτέρᾳ, ἀξιοῦν ἧ  
 πείσαντα ἡμᾶς ἄγειν ἢ πεισθέντα πρὸς φιλίᾳν ἀφίεσθαι·  
 οὕτω γὰρ καὶ ἐπόμενοι ἂν φίλοι αὐτῷ καὶ πρόθυμοι

104. ἃ . . . δοίη: see 616 b, ex. § 2, 1.—μὴ . . . καταδύσῃ 611 b.

105. αὐταῖς 525 a.

106. ὃν δοίη: cp. ἃ δοίη in 104.—ἔπεσθαι 570 a.—ὅθεν . . . ἐξελθεῖν a place from which it will be impossible to get out. For οὐκ ἔσται cp. the common οὐκ ἔστι.

107. ἄκοντος 589 a.

108. ἀπελθῶν 585. For the order see 680, § 2.

109. εἶναι 578.—δοκεῖ δέ μοι it seems best to me that; my idea is that; I propose that: logically equivalent to εἴτε in 78. Upon it as subjects depend the Infinitives ἐρωτᾶν, ἔπεσθαι, εἶναι, ἀξιοῦν, ἀπαγγεῖλαι, βουλεύεσθαι.

110. οἵτινες ἐπιτήδαιοι such as are friends; or suitable men.

111. τί . . . χρῆσθαι 536 b.—οἴαμιν: for ἐκέλευ οἴαντες: the latter being cognate accusative like τί.

112. καὶ also: better left untranslated. Cp. καὶ in 37, εἰ τις καὶ in 96.

114. ἔπεσθαι καὶ ἡμᾶς that we also follow.

116. ἀξιοῦν that they ask: the subject is found in ἄνδρας in 110. So also with ἀπαγγεῖλαι in 120.

117. πείσαντα, πεισθέντα: the subject is αὐτὸν Cyrus: that he either win our consent and lead us on or let us go in friendship with his consent. The means of persuasion was higher pay.—οὕτω: suggests the circumstances to which the statements apply 481.

118. ἐπόμενοι, ἀπὸντες if we

ἐποίμεθα καὶ ἀπίοντες ἀσφαλῶς ἂν ἀπίοιμεν· ὅτι δ' III  
 120 ἂν πρὸς ταῦτα λέγῃ ἀπαγγεῖλαι δεῦρο· ἡμᾶς δ'  
 ἀκούσαντας πρὸς ταῦτα βουλευέσθαι.

EMBASSY TO CYRUS, WHO EVADES THE TRUTH, BUT PROMISES  
 MORE PAY

\*Εδοξε ταῦτα, καὶ ἄνδρας ἐλόμενοι σὺν Κλεάρχῳ 20  
 πέμπουσιν οἱ ἡρώτων Κῦρον τὰ δόξαντα τῇ στρατιᾷ.  
 ὁ δ' ἀπεκρίνατο ὅτι ἀκούει Ἀβροκόμῳ ἐχθρὸν ἄνδρα  
 125 ἐπὶ τῷ Εὐφράτῃ ποταμῷ εἶναι, ἀπέχοντα δώδεκα σταθ-  
 μούς· πρὸς τοῦτον οὖν ἔφη βούλεσθαι ἐλθεῖν· κἂν μὲν  
 ἢ ἐκεῖ, τὴν δίκην ἔφη χρήζειν ἐπιθεῖναι αὐτῷ, ἣν δε-  
 φύγῃ, ἡμεῖς ἐκεῖ πρὸς ταῦτα βουλευσόμεθα. ἀκού-  
 σαντες δὲ ταῦτα οἱ αἰρετοὶ ἀγγέλλουσι τοῖς στρατιώ-  
 130 ταις· τοῖς δὲ ὑποψία μὲν ἦν ὅτι ἄγει πρὸς βασιλέᾳ,  
 ὁμῶς δὲ ἐδόκει ἔπεσθαι· προσαιτοῦσι δὲ μισθόν· ὁ  
 δὲ Κῦρος ὑπισχνεῖται ἡμιόλιον πᾶσι δώσειν οὐ  
 πρότερον ἔφερον, ἀντὶ δᾶρεικοῦ τρία ἡμιδᾶρεικά  
 τοῦ μηνὸς τῷ στρατιώτῃ· ὅτι δὲ ἐπὶ βασιλέᾳ ἄγοι  
 135 οὐδὲ ἐνταῦθα ἤκουσεν οὐδεὶς ἐν τῷ γε φανερῷ.

follow, if we return: for εἰ ἐποί-  
 μεθα, εἰ ἀπίοιμεν.

123. τὰ δόξαντα 582 a: the ques-  
 tions agreed upon.

124. ὁ δ' ἀπεκρίνατο . . . βου-  
 λευσόμεθα: see 684, § 3.

125. κἂν and if: for καὶ ἐάν 35.

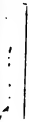
130. τοῖς δὲ ὑποψία ἦν: ὑπό-  
 πτευσθ.

132. οὐ: for τόντου δ: gen. after  
 the comparative force in ἡμιόλιον a  
 half more 517.

134. τοῦ μηνός 515.

135. οὐδεὶς 587.—ἐν τῷ γε φα-  
 νερῷ openly at least: evidently  
 some understood what the real  
 purpose was. Cp. 420 end: πλὴν  
 Κλεάρχου.





## APPENDIX I

THE following list of words is given to help some pupils in gaining the idea that Greek consonants have the same duties as the corresponding letters in Latin and English, and to prevent, if possible, such absurdities as *exenos ξένος*, *eskole σχολή*, *emneme* and *muneme μνήμη*, *eximaira χίμαιρα*. The complete list should be used in class and repeated for several lessons. The instructor can assist by pointing out the similarities and insisting upon the clear enunciation of the letters that represent sounds that differ from the sound of the corresponding English letters.

Always give the hard sound to γ as *g* in *get*. There are no silent letters: sound ξ as *dz*; ξ as *x* in *tax* even at the beginning of a word, Ξέρξης *Xerxes*, not as *z*; ψ as *ps* in *tops*. Never give the *z* sound to σ. Roughen the sound in initial ρ and always in χ. This is not an exercise on the vowels, but the pupil must remember to give the Greek sounds to the vowels and diphthongs (1-8) in the Greek words and the English sounds in the English words.

ἀνάθημα	<i>anathema</i>	χαρακτήρ	<i>character</i>
ἀνταγωνίζομαι	<i>antagonize</i>	ῥητορική	<i>rhetoric</i>
ἀνταγωνιστής	<i>antagonist</i>	ἀνάλυσις	<i>analysis</i>
ἀθλητής	<i>athlete</i>	σύνθεσις	<i>synthesis</i>
βιογραφία	<i>biography</i>	δραστικός	<i>drastic</i>
γεωγραφία	<i>geography</i>	δράμα	<i>drama</i>
γεωμετρία	<i>geometry</i>	ἡμισφαίριον	<i>hemisphere</i>
ἀνθρωπολογία	<i>anthropology</i>	κριτήριον	<i>criterion</i>
ῥῶα	<i>hōra</i>	κριτικός	<i>critic</i>
ἀκμή	<i>acme</i>	κρίσις	<i>crisis</i>
θεάτρον	<i>theater</i>	σφίγξ	<i>sphinx</i>
παλινδρομος	<i>palindrome</i>	δεσπότης	<i>despot</i>
τραγῳδία	<i>tragedy</i>	πολιτικός	<i>political</i>
ἱστορία	<i>history</i>	ἀναρχία	<i>anarchy</i>
μηχανικά	<i>mechanics</i>	μοναρχία	<i>monarchy</i>
σχολή	<i>school</i>	ὀλιγαρχία	<i>oligarchy</i>

τηλεφωνή	<i>telephone</i>	ἑξάγωνον	<i>hexagon</i>
φωνογραφία	<i>phonograph</i>	φωσφόρος	<i>phosphorus</i>
σχολαστικός	<i>scholastic</i>	ἀγνωστικός	<i>agnostic</i>
σχόλιον	<i>scholion</i>	γνῶμη	<i>gnome</i>
σχολιαστής	<i>scholiast</i>	κόσμος	<i>cosmos</i>
εὐφωνία	<i>euphony</i>	ῥοδόδενδρον	<i>rhododendron</i>
σφαίρα	<i>sphere</i>	ἡλιοτρόπιον	<i>heliotrope</i>
χίμαιρα	<i>chimera</i>	διάμετρος	<i>diameter</i>
χρονόμετρον	<i>chronometer</i>	παιδαγωγός	<i>pedagogue</i>
θερμόμετρον	<i>thermometer</i>	ἀρχαϊκός	<i>archaic</i>
ὄργανον	<i>organ</i>	ἀρχέτυπος	<i>archetype</i>
παράδεισος	<i>paradise</i>	γραμματική	<i>grammar</i>
ἀποστολικός	<i>apostolic</i>	ῥινόκερος	<i>rhinoceros</i>
τεχνικός	<i>technical</i>	μνημονικός	<i>mnemonic</i>
φιλοσοφία	<i>philosophy</i>	ζεύγμα	<i>zeugma</i>
βιβλιοπώλη	<i>bookseller</i>	ζήλος	<i>zeal</i>
ἀστερίσκος	<i>asterisk</i>	ζέφυρος	<i>zephyr</i>
ἐμφασις	<i>emphasis</i>	ψεύδω	<i>pseudo-</i>
φαινόμενον	<i>phenomenon</i>	ξιφίς	<i>xiphias</i>
γυμνάσιον	<i>gymnasium</i>	ξύλογραφ-	<i>xylograph</i>
ὑποκριτικός	<i>hypocritical</i>	ξύλοφωνή	<i>xylophone</i>
σύνοψις	<i>synopsis</i>	ξύστος	<i>xylos</i>
κλιμαξ	<i>climax</i>	ξύστηρ	<i>xyster</i>
λάρυγξ	<i>larynx</i>	ξανθιον	<i>xanthion</i>
συναγωγή	<i>synagogue</i>	ψευδογραφία	<i>pseudography</i>
διάγνωσις	<i>diagnosis</i>	ψευδόδοξος	<i>pseudodox</i>
σύνταξις	<i>syntax</i>	ψαλμός	<i>psalm</i>
χρυσάλλις	<i>chrysalis</i>	ιδιοσυγκρασία	<i>idiosyncrasy</i>

## APPENDIX II

### DERIVATIVES

IN using the following lists of derivatives, look up in the general vocabulary such words as are not given in the paragraph referred to in the *Grammar*.

#### VERBAL NOUNS

##### Suffix -ο 403

τρόπος	νόμος	φόβος	λόχος
στόλος	δρόμος	σκοπός	λόγος

##### Suffix -α 404

ἀρχή	ἐπιβουλή	εἰσβολή	μάχη
συλλογή	τροφή	ὑπερβολή	στολή
φυλακή	ἀγορά	τροφή	ἐπιστολή
βουλή	κραυγή	δίκη	

##### Suffix -τα 405

πελταστής	δυνάστης	προδότης	ἀρμοστής
-----------	----------	----------	----------

##### Suffixes -σι, -τι, and others 406 and a

ἀνάβασις	πρᾶξις	πίστις	στρατεία
κατάβασις	στάσις	ἐκκλησία	
ἐξέτασις	πρόφασις	ὑποψία	
τάξις	μάντις	βασιλεία	

##### Suffix -μη 406

γνώμη	τίμη	κώμη
-------	------	------

##### Suffix -ματ 407

στράτευμα	πρᾶγμα	ἄρμα	σύνθημα
χρῆμα	δέρμα	ὄνομα	τόξευμα

## VERBAL ADJECTIVES

## Suffix -ο 410; cp. 446 a

λοιπός στρατ-ηγός λοχ-ηγός ναύ-αρχος σκευο-φόρος

## Suffix -το 411

πιστός	αίρετός	ἐγκέλευστος	ἄπρᾱκτος
δυνατός	διαβατός	ἐπίφρυτος	
ἀδύνατος	ἀδιάβατος	στρεπτός	

## Suffix -ρο and others 412

ἐχθρός	ὀχυρός	δεινός
ισχυρός	ικανός	φανερός

## DENOMINATIVE VERBS

## Verbs in -όω 416 a

ἀξιόω μισθόω καταπετρόω δηλόω δουλόω

## Verbs in -άω 416 b

τελευτάω	ἡττάομαι	σιωπάω	αἰτιάομαι
ὀρμάω	πειράομαι	τίμᾱω	
νικάω	πλανάομαι	δαπανάω	

## Verbs in -εω 416 c

ἀσθενέω	ὠφελέω	θεωρέω	ἀδικέω
φιλέω	πολιορκέω	τιμωρέω	στρατηγέω
πολεμέω	ἐπιθῦμέω	ἀπορέω	ἄμελέω
οἰκέω	κατανοέω	λῦπέω	κρατέω

## Verbs in -εύω 417 a

βασιλεύω	κινδυνεύω	βουλεύω	θηρεύω
ἱππεύω	πιστεύω	πορεύομαι	παιδεύω
ὑποπτεύω			

## Verbs in -ίζω 418

ἐρίζω ὀργίζομαι ἀθροίζω νομίζω σαλπίζω

Verbs in -άζω **419**

ἀτιμάζω    γυμνάζω    ἀρπάζω    βιάζομαι    θανατάζω

Verbs in -αίνω **420**

σημαίνω                      χαλεπαίνω

## DENOMINATIVE ADJECTIVES

Suffix -ιο **424**

ἀρχαῖος	βασιλείος	πολέμιος	σχολαῖος
Βουώτιος	τίμιος	ὄρθιος	τελευταῖος
φίλιος	δίκαιος	Μιλήσιος	
ἄγριος	ἄξιος	Ἀθηναῖος	

Suffix -ικος **425**

βαρβαρικός	δᾶρεικός	Περσικός	ἵππικός
Ἑλληνικός	ξενικός	Ἴωνικός	ναυτικός

Suffix -εος **426**

χρῦσός                      χαλκοῦς                      φοινῖκος

## DENOMINATIVE NOUNS

Suffix -ιᾶ **429 b**

ἀπορίᾶ	εὐθήεια	σοφίᾶ	ἀπιστίᾶ
φιλίᾶ	φλυαρίᾶ	στρατιᾶ	σωτηρίᾶ
στρατηγίᾶ			

Suffix -εν **430 a**

ἵππεύς                      ἐρμηνεύς

Suffix -τᾶ **430 b**

πολίτης	ὀπλίτης	ἀντιστασιώτης
στρατιώτης	τοξότης	ιδιώτης

Suffix -ιον **431 a**

πεδῖον                      χρῦσίον                      θηρίον                      χωρίον

## APPENDIX III

### INDEX OF PROPER NAMES

#### A

- 'Αβροκόμης -ου or -ᾶ *Abrokomas, Abrocomas*, satrap of Syria and Phoinikia. I. iii. 20.
- "Αβύδος -ου ἡ *Abýdos, Abýdus*, a city of the Troad on the Asiatic side of the Hellespont opposite Sestos. Here Xerxes built his bridge. I. i. 9.
- 'Αγαμέμνων -ονος *Agamemnon*, king of *Mykēne, Mykēnai, Mycēnae*, leader of the Achaeans in the Trojan war.
- 'Αγασίας -ου *Agasias*; ἄγαμαι.
- 'Αγίας -ου *Agias*; ἄγω.
- 'Αγυς -ιδος *Agis*.
- 'Αθήναι -ᾶν *Athens*, the city of Attica; Ἀθηνα *Athēna*.
- 'Αθηναῖος -ᾶ -ον *Athenian*; Ἀθηναί 424.
- 'Αθήνησι adv. *at Athens* 228.
- Αἰνίδν -ᾶνος ὁ *an Ainianian, Aenianian*, of southwest Thessaly. I. ii. 6.
- 'Αλυς -νος ὁ *the Halys*, principal river of Asia Minor, flowing into the Euxine; ἅλς *salt*, named from the salt works on its banks.
- 'Αμβρακιώτης -ου *an Ambrakiot, Ambraciot*, of *Ambrakia*, a colony of Corinth in Epīros.
- 'Ανάβασις -ως ἡ *the Anabasis*, the title given to Xenophon's history of the Greeks in their march with Cyrus against Artaxerxes at Babylon; ἀνά, βαίνω 406, 440 a.
- 'Απόλλων -ωνος *Apollo*, son of Zeus and Leto, twin brother of Artemis. He was god of the sun and light, φοῖβος *gleaming*, of health, of music (see under *Μαρσύας*), of archery. As the god of prophecy he had his most famous oracle at *Delphoi, Delphi*.
- "Αραβῖ "Αραβος ὁ *an Arab, Arabian*.
- 'Αρβάκης -ου *Arbakes, Arbaces*.
- 'Αρηξίων -ωνος *Arexion*, an Arkadian soothsayer; ἀρήγω *help*.
- 'Αριατος -ου *Ariaios, Ariaeus*.
- 'Αριστίππος -ου *Aristippos, Aristippus*, a Thessalian, gathered an army for Cyrus and sent it under command of Menon. I. i. 10; ii. 1; ἄριστος, ἵππος *having the best horses* 447.
- 'Αρκάς -ᾶδος *an Arkadian, Arkadian, of Arkadia, Arcadia* in central Peloponnēsos. I. ii. 1, 10.
- 'Αρμενία -ᾶς ἡ *Armenia*, a lofty table-land of Western Asia.
- 'Αρταξέρξης -ου *Artaxerxes II*, called *Μνήμων the mindful*, from his good memory. It was said

that he could remember the names of all his soldiers. He was the eldest son of Dareios II and Parysatis and was king of Persia 404-359. It was against him that Cyrus made the expedition recorded in the *Anabasis*. I. i. 1, 3, 4.

\***Ἀρτάοζος** -ου *Artaozos, Artaozus*.

\***Ἀρταφέρνης** -ους *Artaphernes*.

\***Ἀσιᾶ** -ᾤς ἡ *Asia*.

\***Ἀσπένδιος** -ου *an Aspendian*, from Aspendos, an Argive colony in Pamphylia. I. ii. 12.

\***Ἀστυάγης** -ους *Astyages*, last king of the Medes.

\***Ἀχαιοί** -ὸν *the Achaeans, Achaeans*, the Greeks that fought against Troy.

\***Ἀχαιῶς** -οῦ *an Achaean, Achaean*, of Achaia, the northern district of Peloponnēsos. I. i. 11.

\***Ἀχιλλεύς** -ῆος *Achilles*, son of Peleus and Thetis, the mightiest warrior before Troy, the hero of the *Iliad*.

## B

**Βαβυλὼν** -ῶνος ἡ *Babylon*, one of the oldest and most famous cities of antiquity: *Babylī*, *Babel*, the *Gate of Il* or *God*.

**Βοιωτιά** -ᾤς ἡ *Boiotia*, Boeotia, a state of central Greece.

**Βοιότιος** -ᾱ -ον *Boiōtīan, Boeotian*. I. i. 11.

## Δ

**Δάνα** -ων τά *Dana*, a city of Kap-padokia. I. ii. 20.

**Δᾶρειος** -ου *Dareios I, Darius I*, king of Persia 521-486 B. C., ex-

tended and consolidated the empire of Cyrus the Great. His army under Datis and Artaphernes was defeated by the Athenians at Marathon 490 B. C.

*Dareios II, Darius II*, king of Persia 424-405 B. C., father of Artaxerxes II and Cyrus the Younger. I. i. 1; Persian *darā* king.

**Δάτις** *Datis*.

**Δελφοί** -ὸν *oi Delphoi, Delphi*, a town of Phokis at the south base of Mt. Parnassos, the seat of the celebrated oracle and temple of Apollo.

**Δεξιππος** -ου *Dezippos, Dezippus*; *δεξιός, ἵππος*: *handy with horses*.

**Δημοκράτης** -ου *Demokrates, Democrates*; *δῆμος* people, *κράτος*.

**Δία** accusative of *Ζεύς*.

**Δολοψ** -οπος ὁ *a Dolopian*, of southwest Thessaly. I. ii. 6.

**Δρακόντιος** -ου *Drakontios, Drakontius*; *δέρκομαι*, *αογ. ἔδρακον* see clearly: *keen-eyed*.

## Ε

\***Ἑλλάς** -ᾶδος ἡ *Hellas*, in Homer a city in southern Thessaly; afterward the name of *Hellas, Greece*. I. ii. 9.

\***Ἑλλην** -ηρος ὁ *a Greek*. I. i. 2.

\***Ἑλληνικός** -ῆ -ὸν *Greek, Grecian*. I. i. 6; \***Ἑλλην** 425. *Hellenia*.

\***Ἑλληνίς** -ῖδος ἡ *fem. adj. Greek, Grecian*; \***Ἑλλην** 434 *a*.

\***Ἑλλησποντιακός** -ῆ -ὸν *lying on the Hellespont*. I. i. 9; \***Ἑλλήσποντος**.

\***Ἑλλήσποντος** -ον ὁ *the Hellespont, Dardanelles*. I. i. 9; \***Ἑλλη**, *πόν-*



τος *Helle's sea* 436 b. In the myth, Helle is drowned here while riding with her brother Phrixos on the ram of the golden fleece, χρυσόμαλλος *Chrysomallos*.

Ἐπίδαξ -ης *Epydax*. I. ii. 12.

Εὐκλείδης -ου *Eukleides, Euclides, Euclid*; εὐκλής *famous*, -ίδης 433 b, c: *son of a famous one*.

Εὐξείνους πόντος -ου ὁ *the Euxine, the Black Sea*; originally called ἀ-ξείνους *inhospitable*, changed to avoid a word of ill omen to εὐ-ξείνους *kind to strangers, hospitable*; cp. εὐάνυμος and *Cape of Good Hope for Stormy Cape*; εἰ, ξείνους for ξένους 441.

Εὐφράτης -ου ὁ *the Euphrātes*, the great river of western Asia.

## Z

Ζεύς Διός *Zeus, Jupiter*, father of men and of gods, πατήρ ἀνδρῶν τε θεῶν τε, giver of victory, protector of kings, guardian of oaths and the rights of hospitality.

## H

Ἡγήσανδρος -ου *Hegesandros, Hegesander*; ἡγέομαι, ἀνὴρ 442: *leader of men*.

Ἡράκλεια -ᾱς ἡ *Herakleia, Heraclēa*, a colony of Megara in Bithynia on the Pontos; Ἡρακλῆς *Herakles, Heracles, Hercules*.

## Θ

Θεμιστογένης -ους *Themistogenes*.

Θεοπόμπος -ου *Theopompus, Theopompus*; θεός, πέμπω 446 a: *God-send*.

Θερμάδων -οντος ὁ *the Thermōdon*, a river of Kappadokia flowing into the Pontos. Here lived the Amazons.

Θέτις -ιδος *Thetis*, a sea goddess, wife of Peleus, and mother of Achilles. She is called *silver footed ἀργυρό-πεζα*.

Θεσσαλίᾱ -ᾱς ἡ *Thessaly*, the most northern state of Greece. On its northern boundary was Mt. Olympus, the home of the gods. I. i. 10; Θεσσαλός 424.

Θεσσαλός -οῦ ὁ *a Thessalian*. I. i. 10; ii. 6.

Θηβαίος -ου ὁ *a Theban*, of Thebes in Boiotia.

Θηραμένης -ους *Theramenes*.

Θιβρων -ωνος *Thibron*, a Spartan commander.

Θράξ *Θράξ* ὁ *a Thracian, Thracian*. I. i. 9; ii. 9.

Θύμβριον -ου τό *Thymbrium, Thymbrium*, a city of Phrygia. I. ii. 18.

Θύνοι -ῶν οἱ *the Thynoi, Thyni*.

## I

Ἰκόνιον -ου τό *Ikonion, Iconium*, a city of Phrygia. I. ii. 19.

Ἴρις -ιος ὁ *the Iris*, a river of Pontos.

Ἰσσοί -ῶν οἱ for Ἰσσός -οῦ ὁ *Issos, Issus*, a city of Kilikia; the plural forms only, *Issoi, Issi*, are used by Xenophon. Near it Alexander the Great defeated Dareios III, 333 B. C. I. ii. 24.

Ἴων -ωνος ὁ *an Ionian*.

Ἰωνία -ᾱς ἡ *Ionía*, a district on the coast of Asia Minor. Its chief cities were Milētos and Ephesos. I. ii. 21.

**Ἰωνικός** -ή -όν *Ionian*; **Ἴων** 425.  
*Ionio.*

**K**

**Καππαδοκία** -ᾱς ἡ *Kappadokia, Cappadocia*, a country in central Asia Minor. I. ii. 20.

**Καρδοῦχοι** -ων οἱ *the Kardouchoi, Carduchi, Carduchians*, the modern Kurds.

**Καστοῦλος** -οῦ ἡ *Kastolos, Castulus*, a place near Sardeis. Near it was a plain that was used as the mustering place for the soldiers of the Persian army from a large area including Lydia, Phrygia Major, and Kappadokia. I. i. 2.

**Καϊστρου πεδῖον** -ου τό *Kajstroupedion, Caijsterfield*, a city of Phrygia; cp. Springfield. I. ii. 11.

**Κελαιναί** -ᾱν αἱ *Kelainai, Celnæ*, a city of Phrygia. I. ii. 7, 8.

**Κεράμων ἀγορά** -ᾱς ἡ *Keramona-gora, Ceramonagora, Tile-market*, a town in Phrygia. I. ii. 10.

**Κιλικία** -ᾱς ἡ *Kilikia, Cilicia*, a district in southeast Asia Minor. I. ii. 20; **Κίλιξ** 424.

**Κίλιξ** -ικος ὁ *a Kilikian, Cilician*. I. ii. 12, 22; iii. 14.

**Κίλισσα** -ης *Kilikian, Cilician woman*, applied to Epyaxa. I. ii. 12.

**Κλεαγόρας** -ου *Kleagoras, Cleagoras*; κλέος *fame, ἀγορά*: *famous speaker*.

**Κλεάνωρ** -ορος *Kleānor, Cleānor*; κλέος *fame*: *man of renown*.

**Κλεάρχος** -ου *Klearchos, Clearchus*, a Spartan general, exiled, joined Cyrus and became the chief leader of the Greeks. I. i. 9; ii. 1; iii. 2;

κλέος *fame, ἀρχός* 446 b: *famous ruler*.

**Κλονίος** -ου *Klonios, Clonius*.

**Κολοσσαί** -ᾱν αἱ *Kolossai, Colossæ*, a city of Phrygia; one of Paul's Epistles is addressed to the Colossians. I. ii. 6.

**Κόλχοι** -ων οἱ *the Kolchoi, Colchi, Colchians, of Kolchis, Colchis* on the Pontos, the home of Medeia, Medæa, and the scene of the quest of the Golden Fleece.

**Κουνάζη** -ης ἡ *Kounaza, Cunaza*, a village on the Euphrates near which the Greeks under Klearchos defeated the Persian army of Artaxerxes II. Cyrus was killed.

**Κρής Κρητός** ὁ *a Kretan, Cretan*, of the island of Crete, the largest of the Greek islands. The best archers in the army of Cyrus came from Crete. I. ii. 9.

**Κύδνος** -ου ὁ *the Kydnos, Cydnus*, a river of Kilikia. I. ii. 23.

**Κύρος** -ου *Cyrus*, son of Dareios II and Parysatis, called *Cyrus the Younger*. In 407 B. C. he was made military commander of western Asia Minor and aided the Spartans against Athens. His story is told in the *Anabasis*. I. i. 1.

**Λ**

**Λακεδαιμόνιος** -ᾱ -ον *Lakedaimonian, Lacedaemonian, Spartan*. I. i. 9; **Λακεδαίμων** 424.

**Λακεδαίμων** -ονος ἡ *Lakedaimon, Lacedaemon*, the country in the southeast part of Peloponnēsos. Its capital is Sparta.

**Λάκων** -ωνος ὁ *a Lakonian, Laconian, Spartan.*

**Λάρισα** -ης ἡ *Larissa*, the ruins of an Assyrian city, Calah or Resen, the southwest corner of Nineveh.

**Λυδία** -ᾶς ἡ *Lydia*, a country in the western part of Asia Minor, capital Sardes. I. ii. 5.

**Λύκαια** -ων τῆ *the Lykaia, Lycaea*, a festival celebrated by the Arkadians. I. ii. 10.

**Λυκαονία** -ᾶς ἡ *Lycaonia, Lycaonia*, a district of central Asia Minor. I. ii. 19.

**Λυκομήδης** -ους *Lykomēdes, Lycomēdes.*

## M

**Μαίανδρος** -ου ὁ *the Maiandros, Maeander*, a large river rising near Kelainai, proverbial for its winding course. I. ii. 5; *meander*.

**Μακρόνες** -ων *of the Makrōnes, Macrōnes*, a warlike people of Pontos.

**Μαραθὼν** -ῶνος ὁ *Marathon*, a plain in Attica where, 490 B. C., the Athenians under Miltiades defeated the army of Dareios I sent to punish Athens for aiding the Ionians in burning Sardes.

**Μαρσύας** -ου ὁ *the Marsyas*, a river of Phrygia flowing into the Maiandros. I. ii. 8.

The satyr *Marsyas*. I. ii. 8. "The story is often alluded to, and parts of it are told in several works of art that have come down to us. It is said that Athēna invented the flute (αὐλός, more like our clarinet);

but catching sight of her own image in the water as she played, she determined never again to distend her cheeks in such an ugly manner, and threw the pipe away. The satyr Marsyas, who had been listening with delight, at once caught it up, and soon was so proud of his own music thereon that he challenged Apollo himself, the god of music, to a contest, Apollo to use his lyre. The victor might punish the vanquished as he pleased, and the Muses were to be the judges. Of course Apollo won, and he punished the presumptuous satyr in the way described in the text."

**Μεγαρεὺς** -ῶνος ὁ *a Megarian, of Megara*. I. ii. 3; *Μέγαρα* 424 a.

**Μεγαφέρνης** -ων *Megaphernes*. I. ii. 20.

**Μένων** -ωνος *Menon, Meno*, a Thesalian, sent to Cyrus by Aristippos. I. ii. 6, 20 ff.

**Μέσπιλα** -ης ἡ *Mespila*, a name applied to part of the ruins of Nineveh, the northwest corner.

**Μήδεια** -ᾶς *Medeia, Medea*, wife of Astyages, last king of the Medes.

**Μηδία** -ᾶς ἡ *Media*, a district of central Asia. In the *Anabasis* the name is applied to Assyria; *Μῆδοι* 424.

**Μάδαι** -ων *of the Medes*; cp. *Madai* Gen. x. 2.

**Μίδας** -ων *Midas*, mythical king of Phrygia, is the hero of many legends. He caught the satyr, Silēnos, who frequented his rose garden. I. ii. 13. As he treated his captive well, Dionysos rewarded him by granting any

wish he proposed. Foolishly requesting that all he touched be turned to gold he died of hunger. In a musical contest between Pan and Apollo, he awarded the prize to Pan. The indignant Apollo gave him ass's ears.

**Μιθριδάτης** -ου *Mithridātes*.

**Μιλήσιος** -ᾶ -ον *Milesian*. I. i. 11;

**Μίλητος** 424.

**Μίλητος** -ου ἡ *Milētos, Milētus*, once the Greek metropolis of western Asia, in Ionia. I. i. 6, 7; ii. 2.

**Μυσία** -ᾶς ἡ *Mysia*, a province in northwest Asia Minor.

**Μυσίος** -ᾶ -ον *Mysian*. I. ii. 10.

## N

**Νίκανδρος** -ου *Nikandros, Nican-*  
*der*; νίκη, ἀνὴρ 446 a: *man of*  
*victory*.

**Νικάρχος** -ου *Nikarchos, Nicar-*  
*chus*; νίκη, ἀρχός 446 a: *leader*  
*to victory*.

**Νικόμαχος** -ου *Nikomachos, Nico-*  
*machus*; νίκη, μάχομαι 446 a: *vic-*  
*torious in battle*.

## Ξ

**Ξανθικλῆς** -οὔς *Xanthikles, Xan-*  
*thicles*: ξανθός, κλέος fame:  
*famed for his yellow locks*.

**Ξενίας** -ου *Xenias*, an Arkadian,  
general in Cyrus's army. I. i. 2;  
ii. 1, 3; iii. 7: ξένος: *hospitable*.

**Ξενοφάν** -ώντος *Xenophon*, an  
Athenian, author of the *Anaba-*  
*sis*, see 420; ξένος. φάω: *bring-*  
*ing light to guest-friends, joy of*  
*guests*.

**Ξέρξης** -ου *Xerxes I*, king of Per-  
sia 485-465 B. C., defeated in the  
battle of Salamis 480 B. C. I.  
ii. 9.

## O

**Ὀδυσσεύς** -εως *Odysseus, Ulysses*,  
king of Ithaca, hero of the *Odys-*  
*sey*, husband of Penelope, father  
of Telemachos, one of the wisest  
of the Achaian leaders before  
Troy.

**Ὀλύνθιος** -ου ὁ *an Olynthian, of*  
*Olynthos*, a city of the Chalkidian  
peninsula, destroyed by Philip  
347 B. C. I. ii. 6.

**Ὅμηρος** -ου *Homer*, the poet of the  
*Iliad* and *Odyssey*.

**Ὀρόντης** -ου or -ᾶ *Orontas*.

## Π

**Παρθένιος** -ου ὁ *the Parthenios,*  
*Parthenius*, a river of Paphla-  
gonia.

**Παρράσιος** -ου ὁ *a Parrhasian, of*  
*Parrhasia*, a district of south-  
west Arkadia.

**Παύσατις** -ιδος *Parysatis*, mother  
of Artaxerxes II and Cyrus the  
Younger. I. i. 1, 4. Through  
her influence all the leaders who  
opposed Cyrus were put to death.

**Πάσιον** -ωνος *Pasion*. I. ii. 3;  
iii. 7.

**Πελοποννήσιος** -α -ον *Peloponne-*  
*sian*. I. i. 6; Πελοπόννησος 424.

**Πελοπόννησος** -ου ἡ *Peloponnēsos,*  
*Peloponnēsus*, peninsula of south-  
ern Greece; Πέλοψ, νῆσος island:  
*Pelops's Island*.

**Πέλλαι** -ᾶν αἱ *Pellai, Pellae*, a city  
of Phrygia. I. ii. 10.

**Πέργαμος** -ου ἡ *Pergamos, Pergamus*, a city of Mysia.

**Περικλῆς** -έους *Perikles, Pericles*; *περί, κλέος* fame: far-famed

**Πέρσης** -ου ὁ *a Persian*. I. ii. 20.

**Περσικός** -ῆ -όν *Persian*. I. ii. 27; *Πέρσης* 425.

**Πηλεὺς** -έως *Peleus*, father of Achilles.

**Πίγρης** -ητος *Pigres*, an interpreter to Cyrus. I. ii. 17.

**Πισίδαι** -όν *of the Pisidians*, a people of Asia Minor, south of Phrygia, who did not acknowledge the sovereignty of Persia. I. i. 11; ii. 1.

**Πισιδία** -ας ἡ *Pisidia*, see above.

**Πολυκράτης** -ους *Polykrates, Polykrates*; *πολύς, κράτος*: very mighty.

**Πολύνικος** -ου *Polynikos, Polynikos*; *πολύς, νίκη*: of many victories.

**Προκλῆς** -έους *Prokles, Procles*; *πρό, κλέος* fame: far-famed.

**Πρόξενος** -ου *Proxenos, Proxenus*, a friend of Xenophon. I. i. 11; ii. 3; *πρό, ξένος*: public guest.

**Πύλαι** -όν *ai Pylai, Pylae, Gates*, a common name for mountain-pass fortifications; cp. *Θερμοπύλαι* *Hot Gates*. The *εἰσβολή* in I. ii. 21 was the *Καλκίαι* *Πύλαι*, the great highway from Asia Minor into the valley of the Euphrates. It is a narrow gorge between two lofty mountains and commands the entrance into Asia Minor. Crossing the central ridge at an elevation of only 3,300 feet between two mountains of 11,000 feet in height, it is of great military importance.

## Σ

**Σάμιος** -ου *Samios, Samius*.

**Σάρδεις** -ων *ai Sardēis, Sardis*, capital of Lydia, the rendezvous of Cyrus's troops, formerly the capital of the kingdom of *Κροῖσος, Croesus*. I. ii. 2, 3.

**Σάτυρος** -ου ὁ *a satyr*. In I. ii. 13 *Silēnos, Silēnus*, is meant, the fat, jolly attendant of Dionysos. Satyrs were woodland divinities that revelled in wine, music, and dancing. In art they are represented with thick lips, flat nose, pointed ears, long coarse hair, and a horse's tail.

**Σιῶνος** -ου *Silānos, Silānus*, a soothsayer.

**Σκύρος** -ου ἡ *Skyros, Seyros*, an island in the Aegēan.

**Σόλοι** -ων *oi Soloi, Soli*, a Greek city of Kilikia. It is said that from the corruption of the Attic dialect at Soloi arose the term *σολοικισμός* *solecism*. I. ii. 24.

**Σοφάινετος** -ου *Sophainetos, Sophænetus*, of Stymphālos in Arkadia. I. i. 11; ii. 3; *σοφῆ, αἰνέω* 446 a: *praised for his skill*.

**Σπαρτιάτης** -ου ὁ *a Spartan*; *Σπάρτη* *Sparta*, cp. 434 b.

**Σπιθριδᾶτης** -ου *Spithridātes*.

**Στυμφάλιος** -ου ο *a Stymphalian, of Stymphālos, Stymphālus* in Arkadia. I. i. 11; *Στυμφάλος* 424.

**Συέννησις** -ιος ὁ, the hereditary title of the kings of Kilikia, used as a proper name, *Syennesis*. I. ii. 12, 21, 26.

**Συρακόσιος** -ου ὁ *a Syracusan, of Syracuse*, a Greek city on the

east coast of Sicily. I. ii. 9;

*Συράκουσαι Syracuse 424.*

**Σωκράτης -ους** *Sokrates, Socrates*, the great Athenian philosopher, by the oracle at Delphoi pronounced the wisest of men, condemned to death in 399 B. C. His teachings are known to us chiefly through the writings of Plato and Xenophon.

*Sokrates, Socrates*, an Achaian friend of Cyrus. I. i. 11; ii. 3;

*σῶς, κρᾶτος 446 b: of safe strength.*

**Σώσις -ως** *Sosis*, of Syracuse. I. ii. 9; *σέσω 406: deliverer.*

**T**

**Ταμός -ός (91-94)** *Tamos*, an Egyptian. I. ii. 21.

**Τάοχοι -ων οἱ** *Taochoi, Taochi, Taochians*, a tribe of Pontos.

**Ταρσοί -ων οἱ** for **Ταρσός -ος ὁ** *Tarsos, Tarsus*, chief city of Kilikia, birthplace of St. Paul. Xenophon alone uses the plural *Tarsoi, Tarsi*. I. ii. 23, 25, 26.

**Τηλεβόας -ου** or **-ᾶ ὁ** *the Teleboas*, a river of Armenia; *τῆλε afar, βοᾶν shout, roar 446 b: roaring afar.*

**Τίγρης -ητος ὁ** *Tigres, Tigris*, a large river flowing from Armenia into the Euphrātes in Babylonia.

**Τιμᾶσιών -ωνος** *Timasion*; *τιμή: bestowing honor.*

**Τιριβάζος -ου** *Tiribazos, Tiribazos.*

**Τισσαφέρνης -ους** *Tissaphernes*, a Persian noble, satrap of Karia and Ionia, and of Lydia till 407 B. C., when it became a part of Cyrus's satrapy. After his Ionian cities had revolted to Cy-

rus, he watched Cyrus's movements and reported to the king.

I. i. 2, 3, 6, 7; ii. 4. He was well known in Greece for the double part he played in the Peloponnesian war. He was put to death through the influence of Parysatis.

**Τολμίδης -ου** *Tolmides*, an Elēan, herald in the Greek army.

**Τροῖα -ᾶς ἡ** *Troy*, the Trojan city *Ilkos*.

**Τυριάειον -ου τό** *Tyrideion, Tyrid-eum*, a city of southern Phrygia. I. ii. 14.

**Φ**

**Φαλίνος -ου** *Phalinos, Phaltnus*, a Greek serving with Tissaphernes, sent as an envoy by the king to demand the surrender of the Greeks under Klearchos.

**Φάσις -ως** or **ῥος ὁ** *the Phasis*, a river of Kolchis, home of *δρυς φασιάνος the pheasant.*

**Φιλήσιος -ου** *Philesios, Philesius*; *φιλέω, φίλησις 406, 424: affectionate.*

**Φίλιππος -ου** *Philippos, Philip*; *φίλος, ἵππος: fond of horses.*

**Φοῖβος -ου** *Phoibos, Phoebus*, epithet of Apollo; perhaps *shining*.

**Φρυγία -ᾶς ἡ** *Phrygia*, a province in central Asia, *Phrygia Major*. I. ii. 6, 7; *φρύξ 424.*

**Φρύξ Φρυγός ὁ** *a Phrygian*. I. ii. 13.

**X**

**Χάλυβες -ων οἱ** *the Chalybes, Chalybians*, a warlike tribe of Pontos. *Chalybenta.*

**Χειρσόφος** -ου *Cheirisophos*, *Chirisophus*; **χέρ**, **σφός** 446 a: *skilful with the hand*.

**Χερσονήσος** -ου ἡ *the Chersonēsos*, *Chersonese*, the Thracian penin-

sular north of the Hellespont. I. i. 9; iii. 4; **χέρπος**, older **χέρπος** land, **νήσος** island.

**Χρομῖος** -ου *Chromios*, *Chromius*.



The "Theseium" from the northwest.

## GREEK-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

THIS vocabulary is intended to include all words contained in the exercises except the proper names. Much attention is paid to word-derivation by means of references to the Grammar. It can readily be seen how much can be made of this point if one will start, for example, with *στρατιά* and notice the different words, simple and compound, that are connected with *στρατός*.

A = used with the accusative. D = used with the dative. G = used with the genitive. V = for the principal parts consult the Verb-list in the *Grammar*, page 299.

### A

*ἀ-, ἀν-* inseparable, called *a- negative*, prefix to a word gives a negative force as *in-* in Latin and *un-* in English; see 436, 441, 444, 447 a, 75, 12.

*ἀ-* or *ἀν-*, a prefix called *a- copulative*, denoting union, is related to *ἅμα* *together*; cp. *ἅπας*, *ἅθροος* or *ἄθροος*; see 444 a.

*ἀγαγεῖν*, *ἀγάγη*, *ἀγαγόν*, aor. of *ἄγω* 350, 10.

*ἀγαθός -ή -όν* *good, brave, upright*; *τὰ ἀγαθὰ* *blessings*; *καλὸς καὶ ἀγαθός* *noble and good, an honorable man*; compared 182.

*ἀγαμαι* *admire*. V.

*ἀγγέλλω*, pred. ptc., *bring news, announce, report*; *ἄγγελος* 422. V.

*ἄγγελος -ου ὁ* *messenger, envoy, angelus, angel, ev-angel ev.*

*ἀγορά -ᾱς ἡ* *gathering, assembly; market place, market*; *ἀγορὰν*

*παρίχειν* *furnish a market*; *ἀγείρω* *gather* 404.

*ἀγοράζω* *buy in the market, purchase*; *ἀγορά* 419.

*ἄγριος -ᾱ -ον* *in the fields, wild*; *ἄγρός* *field* 424. Latin *ager*.

*ἄγω* *drive, lead* A; *bring, carry; march*. Latin *agō, āgmen*. V.

*ἄγών -ώνος ὁ* *gathering; contest, struggle, games*; *ἄγωνα ποιεῖν* or *τιθέναι* *hold games*; *ἄγω*. *agoniz*, *ant-agonist*.

*ἀδελφός -οῦ ὁ* *brother*. *Adelphi, Philadelphía φίλος*.

*ἀδιάβατος -ον* *not fordable*; *a- neg. δια-βαίνω* 441.

*ἀδικέω* *am wrong; do wrong*; A of person, A of thing, *harm, injure*; *ἄδικος* *unjust* 416 c.

*ἀδύνατος -ον* *unable, impossible*; *a- neg. δύναμαι* 441.

*ἀεὶ* *adv. always, constantly, repeatedly*. Latin *aevum*; *AYE*.

*ἄθλον -ου τό* *prize*; *ὁ ἀθλος* *contest*. *athlete ἀθλητής*.



- ἀσπείρω** also **ἀσπείρω** collect; mid. assemble, muster; **ἀσπός** in a crowd 418, α- cop. **θρόος** noise of a crowd 444 a.
- αἰρετός** -ή -όν chosen; **οἱ αἰρετοὶ** the delegates; **αἰρέω** 353.
- αἰρέω** take, capture; mid. choose. **δι-αερεῖν** διά 178, heretic. V.
- αἰσθάνομαι**, ptc. or **ὅτι** clause 588 a, b; perceive, learn. αα-aesthetic, α- neg. V.
- αἰσχύνω** shame; mid. as pass. dep. am ashamed; **αἰσχος** shame 421. V.
- αἰτέω**, A of person, A of thing, ask for, demand; mid. sometimes obtain by entreaty.
- αἰτιάομαι** blame; inf. clause, accuse of, charge with; **αἰτία** blame 416 b.
- αἰτίας** -ᾱ -ον G causing, cause of, to blame, responsible; **αἰτία** blame 424, **αἰτέω** 406.
- ἀκινάκης** -ου ὁ short, straight sword, dagger; a Persian weapon worn at the right side attached to the belt.
- ἀκούω**, G of person; G or A of thing; ptc., **ὅτι**, or inf. clause 588 a, b; hear, learn, listen to, obey. acoustic. V.
- ἀκρᾶ** -ᾱς ἡ summit; citadel; **ἄκρος**.
- ἄκρος** -ᾱ -ον pointed; highest, topmost; τὰ ἄκρα the heights. Latin *aciēs*, *ācer*; same **ἀκμή**, *acro-bat βαίνω*.
- ἀκρόπολις** -εως ἡ upper city. *acropolis*, citadel; **ἄκρος**, πόλις 446 b.
- ἀκονοῦσα** -ον unwilling, reluctant; translate as adv. unwillingly, accidentally, unintentionally; without permission or consent; α- neg. **ἐκόν** 589 a.
- ἀλέω** ward off; usually mid. repulse; requite. V.
- ἀλίσκομαι** am captured, taken; used as pass. of **αἰρέω**. V.
- ἀλλά** conj. otherwise; but, yet, still; well, however; **ἀλλὰ γὰρ** but then, but really; **ἕλλος**.
- ἀλλάττω** make other, change, exchange; **ἕλλος**. V.
- ἄλλῃ** adv. in another way; elsewhere; **ἕλλος ἄλλῃ** one in one way, another in another; in different directions; **ἕλλος** 236 end; cp. 343 c.
- ἀλλήλων** of one another, each other; **ἕλλος** 202.
- ἄλλοθεν** adv. from another place; **ἕλλοι ἄλλοθεν** from different points; **ἕλλος**, -θεν 228.
- ἄλλος** -ῃ -ον other, another; ὁ ἕλλος the rest of; τὰ ἕλλα in other respects; οὐδὲν ἕλλ', εἰ μὴ nothing else except; **ἕλλος ἕλλα λέγει** one says one thing, another another.
- ἄλλως** adv. otherwise; in another way; vainly; **ἕλλος** 229.
- ἅμα** adv. at the same time, together; D together with; **ἅμα τῇ ἡμέρᾳ** at daybreak; **ἅμα ἡλίῳ** ἀνέχοντι at sunrise; for (σ)ἅμα. Latin *semper*, *seme-l*; SAME.
- ἅμαξα** -ης ἡ wagon; **ἅμα**, ἄγ- from ἄγω, ἄξων axle; the wagon had two connected axles and so four wheels. *axis*. AXLE.
- ἁμαξίτος** -όν traversed by wagons; **ἅμαξα**, ἰτός, ἵεναι go 353, 446 a.
- ἁμαχεί** adv. without a fight or struggle; α- neg. μάχομαι.
- ἀμείνων** -ον better, braver; comp. of ἀγαθός 182.

**ἀμελέω** G. *am careless of, neglect*;  
ἀμελής *careless* 416 c; cp. μέλλω,  
ἐπι-μέλομαι.

**ἀμύχανος** -ον *without means*; im-  
practicable; a-neg. μηχανή 447 a.  
**ἀμπελος** -ου ἡ vine.

**ἀμφί** prep. *on both sides, about*.  
amphi-theater; amphi-bious bies.

G *about, concerning*; rare in  
prose.

A *round, about*; cf ἀμφί Σωκράτην  
Sokrates and his friends; ἀμφί  
τὰ ἐπιτήδεια εἶναι *to be busied*  
*about the provisions*; ἀμφί δο-  
πῆστον *about supper-time*.

**ἀμφότερος** -ᾱ -ον pl. both; both par-  
ties.

\* **ἀν**, a particle used

I In simple sentences and prin-  
cipal clauses, and in subordi-  
nate clauses of the same type.

a With past tenses of the indic-  
ative 461, 467.

b With the optative 479.

II In subordinate clauses, with  
relative words and εἰ (εἰ + ἀν =  
ἐάν) introducing the subjunc-  
tive 616 a, 650.

**ἀν** conj. for εἰ + ἀν, ἐάν w. subjv. *if*.

**ἀνά** prep. A *up, up along, along*,  
indefinite; ἀνά χρόνον *in course*  
*of time*; ἀνά κράτος *at full speed*,  
a dash without reserve of power.

**ἀναβαίνω** go up, ascend; march in-  
land; ἐπὶ ἵππον mount; ἀνά 178,  
βαίνω. V.

**ἀνάβασις** -ews ἡ *going up, march up*;  
especially the *Anabasis*, Xeno-  
phon's account of the expedition  
of Cyrus against Artaxerxes, the  
march from the coast to Baby-  
lon; ἀναβαίνω 406.

**ἀναγινώσκω** perceive again; read;  
ἀνά 178, γινώσκω. V.

**ἀναγκάζω** force, oblige; ἀνάγκη 419.

**ἀνάγκη** -ης ἡ force, necessity;  
ἀνάγκη ἐστίν D or A, and inf.  
clause, *I must*.

**ἀναίρω** take up; of an oracle an-  
swer, direct; ἀνά 178, αἰρέω. V.

**ἀνακονόω** D consult; mid. consult,  
confer with; ἀνά 178, κοινοῦς 416 a.

**ἀναμνησέω**, A of person and A of  
thing, remind; pass. remember;  
ἀνά 178, μνησέω 185; cp. μν-  
θῶ. Latin re-miniscor. V.

**ἀναρπάξω** snatch up, carry off as  
plunder; ἀνά 178, ἀρπάξω. V.

**ἀναστής**, ἀναστήναι, root-aor. ptc.  
and inf. of ἀν-ίστημι.

**ἀναστήσαι**, ἀναστήσῃς, σα-aor. inf.  
and ptc. of ἀν-ίστημι.

**ἀνδράποδον** -ου τό enslaved captive,  
slave.

**ἀνίστην**, root-aor. of ἀν-ίστημι.

**ἀνευ** adv. G *without* 518 c.

**ἀνέχω** hold up; mid. control my-  
self, endure 368 d; ἀνά 178, ἔχω.  
V.

**ἀνὴρ** ἀνδρός ὁ man, equivalent to  
Latin vir; soldier; person; ἄν-  
δρες φίλοι my friends; ἄνδρες  
στρατιῶται fellow-soldiers. androïd,  
Andrew. Phil-ander φίλος.

**ἀνθρωπος** -ου ὁ man, equivalent to  
Latin homō; soldier; fellow; cf  
ἄνθρωποι mankind. anthropo-logy  
λόγος, phil-anthropie φίλος.

**ἀνίω** grieve, trouble; ἀνία grief  
416 b.

**ἀνίστημι** make stand up, arouse;  
intr. forms and mid. stand up,  
arise; ἀνά 178, ἵστημι 363. ana-  
static. V.

**ἀντί** prep. G over against; instead of; πόλεμος ἀντί εἰρήνης war instead of peace; ἀνθ' ὧν ἔλαβον in return for what I received. Latin ante; anti-dote δίδωμι, anti-agonist ἀγών.

**ἀντιλέγω**, ὅτι οὐ or inf. w. μή 572, speak against, say in opposition, oppose; ἀντί 178, λέγω. V.

**ἀντιπαρασκευάζομαι** prepare myself in turn or in opposition; ἀντί 178, παρασκευάζομαι.

**ἀντιπέρας** adv. G. over against, on the opposite side of; κατ' ἀντιπέρας opposite; ἀντί, πέρας; cp. πέρα beyond.

**ἀντιποιέω** do in return; mid. G of thing, D. of person, dispute with for, lay rival claim to; ἀντί 178, ποίεω.

**ἀντιστασιότης** -ου ὁ one of the rival party, opponent; ἀντί, ἵστημι, στάσις 430 b, 440 a.

**ἀντιτάττω** array against; mid. oppose myself in battle against; ἀντί 178, τάττω. V.

**ἀντρον** -ου ὁ cave. Latin antrum.

**ἄνω** adv. above, up, upwards; ἀνά.

**ἄξιος** -ᾱ -ον G worthy, deserving, worth; πολλοῦ ἄξιος worth much, valuable 348 a; ἄξιᾱ worth 424, from ἔγω with the meaning weigh 406.

**ἄξιω** deem worthy, proper; G deem worthy of; w. inf. clause, claim, demand; ἄξιος 416 a. axiom.

**ἀπαγγέλλω**, ὅτι clause, bring or take back word; report, announce; ἀπό 178, ἀγγέλλω. V.

**ἀπάγω** lead off or back, march back; carry away; ἀπό 178, ἔγω. V.

**ἀπαίτω**, A of person and A of thing, ask back, demand what is due; ἀπό 178, αἰτέω.

**ἀπαράσκευος** -ον unprepared; a-neg. παρασκευή 441.

**ἅπῃς ἅπασα ἅπαν** all together, all; a-cop. τὰς 444 a.

**ἀπίθανον**, aor. of ἀποθνήσκω.

**ἀπείχον**, impf. of ἀπέχω.

**ἀπελάυνω** drive away; ride away, march; ἀπό 178, ἐλαύνω. V.

**ἀπελθεῖν**, aor. inf. of ἀπέρχομαι.

**ἀπέρχομαι** come or go away; retreat, return; ἀπό 178, ἔρχομαι. V.

**ἀπέχω** G am away from, am distant; mid. abstain from. V.

**ἀπίνειν** go off or away, depart, retreat, return; ἀπό 178, λέναι.

**ἀπιστία** -ᾱς ἡ distrust; treachery; ἀπιστος 429 b.

**ἀπιστος** -ον not to be trusted, untrustworthy, faithless; a-neg. πιστός 441.

**ἀπιτείνω** must depart; verbal of ἀπίνειν 354.

**ἀπό** prep. G off, away from, from. Latin ab; apō-stile στέλλω.

**ἀποδεικνύμι** point out; two A appoint; ἀπό 178, δείκνυμι. ἀποδεικτιό. V.

**ἀποδιδράσκω** run away, desert; ἀπό 178, διδράσκω; cp. ἔ-δραμον, δρόμος. V.

**ἀποδίδωμι** give back, restore; return what is due, pay; mid. sell; ἀπό 178, δίδωμι. V.

**ἀποδώσω**, fut. of ἀπο-δίδωμι.

**ἀποθνήσκω** die off, die; am killed, used as pass. of ἀποκτείνω; ἀπό 178, θνήσκω. V.

**ἀποθύω** pay a vow by sacrifice, sacrifice; ἀπό 178, θύω. V.

**ἀποκρίνομαι**, *ὑπὲρ* clause, *give a decision; answer, reply*; *ἀπό* 178, *κρίνω*. V.

**ἀποκτείνω** *kill off, put to death*, used as act. of *ἀπο-θνήσκω*; *ἀπό* 178, *κτείνω*. V.

**ἀπολαμβάνω** *take from, take back; regain*; pass. *am cut off from*; *ἀπό* 178, *λαμβάνω*. V.

**ἀπολείπω** *leave by going away, leave behind, abandon*; *ἀπό* 178, *λείπω*. V.

**ἀπολλύμι** *destroy utterly, lose*; mid. *perish, am lost*; *ἀπό* 178, *ὑλλύμι*. Latin *ab-oleō*. V.

**ἀποπέμπω** *send off or back; send what is due, remit*; mid. *dismiss*; *ἀπό* 178, *πέμπω*. V.

**ἀποπλέω** *sail away or back*; *ἀπό* 178, *πλέω*. V.

**ἀπορέω** *am without means; am in doubt, perplexed*; mid. G *am in want of*; *ἄπορος* 416 c.

**ἀπορίᾱ** -ας *ἡ* *want; difficulty, perplexity*; *ἄπορος* 429 b.

**ἀπορος** -ον *without means or resources, impassable*; α- neg. *πόρος* 447 a.

**ἀποστέλλω** *send back*; *ἀπό* 178, *στέλλω*. V.

**ἀποστήναι** *to revolt*, root-aor. inf. of *ἀφίστημι*.

**ἀποσφίζω** *lead or get back in safety*; *ἀπό* 178, *σφίζω*. V.

**ἀποφεύγω** *flee by going away or too far to be caught, escape*; *ἀπό* 178, *φεύγω*. V.

**ἀποχωρέω** *withdraw, retreat*; *ἀπό* 178, *χωρέω*. *χώρος*. *χώρᾱ* 416 c.

**ἀπρακτος** -ον *doing nothing, unprofitable, unsuccessful*; α- neg. *πράγ-, πράττω* 353 b, 411.

\* **ἄρα**, inferential particle, *therefore, accordingly* 673 a.

**ἄρα**, interrog. particle, 668, 488 a, c. **ἀργύριον** -ου *τό* *silver*; *money*; *ἄργυρος* *white metal* 431 a, *ἀργός* *shining*. Latin *argentum*.

**ἀρετή** -ῆς *ἡ* *fitness; bravery, valor*; *ἀρ-* *fit*; cp. *ἄριστος*.

**ἀριθμός** -οῦ *ὁ* *number, enumeration; extent*; *ἀρ-* *fit* 406, 400 b; cp. *ἀρετή*. *arithmetico*, *log-arithm λόγος*.

**ἀριστερός** -ᾱ -όν *left*.

**ἄριστον** -ου *τό* *breakfast*.

**ἄριστος** -ῆ -ον *fittest, best*, as sup. of *ἀγαθός* 182; cp. *ἀρ-* in *ἀρετή*. *aristo-ατος* *κρατέω*.

**ἄρμα** -ατος *τό* *chariot*; *ἀρ-* *fit* 407.

**ἀρμάμαξα** -ῆς *ἡ* *closed carriage*; *ἄρμα*, *ἄμαξα* 443 a.

**ἀρμοστής** -οῦ *ὁ* *organizer; harmonist, a Spartan governor of a province*; *ἀρμόττω* *fit*; cp. *ἀρ-* in *ἄριστος*, *ἄρμα*, *ἀριθμός*, *ἀρετή*. Latin *ars*, *artūs*, *arma*; *harmony*.

**ἀρπάξω** *seize, capture, plunder; carry off*; *ἀρπ-* *seize* 419. Latin *rapīd*, *rapidus*; *Harpy*. V.

**ἀρχαῖος** -ᾱ -ον *old, ancient*; *τὸ* *ἀρχαῖον* *adv. formerly*; *ἀρχή* 424. *archaio*, *archaio-logy λόγος*, *archives*.

**ἀρχή** -ῆς *ἡ* *beginning; command; rule, government, province*; *ἄρχω* 404.

**ἄρχω** G or inf. clause, *begin, am first; command, lead*; *ὁ* *ἄρχων* *leader, commander*. *arch-angel*. *mon-arch* *μόνος*, *an-archy* α- neg. V. **ἀσθενέω** *am weak, am ill*; *ἀσθενής* *without strength* 416 c, α- neg. **σθένος** *strength* 447 a; cp. -es in verbals 413 b.

**ἀσματος -η -ον** *with pleasure, gladly*; ἀδ- cp. ἡδύς.

**ἀσπίς** -ῆος ἡ *shield oval or round, large enough to cover the greater part of the body, carried on the left arm.*

**ἀσφαλής** -ές *not to be tript, sure, safe, secure*; α- neg. σφάλω *trip* 413 b, 441. Latin *fallō, falsus*.

**ἀσφαλές** *adv. safely, without danger*; ἀσφαλής 229.

**ἀτιμάζω** *dishonor, disgrace*; ἀ-τιμός *without honor, in disgrace* 419, α- neg. τιμή 447 a.

\* **αἶ** *adv. again, in turn, moreover.*

**αἶψα** *adv. again, once more*; αἶ.

**αὔριον** *adv. tomorrow.*

**αὐτίκα** *adv. immediately.*

**αὐτόματος -η -ον** *of my own accord, spontaneously*; ἀπὸ τοῦ αὐτομάτου *suā sponte, of their own accord, without orders*; cp. μα- in *μανθάνω, μέμνημαι*; αὐτός, μα- 446 a. *automatic.*

**αὐτός -ή -δ(ν)** *self, very*; outside the nom. *him, her, it, them*; δ αὐτός *the same*; αὐτός may sometimes be translated *of my own accord, by myself*. Consult 10/ a, b, c.

**αὐτοῦ** *adv. right here, there.*

**αὐτοῦ, αὐτῶν** *for αὐτοῦ, αὐτῶν.*

**ἀφ'** *for ἀπ' from ἀπό.*

**ἀφαιρέω** *take away*; mid. A of thing, A or G of person, *deprive, rob*; mid. *rescue*; ἀπό 178, αἰρέω. V.

**ἀφανίζω** *make invisible, hide, destroy*; ἀ-φανής 418; α- neg. φαν-, φαίνω 413 b, cp. φανερός.

**ἀφείλον**, aor. of ἀφαιρέω.

**ἀφιστήκεσαν** *had revolted, were engaged in revolt*; pluperf. of ἀφίστημι.

**ἀφίημι** *'send away, let go, let escape*; ἀπό 178, ἵημι. V.

**ἀφικνέομαι** *arrive*; A and prep. *come to, arrive at, reach*; ἀπὸ 178, ἵκνέομαι, cp. ἱκανός. V.

**ἀφίστημι**, G of person, *set off from, cause to revolt*; intr. forms and mid. *revolt, withdraw from*; ἀπό 178, ἵστημι 363 and α. *apo-stasy*. V.

**ἄχθομαι** *am troubled, am displeased*. V.

**ἄχρι**, conj. *adv. until* 631; see *τετε* and *μέχρι*.

## B

**βάθος -ους τό** *depth, height*; cp. βα- *thús deep, high*. bathos.

**βαίνω** *go, walk*; βα- cp. βάσις *going*. Latin *vadum, veniō*; *basis, base*. V.

**βάλλω** *throw*; A of person, D of missile, *throw at, hit, pelt*; λίθους ἔβαλον αὐτόν *they threw stones at him*. em-blem, pro-blem, para-ble. V.

**βαρβαρικός -ή -όν** *not Greek, foreign, barbarian*; βάρβαρος 425.

**βάρβαρος -ον** *not Greek, foreign*; as subst. *foreigner, barbarian, barbarous*.

**βαρέως** *adv. heavily*; βαρέως φέρειν *graviter ferre, take it hard, am troubled*; βαρὺς *heavy*. Latin *gravis*. *bary-tone*.

**βασιλειᾷ -ās ἡ** *kingdom*; κατέστη εἰς τὴν βασιλειᾶν *ascended the throne*; βασιλεὺς 429 b.

**βασιλεὺς** -ους *the king's, royal*; τὰ βασίλεια *palace, castle*; βασιλεὺς 424.

**βασιλεὺς** -εως ὁ *king*; παρὰ βασιλεῖ *at court*. Basil, basiliak.

**βασιλεύω** *am king*; βασιλεὺς 417 a.

**βασιλικός** -ή -όν *kingly, royal*; βασιλεὺς 425. basilica.

**βέλτιστος** -η -ον *best, bravest*; sup. of ἀγαθός 182.

**βελτίων** -ον *better, braver*; comp. of ἀγαθός 182.

**βία** -ας ἡ *force, violence*; βίᾳ adv. *by force, by storm*.

**βιάζομαι** *force, compel*; βία 419.

**βίος** -ου ὁ *life*. Latin *vīvus*; QUICK, bio-graphy γράφω.

**βλάπτω** *am idle, shirk*.

**βοηθῆναι** *run to a cry*; D *help, assist*; βοηθός 416 a, βοή *cry, θέω*.

**βουλεύω** *plan*; mid. *plan, deliberate*; βουλή *will, plan* 417 a.

**βούλομαι** pass. dep. *will, wish*, generally a desire of the heart; cp. εἶναι; prefer, οὐ βούλομαι *I prefer not to*. Latin *vōlō*.

**βραχύς** -εῖα -ύ *short*. Latin *brevis*. **βροντή** -ης ἡ *thunder*.

## Γ

\* **γάρ** adv. *why! indeed*; conj. *for*; καὶ γάρ *for also, and in fact*; ἀλλὰ γάρ *but then, but really*. Consult 672 a, b, c, d.

\* **γε**, intensive particle, 671 b.

**γέλως** -ωτος ὁ *laughter*.

**γένος** -ους τό *family, race*; γίγνομαι, γεν- 407. Latin *genus*; *genesis*, hetero-geneous ἕτερος, genea-logy γενεά, λόγος.

**γέφυρα** -ας ἡ *bridge*.

**γῆ** γῆς ἡ *earth; land*. geo-graphy γράφω, geo-metry μέτρον, George ἔργον.

**γίγνομαι** *become, am*; *am born*; *happen, occur*; γεν-. Latin *gignō*, *gēns*, (*g*)*nāscor*; KIN, KIND, hydro-gen ὕδωρ; see γένος. V.

**γινώσκω**, ptc., inf., or ὅτι clause 588, *perceive* (with the mind), *recognize, know, feel*; w. simple inf. *know how*. Latin *nōscō*; dia-gnosis διὰ, *gnome*, a-gnostic a-neg. V.

**γνώμη** -ης ἡ *opinion, judgment, purpose*; ἀνευ τῆς Κύρου γνώμης *without Cyrus's consent*; γιγνώσκω, γνω-ω 406.

**γόνυ γόνατος** τό *knee*. Latin *genū*; KNEE.

**γράφω** *write*. Latin *scribō*; graphio, bio-graphy βίος, tele-gram τῆλε *afar*, grammar. V.

**γυμνάζω** *exercise*; γυμνός *naked* 419. *gymnasium* γυμνάσιον 432, *gymnast*.

**γυμνής** -ητος ὁ *light-armed foot-soldier*; γυμνός.

**γυνή** γυναικὸς ἡ *woman, wife*. misogynist μῖσος *hate*.

**γωνία** -ας ἡ *corner, angle*.

## Δ

**δακρύνω** *weep*; δάκρυ *tear* 417 b. Latin *lacrima*.

**δαπανάω** *spend money, incur expense*; δαπάνη *expense* 416 b.

**δάρειος** -οῦ ὁ *daric*, a Persian gold coin worth about \$5.40, said to be derived from Δαρειός 425.

**δασμός** -οῦ ὁ *division*; *tax* like φόρος *tribute*: δα- 400, 400 b.

**δασύς** -εῖα -ύς *thick, dense*. Latin *dēnsus*.

\*δέ but, and; μὲν . . . δέ but, and marking a contrast 699 a, 102; καὶ . . . δέ and also.

δεδούς -ως -εs perf. ptc. *fearing* 370 (5).

δέδουκα, perf. as pres., aor. *θεύω*, *fear, dread*. V.

δεῖ impers. G, or A and inf. clause, *there is need; I must; μάχης δεῖ there is need of a fight, you must fight; ἡμᾶς δεῖ ταῦτα ποιῆσαι we must do this*.

δείκνυμι *point at, show*; δεικ-, *δεικ-*. Latin *deicō*; *delictio, para-digm παρὰ*. V.

δεῖλη -ης ἡ *afternoon, evening*.

δαινός -ῆ -όν *frightful; skilful, clever*; τὸ δεινόν *danger*; cp. *δει-*, *δέδουκα* 412. Latin *dirus*.

δειπνον -ον τό *dinner*.

δέκα *ten*. Latin *decem*; TEN, *decade* *δεκάς*.

δεκαπέντε *fifteen* 190. Latin *quindecim*.

δέκατος -ῆ -ον *tenth* 188; δέκα. Latin *decimus*.

δένδρον -ου τό *tree*. *rhodo-dendron* *ρόδον* *rose*.

δεξιός -ᾶ -όν *right, right-hand side*; by the omission of *χείρ* *hand*: ἐν δεξιᾷ *on the right, δεξιὰ δοῦναι give pledges*; cp. *δεκ-*, *δεξ-*, *δέχομαι*. Latin *dexter*.

δέομαι pass. dep. G, or A of thing and G of person, *want, desire*; w. inf. clause and G. of person, *request, beg*; δέω. V.

δεόν ptc. neut. of δέω, δεῖ impers.; εἰς τὸ δεόν *into what is required, that is in the right way*.

δέρμα -ατος τό *hide, skin*; δέρω 407. *epi-dermis ἐπί, taxi-dermy τάρτω*.

δέρω *flay, skin*. V.

δεσπότης -ου ὁ *master, lord* 72 d. *despot*.

δεῦρο adv. *hither, here*.

δέυτερος -ᾶ -ον *second* 188; δέο.

δέχομαι *receive, accept*. V.

δέω, see *δεῖ, δέομαι*.

\*δῆ, intensive particle, 671 e (1) (2).

δηλός -ῆ -ον *plain, evident*; δηλός εἰμι with ptc. *am plainly* 585 a; δηλὸν *εἶ* *evidently*.

δηλώω *make plain, show*; δηλός 416 a.

διά prep. *through, dia-meter, μέτρον measure*.

G *through, during*; διὰ βίον *through life*; equivalent to Latin *per*.

A *through, on account of*; διὰ πολλά *for many reasons*; equivalent to Latin *propter*.

διαβαίνω *stride*; A *cross*; διὰ 178, *βαίνω*. V.

διαβάλλω *throw across; slander, falsely accuse*; διὰ 178, *βάλλω*. *dia-bollo, devil διάβολος*. V.

διαβάς, διαβήναι, root-aor. ptc. and inf. of *δια-βαίνω*.

διαβατός -ᾶ -ον *must be crossed*; verbal of *δια-βαίνω* 354.

διαβατός -ῆ -όν *fordable, passable*; verbal of *δια-βαίνω* 353 b.

διάγω *carry across; put off*; with pred. ptc. *continue*; ἐλπιδας λέγων δι-ήγῃ *he kept expressing hopes* 585 a, but cp. also 583, ex. 3; διὰ 178, *ἄγω*. V.

διαδίδωμι *give throughout, distribute*; διὰ 178, *δίδωμι*. V.

διακόσιοι -αι -α *two hundred*; δύο, *ἐκατόν*. Latin *ducenti*.

**διαλέγομαι** pass. dep. D of person,  
A of thing, *talk with, converse*;  
διδ 178, λέγω. *dia-logos, dia-lect.*  
V.

**διαπέμπω** *send in different direc-*  
*tions*; διδ 178, πέμπω. V.

**διαπράττω** *work out, accomplish*;  
mid. effect, *accomplish my object,*  
*secure, obtain my request*; *make*  
*an agreement*; διδ 178, πράττω.  
V.

**διαρπάζω** *snatch apart*; *devastate,*  
*plunder, sack*; διδ 178, ἀρπάζω.  
V.

**διατίθημι** *set in order, dispose, treat*;  
διδ 178, τίθημι. V.

**δίδωμι** *give, allow, grant*; δο-ω.  
Latin *dō, dare*; *dose, anti-dote* ἀντί,  
an-*to-dote* α- neg. ἐκ. V.

**διέρχομαι**, A or διδ G, *go through,*  
*pass through*; διδ 178, ἔρχομαι.  
V.

**δίκαιος** -ῆ -ον *right, lawful, just,*  
*proper*; δίκη 424.

**δίκη** -ης ἡ *custom, right, justice*;  
*τὴν δίκην ἔχει* *he has his deserts*;  
*δίκην ἐπι-τίθεναι* *inflict punish-*  
*ment*; *δίκην διδόναι* *pay the pen-*  
*alty*; δεικνύμι 404.

**δίω** adv. for δι' ὅ *therefore.*

**δίωτι** adv. for δι' ὅ τι *because, since.*

**δίσ** adv. *twice*; δέο 332.

**δισχίλιοι** -αι -α *two thousand*; δέο,  
χίλιοι.

**διωκτέον** *must pursue*; verbal of  
διώκω 354.

**διώκω** *pursue, chase*; εἰς τὸ διώκειν  
*in pursuit.* V.

**διώρυξ** -υξος ἡ *ditch, canal*; διδ  
178, ὀρύττω dig 401.

**δοκέω** *think*; intr. pers. w. inf.  
*seem, appear*; intr. impers. w.

inf. *seem best, is determined, is*  
*resolved*; ἔμιν δοκοῦμεν ἔχειν; *do*  
*we seem to you to have?* *do you*  
*think we have?* ἔδοξεν αὐτῷ *he*  
*decided*; ἔδοξε ταῦτα *this was*  
*voted*; τὰ δόξαντα τοῖς Ἕλλησιν  
*the decision, opinion, of the*  
*Greeks*; cp. δόξα. Latin *deceit*  
and also *doceō*; *dogma* δόγμα  
407. V.

**δόξα** -ης ἡ *opinion*; *reputation*;  
*παρὰ τὴν δόξαν* *contrary to my*  
*expectation*; δοκέω. *doxo-logy* λό-  
γος, *ortho-dox* ὀρθός *straight*, *para-*  
*dox* παρὰ 178.

**δορηστός** -οῦ ὁ *supper-time.*

**δῶρον** δόρατος τό *small tree trunk*;  
*spear shaft*; commonly *spear*,  
long with double-edged point  
λόγχη and butt spike στύραξ;  
cp. δρῦς *oak tree.*

**δοῦλεύω** *am a slave*; δοῦλος 417 a,  
423.

**δοῦλος** -ου ὁ *slave.*

**δουλῶ** *enslave*; δοῦλος 416 a, 423.

**δοῦναι**, root-aor. inf. of δίδωμι.

**δρόμος** -ου ὁ *running*; *running*  
*track, race-course*; cp. ἔδραμον  
aor. of τρέχω 403, ἀπο-διδράσκω.  
*drome-dary, hippo-drome* ἵππος.

**δύναμαι** *am able, can.* *dynamis,*  
*dynamite.* V.

**δύναμις** -ews ἡ *ability, power*; *force,*  
*troops*; δύναμις.

**δυναστής** -ου ἡ *nobleman, ruler*;  
*δύναμις* 400 b, 405.

**δυνατός** -ῆ -όν *able, powerful*; *pos-*  
*sible*; ἢ δυνατόν μάλιστα *as best I*  
*can*; verbal of δύναμαι 353.

**δύο** *two*; cp. διδ in sense *between,*  
*dis* *twice.* Latin *duo, dubius,*  
*dis*; *two, di-aerens* αἰρέω, δι-



phthong *5*, dia-gonal γωγιά corner, di-graph γράφω.

δα, root-aor. subjv. of δίδωμι.

δέδεκα twelve; δύο + δέκα. Latin *duodecim*.

δῶρον -ου τό present, gift; δίδωμι 412 a. Latin *dōnum*.

δώσω, fut. of δίδωμι.

δι

ἰά, pres. ind. of ἰδῶ.

ἰάλω, aor. ind. of ἰάλλομαι.

ἰάν, ἰν or ἦν, conj. w. subjv. if; εἰ + ἄν.

ἑαυτοῦ -ης -οῦ refl. pron. of himself, herself, itself; οἱ ἑαυτοῦ his own men; ἐ + αὐτός. 203.

ἰάω, A and inf. clause, allow, permit. V.

ἐγ- for ἐν-.

ἐγγός adv. G near.

ἐγκλειυστος -ον instigated; ἐν, κε-λέω 353 b.

ἐγώ pers. pron. I. Latin *ego*.

ἐγώγε I for my part; ἐγώ + γε.

ἔδωκα, aor. of δέδοικα.

ἔδραμον, aor. of τρέχω.

ἔδωκα, aor. of δίδωμι.

ἔζη, ἔζων, imperf. of ζάω.

ἐθέλω am willing, in prose generally a decision of the mind; cp. βούλομαι: οὐκ ἐθέλω refuse. V.

εἰ conj. if; whether; εἰ . . . ἢ, εἴτε . . . εἴτε whether . . . or; εἰ δὲ μή otherwise; εἰ μή except; εἰ γάρ in wishes 477; καὶ εἰ even if; οὐδὲ εἰ not even if.

εἶα, εἶαστε, imperf. and aor. of εἶδω.

εἰδέναι, εἰδότε, inf. and subjv. of εἶδω.

εἶδον, aor. of ὁράω, w. ptc. clause, see, observe, perceive; εἶδ-, cp.

οἶδα. Latin *videō*, *vīsus*; WISE, idea, idol, history, sphere-id σφαῖρα ball. V.

εἴθε, in wishes, 477.

εἰκός -έτος ptc. neut. natural, reasonable; ὡς εἰκός as is natural, naturally; εἰκα am like 370 (6).

εἴκοσι twenty; δύο, δέκα, cp. τριάκοντα thirty. Latin *vīginti*; TWENTY.

εἶλον, aor. of αἰρέω.

εἶμι am, exist; ἔστι it is possible;

ἐσ- cp. εἶ well. Latin *es-se*. V.

εἶμι, go, am going; ἔ-, ἔ-εμαι. Latin *ire*. V.

εἶναι, inf. of εἶμι.

εἴπατε, aor. impv. pl. from ind. εἶπα for εἶπον tell. εἴπατε is more common than εἴπετε.

εἶπον, aor. of φημι and λέγω, tell, say, speak, tell, relate; *Fer-*. Latin *voceō*, *vōx*; *epio*. V.

εἶρηκα, perf. of φημι and λέγω, have said, mentioned; cp. ἐρῶ. V.

εἰρήνη -ης ἡ agreement, peace; cp. ἐρῶ.

εἰς prep. A in, into; against; w. numerals to the number of, about; εἰς τὴν τροφήν for the support of; εἰς τὴν στρατιάν for the army; cp. ἐν, ἐντός, ἐνθα, εἰσω. Latin *in*, *inde*, *intrā*; *in*, *esotario*.

εἰς μία ἐν one.

εἰσάγω lead into; εἰς 178, ἔγω. V.

εἰσβάλλω throw into; A w. εἰς invade; of a river empty; εἰς 178, βάλλω. V.

εἰσβολή invasion; entrance, pass; εἰσβάλλω 404, cp. 440 end.

εἰσελαίνω drive into; march into; εἰς 178, ἐλαίνω. V.

**εσέρχομαι** *come or go in, enter*; *εἰς* 178, *έρχομαι*. V.

**εἴσεται**, fut. of *εἶδω*.

**εἰσ(ν)**, third pl. of *εἶμι*.

**εἶσω** adv. *inside*; G *inside of, within*; cp. *ἐν*, *εἰς*. Latin *intus*.

**εἴτα** adv. *then, thereupon, afterwards*; *εἴτα πλανωμένους* *they then wandered about and . . .* An. I. ii. 25.

**εἴτε . . . εἴτε** conj. *if . . . or; whether . . . or*.

**εἶχε**, imperf. of *έχω*.

**εἶων**, imperf. of *έδω*.

**έκ**, before a consonant for *έξ*.

**έκαστος -η -ον** each, every; pl. the several. 554.

**έκαστοτε** adv. *every time*; *έκαστος*, cp. the forms *τό-τε* *then*, *άλλο-τε* *at other times*.

**εκατόν** one hundred. Latin *centum*; HUNDRED, *hecatom-b βοῦς ox*.

**εβαίνω** *step out*; *go forth*; *έξ* 178, *βαίνω*. V.

**εβάλλω** *throw out*; *expel, banish*; *έξ* 178, *βάλλω*. V.

**εκδέρω** *flay*; *έξ* 178, *δέρω*. V.

**έκεῖ** adv. *there, in that place*.

**έκεῖνος -η -ον** dem. pron. *that, ille*; cp. *έκεῖ*. 553.

**εκαλύπτω** *uncover*; *έξ* 178, *καλύπτω* *cover*. V.

**εκακλησίᾳ -ας ἡ** assembly, meeting; *έξ* 178, *καλέω* 406, cp. 440 end. ecclesiastio.

**εκκόπτω** *cut out of its place, of trees; cut down*; *έξ* 178, *κόπτω*. V.

**εκλείπω** *leave by going out, abandon*; *έξ* 178, *λείπω*. eo-lipso. V.

**εκπίπτω** *fall out; am driven out, am exiled, as a passive of εκ-*

*βάλλω*; *οἱ εκπεπτοκότες* *the exiles*; *έξ* 178, *πίπτω*, *περ-*. V.

**εκπλέω** *sail out or away*; *έξ* 178, *πλέω*. V.

**εκφεύγω** *flee out of, escape*; *έξ* 178, *φεύγω*. V.

**έκόν -ούσα -όν** *willing*; translated as adv. *willingly, voluntarily*. 589 a.

**ελαύνω** *drive; ride, march*; *ελα-* *elastio*. V.

**ελεῖν, ελίσθαι**, aor. inf. of *αἰρέω*.

**ελεύθερος -α -ον** *free, independent*.

**εληφθῆν**, aor. pass. of *λαμβάνω*.

**ελθεῖν**, inf. of *ἔλθω* aor. of *έρχομαι*.

**ελπίς -ιδος ἡ** *hope*; *Feλπ-* *wish*. Latin *voluptās*.

**ἐμ-** for *ἐν*.

**εμαυτοῦ -ης -οῦ** refl. pron. *of myself*; *με, ἐμέ + αὐτός*. 203.

**εμβαίνω** *go into, embark*; *ἐν* 178, *βαίνω*. V.

**εμβάλλω** *throw in*; of a river *empty*; A w. *εἰς* *invade, attack*; *ἐν* 178, *βάλλω*. em-blem. V.

**ἐμός -ῆ -όν** poss. pron. *my, mine*; cp. *με, ἐμέ*. Latin *meus*.

**εμπροσθεν** adv. G *before, in front of*; *οἱ εμπροσθεν* *the van*; *ἐν, πρόσθεν*.

**ἐν** prep. D *in, on, at, by*; *ἐν ὅπλοις* *under arms*; *ἐν τούτῳ* *in this time, meanwhile*; *ἐν ᾧ, ἐν αἷς* *relative, in this time, while, meanwhile*; cp. *εἰς* and examples there, also *ἐνθάδε, ἔνθεν, ἐνταῦθα, ἐντεῦθεν*. Latin *in, intus, inter, interior, intrin̄s*; IN, en-ergy *ἔργον*, en-oyalical *κύκλος*, em-phasis *φαίνω*, em-pirio *πειράομαι*.

**ἐναντιόομαι** pass. dep. 268 b end, D *oppose, withstand*; *ἐναντίος* *opposite, ἐν, ἀντί* 438 a, 416 a.

ἐνατος -η -ον *nínth*; ἐννά. Latin *novem, nōnus*; *Enna*.

ἐνθαλος -ον *evident thereby or therein*; ἐν, θῆλος.

ἐνθαυαί *be in or on*; ἐν 178, εἰμ.

ἐνεκα *adv., generally postpositive, G on account of; equivalent to Latin causā.*

ἐνθα *adv. where; whither, whereupon*; cp. ἐν.

ἐνθάδε *adv. here, hither*; cp. ἐν, ἐνθα + -δε; cp. ὅ-δε.

ἐνθεν *adv. whence, from which*; cp. also 238; ἐν + -θεν; cp. ἐντεῦθεν.

ἐνθάθεν *adv. thence, from here*; ἐνθεν + -δε; cp. ὅ-δε.

ἐνιαυτός -οῦ ὁ *any long period of time, year, any period of twelve months*; cp. ἔτος: ἔτος ἦλθε περιπλομένων ἐνιαυτῶν *as times rolled on the year came, volventibus annis.*

ἐννέα *nine. Latin novem.*

ἐνοικέω *live in*; cf ἐνοικοῦντες *the inhabitants*; ἐν 178, οἰκέω.

ἐνοράω *see therein*; ἐν 178, ὁράω. V.

ἐνταῦθα *adv. there; to that place; thereupon*; cp. ἐν.

ἐντεῦθεν *adv. from there; thereafter*; cp. ἐν, ἐνθεν.

ἐντός *adv. G within*; ἐντὸς αὐτῶν *within their ranks*; ἐντὸς δέκα ἡμερῶν *within ten days*; cp. ἐν.

ἐντυχάνω *D chance upon, meet, find*; ἐν 178, τυγχάνω. V.

ἐξ, before a consonant ἐκ, prep. G. *out of, from*; the Greek regards the point of departure frequently where we say *in, on, at*; ἐκ τούτων *after this or in consequence of this*; cp. ἐξω. Latin *ex; ex-odus* ὁδός.

ἐξ *six. Latin sex; hexa-gon γωνία, hexa-meter μέτρον.*

ἐξαγγέλλω, ὅτι *clause, bring word out, report, make known*; ἐξ 178, ἀγγέλλω. V.

ἐξάγω *bring or lead out, march out*; ἐξ 178, ἔγω. V.

ἐξαίρω *take out, remove; mid. select, choose*; ἐξ 178, αἰρέω.

ἐξαιτέω *demand; mid. A beg off, intercede for*; ἐξ 178, αἰτέω.

ἐξακόσιοι -αι -α *six hundred*; ἐξ, ἑκατόν. Latin *secenti*.

ἐξαπατάω *completely deceive, cheat*; ἐξ 178, ἀπατάω, ἀπάτη *deceit* 416 b.

ἐξάουα *impers. ἔξεσσι, ἐξῆν, inf. clause A or D, it is allowed, permitted, I may*; ἐξ 178, εἰμ.

ἐξάλαυνω *drive out, expel; march forth, proceed*; ἐξ 178, ἐλαυνω. V.

ἐξέρχομαι *go or come out; march out*; ἐξ 178, ἔρχομαι. V.

ἐξέτασις -εως ἡ *examination; review of an army*; ἐξ 178, ἐτάζω *examine* 406, 440 end.

ἐξήκοντα *sixty*; ἐξ, εἰκοσι. Latin *sexagintā*.

ἐξίνααι *go out, march out*; ἐξ 178, εἰμ. V.

ἐξομεν, fut. of ἔχω.

ἐξευρίσκω *find out; seek out, discover*; ἐξ 178, εὐρίσκω. V.

ἐξω *adv. outside; G outside of, without, beyond*; cp. ἐξ. *exotia, exoteria.*

ἐν' for ἐνί.

ἐπαθον, aor. of πάσχω.

ἐπαινέω *praise, approve, commend*; ἐπὶ 178, αἰνέω *praise*. V.

ἐπάν, ἐπὴν *conj. adv. w. subjv. when, whenever*; ἐπεὶ + ἄν. 629.

**ἐπει** conj. adv. *when, after; since*;  
**ἐπει τάχιστα** as soon as. 639.

**ἐπειδὴν** conj. adv. w. subjv. *when, after, as soon as, whenever*;  
**ἐπειδὴ + ἔν.** 639.

**ἐπειδή** conj. adv. *when, after; since*; **ἐπει + δὴ.** 639.

**ἐπείναι** be on or over; **ἐπὶ** 178, εἰμ.

**ἐπειτα** adv. *thereupon, then; further, besides*; εἰς τὸν **ἐπειτα** χρόνον *in time to come*; **ἐπὶ + εἶτα.**

**ἐπέρχομαι** A *come upon*; **ἐπὶ** 178, ἔρχομαι. V.

**ἐπερωτάω** *ask in addition; inquire, demand*; **ἐπὶ** 178, ἐρωτάω. V.

**ἐπεσον**, aor. of πίπτω.

**ἐπην**, imperf. of ἐπείναι.

**ἐπην** for ἐπᾶν.

**ἐπηρόμην**, aor. of ἐπερωτάω.

**ἐπὶ** prep. on. *epi-thet τίθημι, epi-gram γράφω, epi-stile στέλλω.*

G *on*; **ἐπὶ τοῦ θρόνου** *on the throne.*

D *on, at, near*; **ἐπὶ τῷ ποταμῷ** *at the river.*

A *to, on, against*; **ἐπὶ τὰς Ἀθήνας** *to or against Athens.*

**ἐπιβουλεύω** D *plan, plot, or conspire against*; **ἐπὶ** 178, βουλεύω.

**ἐπιβουλή -ης ἡ** *plot, scheme, design*;  
**ἐπὶ, βουλή, plan** 440 a and end;  
cp. 404 ἐπιβουλεύω.

**ἐπιδείκνυμι** *point to, show*; D of person *show to, display*; **ἐπὶ** 178, δείκνυμι. V.

**ἐπείναι** *come on*; D *advance, attack*;  
*ἡ ἐπιούσα ἡμέρᾳ* *the next day*; **ἐπὶ** 178, εἰμ. V.

**ἐπιθυμέω** G or inf. clause, *set my heart on, desire*; **ἐπὶ, θυμός** *heart.* 438 a.

**ἐπικίνδυνος -ον** *dangerous*; **ἐπὶ, κίνδυνος** *danger* 436, 439, 448.

**ἐπικρύπτω** *conceal well*; mid. *conceal my plans, act secretly*; *ὡς μάλιστα ἐδύνατο ἐπικρυπτόμενος* *as secretly as possible*; **ἐπὶ** 178, κρύπτω. V.

**ἐπιμαρτύρομαι** *appeal to the gods to witness*; **ἐπὶ** 178, μαρτύρομαι, μάρτυς *a witness* 422. martyr. V.

**ἐπιμελομαι** and **ἐπιμελέομαι** pass. dep. G or *ἔπος* clause, *take care of, take care that*; cp. μέλει *it is my care*; **ἐπιμελής** *careful* 438 a. V.

**ἐπιμελῶς** adv. *carefully*; **ἐπιμελής** *careful.*

**ἐπινοέω** *set my mind on; have in mind, purpose, intend*; **ἐπὶ** 178, νοέω *observe, νοῦς* *mind*; cp. γνώμη, ὄνομα.

**ἐπιπείθομαι** pass. dep. D *am persuaded thereto*; *comply with, obey*; **ἐπὶ** 178, πείθω. V.

**ἐπιπίπτω** D *fall on, attack*; **ἐπὶ** 178, πίπτω. V.

**ἐπίπονος -ον** *laborious, hard*; **ἐπὶ, πόνος** *labor* 439, 448.

**ἐπὶρρυτός -ον** *flowed upon, well watered*; **ἐπὶ, ῥέω** 353 b.

**ἐπίσταμαι** pass. dep. w. inf. clause, *know how*; w. ptc. clause or *ὅτι* clause, *understand, know*; **ἐπὶ, στα-** V.

**ἐπιστέλλω** D *send word to; direct, command*; **ἐπὶ** 178, στέλλω. V.

**ἐπιστολή -ης ἡ** *letter*; **ἐπιστέλλω** 404. Latin *epistula. epistole.*

**ἐπιτάττω** *arrange in addition*; D *give instructions to, direct*; **ἐπὶ** 178, τάττω. V.

**ἐπιτήδeos -ᾱ -ον** *suited to, fit, proper, necessary*; τὰ **ἐπιτήδεια** *supplies, provisions*; *οἷνες ἐπι-*

τῆδewι such as are friends, like Latin *necessarii*; cp. adv. ἐπι-  
τηδές to serve the purpose, enough.  
ἐπιτίθημι put on; D δίκην ἐπιτίθεναι  
inflict punishment on; mid. D  
fall upon, attack; ἐπὶ 178, τίθημι.  
V.

ἐπιτρέπω D of person, hand over to,  
entrust to; allow, permit; mid.  
give myself up; ἐπὶ 178, τρέπω.  
V.

ἐπιχειρώ put my hands to, attempt,  
try; ἐπὶ, χεῖρ 438 a.

ἐπιχωρεύ advance; ἐπὶ 178, χωρεύ  
give place, χώρος place 416 e.

ἐπομαι D follow, attend, accom-  
pany; pursue; σεπ-, ἐπ-, cp.  
δύλον. Latin *sequor, secundus*.  
V.

ἐπριάμην, aor. of ἐνέομαι buy.

ἐπτά seven. Lat. *septem*; hepta-gon  
γωνία, hepta-archy ἑβδομή, hebdomadal  
ἐβδομάς week.

ἔργον -ον τό work, action, execution,  
result. an-ergy ἐν, organ ὄργανον,  
Ge-orge γῆ, s-urgeon.

ἐρημος -η -ον, -ος -ον lonely, desert-  
ed, empty; σταθμοὶ ἐρημοὶ marches  
through a desert country; ὁμῶν  
ἐρημος without you. eremite, hermit.

ἐρίζω D strive with, contend; ἐρις  
418.

ἔρις -δος ἡ strife, quarrel.

ἐρμηνεύς -δης ὁ interpreter; Ἑρμῆς  
Hermes, the messenger of Zeus  
430 a. hermeneutic.

ἐρμυνός -ῆ -όν defended, fortified,  
strongly built.

ἐρχομαι, used in ind. only, come, go;  
see ἤλθον. V.

ἐρῶ, fut. of φημι say; see εἰρηκα;  
Fep- as in εἰρήνη, ῥήτωρ. Latin

*verbum*; verbōsus; Irene, word,  
rhetoric ῥητορικῇ. V.

ἐρωτάω, A of person and A of thing  
or a clause, ask a question, in-  
quire. V.

ἐρωτῶμενος, pres. pass. ptc. of ἐρω-  
τάω, being asked.

ἔστε adv. even to, equivalent to  
Latin *usque*; conj. adv. so long  
as, until, equivalent to Latin  
*dum, quoad*. 631.

ἔστην, root-aor. of ἵστημι.

ἑστῶς -ῶσα -ός 173, perf. ptc.,  
standing; root-perf. of ἵστημι  
370 (1).

ἑσχατος -η -ον extreme; πόλις  
ἑσχάτη πρὸς D a frontier town  
on the border of; ἐξ.

ἕτερος -ᾱ -ον the other, one of two.  
hetero-dox δόξα, hetero-geneous γένος.

ἔτι adv. yet, still, longer; οὐκέτι,  
μηκέτι no longer; πρὸς δ' ἔτι and  
besides.

ἔτοιμος -η -ον, -ος -ον ready, pre-  
pared; ἐσ- in ἐστι; cp. 413 f.

ἔτος -ους τό year chronologically;  
ἦν ἐτῶν τριάκοντα he was thirty  
years old. Latin *vetus*.

εὖ adv. well; εὖ πράττω am suc-  
cessful; εὖ ποιῶ A treat well; εὖ  
πάσχω am treated well; εὖ οἶδα  
am fully assured; ἐσ- in ἐστι.

εὐδαίμων -ον happy, prosperous,  
flourishing; εὖ, δαίμων divinity  
447.

εὐελπίς -ι of good hope, hopeful;  
εὖ, ἐλπίς 447.

εὐήθεια -ᾱς ἡ simplicity, foolish-  
ness; εὐήθης 429 b.

εὐήθης -ες good hearted; silly,  
foolish; εὖ, ἥθος manners, dis-  
position 447.

**εὐθύς** adv. *immediately, at once.*

**εὐνοϊκῶς** adv. *with good will*; **εὐνοϊκῶς ἔχειν** D like **εὐνοῦς εἶναι** *be well disposed*; **εὖ, νοῦς** *mind*, cp. **γνώμη, ὄνομα**.

**εὐρεῖν**, aor. inf. of **εὐρίσκω**.

**εὐρίσκω** *find, discover*; mid. *get, procure*. **Eureka**. V.

**εὐρύς -ους** τό *breadth, width*; **εὐρύς** *wide*.

**εὐχομαι** *pray, wish for*; *offer vows*. V.

**εὐώνυμος -ον** *of good name or omen*; euphemistically *for left*, to avoid using **ἀριστερός**; as the Greek looked north when seeking omens, unlucky signs came from the left; τὸ **εὐώνυμον** *the left wing*; **εὖ, ὄνομα**.

**ἐφ'** for **ἐπ'.**

**ἔφασαν, ἔφη**, imperf. of **φημι**; **οὐκ ἔφη** *he said that . . . not, denied, refused*, like Latin *negāvit*.

**ἐφέπομαι** *follow after, pursue*; **ἐπ' 178, ἔπομαι**. V.

**ἐφοράω** *have eyes on, keep in sight*; **ἐπ' 178, ὀράω**. V.

**ἐφορός -ου ὁ** *overseer*; a Spartan officer called *ephor*; **ἐπ', ὄρ-** as in **ὀράω 446 b**.

**ἐφ' ᾧ** w. inf. *on condition that 567*.

**ἐφυγον**, aor. of **φεύγω**.

**ἐχθρός -ᾱ -όν** *hostile*; compared 181; as subst. *personal enemy*, equivalent to Latin *inimicus*; **ἐχθω** *hate 412*.

**ἔχω** *have, hold, keep*; *get, receive*; *carry, wear*; *can*; **ἔχω** *with*; **οὕτως ἔχει** *it is so*; **ἄλλως ἔχει** *it is otherwise*; **καλῶς ἔχει** *it is well*; **χαλεπῶς ἔχω** *am angry*; **εὐνοϊκῶς ἔχω** *am friendly*; mid.

**G am next to**; **σεχ-** as in **σχολή, ὑπ-ισχύνεομαι**. *hectic, hectic*. V.

**ἴδρα, ἴδρων**, imperf. of **ὀράω**.

**ἕως** conj. adv. *as long as, while, until*; cp. Latin *dum, donec, quoad 631, 138*.

## Z

**ζάω** *live 320*; cp. **ζῶς** *alive*. **ζῳδια, ζῳδ-logy λόγος**.

**ζεύγνυμι** *yoke, join*; **γέφυρα ἐζευγμένη πλοῖα** *a bridge made by joining together boats, a pontoon bridge*; **ζυγόν** *yoke, ζεύγος* *team*; Latin *jugum, jungō*. V.

**ζῆν**, inf. of **ζάω**.

**ζητέω** *A seek for, ask for a person*.

## H

**ἤ** conj. *or*; **ἤ . . . ἤ** *either . . . or*; **ἥτερον (ἥτερα) . . . ἤ** *whether . . . or*; **εἰ . . . ἤ** *whether . . . or 668*.

**ἦ** conj. *than*.

**ἦ**, intensive particle, *truly*; **ἦ μήν** *on word and honor 671 a*.

**ἦ**, interrog. particle, 668; cp. Latin *-ne*.

**ἧ** conj. adv. *where*; *by the way in which*; **ἥ** *how, as*; **ἥ ἔδυνάτο τάχιστα** *as rapidly (or soon) as possible*; **ἥ δυνατόν μάλιστα** *to the best of my ability*.

**ἡγαγον**, aor. of **ἡγω 350, 10**.

**ἡγάσθη**, aor. of **ἡγάμαι**.

**ἡγγαλα**, aor. of **ἡγγέλλω**.

**ἡγαμῶν -όνος ὁ** *leader, guide*; *commander*; **ἡγέομαι 413 e** end. *hegemony*.

**ἡγέομαι** D *guide, conduct*; G or D *lead, have command of*; two A

or A and inf. clause, *think, believe*.

ἦσα, ἦσαν, ἦσαν, imperf. of εἶδα.

ἡδέως adv. *gladly*; ἡδύς, ἡδ-, cp. ἡδμενος.

ἤδη adv. *already, at once*.

ἡδομαι *am glad, take pleasure in*; ἡδ-. V.

ἡδύς -εια -ό *sweet, pleasant*; ἡδομαι 413 a, ἡδ-. Latin *suāvis, suādeō*.

ἦκα *am come, have come, am present*; *return*.

ἦλαστο, aor. of ἐλάττω.

ἦλθον, aor. of ἐρχομαι, *come, go*; ἔδδον ἐλθεῖν *make a journey*; εἰς χεῖρας ἐλθεῖν αὐτῷ *come into his power, come to close quarters with*; εἰς λόγους αὐτῷ ἐλθεῖν *have a conference with him*. V.

ἥλιος -ου ὁ *the sun*; ἡμα ἥλιος ἀνέχονται *at sunrise*. *heli-*τροπὸν *τρέπω*, *heli-*μετὸν *μέτρον* *measure*, *ap-hellon* ἀπό, *peri-hellon* περί.

ἡμεῖς, ἡμῶν, ἡμῖν, ἡμᾶς *pers. pron. we, us*, like Latin *nōs*.

ἡμέρᾱ -ᾱς ἡ *day*; ἡμα τῇ ἡμέρᾳ *at daybreak*. *ep-hemeral* ἐπί.

ἡμέτερος -ᾱ -ον *our*, like Latin *noster*; ἡμεῖς.

ἡμιδάρεικόν -ου τό *half a daric*; ἡμι-, *δάρεικός*.

ἡμιόλιος -ᾱ -ον *containing the whole and half, half as much more*; ἡμι-, *δλος* *whole*.

ἡμισυς -εια -υ *half*; as subst. (τὸ) ἡμισυ *the half*; ἡμι-. Latin *sēmi-*; *hemi-*σφαῖρα *sphaῖra* *ball*.

ἦν for ἔαν *if*.

ἦν *was*, ἦσαν *were*, imperf. of εἶμι.

ἦνικά conj. adv. *when*.

ἦνπερ for ἔάνπερ (ἔαν + περ) *if at least, if really*.

ἦσαν, fut. inf. of ἦκα.

ἦτερ adv. (ἦ + περ) *in the very way in which*. 216, 343 c.

ἦντο, pluperf. of αἰρέω.

ἦρόμην, aor. of ἔρωτάω.

ἦσθι, aor. of ἡδομαι.

ἡττάομαι G 509 b, *am less or inferior*; *am defeated*; ἡττων, ἡττα *defeat* 416 b.

ἡττων -ον *inferior*; *worse*; ἡττων adv. *less*; compared 182, 2.

## Θ

θάλαττα -ης ἡ *sea*; καὶ κατὰ γῆν καὶ κατὰ θάλατταν *by land and by sea*.

θαρρέω *am keeping up my courage, am confident*; θαρρός *bold*.

θάττον adv. *more rapidly*, comp. of ταχέως; ὅσῳ θάττον *see* ὅσος.

θαυμάζω, εἰ clause or ὅτι clause, *wonder*; *am amazed*; θαῦμα *wonder* 419; θέα *sight*.

θεῖναι, θέσθαι, root-aor. inf. of τίθημι.

θέλω, another form for θέλω.

-θεν *from*; cp. οἴκοθεν, ἐντεῦθεν. 228.

θεός -οῦ ὁ *god, divinity*; πρὸς θεῶν *before the gods*; σὺν θεοῖς *with the help of Heaven*. *theo-*logy λόγος, *theism*, *a-theism* α- neg., *en-theism* ἐν, *pan-theon* πᾶς.

θεράπων -οντος ὁ *servant, attendant*. *therapeutical* θεραπεύω *serve*.

θεῖω run, charge. V.

θεωρέω *view, look on*; θεωρός *spectator* 416 c, θέα *sight*, cp. θαυμάζω. *theater* θέατρον, *theorem*, *theory*.

θηρεύω *hunt, catch*; θήρᾱ *hunt, θήρ wild beast* 417 a. Latin *ferus*; *DEER*.

θηρίον -ου τό *animal*; pl. *game*; θήρ *wild beast* 431 a.

-θύσκω, see ἀπο-θύσκω. V.

θόρυβος -ου ὁ noise, confusion;  
θρός noise of voices, thrē; cp. also  
ἀθροίζω. DRONE.

θρόνος -ου ὁ seat, chair, throne.  
throne.

θυγάτηρ -τρός ἡ daughter.

θύρᾱ -ᾱς ἡ door; usually pl. αἱ θύραι;  
ἐπὶ ταῖς βασιλείαις θύραις at the  
gates of the king, also at court;  
ἐπὶ ταῖς Κόρου θύραις at head-  
quarters.

θύω sacrifice; mid. seek for omens  
by the sacrifice of a victim, con-  
sult the omens. Latin *fūmus*,  
*fūnus*; thyme. V.

## I

ἰδέν, ἰδάν, inf. and ptc. of εἶδον.

ἰέναι, ἰάν, inf. and ptc. of εἶμι.

ἰέναι, ἰέει, aor. inf. and ptc. of ἔημι.

ἰδιος -ᾱ -ον own, personal, private;  
eis τὸ ἰδίον for my own use. idiom.

ἰδιώτης -ου ὁ private citizen, private  
soldier, private; ἰδιος 430 b. idiot.

ἰδοί, opt. of εἶδον.

ἔντο, imperf. mid. of ἔημι.

ἱερός -ᾱ -όν holy, sacred; τὰ ἱερὰ  
sacrifice; the vitals of the vic-  
tim, the omens from the vitals.  
hier-archy ἱερχω, hiero-glyphic γλῶφω  
carve.

ἔημι send, throw; mid. rush, charge;  
λίθοις ἰέναι αὐτοῦ throw stones at  
him. V.

ἱκανός -ῃ -όν sufficient, enough;  
able, competent; *ἱκ-* 412, cp.  
ἀφικνέομαι, οἶκος.

ἑλῶ -ης ἡ crowd; troop, squadron,  
of cavalry; κατὰ ἑλᾶς καὶ κατὰ  
τάξεις by squadrons and battal-  
ions.

ἵνα conj. adv. where; that, in order  
that. 640, 642.

ἵππεύς -ῶς ὁ horseman; pl. cav-  
alry; ἵππος 430 a.

ἵππεύω serve in the cavalry; ἵππεύς  
417 a.

ἵππικός -ῃ -όν belonging to a horse  
or cavalry; τὸ ἵππικόν the cav-  
alry; ἵππος 425.

ἵππος -ου ὁ horse; ἐφ' ἵππων ἦσαν  
they were mounted; ἐθήρευεν ἀπὸ  
ἵππου he would hunt on horse-  
back; ἀκ- in ἀκρός, ὠκύς swift.  
Latin *equus*; hippo-drome δρόμος,  
hippo-potamus ποταμός, Phil-ip φίλος.

ἵσστημι make stand, set, stop, sta-  
tion; intr. forms stand; mid. set  
myself, stand; set up for myself;  
στα-, cp. στάσις, σταθμός. Latin  
*sistō*, status, stō, stāmen; statios,  
hydro-statios ὕδωρ. Note the dif-  
ferent mid. forms in 363. V.

ἰσχυρός -ᾱ -όν strong, mighty; se-  
vere, stubborn; ἰσχύω am strong  
412.

ἰσχυρῶς adv. strongly, violently,  
exceedingly, extremely; ἰσχυρός.

ἴσως adv. equally; perhaps; ἴσος  
equal. iso-thermal θερμὸν heat, iso-  
scales σκέλος leg, iso-chronous χρόνος.

ἵχνος -ους τό track, trace.

## K

καθ' for κατὰ.

καθεζομαι sit down; halt, encamp;  
κατὰ 178, ἕδ-, ἕζομαι sit. Latin  
*sedeō*, *sēdēs*; oath-edral, deca-hedron  
δέκα. V.

καθεύδω lie asleep, sleep; am idle;  
κατὰ 178, εὕδω sleep. V.

καθηδυναθῶ waste in luxury; κατὰ  
178, ἡδυναθῶ am in luxury; cp.



ἡδύς and πᾶσιν in ἡδοναίῃς living in enjoyment. 416 c.

καθίγω come down, extend; κατά 178, ἦκο.

κάθημαι, καθῆσθαι sit; am encamped; κατά 178, ἦμαι 389 and a.

καθίστημι set down, settle, station, establish, appoint; intr. forms am stationed, take my place, become established; mid. take my place, get myself into; establish for myself, appoint; κατέσθη eis τὴν βασιλείαν succeeded to the throne; κατά 178, ἴστημι. 363 and a. V.

καθοράω look down on, see clearly, observe; κατά 178, ὀρώω.

καί conj. and; καὶ . . . καὶ, τε . . . καὶ both . . . and, not only . . . but also, see 187 note; καὶ γάρ and in fact.

καί adv. also, even; καὶ στρατηγὸς δέ and commander also; καὶ εἰ even if; εἰ καὶ if in fact.

καίπερ adv. although, only with participles; καὶ + περ.

καιρός -οῦ ὁ the right moment, opportunity; advantage, advantageous, proper; ἐν καιρῷ opportunely.

κακός -ή -όν bad; harmful; cowardly; κακόν, κακὰ ποιεῖν A harm, injure. κακο-δοxy δόξα, κακο-γραφία γράφω. Compared 182, 2.

κακῶς adv. badly; wrongly; κακῶς ποιεῖν A injure; κακῶς πᾶσχειν am injured; κακῶς πράττειν am unfortunate.

καλέω call, summon; two A call, name; κρήνη ἡ Μίδου καλουμένη the so-called spring of Midas;

καλ-, cp. ἐκ-κλησία. Latin calō, Kalendae, con-cilium, clāmō; calendar, ecclesiastic ἐκ.

καλός -ή -όν beautiful, fair; good, noble; propitious. HALE, calligraphy καλλι + γράφω, cp. κάλλος beauty, calli-sthenics σθένος strength. Compared 181.

καλῶς adv. beautifully, fairly, nobly; καλῶς ποιεῖν A treat well, benefit; καλῶς ἔχει it is well; καλῶς πράττειν am successful; καλῶς ἔχειν δρᾶσθαι present a fine appearance; καλός. 234, 181.

κᾶν for καὶ ἐάν.

καπηλεῖον -ου τό tavern, restaurant; καπηλός retail-dealer 432 c. Latin caupō, caupōna.

κατά prep. down.

G down, down from; κατά τῆς πέτρης down the cliff.

A down, along, according to, in the course of; κατά τὴν ὁδόν along the road; κατά τὸν νόμον according to custom; κατά τοῦτον τὸν σταθμόν in the course of this day's march; κατά κράτος at full speed, but keeping within one's powers so as to reach the point aimed at.

καταβαίνω step down, descend; go down to the coast; κατά 178, βαίνω. V.

καταβάλλω throw down, overthrow; let fall, drop down; κατά 178, βάλλω. V.

κατάβασις -εως ἡ descent; march to the sea; κατά, βάσις going, βα-, βαίνω 406, 440 end.

κατάγω lead down; bring to land; restore, take back home οἰκαδε; κατά 178, ἄγω. V.

**καταδύω** *make go down, sink*; mid. *sink*; **κατά** 178, **δύω** *make enter*. V.

**κατακάω** *burn down, burn up, destroy*; **κατά** 178, **κάω**. V.

**κατακόπτω** *cut down, cut to pieces, kill*; **κατά** 178, **κόπτω**. V.

**καταλαμβάνω** *capture, occupy*; *over-take*; *find, discover*; **κατά** 178, **λαμβάνω**. *cata-lapsey*. V.

**καταλείπω** *leave*; *leave behind, desert, abandon*; **κατά** 178, **λείπω**. V.

**καταλλάττω** *change*; mid. *become reconciled*; **κατά** 178, **ἀλλάττω**. *cat-allactios*. V.

**καταλύω** *unloose, end*; *make peace, end the war, πόλεμον* being understood; *unyoke, make a halt*; **κατά** 178, **λύω** *loose*. Latin *luō, solvō*; *cata-lysis, ana-lysis ἀνά, para-lysis παρά, electro-lysis ἤλεκτρον amber*. V.

**κατανοέω** *observe, perceive*; **κατά** 178, **νοέω** *observe*, **νοῦς** *mind*, cp. **γνώμη, δνομα**.

**κατ' ἀντιπέρᾱς, καταντιπέρᾱς** see **ἀντιπέρᾱς**.

**καταπέμπω** *send down*; **κατά** 178, **πέμπω**. V.

**καταπετρόω** *stone to death*; **κατά** 178, **πετρόω** *stone*, **πέτρος** *stone* 416 a, *petral, petri-fy*; *petr-oleum* *ελαιον olive oil*, Latin *oleum oil*.

**καταπίπτω** *fall down, fall off*; **κατά** 178, **πίπτω**. V.

**καταπλήττω** *strike down, terrify*; **κατά** 178, **πλήττω** *strike*. Latin *plangō*; *pro-plexy ἀπό*. V.

**καταπράττω** *accomplish*; **κατά** 178, **πράττω**. V.

**κατατίθημι** *put down*; mid. *lay away, lay up, deposit*; **κατά** 178, **τίθημι**. V.

**καταφεύγω** *flee for refuge*; A *with eis, take refuge in or at*; **κατά** 178, **φεύγω**. V.

**κατεθέμην**, root-aor. of **κατατίθημι**.

**κατείδον**, aor. of **καθοράω**; **κατά** 178, **είδον**. V.

**κατέστην**, root-aor. of **καθίστημι**.

**κατέχω** *hold down, restrain, prevent*; *occupy*; **κατά** 178, **έχω**. V.

**κάω, καλώ** *burn*. caustic, cauterise, holo-caust **ὅλος whole**. V.

**κῆγγρος -ου ὁ** *millet, millet grass*; used for fodder; the seeds were ground into meal.

**κείμει** *am laid*; *lie*; used as pass. of **τίθημι**; *ἐπεὶ τὰ ὅπλα ἔκειτο when they had been halted under arms* or *when arms had been grounded*, used as pass of **ἔθετο τὰ ὅπλα**. See under **τίθημι**. Cp. **κόμη**. Latin *civis, quies*; **HOME, oemetary, oomic, coma**. 387 and c.

**κελεύω**, A of person and inf. clause, *urge, bid, direct, command, order*; **κελ- set going**. Latin *celer*. V.

**κεράννυμι** *mix, mingle*; **κερα-, κῆρα-** 356 (1). *crasis, crater κράτηρ mixing bowl, oeramio*. V.

**κίρας κῆρᾱτος** or **κῆρως τό horn**; *bugle horn*; *wing of an army*. Latin *cornū*; **rhino-ceros** **ῥίς** *rhinos nose*.

**κεφαλή -ης ἡ** *head*. Latin *caput*; **a-orphalous, a- neg.**

**κήρυξ -υκος ὁ** *crier, herald*.

**κινδυνεύω** *encounter danger*; *run a risk*; **κίνδυνος danger** 417 a.

κνημίς -ιδος ἡ *greave*, covering the leg from knee to instep, made of flexible metal lined with felt, and fastened behind with straps or buckles; κνήμη *leg*.

κοινός -ή -όν *common, public*. ἐπί-οσο ἐπί.

κολάζω *check, punish*.

κόπτω *cut*; κοπ-. CHOP, συν-ορπάε σύν, ἀπο-ορπάε ἀπό, comma.

κράνος -ους τό *helmet* of metal or leather.

κρατέω *am strong*; Γ or Α *rule, conquer*; κράτος 416 α.

κράτιστος -η -ον *strongest*; sup. of ἀγαθός 182; κράτος.

κράτος -ους τό *strength*; κρα-. Latin *Cerēs, creō, crēscō, crēber*; aristocrāt ἀριστος, αυτο-αράτ αὐτός, δημο-αράτ δῆμος *people*.

κραυγή -ῆς ἡ *cry, shout*; κραγ- *cry* 404.

κρείττων -ον *stronger*; comp. of ἀγαθός 182; κράτος.

κρεμάννυμι *hang up*. V.

κρήνη -ης ἡ *spring, fountain*.

κριθή -ῆς ἡ in pl. *barley*.

κρίνω *separate, decide*. Latin *crimē, crimen*; κρίσις κρίσις 406, κρίσις, hypo-αίσις ὑπό. V.

κρηπίς -ιδος ἡ *foundation*.

κρύπτω *hide, conceal*. αργπ, αργτο-γραμ γράφω, grotto. V.

-κτείνω *kill*; see ἀπο-κτείνω. V.

κύκλος -ου ὁ *circle*. Latin *circus*;

ογολέ, δι-ογολέ δις δίσ, ἐν-ογολέ-ποδία ἐν, παιδεία *education*, cp. παιδεύω.

καλύω *hinder, oppose, prevent*.

κωμάρχης -ου ὁ *komarch, village chief*; κώμη, ἔρχω 446 α.

κώμη -ης ἡ *village*; κείμεναι 406.

HOME.

## Λ

λαβεῖν, aor. inf. of λαμβάνω.

λαθεῖν, aor. inf. of λανθάνω.

λάθρᾳ adv. *secretly*; Γ. *without the knowledge of*; λαθ-, λανθάνω.

λαμβάνω *take, receive, capture, get*;

λαβών *with*. Latin *labor*; δι-lemma δίς, ἐπί-λερᾶ ἐπί, προ-λερᾶς πρό. V.

λαμπρότης -ητος ἡ *brilliancy, splendor*; λαμπρός *bright* 429 α, λάμπω *shine* 412. Latin *lanterna, limpidus*; *lamp, lantern*.

λανθάνω *am concealed*; Α *escape the notice of*; ἐλάνθανεν τρεφόμενον *was secretly maintained*; ἐλάνθοντο αὐτοὺς ἀπελθόντες *we got away without their seeing us*. Latin *lateō*; ληθ-αργ, *Letha*.

λέγω, ὅτι clause, *say, speak, tell*; w. inf. clause *bid, tell*; pass. w. inf. *is said, it is said*, the personal construction being more common in Greek, while the English prefers the impersonal; λέγει θαρρεῖν *he told him to keep up his courage*; Ξέρξης λέγεται οἰκοδομησαί *the story is that Xerxes built (this palace)*; λεγ-. Latin *legō*; dialect διδ, lexicon. V.

-λέγω *gather, collect*; λεγ-. Latin *legō, legiō, lignum*; eo-logus ἐκ, eo-lectio ἐκ, oata-logus κατά, antho-logy ἄνθος *flower*. See συλ-λέγω. V.

λείπω *leave, abandon*. Latin *licet, linquō*; eo-lipse ἐκ, el-lipse ἐν, el-lipse. V.

λίθινος -η -ον *of stone*; λίθος 426.

λίθος -ου ὁ *stone*. litho-graph, γράφω, mono-lith μόνος.

λιμήν -ένος ὁ *harbor*.

**λόγος** -ου ὁ *word, speech, story*; *eis* λόγους ἐλθεῖν αὐτῷ *have a conference with him*; **λέγω** 403. *eu*-logy εὔ, apo-logy ἀπό, mono-logus *μόνος*, tanto-logy ταυτό, *logio*.

**λόγχη** -ης ἡ *spearhead, spear*.

**λοιπός** -ή -όν *remaining, the rest of*; τὸ λοιπόν *for the future*; **λείπω** 410.

**λόφος** -ου ὁ *ridge, hill*.

**λοχάγος** -οῦ ὁ *company commander, captain*; **λόχος**, *ἔγω* 410, 443 a, 446 a, c.

**λόχος** -ου ὁ *ambush; company*, usually one hundred men; **λέγω** lay, *lie* 403; cp. *λέχος* bed.

**λύμαινομαι** *destroy, ruin*; **λύμη** outrage, **λύμα** filth 420, λυ-, *λοῦω* wash.

**λύπew** *grieve, annoy*; **λύπη** grief 416 c.

## M

**μά**, intensive particle, *μά Δία no, by Zeus*. 532.

**μάθε**, aor. impv. of *μανθάνω*.

**μακρός** -ά -όν *long*; *μακρά πλοῖα* war ships, Latin *nāvēs longae*; *μακ-*, cp. *μήκος*. *macro*, *macro-meter* μέτρον.

**μάλα** adv. *very, much*. Latin *melior*.

**μάλιστα** adv. *most*; *ὡς μάλιστα* (ἐδύνατο), ἢ δυνατόν *μάλιστα as much as possible*; *μάλα*.

**μᾶλλον** adv. *more*; *μᾶλλον ἢ* rather than; *οὐδὲν μᾶλλον* not one whit the more; *μάλα*.

**μανθάνω**, ptc. clause or *ὅτι* clause, *learn by inquiry*; aor. *have learnt*, *ἔκρου*; *μα-*, cp. *μάντις*, *μένω*, *μέμνημαι*. Latin *maneo*, *mēns*, *memi-*

*nē*, *monēō*, *mōnēstrō*; **ΜΑΝ**, *mania*, *neo*-*maney νεκρός*, *mentor*, *mnemonics*, *mathematic*. V.

**μαντεῖον** -ου τό *oracle*; *μάντις* 432. *μάντις* -εως ὁ *one inspired, seer, prophet, soothsayer*; cp. *μα-*, *μανθάνω* 406.

**μάχη** -ης ἡ *battle, fight*; *battle-field*; **μάχομαι** 404.

**μάχομαι** D *fight, give battle*. V.

*με, μου, μοι* pers. pron. *me*. Latin *mē*.

**μέγα** adv. *greatly*; neut. of *μέγας*.

**μεγάλη** *great*; see *μέγας*.

**μέγας** *μεγάλη μέγα great, large, tall*. Latin *māgnus*, *magister*; *o*-*mega*, *mega-phone φωνή*. 182, 3.

**μέγιστος** -η -ον *greatest*, sup. of *μέγας*; τὸ μέγιστον *chiefly*.

**μεθ'** for *μετά*.

**μεῖζων** -ον *greater*, comp. of *μέγας*.

**μέλαις** *μέλαινα μέλαν black*. Latin *malus*; *melan-ochol* *χολή gall*, *calomel καλός*.

**μellήνη** -ης ἡ *panic*, a species of millet, used for food and fodder; the seeds were used whole or ground. See *κέγχρον*. Latin *milium*.

**μέλλω**, w. inf. fut. or pres., *am about to, shall; intend, purpose; delay*; cp. *μελ-* in *ἐπι-μέλομαι*. V.

**μémνημαι**, perf. as pres., G *remember, call to mind*; see *ἀνα-μνήσκω* and /85 and note. Latin *memini*; *mnemonics*. V.

\* **μέν**, a particle used with *δέ*, sometimes with other words, to contrast the parts connected by *δέ*; *ὁ μὲν . . . ὁ δέ* the one . . . the other. See 669 a and /02.

\* **μέντοι** conj. adv. *really; yet, still, however*; *μέν + τοι*. 669 b.

**μένω** *wait, stay, remain*; *A wait for*; cp. **μα-**, **μᾶθῶν**. Latin *maneo*. V.

**μέρος -ους** τό *division, part, share*. Latin *mereō*.

**μέσος -η -ον** *middle, in the middle, midst of*; see 556; **τὸ μέσον** *the center; the space between*; **διὰ μέσου τούτων** *between these*. Latin *medius*.

**μεστός -ή -όν** G *full, abounding in*. **μετά** prep. *among*. meth-od **μεθ', ὁδός**.

G *with, in company with*; **μετ' αὐτοῦ** *with him*.

A *after, next to, place or time*; **μετὰ δείπνον** *after dinner*.

**μεταξύ** adv. *in the midst*; G *between*; **μετά + ξὺν** for **σύν**.

**μεταπέμπομαι** A *send after, summon*; **μετά 178, πέμπω**. V.

**μέτρον -ου** τό *measure*. Latin *mētrior*; *metre, meter, dia-meter* **διδ**, *thermo-meter* **θερμόν** *heat*, *cycolo-meter* **κύκλος**, *sym-metry* **σύν**.

**μέχρι** adv. *up to, as far as, even to*; equivalent to Latin *usque*; G *as far as, until*; conj. adv. *so long as, until*; equivalent to Latin *dum, quoad*. 631.

**μή** adv. *not, negative willed or imagined* 486, 572; **εἰ μή** *except*; **εἰ δὲ μή** *otherwise*. Compounds of **μή** have a like force.

**μηδέ** conj. *and not, nor*; adv. *not even*; **μή + δέ**.

**μηδείς** **μηδεμία** **μηδέν** *not one, no one* 189; **μηδέ + εἰς**. 189 a.

**μηδέποτε**, **μηδεπώποτε** adv. See **οὐδέποτε**.

**μηκέτι** adv. *not again, no longer*; **μή + ἔτι**.

**μήκος -ους** τό *length*; cp. **μακρός**.

\* **μήν**, intensive particle, *surely*; see **ἦ** and 671 a.

**μήν μηνός** ὁ *month*. Latin *mēnsis*; MOON.

**μήποτε**, **μηπώποτε** adv. *not ever, never*; **μή + ποτε**. See **οὐδέποτε**.

**μήτε** conj. adv. *and not*; **μήτε . . . μήτε** *neither . . . nor*; **μή + τε**.

**μήτηρ** **μητρός** ἡ *mother*. Latin *māter*.

**μηχανή -ης** ἡ *machine, scheme, device*. *mechanio*.

**μικρός -ά -όν** *small*; **μικρόν** adv. *barely, hardly*. *micro-scope* **σκοπός**, *micro-meter* **μέτρον**.

**μισθός -ού** ὁ *wages, pay*. MEED.

**μισθόομαι** pass. *am hired, paid*; **μισθός** 416 a.

**μνησθήσομαι** *will mention*, fut. of **μνησθῆναι** 185.

**μόνος -η -ον** *alone, only*. *monad, monastery, monk, mon-arch* **ἀρχω**, *mono-lith* **λίθος**, *mono-*.

**μύριοι -αι -α** *ten thousand*; also **μῦροι** *countless*. *myriad* **μυριάς**.

## N

**νάπη -ης** ἡ *ravine, glen*.

**ναύαρχος -ου** ὁ *admiral*; **ναῦς** *ship*, **ἀρχός** *commander* 446 a, 403.

*Latin nāvis; naval*.

**ναυτικός -ή -όν** *belonging to ships*; **δύναμις** *ναυτική* *naval force*; **ναῦς** *ship* 425. *nautical, nautilus, nausea*.

**νεανίας -ου** ὁ *young man*; **νεός**.

**νεκρός -ού** ὁ *dead body, corpse*; **οἱ νεκροί** *the dead*. Latin *neq, necō*; *neuro-logy* **λόγος**, *neuro-manoy* **μάντις**, *neuro-polis* **πόλις**.

**νέος -ᾱ -ον** *young, fresh, new*. Latin *nōvus*; *neo-logy* **λόγος**, *neo-phyte* **φυτὸν** *plant*, *neo-*, *Neo-polis* **πόλις**.

νεφέλη -ης ἡ *cloud*; νέφος *cloud*.  
Latin *nūbēs, nebula*.

νῆ, intensive particle, νῆ Δία *yes, by Zeus*. 532.

νικάω *A conquer; am victorious*;  
νίκη 416 b.

νίκη -ης ἡ *victory*.

νόεω *observe, plan*; νοῦς *mind* 416 c;  
cp. γνώμη, εὐνοϊκῶς, ὄνομα.

νομίζω *regard as a custom νόμος*;  
pass. is *usual*; also in act. *A and*  
*inf. clause or two A, regard, con-*  
*sider, believe, think*; in pass. the  
accusatives become nominative  
subject and predicate: ἅ νομίζονται  
τίμια *which are considered marks*  
*of honor*; νόμος 418. V.

νόμος -ου ὁ *custom, practice; law*;  
ρέμω *distribute* 403. Latin *ne-*  
*mus, numerus*; *nomēsia, auto-nomy*  
*αὐτός, eco-nomy olkos*.

νῦν adv. *now*; οἱ νῦν *men of the*  
*present day*; τὸ νῦν *at present*.  
Latin *nunc*.

νύξ νυκτός ἡ *night*. Latin *nox*.  
NIGHT.

## Ξ

ξενικός -ῆ -όν *foreign*; τὸ ξενικόν *the*  
*hired troops*; ξένος 425.

ξένος -ου ὁ *stranger; guest, host*;  
*friend*; *a hired soldier; mer-*  
*cenary, euphemistically for μισθο-*  
*φόρος*; cp. Ξενο-φών, Πρό-ξενος.

ξύλον -ου τό *wood*; pl. *fuel. xylomite,*  
*xylo-phone, φωνή, xylo-graph γράφω.*

## Ο

ὁ ἡ τό *the*; ὁ μὲν . . . ὁ δὲ *the one*  
. . . *the other*; ὁ δὲ *and he, but*  
*he*; frequently for *his, her, their*;  
τὰ ἐμοὶ *my affairs, my property*;

οἱ μετ' αὐτοῦ *his attendants*; τὴν  
δικὴν *the usual justice (punish-*  
*ment)*.

ὁ, neut. of δς.

ὁς ἥδε τόδς dem. pron. *this like*  
Latin *hic*; *as follows*; ἔλεγε τόδς  
*he spoke as follows*; τόνδε τὸν  
τρόπον *in the following manner*.  
553. ὁ + -δε.

ὁδοποιεῖω *make a road*; ὁδός, ὁδοποιός  
*road-maker* 446 b, 438 b, 416 c.

ὁδός -οῦ ἡ *way, road*. ex-odus ἐξ,  
meth-od μετὰ, peri-od περὶ, syn-od σύν.  
θεν adv. *whence, from where, from*  
*whom*; ὅ + -θεν, cp. ἐντεῦθεν.

οἱ pers. pron. reflexive in use,  
equivalent to *ἐαυτῷ to him*. 197.  
οἶδα ptc. or ὅτι clause, *know, under-*  
*stand*; χάριν οἶδα *am grateful*;  
Fiδ-, see εἶδον and 386 b.

οἰκαδὲ adv. *homeward, home*; οἶκος  
+ -δε 228.

οἰκέω, w. prep. or A, *live, dwell*;  
*dwell in, inhabit*; pass. *am situ-*  
*ated*; οἶκος 416 c.

οἰκία -ας ἡ *house*; οἶκος 429 b.

οἰκοδομέω *build a house, build*;  
οἰκοδόμος *house-builder, δέμω build,*  
446 a, 438 b, 416 c.

οἰκοθεν adv. *from home*; οἶκος + -θεν  
228.

οἶκοι adv. *at home*; οἱ οἶκοι *those at*  
*home οἶκος + -ι* 228.

οἶκος -ου ὁ *home, house as home or*  
*abiding place*; *Fiκ- 403 b, cp.*  
*ἀφ-ικνεσμαι. Latin vicus; -wick,*  
*-wich, as Ber-wick, Nor-wick,*  
*eco-nomy νόμος; par-ochial parish*  
*παρά; di-ocese δίδ.*

οἶμαι for οἴομαι.

οἶνος -ου ὁ *wine*. Latin *vīnum*.  
WINE.

οἶμαι, οἶμαι pass. dep. inf. clause, *think, believe, suppose*.

οἶος -ᾱ -ον rel. pron. corresponding to dem. τοιοῦτος, like Latin *quālis*, denoting quality, *such as, who, what; of what kind*. 215, 84.

οἷόςπερ οἷᾱπερ οἷόνπερ *just such as; οἶος + περ* 216.

οἴχομαι *am gone, have gone; w. ptc.* 585 c. V.

οἰκνέω inf. clause, *hesitate; μή clause, am afraid that; ὕκνος hesitation* 416 c.

οἰκτώ *eight*. Latin *octō*; octa-gon γωνία.

ὀλεθρός -ου ὁ *destruction, death, loss; -δλλῶμι, see ἀπ-δλλῶμι*.

ὀλίγος -η -ον *few, small*. olig-archy ἄρχω.

ὅλος -η -ον *whole, entire, in a body*. Latin *solidus*; holo-caust κάω, cath-olō κατά.

ὀμνύμι A *swear, swear by*. V.

ὁμοῖος -ᾱ -ον D *like, similar; of the same kind as; cp. ἕμα, ὁμός common*. Latin *similis*; homoeo-pathy παθ- in πάσχω.

ὁμοίως adv. *in like manner, πάντες ὁμοίως we all alike; ὁμοῖος*.

ὁμολογέω *agree, admit; ὁμό-λογος agreeing* 416 c. homo-logous.

ὁμως adv. *all the same; nevertheless, yet, still; with changed accent from ὁμός common*.

ὄνομα -ατος τό *name; cp. γνω-ω in γιγνώσκω, ὀ-γνω-μα* 407. Latin *cognōmen*, *nōmen*; an-onymous α-neg., met-onymy μετά, patr-onymio πατήρ, syn-onym σύν.

ὄνος -ου ὁ *ass*. Latin *asinus*.

ὅπερ neut. of ὅσπερ, *the very thing which, just what*.

ὅπη conj. adv. *where, in what way, whither; δ + πη*.

ὀπισθεν adv. *from behind, at the rear; G behind*.

ὀπλίτης -ου ὁ *heavy-armed soldier, hoplite* 347, 2; ὅπλον 430 b.

ὅπλον -ου τό *tool; pl. arms, armor; ἐν τοῖς ὅπλοις under arms; eis or ἐπὶ τὰ ὅπλα to arms; see also under τίθημι; ἐπ-, cp. ἔπομαι. pan- only πᾶς*.

ὀπόθεν conj. adv. *whence, from where; δ + πόθεν, cp. ὀθεν, ὀπότε*.

ὅποι conj. adv. *whither, to what place, where; δ + ποι*.

ὅποιος -ᾱ -ον gen. rel. pron. *such as, cp. οἶος; δ + ποῖος*.

ὀπότε -ος -η -ον gen. rel. pron. *as great as, as many as, cp. ὅσος; δ + πόσος*.

ὀπότεν conj. adv. w. subjv. *whenever, when; ὀπότε + ἄν*.

ὀπότε conj. adv. *whenever, when, since; δ + ὀπτε*.

ὀπότερος -ᾱ -ον rel. pron. *which of two, whichever; δ + πότερος*.

ὅπου conj. adv. *wherever, where; δ + που*.

ὅπως conj. adv. *in what way, how, as; w. fut. indic. how, that* 638 a; for ἵνα *that, in order that* 638 c.

ὀρᾶω, ptc. clause, *see, observe, perceive*. pan-orama πᾶς. V.

ὀργίζομαι *am angry; ὀργή anger* 418.

ὀρθίος -ᾱ -ον *steep; ὀρθός straight* 424.

ὀρθῶς adv. *rightly, justly; ὀρθός straight. ortho-dox ὀρθά, ortho-graphy γράφω*.

ὀρμάω, ὀρμάομαι /85, *rush; set out, start; ὀρμή motion* 416 b.

**ὄρος** -ους τό *mountain*.

**ὅς** ἢ **ὅ** rel. pron. *who, which, what*; ἐν **ὅ** *meanwhile, while*.

**ὅσον** conj. adv. *as far as, so far that, so that*; neut. of **ὅσος**.

**ὅσος** -η -ον rel. pron. corresponding to dem. **τοσοῦτος**, like Latin *quantus*, denoting quantity or number, *as great as, as much as, as many as, all who, who, what*; **ὅσῳ** **θᾶττον** *the more rapidly*. 215, 84.

**ὅσπερ** **ἥπερ** **ὅπερ** rel. pron. *the very one who, just what*; **ὅς** + **-περ** 216.

**ὅστις** **ἥτις** **ὅ** τι or **ὅ**, τι gen. rel. pron. *whoever, whatever*; **ὅς** + **τις**.

**ὅταν** conj. adv. w. subjv. *whenever, when*; **ὅτε** + **ἄν**.

**ὅτε** conj. adv. *when, while*; **ὅ** + **-τε**, cp. **τό-τε**, **ἐκείνο-τε**, **ἄλλο-τε**.

**ὅ** τι or **ὅ**, τι see **ὅστις**.

**ὅτι** conj. *that*; *because*; conj. adv. w. sup. like **ὥς**: **ὅτι** **ἀπαρασκευάστον** *as unprepared as possible*; **δῆλον** **ὅτι** *evidently*. See 622 a, b, c, 623, 624 a, b, c, 625.

**οὐ** adv. *not*, negative of statement or fact 496; **οὐκ** **ἔφη** *said that* . . . *not, refused, denied*, like Latin *negāvit*.

**οὐ** conj. adv. *where*; **ὅς**.

**οὐδέ** conj. *and not, but not, not* . . . *either*, after a negative; adv. *not even*; **οὐδέ** **ὥς** *not even thus*; **οὐδέ** . . . **οὐδέ** *not even* . . . *nor yet, not only not* . . . *but not even*; see also 687.

**οὐδεὶς** **οὐδεμία** **οὐδέν** *not one, no one, none, nothing*; **οὐδέ** + **εἰς**. 189 a.

**οὐδέν** adv. *in no way, not at all*; neuter of **οὐδεὶς**.

**οὐδέποτε**, **μηδέποτε** adv. *not even once*, and **οὐδέπώποτε** and **οὐπώποτε** *never yet*, are the common prose forms for **οὐποτε**. **οὐδέποτε** is commonly, though not always, used of the present and future. **οὐδέπώποτε** and **οὐπώποτε** are regularly used of the past. The same distinction is observed with **μηδέποτε**, **μηδέπώποτε**, and **μηπώποτε**.

**οὐκ** for **οὐ**.

**οὐκέτι** adv. *no longer*; **οὐ** + **ἔτι**.

\* **οὖν** adv. *now, so, then, at any rate*. 873 a.

**οὐποτε** adv. *never*; **οὐ** + **ποτε**. See **οὐδέποτε**.

**οὐπω** adv. *not yet, not before*; **οὐ** + **πω**.

**οὐπώποτε** adv. *never yet, never before*; separated **οὐ** γὰρ **πώποτε**; **οὐ** + **πώποτε**. See **οὐδέποτε**.

**οὐτ'** for **οὐτε** and **not**; **οὐ** + **τε**.

**οὔτε** . . . **οὔτε** *neither* . . . *nor*.

**οὗτος** **αὕτη** **τοῦτο** dem. pron. *this, these*; *he, they* like Latin *is*; καὶ **ταῦτα** *and that too, although*. 553.

**οὕτως** before vowels, before consonants **οὕτω**, adv. *in this way, so, thus*, in the historians usually referring back; **οὗτος**.

**οὕχ** for **οὐ**.

**ὀφείλω** *owe*; pass. *is due*; aor. **ὀφείλε** *ought*, see 470 b. V.

**ὀφελος**, only nom. and acc., *help, advantage*; G *use in*, **στρατηγῶ** **ὀφελος** **οὐδέν** *a general is of no use*. **δχυρὸς** -ᾶ -όν *tenable, strong, fortified by nature*; **ἔχω** cp. 412.

**ὀφθαλμ**, fut. of **ὀράω** see: **ὀπ-**. Latin *oculus*; **ὀπίο**, **αὐτο-οπ** **αὐτός**, **συν-οπ** **σίν**, *ophthalmia*.



## II

**παθεῖν**, aor. inf. of **πάσχω**.

**παιδεύω** *train up, educate*; **παῖς** 417 a.

**παῖς παιδός** ὁ *boy, son*; **ἐτι παῖς ὢν** *while still a boy*. Latin *puer, puella*; **ped-agogos** ἄγω, *encyclo-pedia* see under **κύκλος**.

**παῖω** *strike, hit*. Latin *paviō, paveō*; **ana-paest** ἀνά.

**πάλιν** *adv. back; again, a second time*. **palin-drome** δρόμος, **palim-psest** ψάω *rub*.

**παντάπασιν** *adv. all in all, entirely; at all*; **πᾶς**.

**πάντη** *adv. in every way, on all sides*; **πᾶς**.

**παντοδαπός** -ή -όν *of all kinds*; **πᾶς**.

**πάνυ** *adv. very; at all*; **πᾶς**.

**παρά** *prep. beside*. **par-allel** ἄλληλων, **para-digm** δεικνύμι, **para-**

**G** *from beside, from*; **τὰ παρά φοίβου ἀγαθὰ** *blessings from Phoebos*.

**D** *beside, with*: **παρά τῷ φίλῳ** *at my friend's house*.

**A** *to the side of, to, with names of persons*; **παρά** *along by, contrary to*; **παρά τοὺς φίλους** *to (join) our friends*; **παρά τὴν ὁδόν** *beside or near the road*; **παρά τὴν δόξαν** *contrary to his expectation*.

Compare **παρά** with **κατά** in the meaning *along*. **κατά** is *along the course of*, **παρά** is *along by*; **παρά τὸν ποταμὸν** *along by the river*, **κατά τὸν ποταμὸν** *down the river*; **κατά τὴν δόξαν** *according to his expectation* while **παρά** is *beyond or beside it*. **paradox**.

**παραγγέλλω** **D** or **A**, and *inf. clause, pass along word, command, order*; **παρά** 178, **ἀγγέλλω**. **V**.

**παραγίγνομαι** **D** of person, *am near; am present*; **A** with *els, arrive at*; **παρά** 178, **γίγνομαι**. **V**.

**παράγω** *lead along, conduct*; **παρά** 178, ἄγω. **V**.

**παράδεισος** -ον ὁ *park, preserve, paradise*.

**παραδίδωμι** **D** *give over to; surrender, transitive*; **παρά** 178, **δίδωμι**. **V**.

**παρακαλέω** *call to my side, summon*; **παρά** 178, **καλέω**. **V**.

**παραπλήσιος** -ᾱ, -ον or -ος -ον **D** *close beside, resembling, like*; **παρά**, **πλησίον**.

**παρασάγγης** -ον ὁ *parasang, somewhat more than three miles*.

**παρασκευάζω** *prepare*; **mid. make my preparations, get ready; **παρασκευή** 419.**

**παρασκευή** -ης ἡ *preparation*; *cp. σκευοφόρος, ἀπαρασκευος*.

**παρεῖναι** **D** *be beside; be present*; **A** with *els, arrive at*; **τὰ παρόντα** *the present conditions*; **παρά** 178, εἶμι. **V**.

**παραλαύνω** **A** *drive by, ride past*; **παρά** 178, **ελαύνω**. **V**.

**πατέρχομαι** **A** *pass by, go along; come forward*; **παρά** 178, **έρχομαι**. **V**.

**παρέχω** *have on hand, provide, furnish*; **two A make**; **πράγματα παρέχειν** **D** *make trouble for*; **παρά** 178, **έχω**. **V**.

**παρίναι** **A** *pass by; go along, come forward*; **παρά** 178, εἶμι 385.

**παριών**, *etc. of παρίναι*.

**πάροδος** -ου ἡ *road, by or along, passage, pass*; **παρά**, δῶς 440 a.

**παρόν**, ptc. of **παρίναι**.

**πᾶς** **πᾶσα** **πᾶν** *all, every, whole*; **πᾶσα** δῶς *every road*; **πᾶσα** ἡ δῶς *all the road, the whole road*; **πάντες** οἱ **παῖδες** *all the boys*; **πάντες** **παῖδες** *all boys*; sometimes δ **πᾶς** *the whole, all*; **πάντα** *in all respects, in everything*. **pan-orama** ὁράω, **pan-acea** ἀκέομαι *cure, pantheism* **θεός**, **pan-demonium** δαίμων, **panto-mime** μῖμος *imitator*.

**πάσχω** *A experience, undergo*; *am treated*; εἰ **πάσχω** *am well treated*; *κακῶς* **πάσχω** *am injured*; **παθ-** *pathos, anti-pathy* ἀντί, *a-pathy* α- *neg., sym-pathy* σύν. V.

**πατήρ** **πατρός** ὁ *father*. Latin *pater*; **πατρο-nymio** ὄνομα.

**πατρίς** -ίδος ἡ *native land*; **πατήρ**, cp. 434.

**παύω** *stop*; mid. *cease, rest*. Latin *paucus*; *pause*.

**πέδιον** -ου τό *plain*; **πέδον** *ground* 431 a; cp. **πεζός**, **στρατό-πεδον**, **τρά-πεζα**, **πούς**.

**πεζῇ** adv. *on foot*; **πεζός**.

**πεζός** -ῆ -όν *afoot, walking*; as subst. *foot soldier*; οἱ **πεζοί** *the infantry*; **δύναμιν** **πεζήν** *infantry force*; cp. **πεδῶρ**.

**πέθω** *A win over, persuade*; mid. and pass. D *obey*; **πιθ-**, cp. **πιστός**, **πίστις**, **πιστεύω**. V.

**περάομαι** pass. dep. inf. clause, *try, attempt*; G *make trial of*; **περά** *trial* 416 b; cp. **πόρος** *passage*, **πορεία**, ἄ-**πορος**, ἄ-**ποριά**, **πορεύομαι**, ἀντι-**πέπας**. Latin *periculum*, *superior*. **porta**, **portus**; **em-pirical** ἐν, *pirate*, **em-porium** ἐν. 185.

**πέισομαι**, fut. of **πάσχω** and also of **πειθομαι**.

**πειστέον** D *must obey*; *A must persuade*; verbal of **πέθω**. 354.

**πελταστής** -ου ὁ *light-armed soldier, peltast*, carrying a crescent-shaped shield **πέλτη**; **πελτάζω** *serve as peltast* 405. See 347, 2.

**πέλτη** -ης ἡ *shield of crescent form*.

**πέμπω** *A of person or place with prep., sometimes D of person, send*. **pomp**. V.

**πεντακόσιοι** -αι -α *five hundred*; **πέντε**, **ἑκατόν**. Latin *quin-genti*.

**πέντε** *five*. Latin *quinque*; **pentagon** γωνία, **penta-meter** μέτρον.

**πεντήκοντα** *fifty*. Latin *quingū-gintā*; *pentecost*.

**περί** prep. *on all sides, around*; in composition also *above, beyond*.

**peri-od** δῶς, **peri-meter** μέτρον, **peri-patetic** **πάτος** *walk*.

G *about, concerning*; **ἤροντο** **περί** αὐτοῦ *they asked about him*; equivalent to Latin *dē*; of value *above*; **περί** πάντος ποι-εῖσθαι *make it of the highest importance*.

D *round, about*; not common.

A *about, all round, attending*; **ἔστησαν** **περί** αὐτῶν *they stood about him*; οἱ **περί** Κῦρου *the attendants of Cyrus*, *Cyrus and his men*; equivalent to Latin *circā*.

**περι-γίγνομαι** G *am superior to, get the better of, conquer*; **περί** 178, **γίγνομαι**. V.

**περιέχω** *surround*; **περί** 178, **ἔχω**. V.

**περιμένω** *wait around, remain*; *A wait for*; **περί** 178, **μένω**. V.

**περίοδος** -ου ἡ way around, circumference; περί, ὁδός. *period*.

**περιπλέω** sail around; περί 178, πλέω. V.

**πῇ** interrog. adv. in what way?

**πηγή** -ῆς ἡ in pl. spring, source.

**πίω** press hard; pass. am hard pressed.

**-πίτω** fall. Latin *petō*, *impetus*. V.

**πιστεύω** D put faith in, trust; πιστός 417 a, cp. πείθω.

**πίστις** -εως ἡ trust, good faith; πίστει ἐλαβε he received pledges of good faith, pledges that he could rely on; πείθω 406.

**πιστός** -ῆ -όν D trusty, faithful, trustworthy, in the confidence of; τὰ πιστά pledges; πείθω 411.

**πλανάομαι** wander about; πλανῶ wandering 416 b. *planet*.

**πλήθρον** -ου τό *plethron*, *plethrum*, about one hundred feet.

**πλείους**, for *πλείους* and *πλείονας*, pl. nom. and acc. of *πλείων*; see 149.

**πλείστος** -ῃ -ον most, sup. of *πολύς*.

**πλείων** -ον more, comp. of *πολύς*.

**πλίον** neut. adj. as adv. more; see 182, 5.

**πλέω** sail. Latin *pluit*; FLOW, FLEET, FLOOD. V.

**πληθος** -ους τό multitude, numbers, amount; cp. πλήρης.

**πλήν** adv. G, but used also as a conjunction, *except*; cp. πλήρης.

**πλήρης** -ες G full, full of, abounding in; complete, in full; πλα-, πλε-, cp. πλήθος, πλείων, πλείστος, πλήν, πόλις, πολύς. Latin *plēnus*, *plūs*, *plēbs*, *populus*; FILL, FULL, *plethora*, *pleonasm*, *di-ploma* *dis*.

**πλησίων** adv. G near.

**πλίνθινος** -ῃ -ον of brick, brick; πλίνθος 426.

**πλίνθος** -ου ἡ brick. *plinth*.

**πλοῖον** -ου τό boat; cp. πλέω.

**πόθεν** interrog. adv. whence? where from? πόθεν, cp. ὅθεν.

**ποθεν** adv. from somewhere; indef. to πόθεν.

**ποῖ** interrog. adv. whither? where to? cp. οἶ.

**ποι** adv. to some place; indef. to ποῖ.

**ποιέω**, A or two A, make, produce, construct; do, act; mid. make for myself, deem; εἰ or κακῶς, ἀγαθόν or κακόν ποιεῖν A treat well or ill; περί παντός ποιεῖσθαι deem it all-important. poem, poet, *onomatopoeia* *δύναμα*.

**ποιητός** -ᾱ -ον to be done; must do; verbal of ποιέω 354.

**ποιός** -ᾱ -ον interrog. pron. what kind of? what? cp. οἶος.

**πολέμω** D am at war with, fight; πόλεμος 416 a.

**πόλεμος** -ᾱ -ον of war, the enemy's, hostile; as subst. οἱ πολέμοι the enemy, equivalent to Latin *hostes*; πόλεμος 424.

**πόλεμος** -ου ὁ war. *polemio*.

**πολιορκέω** besiege; πόλις, ἔρκος fr. εἰργω shut in 438 b, 416 a.

**πόλις** -εως ἡ city, state; cp. πλήρης. police, policy, politics, metro-polis μῆτηρ, acro-polis ἄκρος.

**πολίτης** -ου ὁ citizen; πόλις 430 b. **πολλάκις** adv. often; πολύς 232.

**πολλοί** -αί -ά many; οἱ πολλοί the many, most men; πολύς.

**πολύς** πολλή πολύ much, many; large, long, strong; τὸ πολὺ the greater part; διὰ πολλά for many

reasons; ἐκ πολλοῦ *with a long start*; ὥς or ὅτι πλείστοι *as many as possible*; cp. πλήρης. poly-gon γωνία, poly-nomial ὄνομα, pleonasm πλείων, poly- many.

πόντος -ου ὁ *sea*. Helles-pont, Pontus. πορεύῃ -ᾱς ἡ *going, march*; πορεύομαι 406 a.

πορεύομαι pass. dep. *go, proceed, advance, march*; πόρος 417 a. FARE.

πόρος -ου ὁ *means of passing, ford; way, means*; see under περδόμεαι. FORD.

πορευτίον A *must proceed*; verbal of πορεύομαι 354.

πόρρω adv. G *far from*; πρό.

πόσος -ῃ -ον interrog. pron. *how large? how much or many?* cp. ὅσος.

ποταμός -ου ὁ *river*. hippo-potamus ἵππος, Meso-potamia μέσος.

πότε interrog. adv. *when?* πό-τε cp. τό-τε.

ποτε adv. *sometime, once on a time, ever*; indef. to πότε.

πότερον interrog. adv. *whether*; πότερον (πότερα) ... ἢ *whether ... or*; πότερος.

πότερος -ᾱ -ον interrog. pron. *which of two?*

ποῦ interrog. adv. *where?* cp. οὐ.

που adv. *somewhere*; indef. to ποῦ.

πούς ποδός ὁ *foot*; cp. πεδίον. Latin pēs, impediō; tra-pedium τέτταρες, anti-podes ἀντί, tri-pod τρεῖς.

πράγμα -ατος τό *deed, act, business; difficulty*; D πράγματα παρέχειν *make trouble for*; πράττω 407. pragmatic.

πράξις -εως ἡ *doing, undertaking, enterprise, business*; πράττω 406.

πράττω *perform, accomplish, do*; εὖ or καλῶς πράττω *am successful, am fortunate*; κακῶς πράττω *am unfortunate*; οὕτω πράττω *fare thus, meet this result*. practice, practical. V.

πρεσβεύω *am an envoy*; πρέσβυς 417 a.

πρέσβυς *old*; οἱ πρέσβεις -εων *ambassadors, envoys* 142, 7. presbyter, priest.

πρεσβύτερος -ᾱ -ον *older, elder*; comparative of πρέσβυς.

πρίσθαι, inf. of ἐπριάμην.

πρίν conj. adv. w. inf. *before* 568; w. finite modes *until, before* 644 d, 287 d.

πρό prep. G *before, in front of*; sometimes like ὑπέρ *in defense of, for*; πρὸ τῆς οἰκίας *in front of the house*; πρὸ ἁρίστου *before breakfast*. Latin prō; pro-gram γράφω, pro-boscis βόσκειν *feed*, pro-clitio κλίνω *lean*.

προάγω *lead forward; advance*; πρό 178, ἄγω. V.

προαισθάνομαι ptc. clause, *perceive beforehand*; πρό 178, αἰσθάνομαι. V.

προβάλλω *throw before*; mid. *hold before myself*; τὰ ὄπλα προβαλέσθαι *advance arms for attack, shields forward and spears in rest*; cp. charge bayonets; πρό 178, βάλλω. pro-blem. V.

πρόβατον -ου τό *in pl. cattle, sheep*.

προδίδωμι *give forth, betray, abandon, surrender*; πρό 178, δίδωμι. Latin prōdō. V.

προδότης -ου ὁ *traitor*; προδίδωμι 405. Latin prōditor.

**προέειπεν**  *speak forth, order*; **πρό** 178, εἶπεν. V.  
**προελαύνω** *ride before, march on*; **πρό** 178, ἐλαύνω. V.  
**προέρχεται** *go before, advance*; **πρό** 178, ἔρχομαι. V.  
**προεβόρμαι** *pass. dep. 185, am eager, earnestly desire*; **πρόβω** 416 a. Cp. ἐπιβόρμαι.  
**πρόθυμος -ον** *eager, devoted*; **πρό**, **θυμός** heart 447 h.  
**προθύμως** *adv. eagerly, zealously*; **πρόθυμος**.  
**προΐεναι** *go on before; advance, proceed*; **πρό** 178, εἰμι 385.  
**προϊέναι**, *pres. inf. of προίημι*.  
**προίημι** *send forth; mid. D. give myself up, entrust, surrender*; **πρό** 178, ἵημι. V.  
**προίστημι** *set at the head of; intr. forms G am at the head of, command*; **πρό** 178, ἵστημι. V.  
**προκατακάω** *burn down before, lay waste with fire before one*; **πρό** 178, κατακάω. V.  
**προκαταλαμβάνω** *seize before, pre-occupy*; **πρό** 178, καταλαμβάνω. V.  
**πρόκειμαι** *am laid before, proposed, prescribed; used as pass. to προτίθημι*; **πρό** 178, κείμαι 387 and a.  
**πρός** *prep. face to face, confronting, opposite*. **πρὸς** οὐδὲ *song, ode*.  
**G from, by, in the sight of, before; **πρὸς** θεῶν *before the gods*; **πρὸς** τοῦ τρόπου *in accordance with his character, like him*.  
**A facing, near, beside, besides**; **πρὸς** τούτοις *besides these*.  
**A before, against, to, regarding**; **πρὸς** ταῦτα *in reference to this*;**

**πρὸς** φίλων *with friendship assured*.  
**πρὸς** *adv. πρὸς ὅ ἐτι καὶ and besides too*.  
**προσάγω** *lead to; advance*; **πρὸς** 178, ἄγω. V.  
**προσαιτέω** *ask in addition; two A ask for more*; **πρὸς** 178, αἰτέω.  
**προσελαύνω** *drive towards; ride or march against; march on*; **πρὸς** 178, ἐλαύνω. V.  
**προσέρχεται** *come to, approach; D go over to, join*; **πρὸς** 178, ἔρχομαι. V.  
**πρόσθεν** *adv. before, formerly; G in front of; τὸ πρόσθεν the van; the time before; εἰς τὸ πρόσθεν forward; πρόσθεν . . . πρὶν simply before; πρόσθεν . . . ἢ sooner . . . than; πρὸς + -θεν*.  
**προσέναι** *come to, approach, advance*; **πρὸς** 178, εἰμι 385.  
**προσλαμβάνω** *take besides; take part in*; **πρὸς** 178, λαμβάνω. V.  
**προσδύνω** *take an additional oath, swear also*; **πρὸς** 178, δύνω. V.  
**προσποιέμαι** *profess; pretend*; **πρὸς** 178, ποίεω.  
**προστάττω** *D of person, assign to a duty; give an order to*; **πρὸς** 178, τάττω. Cp. ἐπιτάττω. V.  
**προστίθημι** *D add to; mid. join in, agree with, agree to*; **πρὸς** 178, τίθημι 375.  
**πρὸσω** *adv. forwards; ἵεναι τοῦ πρὸσω go forward*; **πρὸς**.  
**προτεραίος -ᾱ -ον** *in τῇ προτεραίᾳ on the day before; πρότερος*.  
**πρότερον** *adv. before, previously; neut. acc. of πρότερος*.  
**πρότερος -ᾱ -ον** *former, previous, earlier; sometimes translated like*

an adverb: *πρότεροι ἡμῶν ἐφίκοντο* they arrived before we did. Latin *prior*.

*πρόφασις* -ως ἡ *pretext, excuse*; *πρό, φάσις* assertion, *φημι* 406, 440 a.

*πρῶτον* adv. *at first, in the first place*; neut. acc. of *πρῶτος*.

*πρῶτος* -η -ον *first, foremost, chief*; *πρό*. Latin *primus*.

*πυνθάνομαι* *inquire, ask*; *ascertain, discover*; w. ptc. clause, *find out*. Cp. 588 a, b. V.

*πῦρ πυρός* τό *fire*; pl. *camp-fires* 142, 8. *πυρ, em-pyrean ἐν, πυρο-technic τέχνη* art.

*πυραμῖς* -ίδος ἡ *pyramid. pyramid*.

*πῦρός* -οῦ ὁ in pl. *wheat*.

\* *πῶ* adv. *yet, hitherto*; after negatives like Latin *-dum*, see *οὔπω, μήπω*.

*πῶποτε* adv. *ever, ever yet*; after negatives like Latin *umquam*; *πῶ + ποτε*.

*πῶς* interrog. adv. *in what way? how?* cp. *ὥς*.

*πῶς* adv. *somehow*; indef. to *πῶς*; *ἕδὲ πῶς* *in some such way as this*.

## P

*ράδιος* -ᾶ -ον *easy*.

*ῥέω* flow. stream cp. *Στρυμῶν the Strymon*; *rheumatism, cata-rh κατά, rhythm* 400 b. V.

*ῥήτωρ* -ορος ὁ *public speaker, orator*; cp. *ῥῶς*; 405. rhetoric.

## Σ

*σάλπιγξ* -γγος ἡ *trumpet*, a long straight bronze tube swelling at the end like the Roman *tuba*.

*σαλπίζω* blow the trumpet; *ἐπεὶ ἐσάλπιγξε* at the trumpet signal; *σάλπιγξ* 418 a. V.

*σατράπης* -ου ὁ *satrap*, a Persian governor of a province.

*σαντοῦ* for *σεαντοῦ*.

*σαφής* -ῆς *clear, plain, certain*, properly of taste; *σαπ*-. Latin *sapiō, sapiēns*; *σαπ, SOAP, insipid. σαφῶς* adv. *clearly, evidently*; *σαφής*.

*σεαντοῦ* -ῆς -οῦ refl. pron. *of yourself*; *σε + αὐτός*, cp. *σύ*.

*σημαίνω* show by sign; D give a signal; *indicate, inform, declare, direct*; *σήμα* sign 420. V.

*σίτος* -ου ὁ *grain, food*; pl. *σίτα provisions, supplies* 144. *para-site παρὰ*.

*σιωπῶ* am silent; *σιωπή* silence 416 b.

*σκέπτομαι, σκοπέω* is the usual present, *look about, search, spy*; *deliberate, consider*. Latin *speciō, speciēs*; *SPY, skeptio*. V.

*-σκευάζω* make ready; *σκευή* attire 419; see *para-σκευάζω*.

*σκευοφόρος* -ον *baggage carrying*; *τὰ σκευοφόρα* the baggage train; *τὸ σκεῦος* in pl. *baggage, -φόρος, φέρω* 410, 443 b, 446 a, c; cp. *para-σκευάζω*.

*σκέψομαι*, fut. of *σκοπέω*.

*σκηνή* -ῆς ἡ *tent*. Latin *scēna*; *scena*.

*σκοπέω*, only pres. and imperf. see *σκέπτομαι, look at, watch*; *see, observe*; *consider, ponder*; *σκοπός* 416 c. V.

*σκοπός* -οῦ ὁ *lookout, spy, scout*; *σκέπτομαι* 403. *scope, micro-scope μικρός, ἐπὶ-scope ἐπὶ, bi-scope ἐπὶ*.

σός σή σόν poss. pron. *thy, thine, your*; cp. σύ. Latin *tuus*.

σοφία -ās ή skill, ability, wisdom; σοφός 429 b.

σοφός -ή -όν skilled, clever, wise; σαρ-, cp. σαφής. philo-sophy φίλος.

σπεύδω urge; am in a hurry, hasten. V.

σπονδή -ης ή libation, drink-offering; pl. truce, agreement, treaty; σπένδω pour a libation 404.

στάδιον -ου τό, for pl. see 144, extended space, stadium, race-course; stade, about six hundred feet. Latin *spatium*.

σταθμός -ου ό standing-place, stand; halting place, station; day's march; στα-θ-μός, στα- 400 b, 406; cp. ἵστημι, στάσις. Latin *stabilum*; STAND.

στάς, root-aor. ptc. of ἵστημι.

στάσις -εως ή party, faction; insurrection, discord; στα- 406; cp. ἵστημι, σταθμός. Latin *statiō*; apo-stasy από, eo-stasy εκ.

στέλλω arrange; equip, dress; send. V.

στενός -ή -όν narrow; τὰ στενὰ narrow pass, defile. steno-graphy γράφω.

στερέω, pass. στέρομαι, G rob of, deprive of; am deprived of, have lost. V.

στήναι, root-aor. inf. of ἵστημι.

στλεγγίς -ιδος ή scraper, strigil, used by athletes to remove dust and oil from the skin after exercising.

στολή -ης ή dress, robe; στέλλω 404. stole.

στόλος -ου ό equipment, expedition; army, force; στέλλω 403.

στρατιά -ās ή expedition, campaign; στρατεύω 406 a; cp. στρατός.

στράτευμα -ατος τό army; division; στρατεύω 407; cp. στρατός.

στρατεύομαι make war; conduct or serve in a campaign, take the field, march; ἑστρατεύετο οὕτως thus he was taking part in the expedition; στρατός 417 a.

στρατηγέω am general, take command, command; στρατηγός 416 e; cp. στρατός.

στρατηγία -ās ή office of general, command; ὡς στρατηγήσονται ἐμὲ τάβην τὴν στρατηγίαν μηδεὶς ὑμῶν λεγέτω let no one of you mention me with the idea that I am going to assume this command; στρατηγός 429 b; cp. στρατός.

στρατηγός -ου ό army leader, general; στρατός, ἔγω 410, 443 a, 446 a, c. strat-agem, strat-egy, strategio.

στρατιά -ās ή army; στρατός 429 b.

στρατιώτης -ου ό soldier; pl. troops; ἄνδρες στρατιῶται fellow soldiers; στρατιά 430 b.

στρατοπεδεύομαι encamp; στρατόπεδον 417 a.

στρατόπεδον -ου τό camp-ground, camp; στρατός, πέδον ground 446 a.

στρατός -ου ό encamped army, army, force; στρα- spread out, strew; cp. 411. Latin *strātus*, sternō, struō; STREW, STRAW.

στρεπτός -ή -όν twisted; as subst. ό στρεπτός necklace, collar; στρέφω turn 353. strophe στροφή turning 404; see 25 and cp. 403; apo-strophe από, cata-strophe κατά.

**σύ σοῦ** pers. pron. *thou, you*; **τε-  
σε-**. Latin *tū*; **ΤΗΟΥ**.

**συνγίγνομαι** D *am with, am acquainted with, meet*; *have intercourse with*; **σύν** 178, **γίγνομαι**. V.

**συγκαλέω** *call or summon together, assemble, convene*; **σύν** 178, **καλέω**. V.

**συλλαμβάνω** *take with, seize, arrest; take together*; **σύν** 178, **λαμβάνω**. syllable. V.

**συλλέγω** *gather together, collect; levy*; pass. *assemble*; **σύν** 178, **λέγω**. V.

**συλλογή** -ης ἡ *gathering, levy*; **συλλέγω** 404, cp. 440.

**συμβάλλω** *throw together, collect; mid. contribute*; **σύν** 178, **βάλλω**. symbol. V.

**συμβουλεύω** D *advise, counsel*; mid. *consult together, confer with, ask advice of*; **σύν** 178, **βουλεύω**.

**σύμμαχος** -ων *in alliance with*; as subst. **δ σύμμαχος** *ally*; **σύν** 178, **μάχομαι**, **συμμάχομαι** *am an ally*; -μάχος 410, 446 b, c. Note the accent; cp. 439 a. For another explanation see 440 b and end.

**συνμειγνύμι** D *mix with, unite with, join*; **σύν** 178, **μειγνύμι** *mix*. Latin *miscēd*; MIX. V.

**σύνπᾶς** -πᾶσα -παν *all together, entire*; **ἐγένοντο οἱ σύμπαντες** *the whole force amounted to*; **σύν + πᾶς** 440 a.

**συνπέμπω** D *send with*; **σύν** 178, **πέμπω**. V.

**συνπλέω** D *sail with*; **σύν** 178, **πλέω**. V.

**σύνπλεως** -ων G *very full, abounding in*; **σύν**, **πλέως** 95, 440 a.

**συμπολέω** D *aid in war*; **σύν** 178, **πολέω**.

**συμπορεύομαι** D *accompany*; **σύν** 178, **πορεύομαι** 185.

**συμπράττω** D of person, A of thing, *do with, assist, coöperate with*; **σύν** 178, **πράττω**.

**συμπροθύμιομαι** D *unite earnestly with in urging*; **σύν** 178, **προθύμιομαι**.

**συμφέρω** *bring together*; impers. D *is of advantage to*; **σύν** 178, **φέρω**. V.

**σύν** prep. D *with, in company with, with the aid of; including*; **σύν τοῖς θεοῖς** *with the aid of the gods*; used often by Xen. for **μετά**: **Μένων καὶ οἱ σύν αὐτῷ** *Menon and his force*; cp. **ἅμα**. Latin *cum*; **sym-metry** **μέτρον**, **sympathy** **πάθος** *feeling*.

**συνάγω** *bring together, call together, convoke*; **σύν** 178, **ἄγω**. V.

**συναλλάττω** *change by bringing together, reconcile*; mid. and pass. **πρός** A *make terms with, am reconciled to*; cp. **καταλλάττω**; **σύν** 178, **ἀλλάττω**. V.

**συναναβαίνω** D *go up with; march inland with*; **σύν** 178, **ἀναβαίνω**. V.

**συναπίνειν** D *go back with*; **σύν** 178, **ἀπίνειν**. 385.

**συνασέρχομαι** D *go in with; go in together*; **πρός** A of person, **εἰς** A of place; **σύν** 178, **εἰσέρχομαι**. V.

**συνεκκόπτω** D *aid in cutting down*; **σύν** 178, **ἐκκόπτω**. V.

**συνεξέρχομαι** D *go out with*; **σύν** 178, **ἐξέρχομαι**. V.

**συνέπομαι** D *follow with, accompany*; **σύν** 178, **ἔπομαι**. V.



**συνέρχομαι** D go with; come together, assemble; *σύν* 178, *έρχομαι*. V.

**συνεφέπομαι** D follow on with; *σύν* 178, *εφέπομαι*, *ἐπί* + *έπομαι*. V.

**σύνθημα** -ατος ὁ thing agreed on, watchword, countersign; *σύν*, *τίθημι* 440 b, 407.

**συνίστημι** D bring together with, introduce; intr. forms and mid. stand together, combine; *σύν* 178, *ίστημι*. *σύνταξις*. V.

**σύννοια** share in knowledge; D and ptc. am conscious of 587; *σύν* 178, *οἶδα*. 386.

**συνομολογέω** D of person, agree to . . . with, assent to; *σύν* 178, *ὁμολογέω*.

**σύντάττω** arrange together; form in line of battle; *σύν* 178, *τάττω*. *σύνταξις*. V.

**συντίθηναι** put together; mid. D make an agreement with; *σύν* 178, *τίθημι*. *σύνθεσις*. V.

**συσκευάζομαι** make preparations, pack up; *σύν* 178, *σκευάζω*.

**συστρατεύομαι** D take the field with; join an expedition; *σύν* 178, *στρατεύομαι*.

**συστρατιώτης** -ου ὁ fellow-soldier; *σύν*, *στρατιώτης* 440 a.

**σφίσι** for *ἐαυτοῖς* 197.

**σχεῖν**, aor. inf. of *έχω*.

**σχολαῖος** -ᾱ -ον leisurely, slow; *σχολή* leisure 424.

**σχολαῖως** adv. slowly; *σχολαῖος*.

**σώζω** save, rescue; retain; conduct safely; mid. and pass. save myself, escape; go or return in safety; *σῶς* 418. *αερο-βοτὴ κρέας* flesh. V.

**σῶμα** -ατος τό body; life.

**σῶς** *σῶν* safe and sound, alive 96. Latin *sānus, sōpes*.

**σάφρων** -ον of sound mind, sensible, discreet; *σῶς*, *φρήν* mind 427.

**σωτηρία** -ᾱς ἡ safety, preservation, deliverance; *σῶς*, *σάφω*, *σωτήρ* preserver 405, 429 b.

## T

τ' for τε.

**τάξις** -ews ἡ arrangement; order, rank, line of battle; company, division, battalion of infantry; *τάττω* 406.

**τάττω** arrange, draw up in line of battle, assign, station, order, appoint. *tactica, taxi-dermy* *δέρμα, syntax* *σύν*, technical *τέχνη* art.

**ταυτό** for τὸ αὐτό the same thing.

**τάφρος** -ου ἡ ditch, trench.

**ταχέως** adv. swiftly, soon.

**τάχιστα** adv. sup. of *ταχέως*; *ἔς τάχιστα*, ἢ *ἐδόνατο* *τάχιστα* as rapidly as possible; *ἐπειδὴν* *τάχιστα* as soon as.

**ταχέ** adv. soon, rapidly; neut. of *ταχύς*.

**ταχύς** -εια -ό swift, speedy; *διὰ ταχέων* rapidly; *τὴν ταχίστην ὁδὸν* by the shortest route, as soon as possible. Compared 181.

\* τε conj. and; τε . . . καὶ both . . . and, see καί; cp. Latin -que.

**τείχος** -ους τό wall, fortress. DIKE, DITCH.

**τελευταῖος** -ᾱ -ον last; *τελευτή* 424.

**τελευτάω** finish; die; *τελευτή* 416 b.

**τελευτή** -ης ἡ end; *τελευτή τοῦ βίου* death; *τέλος, τελέω* finish.

**τέλος** -ου τό completion, end, result; acc. as adv. finally, at last. *tall-man*.

**τέταρτος -η -ον** fourth. Latin *quartus*.

**τετρακσχίλιοι -αι -α** four thousand; *τέτταρες, χίλιοι* 232.

**τέτταρες -α** four. Latin *quattuor*; *tetra-gon γωνία, tetra-arch αρχή*.

**τέχνη -ης ἡ** art, skill. technical. poly-technic *πολύς*.

**τήμερον** adv. today; *τ-, ἡμέρᾱ*.

**τίθῃμι** put, place, get ready; mid. arrange; pass. *κείμεναι* 387 c; *ἀγῶνα τιθέναι* arrange games. Observe carefully the following:

**τίθεσθαι τὰ ὅπλα**: 1 Ground arms, rest under arms, shield and spears lying on the ground; *θέμενοι τὰ ὅπλα ἀνεπαύοντο* they grounded arms and rested.

2 Order arms, halt or stand under arms ready for action, shield and spear with one end resting on the ground; *ἐν τάξει θέμενοι τὰ ὅπλα συνῆλθον οἱ στρατηγοὶ παρ' Ἀριαίων* halting under arms in line the generals went together to Ariaios.

3 Get under arms, draw up in order of battle, take up a position under arms; *εἰς τάξιν ἔθεντο τὰ ὅπλα* they arranged themselves under arms in line of battle. *θε-*. thesis, hypo-thesis *ὁπός, theme*; cp. *σύν-θημα*.

**τιμᾶω** value; honor; *τιμή* 416 b.

**τιμῇ -ης ἡ** value, worth; honor; *τίω* honor 406.

**τίμιος -ᾱ -ον** valued; honored, esteemed; *τιμή* 424.

**τιμωρέω** D of person avenged, A of person punished, G of the crime; help, avenge; mid. take vengeance on, punish; pass. am punished;

*τιμωρός* avenging 416 c; *τι-*, *Fe-* in *ὄραω, τιμα-ορός*.

**τίς τί** interrog. pron. who? which? what? *τί* as adv. why? *διὰ τί* why? *τί ἡμῖν χρήσεται*; what use does he intend to make of us? *ἤρετο τίς ἔλθοι* he asked who went.

**τις τι** some, any; someone, anything; indef. to τίς.

\* **τοι**, intensive particle, really, of course 671 c.

\* **τόνυν** conj. then, well then 673 b; *τοι + νυν*.

**τοιόσδε τοιάδε τοιόνδε** dem. pron. 211, such as follows; *ἔλεξε τοιάδε* he spoke somewhat as follows; *τοιός* such + *-δε*; cp. *οἷος*.

**τοιούτος τοιαύτη τοιοῦτο(ν)** dem. pron. 212, such as already experienced, of this sort, like Latin *tālis*; cp. *οὔτος*.

**τόξευμα -ατος τό** arrow; *τοξέω* shoot with a bow 407.

**τόξον -ου τό** bow. *τοξολο-gy λόγος*.

**τοξότης -ου ὁ** bowman, archer; *τόξον* 430 b.

**τόπος -ου ὁ** place, spot. *τοπία, topography γράφω*.

**τοσούδε τοσήδε τοσόνδε** dem. pron. 211, so much, so many; *τόσος* so great + *-δε*.

**τοσοῦτος τοσαύτη τοσοῦτο(ν)** dem. pron. 212, so great, so large, so many like Latin *tantus, tot*; *τοσοῦτον* as adv. so far; *ὅσῳ . . . τοσοῦτῳ* the . . . the, cp. *ὅσος*; cp. *οὔτος*.

**τότε** adv. then; *οἱ τότε* the men of that time; *τό + -τε*.

**τράπεζα -ης ἡ** table with four legs; *τέτταρες, πεδ-, cp. πούς, πεδίον*. *trapezium*.

**τρεις** *tría* *three*. Latin *trēs*; *tri-pod* *πούς*, *triad*.

**τρέπω** *turn*. Latin *trepidus*. V.

**τρέφω** *nurture*; *support*, *maintain*; *τρέφμενον* *ἐλάσσανεν* see *λατάνω*. V.

**τρέχω** *run*; cp. *δρόμος*. V.

**τριάκοντα** *thirty*; *τρεις*, *είκοσι*. Latin *trigintā*.

**τριάκοντοι** *-αι -α* *three hundred*; Latin *trecenti*.

**τριήρης** *-ους ἡ* *trireme*, a war vessel with three banks of oars on each side and furnished with a beak for ramming; decl. 154, 151; *τρεις*, *ἄρ- fit* 446 a.

**τρίς** *adv. three times*; *τρεις* 232.

**τριμύριοι** *-αι -α* *thirty thousand*; *τρεις*, *μύριοι* 232.

**τρίτος** *-η -ον* *third*; *τρεις*. Latin *tertius*.

**τρόπαιον** *-ου τό* *trophy*, a memorial of victory to mark the place where the enemy turned; *τροπή* *turning*; *defeat*; *τροπαῖος* 424. *trophy*.

**τρόπος** *-ου ὁ* *turn*, *manner*, *character*; *τρέπω* 403. *τροπε*, *τροπία*.

**τροφή** *-ης ἡ* *support*, *maintenance*; *τρέφω* 404.

**τυγχάνω** G *hit*; *reach*, *gain*, *obtain*, *find*; w. ptc. *happen*; *παρὼν ἐτύχωνε* *he happened to be on hand*.

**τύραννος** *-ου ὁ* *absolute ruler*, *ruler*. *tyrant*.

## Y

**ὕδωρ** *ὕδατος τό* *water*. Latin *unda*; *WET*, *hydr-audio* *αἰλός* *pipe*, *hydro-gen* *γεν-*, *hydrant*, *hydr-*.

**ὕμεις** *ὕμῶν ὕμιν ὕμᾱς* *pers. pron.* *you*, like Latin *vōs*.

**ὑμέτερος** *-ᾱ -ον* *your*, *yours*, like Latin *vester*.

**ὑπαρχος** *-ου ὁ* *underofficer*, *lieutenant*; *ὕπῳ*, *ἄρχω* 446 b, d, or 440 a; see 440 b end.

**ὑπάρχω** w. pred. ptc., *begin*, *am the first*; *am ready*, *exist*; D *am devoted to*, *support*; *ὕπῳ* 178, *ἄρχω*. V.

**ὑπάρχει** *be under*, as a foundation; *ὕπῳ* 178, *εἰμι*. V.

**ὑπέρ** *prep. over*. Latin *super* 54; *hyper-borean* *βορέας* *north wind*, *hyper-critical* *κρίνω*, *hyper-*.

G *over*, *beyond*, *for the sake of*; *ὕπερ* *τῆς κεφαλῆς* *above the head*; *ὕπερ* *τῆς Ἑλλάδος* *in defence of Greece*.

A *over*, *above*, *motion or extension*; *more than*; *ὕπερ* *τὴν δύναμιν* *beyond his ability*.

**ὑπερβάλλω** A *throw over*; *cross*; *ὕπερ* 178, *βάλλω*. V.

**ὑπερβολή** *-ης ἡ* *overshooting*; *passing over*; a mountain *pass*; *ὑπερβάλλω* 404 or 440 a; see 440 b end. *hyperbole*.

**ὑπηρέτω** D *serve*, *help*; *ὑπηρέτης* *under-rower*, *servant* 416 c.

**ὑποσχεῖσθαι** D of person, *hold myself under*, *undertake*, *promise*; *ὕπῳ* 178, *ἵσχω*, *ἔχω*. V.

**ὕπῳ** *prep. under*. *hypo-critics* *κρίνω*, *hypo-theosis* *τίθημι*.

G *from under*, *at the hands of*; *by*, the regular form for agent; *αἰρεθείς ὑπὸ τῶν πολιτῶν* *chosen by the citizens*.

D *under*, *at the foot of*; *ὕπῳ* *τῇ ἀκροπόλει* *at the foot of the acropolis*.

A *to a position under* or *at the*

foot of; under, motion or extension; ὑπῆλθον ὑπὸ τὰ δένδρα they came up under the trees.

ὑποζύγιον -ου τό under the yoke, beast of burden; pl. pack-animals, baggage train; ὑπό, ζυγόν yoke 448, 424.

ὑπολαμβάνω take under my protection; respond; interrupt; ὑπό 178, λαμβάνω. V.

ὑπολείπω leave behind; ὑπό 178, λείπω. V.

ὑπομένω stay behind; wait a little; A wait for; ὑπό 178, μένω. V.

ὑποπτεύω suspect, apprehend; w. inf. clause suspect, surmise that; w. μή clause fear, suspect that; ὑποπτος suspicious 417 a, 438 a. 268 b.

ὑποστράτηγος -ου ὁ lieutenant general; ὑπό, στρατηγός 440 a, 446 b.

ὑποψία -ᾱς ἡ suspicion, distrust; ὑφορώ, ὑπόψομαι suspect 406.

ὑστεραίος -ᾱ -ον later, following; τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ on the next day; ὑστερος 424.

ὑστερος -ᾱ -ον latter, later; G later than, too late for; acc. as adv. ὑστερον later. 183.

ὑφίστημι put under, concede, admit; mid. D yield, surrender; allow; ὑπό 178, ἵστημι. V.

ὑψηλός -ῆ -όν high, lofty; ὕψος; cp. 412.

ὑψος -ους τό height; ὑπέρ. Latin summus.

# Φ

φαίνω make appear, show; mid. and pass. appear, seem, am seen, am shown 337; w. ptc. frequently translated evidently, manifestly;

φα- in φημι; cp. 420. phase, fantastio, phantom, epi-phanty ἐπί, fancy, emphasis ἐν, dia-phantous διὰ, phenomenon. V.

φάλαγξ -γγος ἡ battle-line. phalanx. φανερός -ᾱ -όν in plain sight, visible, evident; w. ptc. φανερός ἦν οἰόμενος he evidently thought, he let it be seen that he thought 585 a; ἐν τῷ φανερῷ openly, publicly; φαν- in φαίνομαι 412.

φέρω bear, bring, carry; produce; of wages receive; βαρέως or χαλεπῶς φέρω am troubled, take it hard, cp. molestē ferō. Latin ferō, fertilis, fortuna; meta-phor μετὰ, phos-phorus φῶς light.

φεύγω flee, run away; am an exile; οἱ φεύγοντες the exiles. Latin fugiō. V.

φημι inf. clause, say, affirm, declare, speak; οὐ φημι say that . . . not, deny, refuse, cp. negō; cp. φαίνομαι. Latin fārī, fābula, fāma; euphemism εὖ, pro-phet πρό. V.

φθάνω come before, anticipate; A of person and ptc. frequently translated by before, sooner than 585 a; φθήσονται ἡμᾶς καταλαμβάνοντες τὰ ἄκρα they will seize the heights before we can. V.

φίλος love; φίλος 416 a.

φιλία -ᾱς ἡ affection, friendship; πρὸς φιλιᾷ ἀφίεναι allow us to go back in peace; φίλος 429 b.

φίλιος -ᾱ -ον D friendly; at peace; διὰ φιλίας τῆς χώρας ἀπ᾽ αὐτοῦ render friendly to us the country through which he shall lead us; φίλος 424.

φίλος -ῆ -ον D friendly, dear; kindly disposed; as subst. friend.

philite, phil-antitropy *ἐπιφίλος*, philo-  
sopher σοφός, biblio-philie βιβλίον book.  
φλυαῖα -αῖ ἡ in pl. a lot of non-  
sense; φλύαρος nonsense 429 b.  
φοβέω frighten; mid. as pass. dep.  
w. μή clause, fear, dread, am  
afraid that; φόβος 416 c. 185.  
φόβος -ου ὁ fear, terror, fright;  
panic; φεβ- tumble 403. hydro-  
phobia ὕδωρ.  
φῶις -η -ον pure, bright, radiant.  
φουλικιστής -ου ὁ wearer of the  
purple; or purple-dyer, in charge  
of the royal wardrobe; cp. φουι-  
κοῦς.  
φουλικιστής βασιλεὺς a wearer of  
the royal purple.  
φουλικός -η -ον dark red, purple;  
φουίξ 426.  
φοινίξ -ικος ὁ palm tree, date palm.  
φροφάρχης -ου ὁ commander of a  
garrison; φρουρός watch, ἀρχός,  
ἔρχω 403, 443 a, 446 a.  
φυγάς -άδος ὁ exile, fugitive; φεύγω,  
φυγ-.  
φυλακή -ης ἡ watch, guard; gar-  
rison; φυλάττω, φυλακ- 404.  
φύλαξ -ακος ὁ watcher, guard; pl.  
body-guard; φυλάττω, φυλακ- 401.  
φυλάττω keep watch; A guard,  
watch, defend; mid. A am on  
my guard against; w. μή clause  
guard against. V.  
φωνή -ης ἡ voice; language; φων-  
ημι, cp. φων- φάω. phonetikos,  
phon-o-graph γράφω. tele-phone τήλε  
afar, eu-phony εὐ.

## X

χαλεπός -η -όν hard to bear, griev-  
ous, painful; difficult, hard;  
severe, bitter, hostile.

χαλεπῶς adv. hardly, with diffi-  
culty; χαλεπῶς φέρω take it hard;  
χαλεπῶς ἔχω am angry.

χαλκοῦς -η -όν of bronze, bronze;  
χαλκός copper 426.

χάρις -ιτος ἡ graciousness, favor,  
gratitude, thanks; D of person  
and G of cause, χάριν ἔχω or εἶμι  
am grateful. Latin grātus, grā-  
tia. eu-charist εὐ.

χερ χερός ἡ hand; εἰς χεῖρας αὐτῆς  
into his power; hand to hand  
with. chiro-graphy γράφω, chiro-  
manoy μάντις, e-urgeon ἔργον.

χθές adv. yesterday. Latin heri.

χίλια -α -α thousand.

χιτὼν -ῆνος ὁ undergarment, chi-  
ton, corresponding somewhat to  
the modern shirt.

χράομαι D use, employ, enjoy, have;  
τί βούλεται ἡμῖν χρῆσθαι; what use  
does he wish to make of us?  
ἡγεμόνι ἐχρῶντο τούτῳ they used  
this man as guide

χρή, inf. or A and inf., is necessary,  
I ought 390.

χρῆξω inf. need, lack, wish, desire.

χρήμα -ατος τό thing of use; pl.  
property, money; χρᾶμαι 407.

χρόνος -ου ὁ time; season, period,  
chronic, chronicle, chrono-logy λόγος,  
chrono-meter μέτρον, ana-chronism ἀνά-  
χρῆστον -ου τό piece of gold, gold  
coin, money; χρῆσός 431 a.

χρυσούς -η -όν golden, gold, gilded,  
gold mounted; χρῆσός 426.

χρυσός -οῦ ὁ gold. chrysalia, chryso-  
lite λίθος. chrys-anthemum ἀνθεμον  
flower.

χρυσοχάλινος -ον with gold-mount-  
ed bridle; χρυσός, χαλινός bridle  
447.

χῶρᾱ -ᾱς ἡ *place, post, position; station, land, region, country;* cp. χῶρος *place, piece of ground* and 403 b, 404 b.

χωρῖον -ου τό *space; place; fortress, stronghold; χῶρᾱ 431 a.*

# Ψ

ψάλλον -ου τό *bracelet.*

ψεύδομαι *am deceitful; A deceive, cheat. pseudonym ὄνομα. pseudo-. V.*

ψῆλος -ῆ -όν *naked, bare, barren.*

# Ω

ὦ *O, frequent with the vocative.*

ὥδε *adv. in the following manner; thus, so; ὅδε 236.*

ᾤετο, ᾤμην, imperf. of οἶμαι.

ὤν *being, ptc. of εἰμι; τῷ δ' ὤντι but really, but in fact.*

ὀνέομαι *buy, purchase; ὀνός price 416 c.*

ὀνός -ᾱ -ον *for sale; as subst. τὰ ὀνία wares, goods; ὀνός price 424.*

ὥρᾱ -ᾱς ἡ *time; season; hour, proper time. Latin hōra; hour, horo-σκοπε σκοπός.*

ὥς conj. adv. *a As, how; when, since; ὥς τάχιστα as soon as possible 633 A f.*

*b Equivalent to ὅτι that; ὥς ἐπιβουλεύει αὐτῷ (saying) that he was plotting against him.*

*c Equivalent to ἵνα, but not common in prose except in Xenophon, that, in order that.*

*d With ptc. as 593 c.*

*e With inf. clause, equivalent to ὅσπερ, so as 566.*

*Adv. with numerals, about.*

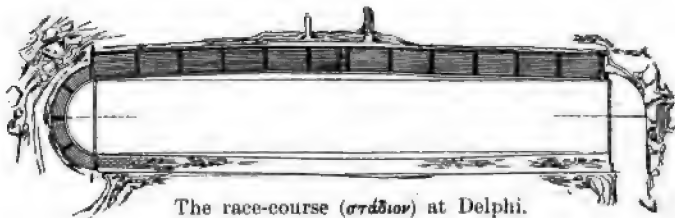
*Prep. A with names of persons, to; πορεύεται ὥς βασιλέᾳ he goes to meet the king. ὥς but without accent.*

ὥσπερ conj. adv. *just as, like 637; ὥς + -περ 216.*

ὥστε conj. adv. *ind. clause, inf. clause, and so, so that 639, 566; ὥς + -τε.*

ὥφειλε, aor. of ὀφείλω; w. inf. in wishes: ὥφειλε παρῆναι, μὴ ἐλθεῖν *would that he were present, had not gone.*

ὀφείλω *A assist, aid, benefit; ὀφέλος 416 c.*



The race-course (στάδιον) at Delphi.

## ENGLISH-GREEK VOCABULARY

THIS vocabulary contains only such words as occur in the English exercises, and is purposely made brief and concise. Whenever it is necessary to use this vocabulary the pupil should consult the Greek-English Vocabulary, for the use and fuller meanings of the Greek words. Verbs in *-άω, -έω, and -όω* are given in the uncontracted form. Remember the forms to use in writing are *-ε* in the active, *-έμαι, -ομαι, and -ομαι* in the middle. But see 321 and a.

### A

abandon *άπο-, έκ-, καταλείπω.*  
 able *δυνατός, ικανός; am able δύ-  
 ναι.*  
 above *άνω* adv.; *ήπέρ* prep. G.  
 about *περί, άμφί, εἰς, ώς.*  
 advance *προ-, προσίναμι, προήλθον.*  
 advice, ask *συμβουλεύομαι* D.  
 advise *συμβουλεύω* D.  
 afraid, *am* *φόβον έχω, δίδωκα, φο-  
 βέομαι.*  
 again *αὔθις, πάλιν.*  
 against *εἰς, ἐπί, κατά, πρós,* all A.  
 agreement, *make an* *συντίθημι*  
 mid. D.  
 all *πᾶς, ἀπᾶς; all who* *δοιοι.*  
 alone *μόνος.*  
 along *κατά, παρά,* both A.  
 already *ήδη.*  
 also *καί.*  
 always *δέ.*  
 ambassadors *οἱ πρέσβεις.*  
 ancient *ἀρχαῖος.*  
 and *καί, \*τε, \*δέ.*  
 another *ἄλλος.*  
 answer *ἀποκρίνομαι, ὅτι* clause.

appear *φαίνομαι.*  
 appoint *ἀποδεικνύω* two A.  
 approach *προσίναι, προσήλθον.*  
 archer *ὁ τοξότης.*  
 arms *τὰ ὅπλα; to arms εἰς, ἐπὶ τὰ  
 ὅπλα.*  
 army *ὁ στρατός, ἡ στρατιά, τὸ  
 στράτευμα.*  
 arrange *τάττω.*  
 arrangement *ἡ τάξις.*  
 arrest *συνλαμβάνω.*  
 arrive *ἀφικνέομαι, παρῆναι; arrive  
 at, w. εἰς* A.  
 as *ὥς; as long as ὥς.*  
 ascend *ἀναβαίνω.*  
 ask *a question ἐρωτάω; ask for  
 advice* two A; *ask advice of* *συμ-  
 βουλεύομαι* D. See also *δέομαι.*  
 assist *ἀφελίω* A, *βοηθῶ* D.  
 at *ἐν, ἐπί, παρά, πρós,* all D; *at  
 home οἶκοι; at first πρῶτον μόν;*  
*at the same time ἅμα.*  
 attack *ἐπιτίθημι* mid. D, *ἐπιτί-  
 πτω* D.  
 attempt *παράομαι.*  
 authorities, *the* *οἱ ἄρχοντες.*  
 away from *ἀπό* G.

B

back πάλιν.  
 barbarian ὁ βάρβαρος, βαρβαρικός.  
 battle ἡ μάχη.  
 be εἶναι; be *present* παρῆναι; be *in* ἐνεῖναι; be *upon* ἐπείναι.  
 because ὅτι, ἐπεὶ.  
 become γίγνομαι.  
 before πρὶν, πρό, πρότερος, φθάνω  
 w. ptc.  
 believe οἶμαι, νομίζω, ἡγέομαι,  
 πέθομαι.  
 belong *to* εἶναι G.  
 beside παρά A.  
 best ἀριστος; *seems best* δοκεῖ; *I*  
*think best* δοκεῖ μοι.  
 betray προδίδωμι.  
 bid κελεύω.  
 blame, *to, to blame for* αἰτιος G.  
 boat τὸ πλοῖον.  
 both ἀμφότερος; both . . . and \*τε  
 . . . καί, καὶ . . . καί.  
 boy ὁ παῖς.  
 brave ἀγαθός.  
 bridge ἡ γέφυρα.  
 bring ἄγω, φέρω; bring *together*  
*συνάγω*; bring *out* ἐξάγω; bring  
*back* ἀπάγω; bring *back word*  
 ἀπαγγέλλω.  
 brother ὁ ἀδελφός.  
 but ἀλλά, \*δέ.  
 by ὑπό G agent, παρά D.  
 bystander ὁ παρεστηκός.

C

camp τὸ στρατόπεδον.  
 can δύναμαι.  
 captain ὁ λοχαγός.  
 capture αἶρῶ, καταλαμβάνω; *am*  
 captured ἀλίσκομαι.  
 carefully ἐπιμελῶς.

carry ἄγω, φέρω.  
 catch καταλαμβάνω.  
 cavalry οἱ ἱππεῖς, τὸ ἱππικόν; *of*  
 cavalry ἱππικός.  
 cease παύομαι.  
 choose αἰρέομαι.  
 citizen ὁ πολίτης.  
 city ἡ πόλις.  
 clever σοφός.  
 come ἔγω, ἔρχομαι; come *up* προσ-  
 εῖναι; come *to know* γινώσκω.  
 command παραγγέλλω D, κελεύω A,  
 ἄρχω G.  
 company ὁ λόχος.  
 conduct ἡγέομαι D.  
 conquer νικάω A, κρατέω G.  
 consider νομίζω two A; βουλευομαι,  
 εἰ clause.  
 contest ὁ ἀγών.  
 country ἡ χῆρᾱ; *native country* ἡ  
 πατρίς.  
 cross διαβαίνω.

D

danger ὁ κίνδυνος; *am in danger*  
 κινδυνεύω.  
 day ἡ ἡμέρᾱ; *by day* ἡμέρᾱς; *at*  
*daybreak* ἅμα τῇ ἡμέρᾳ.  
 dead, *the* οἱ νεκροί, οἱ ἀποθανόντες.  
 dear φίλος.  
 deceive ἑξαπατάω.  
 deep βαθύς; *in depth* τὸ βάθος.  
 deliberate βουλευομαι, εἰ clause;  
 ὅπως and fut. ind.  
 depose *from* παύω G.  
 desire βούλομαι, ἐπιθυμέω.  
 destroy ἀπολλύμι.  
 die ἀποθνήσκω, τελευτάω.  
 difficult χαλεπός.  
 direct κελεύω A and inf.  
 do ποίεω.  
 down κατὰ.



draw up *τάττω*.

drive out *ἐξελάνω*.

## E

each *ἕκαστος*.

easy *ῥάδιος*.

either . . . or *ἢ . . . ἢ*; after a negative *οὔτε . . . οὔτε*.

else *ἄλλος*.

enemy, *the οἱ πολέμοι*; the enemy's *πολέμιος*.

enough *ἱκανός*.

escape the notice of *λανθάνω* A.

establish *καθίστημι*.

even *καί*; *not* even *οὐδέ*.

evening *ἡ δειλή*.

evident *δῆλος*; evident *that* *δῆλον* *ὅτι*.

evidently *δήλως*, *δῆλον* *ὅτι*.

exchange pledges *δεξιὰς δοῦναι καὶ λαβεῖν*.

execution, *for* *ἀποκτείνειν*, *ἵνα ἀποκτείνεσθαι αὐτόν, ἐπὶ θάνατον*.

exile *ὁ φυγών*, *ὁ φυγὰς*.

expect *οἶομαι* w. fut. inf.

## F

fair *καλός*.

faithful *πιστός*.

father *ὁ πατήρ*.

fear *δέδοικα*, *φοβέομαι*; fear *to*, w. inf.; fear *that*, w. *μή* clause.

fear *ὁ φόβος*.

few *ὀλίγοι*.

fiercely *ισχυρῶς*.

fight *μάχομαι*.

find *εὑρίσκω*, *καταλαμβάνω*.

first *πρώτος* adj.; *πρώτον* adv.

flee *φεύγω*.

fleet *ταχύς*.

follow *ἔπομαι* D.

foot *ὁ πούς*; at the foot of *ὑπὸ* D.

for \* *γάρ* conj.

force *ἡ δύναμις*.

formerly *πρόσθεν*, *πρότερον*.

fort *τὸ χωρίον*, *τὸ ἰσχυρὸν χωρίον*.

friend *ὁ φίλος*.

friendly *φίλος*, *φίλιος*.

frighten *φοβέω*.

from *ἀπὸ*, *ἐξ*, *παρά*, all G.

front, *in* *πρὸ* G, *πρόσθεν*, *eis* *τὸ πρόσθεν*.

## G

gather *ἄβροζω*, *συνάλλω*.

general *ὁ στρατηγός*.

get *λαμβάνω*, *ἔχω*; get *up* *ἀναστῆναι*; get *myself into* *καταστήναι* *εἰς* A; get *away* *ἀπέναι*.

gift *τὸ δῶρον*.

give *δίδωμι*; give *up*, trans. *παρεδίδωμι*; give *a signal* *σημαίνειν*.

go *ἵναι*, *ἔλθιν*; go *out* *ἐξέλθιν*; go *in* *εἰσελθιν*; go *away* *ἀπελθιν*; let go *ἀφήνμι*.

good *ἀγαθός*.

govern *ἄρχω* G.

government *ἡ ἀρχή*.

grain *ὁ σίτος*.

grateful, *am* *χάριν οἶδα*, *χάριν ἔχω*.

great *μέγας*, *πολύς*.

ground arms *τίθεσθαι τὰ ὅπλα*.

guard *φυλάττω*; guard *against* *φυλάττομαι* A.

guard *ὁ φύλαξ*, *ἡ φυλακή*.

guide *ὁ ἡγούμενος*.

## H

hand over *παρεδίδωμι*.

happen *τυγχάνω* w. ptc.

harbor *ὁ λιμήν*.

have *ἔχω*.

he, in oblique cases *αὐτός*; emphatic *οὗτος*, *ἐκεῖνος*; and he *ὁ δέ*.

hear ἀκούω 511 a, 588 a, b, 622.  
 head ἡ κεφαλὴ.  
 herald ὁ κήρυξ.  
 here αὐτοῦ, ἐνταῦθα.  
 high ὑψηλός; *in height* τὸ ὕψος.  
 heights τὰ ἄκρα.  
 hill ὁ λόφος.  
 his ὁ ἡ τό, αὐτοῦ; refl. ἑαυτοῦ.  
 home, at οἶκοι.  
 hope ἡ ἐλπίς.  
 hoplite ὁ ὀπλίτης.  
 horse ὁ ἵππος.  
 hostile πολέμιος.  
 house ὁ οἶκος, ἡ οἰκίᾱ.  
 how? πῶς; how *much*? πόσος;  
 how *many*? πόσοι; for *how* as  
 relative see ὥς, ὅπως, ὅσος.

I

I ἐγώ; I *at least* ἔγωγε.  
 if εἰ, ἐάν.  
 immediately αὐτίκα, εὐθύς.  
 impassable ἀπορος -ον.  
 implement τὸ ὅπλον.  
 in ἐν D; *in order to* ἵνα; *in regard*  
*to* πρὸς A; *in return for* ἀντί G;  
*in the power of* ἐπὶ D.  
 incur danger κινδυνεύω.  
 into εἰς A.  
 instead of ἀντί G.  
 intend μέλλω.  
 it, in oblique cases, αὐτό.

J

judge κρίνω.  
 just δίκαιος.

K

keep ἔχω; keep *watch* φυλάττω;  
 keep *a horse* ἵππον τρέφω.  
 kill ἀποκτείνω.  
 king ὁ βασιλεὺς.

know οἶδα; know *how* ἐπίσταμαι w.  
 inf.; *come to know* γινώσκω.

L

late, *too* ὕστερος G or ἡ.  
 lay aside κατατίθημι.  
 lead ἄρχω G, ἄγω A, ἡγέομαι G  
 or D.  
 leader ὁ ἄρχων.  
 leave λείπω; see also cpds. ἀπο-,  
 ἐκ-, κατα-.  
 let go ἀφίημι.  
 life ὁ βίος, τὸ σῶμα *body*.  
 long μακρός; *in length* τὸ μήκος.  
 longer, *no* οὐκέτι, μηκέτι.

M

make preparations παρασκευάζομαι.  
 man ὁ ἄνθρωπος, ὁ ἀνὴρ.  
 many πολλοί.  
 march πορεύομαι.  
 may, in a wish use optative.  
 messenger ὁ ἀγγέλος.  
 month ὁ μήν.  
 more πλείων adj.; μάλλον adv.  
 mother ἡ μήτηρ.  
 mountain τὸ ὄρος.  
 mounted ἐφ' ἵππου; of more than  
 one ἐφ' ἵππων.  
 must δεῖ w. inf., ἀνάγκη ἐστὶ w.  
 inf., verbal in -τός.

N

name τὸ ὄνομα.  
 native country ἡ πατρίς.  
 near ἔγγυς, πλησίον; near *to*, G.  
 need δεόμαι G.  
 never οὐδέποτε, μηδέποτε, οὐδεπώ-  
 ποτε, μηδεπώποτε, οὐπάποτε, μη-  
 πώποτε, οὐποτε, μήποτε. See on  
 οὐδέποτε.  
 next day τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ.

night, *by* νυκτός.  
 noble καλός.  
 noise ο θόρυβος.  
 no longer σκέτι, μηκέτ.  
 not οέ, μή.  
 not even ούδέ.  
 now νύν.  
 number ο αριθμός.  
 numbers, *in large* πολλοί.

## O

obey πείθομαι D.  
 often πολλάκις.  
 on επί G or D.  
 once \* ποτε.  
 or ή.  
 oracle τὸ μαντεῖον.  
 orator ο ῥήτωρ.  
 order παραγγέλλω, κελεύω; *in order*  
*that* ἵνα.  
 other ἄλλος; other *of two* ἕτερος.  
 ought χρῆ w. inf., ὀφελον w. inf.  
 our ἡμέτερος, ἡμῶν.  
 out of ἐξ G.  
 outside ἔξω; outside *of* ἔξω G.  
 overcome κρατέω G.  
 overtake καταλαμβάνω.  
 own, gen. of refl. pron. ἑαυτοῦ,  
 ἑαυτοῦ, etc.

## P

panic ο φόβος.  
 parasang ο παρασάγγης.  
 pass παρίναι A, παρελθεῖν A.  
 pay ἀποδίδωμι; pay *sacrifice* ἀπο-  
 θέω.  
 peltast ο πελταστής.  
 perceive αἰσθάνομαι 511 a, 588 a, b,  
 622.  
 persuade πείθω A.  
 place ο τόπος, τὸ χωρίον; a place  
*to get* εἶναι.

plain τὸ πεδίον; adj. δῆλος, φανερός.  
 plan βουλευόμεαι, βουλεύω; ή βουλή,  
 ή επιβουλή.  
 plot against ἐπιβουλεύω D.  
 point out ἀποδείκνυμι.  
 possible δυνατός.  
 prefer βούλομαι.  
 present, *be* παρῖναι.  
 prevent κωλύω.  
 proceed πορεύομαι.  
 promise ἐπισχίζομαι.  
 prove myself γίγνομαι.  
 provisions τὰ ἐπιτήδεια.  
 punish τιμωρόμαι A, δίκην ἐπιτίθη-  
 μι D.

## R

ranks αἱ τάξεις.  
 rapidly ταχέως; rapidly *as possible*  
 ὡς τάχιστα.  
 reach ἀφικνέομαι εἰς A or ἐπὶ A.  
 refuge, *flee for, seek* refuge *in or on*  
 καταφεύγω εἰς A.  
 remain μένω.  
 remember μέμνημαι 511 b, 588 c.  
 See also 185 foot-note 2.  
 remit ἀποπέμπω.  
 reply ἀποκρίνομαι, *εἰ* clause.  
 report ἀπαγγέλλω, *εἰ* clause.  
 restrain κωλύω, κατέχω 509 a, 572.  
 return ἀπίναι, ἀπελθεῖν, ἦκω.  
 revolt ἀποστήναι and mid. of ἀφί-  
 στημι, 363 a.  
 revolutionist ο ἀποστάς.  
 right δίκαιος; right *hand* ή δεξιή;  
*on the right* ἐν δεξιᾷ.  
 risk κινδυνεύω περί G.  
 river ο ποταμός.  
 road ή ὁδός.  
 ruler ο ἀρχων.  
 run θέω, τρέχω; run *away* φεύγω,  
 ἀποδιδράσκω.  
 rush ἀφίτημι mid.

S

sacrifice **θύω**; *pay a sacrifice ἀποθύω*.  
 safe **ἀσφαλής, σῶς**.  
 safety **ἡ σωτηρία**.  
 same, *the* **ὁ αὐτός**; *at the same time* **ἅμα**.  
 satrap **ὁ σατράπης**.  
 save **σώζω**.  
 say **λέγω, φημι, εἶπον**.  
 scout **ὁ σκοπός**.  
 see **ὁράω, εἶδον**; *were seen* **ἐφάνησαν**.  
 seek refuge in **καταφεύγω εἰς A**.  
 seems best **δοκεῖ**.  
 seize **αἰρέω, καταλαμβάνω, ἀναρπάζω**.  
 self **αὐτός** in appos. or in composition, as **ἑμαυτόν**, or pers. pron. used as reflexive.  
 send **πέμπω, στέλλω**; *send after* **μεταπέμπομαι A**; *send away or back* **ἀποπέμπω**.  
 set **ἵστημι**.  
 she, see *he* and use fem.  
 shield **ἡ ἀσπίς**.  
 shouting **ἡ κραυγή**.  
 signal, *give the* **σημαίνω**.  
 since **ἐπεὶ, ἐπειδὴ, ὅτι**.  
 slave **ὁ δοῦλος, τὸ ἀνδράποδον**.  
 small **μικρός**.  
 so **οὕτω(ς), ὥδε**; *so much, so many* **τοσούτος, τοσόσδε**.  
 soldier **ὁ στρατιώτης**.  
 some . . . others **οἱ μὲν . . . οἱ δέ**.  
 soon **ταχέως, ταχύ**; *as soon as* **ἐπιδαν τάχιστα**; *as soon as possible* **ὡς τάχιστα**.  
 sort, *of what?* **ποῖος**; indef. rel. **ὁποῖος**.  
 speak **λέγω, εἶπον**.  
 speech **ὁ λόγος**.  
 spoils **τὰ τῶν ἡττωμένων**.

stade **τὸ στάδιον**.  
 stand, intr. **στήναι, ἵστηκα, ἵστημι** mid. **363**.  
 stronghold **τὸ χωρίον, χωρίον ἰσχυρόν**.  
 succeed **εὖ πράττω**.  
 summon **καλέω, μεταπέμπομαι**.  
 suppose **οἶμαι, νομίζω, ἡγέομαι**, all w. inf.  
 surrender, trans. **παραδίδωμι**.  
 swear **δυνύμι**.

T

take **λαμβάνω, αἰρέω**.  
 tell **λέγω, εἶπον, κελεύω**.  
 tent **ἡ σκηνή**.  
 than **ἤ**.  
 that, dem. pron. **ἐκεῖνος, οὗτος**; rel. pron. **ὅς**; conj. **ὅτι**; conj. adv. **ὅνα**; w. verbs of fearing **μή**; *all that* **ὅσοι**.  
 the **ὁ ἡ τό**.  
 their **ὁ ἡ τό, αὐτῶν**; *their own* **ἑαυτῶν**.  
 themselves, intensive **αὐτοί** in appos.; reflexive **ἑαυτῶν**, etc.  
 then **τότε, εἰτα, ἔπειτα, ἐνταῦθα**.  
 there **αὐτοῦ, ἐνταῦθα**.  
 think **οἶμαι, νομίζω, ἡγέομαι**, all w. inf.  
 this **οὗτος, ὅδε**.  
 through **διὰ G**.  
 thus **οὕτω(ς), ὥδε**.  
 to *els, ἐπὶ, παρά, πρὸς*, all **A**; *of purpose* **ὅνα**, fut. ptc., inf.  
 today **τῆμερον**; *men of today* **οἱ νῦν**.  
 together with **ἅμα D**; *together* **σύν** in composition.  
 tomorrow **αὔριον**.  
 town **ἡ κώμη**.  
 train **παιδεύω**.

traitor ὁ προδοτής.  
 travel πορεύομαι.  
 tribute ὁ φόρος, ὁ δασμός.  
 truce αἱ σπονδαί.  
 trumpet ἡ σάλπιγξ.  
 trust πιστεύω D.  
 try παρόμαι.

## U

until ἕως, ἕως, ἄχρι, μέχρι, πρὶν,  
 631, 644, 138 a, 287 d.  
 unprepared ἀπαράσκευος.  
 up ἀνά prep. A; ἄνω adv.  
 upon ἐπὶ G or D.  
 use χράομαι D; *what use will he*  
*make of us?* τί χρήσεται ἡμῖν;  
 use τὸ ὄφελος.

## V

valuable πολλοῦ ἀξιος.  
 very μάλα, πάνυ.  
 victor ὁ νικῶν.  
 village ἡ κώμη.  
 vow εὐχομαι.

## W

wagon ἡ ἄμαξα.  
 wait μένω; wait *for* περιμένω, μένω,  
 ὑπομένω, all A.  
 wall τὸ τεῖχος.  
 war ὁ πόλεμος.  
 watch, *keep* φυλάττω.  
 water τὸ ὕδωρ.  
 we ἡμεῖς.

well εὖ, καλῶς.  
 what? τί; rel. ὅ, ὅ τι.  
 when? πότε; rel. ὅτε, ὁπότε, ἐπεί,  
 ἐπειδὴ, ἐπειδάν.  
 whenever, see *when*. 112, 287 and c.  
 where? ποῦ; ποῖ; πόθεν; rel. οὐ,  
 ὅπου, οἷ, ὅποι, ὅθεν, ὅπόθεν.  
 wherever, see *where*. 112, 287  
 and c.  
 whether εἰ; whether . . . or εἰ . . .  
 ἢ, εἴτε . . . εἴτε, πότερον . . . ἢ.  
 which, see *who*; *from* which ὅθεν.  
 who? τίς; rel. ὅς, ὅστις.  
 why? τί; διὰ τί;  
 wicked κακός.  
 wide εὐρύς; *in width* τὸ εὖρος.  
 willingly ἐκόν adj.; *am* willing  
 ἐθέλω.  
 wish βούλομαι, ἐθέλω.  
 with μετὰ G; ἔχων, λαβόν; with  
*the aid of* σὺν D.  
 without ἄνευ G, οὐκ ἔχων A, ἔρη-  
 μος G.  
 woman ἡ γυνή.  
 would that εἴθε, εἰ γάρ, and opt.;  
 ὄφελον and inf.

## Y

yet ἔτι adv.; *not yet* οὐπω; ὅμως  
 conj.  
 yield ὑφίημι mid.  
 you σύ, ὑμεῖς.  
 young man ὁ νεανίας.



Bronze lamp shaped like a boat.

## ENGLISH INDEX

THIS index is to supplement the Table of Contents. References are to sections.

- Accent 3; nouns and adjectives 20, 34, 70, 229; verbs 47, 58, 122, 136, 172 *a*; subjv. 144, 172 *a*, 193; inf. 58 *b, c*, 122, 136, 195 *b*; ptc. 122, 136, 237 *c*; opt. 275 *e*; in contract verbs 310 *b*; of indef. relatives 220 *a*.
- Adnominal genitive, position of 24, 4.
- Adverbs 84, 103, 213, 311 *b*, 332 *a, b*, 343 *a, b, c*, 354; correlative adverbs 219, 220.
- Attributive position 95, 101 *a*, 228.
- Combined endings of subjv. 108 *a*, 109, 161, 172 *a*.
- Compound verbs 129, 130, 179.
- Consonant changes 37, 133 *a*, 145 *a*, 366 *a*.
- Contractions in verbs 29, 164 *a*, 172 *a*, 193, 310 *a*, 318.
- Correlatives 219, 220, 285.
- Deliberative subjunctive 111 *a*.
- Demonstratives, position and use 97-100.
- Deponents, passive 185.
- Enclitics, exercise on 12.
- Genitive absolute 255.
- Hortative subjunctive 111 *a*.
- Hypothetical ind. 279 *b*; opt. 278 *b*.
- Imperative sentences 360 *a-d*.
- Infinitive, time 61 and *a*; subject omitted 62; uses 63; w. ὥστε 124 *b*; formation and endings 195 *a, b*; accent 58 *b, c*, 122, 136, 195 *b*; w. πρίν 198 *a*, 287 *d*, end; table of uses 204; as a noun 75, 11; w. ἄν 295 *a, c*.
- Interrogatives 84, 219.
- Mode-suffix, subjv. 108 *a*; opt. 275 *c*, 310 *c*.
- Negative, w. inf. 61, 63. See under μή.
- Optative, formation, suffix, endings, accent 275 *a-f*;

- in contract forms 310 *c*;  
 optative sentences, hypothetical and in wishes, 278 *a, b*; w. *iva* 297 and foot-note; in *ῥι* clauses 292 *b*, 293; in quoted causal *ῥι* clauses 291, 8, 308 foot-note; w. *ἄν* in quotations 295; position of *ἄν* with 296; w. *εἰ* 302 *c*; table of uses 308.
- Participles, formation 237 *b*, 238, 241; accent 237 *c*, 122, 136; declension 239 *a*; meaning 240, 242, 248, 249; in genitive absolute 255; table of uses 262; w. *ὥς* 349 *a*, p. 217, note 80; w. *ἄν* 295 *b, c*.
- Possessives 83 *a*, 226, 227; position of 228.
- Predicate position 96, 99, 101 *b*, 228.
- Prepositions in composition 129, 178.
- Proclitics, exercise on 12.
- Prohibitions 360 *a-d*.
- Prohibitive subjunctive *ἵ* *a*, 360 *b, d*.
- Pronouns 84, 103, 284 *a*, 285; position of demonstratives 97-100 and *αὐτός* 101; possessive reflexives 227; reflexive 268-273.
- Pronunciation 4; of diphthongs 7, foot-note.
- Question clauses 65, 89, 1, 220, 292 *a, c*.
- Quotations, form of 61, 62, 64, 65, 89, 1, 220, 252, 292 *a, b, c*, 293; of subjv. w. *ἄν* 294; of opt. w. *ἄν* 295; of causal *ῥι* clauses 291, 8, 308, foot-note; implied 302 *c*.
- Reflexives, possessive 227; pronouns 268-273.
- Relatives 76, 78, 84, 112, 284 *a, d*; not omitted 117, 12.
- Relative clauses, subjv. *ἵ* *b*, 112; opt. 287 *b, c*. See under correlatives.
- Second sing. ind. mid. forms 144 *a*, 164 *a*.
- Subjunctive, endings, mode-suffix, and formation 108 *a*, 109, 144, 161, 172 *a*; complete rules for formation of 193; subjv. sentences, deliberative, hortative, prohibitive *ἵ* *a*; used w. relatives and *ἄν* 112; w. *ῥως* 138 *a*; w. *iva* 138 *b*; w. *ἐάν* 147; table of uses 203; w. *ἄν* in quotations 294; as an impv. 360.
- Synopses 361.
- Time, of imperf. 45; of inf. 61 and *a*, 63; of ptc. 252.
- Transliteration 10.
- Wishes 278 *a*, 279 *a*.

## GREEK INDEX

MATTERS included here will naturally be looked for in the index of the *Grammar*. These few references are inserted to enable one to find where these words are introduced in the *Lessons*, and where the first sentences occur that illustrate their use. They cover also some other points. References are to sections.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <p> <i>ἄγω</i>, synopsis 36/ B.<br/> <i>ἄν</i> w. subjv. /// c, //2; subjv. w. <i>ἄν</i> in quotations 294; opt. w. <i>ἄν</i> in quotations 295; position of w. opt. 296.<br/> <i>αὐτός</i>, position and use 101.<br/> <i>βάλλω</i>, construction with 176, 7.<br/> <i>βούλομαι</i>, synopsis 36/ B.<br/> <i>δύναμαι</i> 164, 166, 276 a.<br/> <i>εἰ</i> clauses 138 d; subjv. w. <i>εἰάν</i> (<i>εἰ</i> + <i>ἄν</i>) 147; ind. and opt. 302 a, b, c; in quoted questions 292 c.<br/> <i>εἰ</i> . . . <i>ἢ</i>, <i>εἴτε</i> . . . <i>εἴτε</i> 292 c.<br/> <i>εἰλόμην</i>, synopsis 36/ B.<br/> <i>εἰμι</i>, synopsis 36/ B.<br/> <i>εἰμι</i>, synopsis 36/ B.<br/> <i>ἐκείνος</i>, position and use 97-100.<br/> <i>ἐπίσταμαι</i> 276 a, 372 a.<br/> <i>ἐποίησα</i>, synopsis 36/ B.<br/> <i>ἐπράχθην</i>, synopsis 36/ B.         </p> | <p> <i>ἐπριάμην</i> 276 a.<br/> <i>ἐτέλεσα</i>, synopsis 36/ B.<br/> <i>ὥς</i> clauses 124 a, 138 a.<br/> <i>ἦλθον</i>, synopsis 36/ B.<br/> <i>ἤργμαι</i>, synopsis 366 g.<br/> <i>ἵνα</i> clauses, subjv. 138 b; opt. 297 and foot-note.<br/> <i>κελεύω</i>, synopsis 36/ B.<br/> <i>μά</i> w. accusative 319 c.<br/> <i>μέμνημαι</i> 185, foot-note 2.<br/> <i>μὲν</i> . . . <i>δέ</i> 102.<br/> <i>μή</i> 33, 7, 63, 113, 124 b, 138 d, 221 a, 278 a, 279 a, 287 a, b, c, 360; w. inf. after verbs of promising, etc. 202, 6.<br/> <i>μή</i> clauses, ind. and subjv. /// b; opt. 287 a.<br/> <i>μυ</i>-form 192 and foot-note.<br/> <i>ὀδε</i>, position and use 97-100.<br/> <i>οἶδα</i>, synopsis 36/ B.<br/> <i>ὅπως</i> w. fut. ind. 287 c; final 297 and foot-note.<br/> <i>ὀράω</i>, synopsis 36/ B.         </p> |
|--|--|



- ὅς and ὅστις clauses, subjv. *πρίν* clauses, inf. /98 *a*; finite  
 /// *b*, /12; opt. 287 *b*. modes 287 *d*; rule for use  
 287 *d*.  
 ὅσοι 82, 5. σχεῖν 56 *a*.  
 ὅστις 78. τε . . . καί /87, foot-note 9.  
 ὅτι clauses 64, 292 *b*; quoted φημι, synopsis 36/ *B*.  
 causal ὅτι clauses 29/, 8, ω-form /92 and foot-note.  
 308, foot-note. ὡς clauses 292 *b*; final 297  
 οὗτος, position and use 97- and foot-note.  
 /100. ὡς w. ptc. 349 *a*, p. 2/7, note  
 80.  
 παύω, synopsis 36/ *A*. ὥστε clauses, inf. /24 *b*; ind.  
 πέπεισμαι, synopsis 366 *g*. /38 *c*.  
 πέπεμμαι, synopsis 366 *g*.  
 ποιέω, synopsis 36/ *B*.  
 πολλοῦ ἄξιος compared 348 *a*.

---

## TWENTIETH CENTURY TEXT-BOOKS.

---

### THE CLASSICAL SERIES

*A New Series of Latin and Greek Texts for  
Secondary Schools, under the editorial charge of*

**John Henry Wright, A. M., LL. D.,** Harvard University

**Bernadotte Perrin, Ph.D., LL.D.,** Yale University

**Andrew Fleming West, Ph.D., LL.D.,** Princeton University

These names guarantee the highest standard of scholarship and pedagogic fitness.

The whole series throughout is based on the lines laid down in the Report of the Committee of Twelve of the American Philological Association to the National Educational Association.

These lines are now universally accepted as defining the ideal classical course for secondary schools. The Twentieth Century Classical Texts satisfy at every point this universal requirement.

The methods of teaching Latin and Greek as revised and now adopted by American educators call for a less pedantic, more humanistic style, dominantly literary in spirit, giving a clear, forceful impression of ancient life and thought. The modern secondary text-book is not merely grammatical, but also historical; fitted to arouse living enthusiasm for the great masterpieces of ancient thought and for their exquisite literary dress.

All this, recently focused in the action of the National Educational Association, is now embodied for the first time in this Series, edited by representative scholars of the universities that have had most to do with classical culture in America.

The general editors and their colleagues are all practical teachers, originators, and leaders in the courses now pursued in our secondary-school system.

**Hence, the Twentieth Century Classical Series offers the simplest, most practical, and up-to-date Latin and Greek books ever prepared for American schools.**

---

D. APPLETON AND COMPANY, NEW YORK.

---

---

---

## TWENTIETH CENTURY TEXT-BOOKS.

---

---

### THE CLASSICAL SERIES.

---

#### A School Grammar of Attic Greek.

By THOMAS DWIGHT GOODELL, Ph. D., Professor of Greek in Yale University. 12mo. Cloth, \$1.50 net.

This is the only Greek Grammar that contains the modern knowledge of the subject, and sets forth the modern methods of teaching it.

Goodell's Greek Grammar does this thoroughly, accurately, and simply. It is written by a distinguished Greek scholar—a successor of Woolsey, Hadley, and Packard—who has had years of experience in secondary schools and is to-day in closest touch with them.

Intended primarily for such schools, this book is made as plain as possible. Rarer forms and principles of syntax, such as are naturally explained in lexicon or notes, are here omitted; classification and terminology have been much simplified.

Yet this Grammar supplies all that is needed for reading the drama and Attic prose commonly studied in freshman and sophomore years.

Sentences are classified by form instead of by function. In like manner, subordinate clauses are classified first by the introductory word, then by mode and tense. Not only is this better scientifically, but the result is a more concrete and intelligible system for young students.

Larger and plainer type is used, especially for the Greek, than in any other Greek Grammar. Of this larger print the book contains about three hundred pages.

---

---

D. APPLETON AND COMPANY, NEW YORK.

---

---













